transfer module 6404 receives the analog AM carrier signal 516. In step 4614, the energy transfer module 6404 receives the energy transfer signal 5706. In step 4618, the energy transfer module 6404 transfers energy from the analog AM carrier signal 516 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5706, to directly down-convert the digital AM carrier signal 516 to the demodulated baseband signals 5712 or 5716.

The operation of the energy transfer system 6402 is now described for the digital AM carrier signal 616, with reference to the flowchart 4613 and the timing diagrams in FIGS. 58A-F. In step 4614, the energy transfer module 6404 receives the digital AM carrier signal 616. In step 4616, the energy transfer module 6404 receives the energy transfer signal 5806. In step 4618, the energy transfer module 6404 transfers energy from the digital AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5806, to directly down-convert the digital AM carrier signal 616 to the demodulated baseband signals 5812 or 5816.

Example implementations of the energy transfer module 6302 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

2.2.2 Second Example Embodiment: Phase Modulation

2.2.2.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of flowchart 4613 in FIG. 46C is described below for the analog PM carrier signal 916, illustrated in FIG. 9C and for the digital PM carrier signal 1016, illustrated in FIG. 10C.

2.2.2.1.1 Analog PM Carrier Signal

A process for directly down-converting the analog PM carrier signal 916 to a demodulated baseband signal is now described for the flowchart 4613 in FIG. 46C. The analog PM carrier signal 916 is re-illustrated in 59A for convenience. For this example, the analog PM carrier signal 916 oscillates at approximately 900 MHZ. In FIG. 59B, an analog PM carrier signal portion 5904 illustrates a portion of the analog PM carrier signal 916 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4614, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the analog PM carrier signal 916.

Step 4616 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. In FIG. 59C, an example energy transfer signal 5906 is illustrated on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 59B. The energy transfer signal 5906 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5907 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5907 repeat at the aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when directly down-converting an EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the EM signal.

Step 4618 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert the EM signal to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. In FIG. 59D, an affected analog PM carrier signal 5908 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the analog PM carrier signal 916 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected analog PM carrier signal 5908 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 59B and 59C.

FIG. 59E illustrates a demodulated baseband signal 5912, which IS generated by the down-conversion process. Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the signal 516,

essentially no IF is produced. The only substantial aliased component is the baseband signal. The demodulated baseband signal 5912 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The demodulated baseband signal 5912 includes portions 5910A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5907 in FIG. 59C, and portions 5910B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5907. Portions 5910A represent energy transferred from the analog PM carrier signal 916 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5910A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5907. Portions 591 OB represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 5910B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5907.

In FIG. 59F, a demodulated baseband signal 5916 represents a filtered version of the demodulated baseband signal 5912, on a compressed time scale. The demodulated baseband signal 5916 is substantially similar to the modulating baseband signal 210 and can be further processed using any signal processing technique(s) without further down-conversion or demodulation.

The present invention can output the unfiltered demodulated baseband 5912, the filtered demodulated baseband signal 5916, a partially filtered demodulated baseband signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate direct down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the demodulated baseband signals 5912 in FIG. 59E and 5916 in FIG. 59F illustrate that

the analog PM carrier signal 916 was successfully down-converted to a demodulated baseband signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

2.2.2.1.2 Digital PM Carrier Signal

A process for directly down-converting the digital PM carrier signal 1016 in FIG. 6C to a demodulated baseband signal is now described for the flowchart 4613 in FIG. 46C. The digital PM carrier signal 1016 is re-illustrated in 60A for convenience. For this example, the digital PM carrier signal 1016 oscillates at approximately 900 MHZ. In FIG. 60B, a digital PM carrier signal portion 6004 illustrates a portion of the digital PM carrier signal 1016 on an expanded time scale. The process begins at step 4614, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the digital PM carrier signal 1016.

Step 4616 includes receiving an energy transfer signal F_{AR}. In FIG. 60C, an example energy transfer signal 6006 is illustrated on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 60B. The energy transfer signal 6006 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 6007 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 6007 repeat at the aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when directly down-converting an EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the EM signal.

Step 4618 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert the EM signal to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. In FIG. 60D, an affected digital PM carrier signal 6008 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the digital PM carrier signal 1016 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected digital PM

carrier signal 6008 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 60B and 60C.

FIG. 60E illustrates a demodulated baseband signal 6012, which IS generated by the down-conversion process. Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the signal 1016, essentially no IF is produced. The only substantial aliased component is the baseband signal. The demodulated baseband signal 6012 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The demodulated baseband signal 6012 includes portions 6010A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 6007 in FIG. 60C, and portions 6010B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 6007. Portions 6010A represent energy transferred from the digital PM carrier signal 1016 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 6010A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 6007. Portions 601 OB represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 6010B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 6007.

In FIG. 60F, a demodulated baseband signal 6016 represents a filtered version of the demodulated baseband signal 6012, on a compressed time scale. The demodulated baseband signal 6016 is substantially similar to the modulating baseband signal 310 and can be further processed using any signal processing technique(s) without further down-conversion or demodulation.

The present invention can output the unfiltered demodulated baseband signal 6012, the filtered demodulated baseband signal 6016, a partially filtered demodulated baseband signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate direct down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the demodulated baseband signals 6012 in FIG. 60E and 6016 in FIG. 60F illustrate that the digital PM carrier signal 1016 was successfully down-converted to a demodulated baseband signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

2.2.2.2 Structural Description

In an embodiment, the energy transfer system 6302 preferably transfers energy from an EM signal to directly down-convert it to a demodulated baseband signal in the manner shown in the operational flowchart 4613. But it should be understood that the scope and spirit of the invention includes other structural embodiments for performing the steps of the flowchart 1413. The specifics of the other structural embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s)

based on the discussion contained herein.

Operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the analog PM carrier signal 916, with reference to the flowchart 4613 and the timing diagrams in FIGS. 59A-F. In step 4614, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the analog PM carrier signal 916. In step 4616, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 5906. In step 4618, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the analog PM carrier signal 916 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5906, to directly down-convert the analog PM carrier signal 916 to the demodulated baseband signals 5912 or 5916.

Operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the digital PM carrier signal 1016, with reference to the flowchart 4613 and to the timing diagrams in FIGS. 60A-F. In step 4614, the energy transfer module 6404 receives the digital PM carrier signal 1016. In step 4616, the energy transfer module 6404 receives the energy transfer signal 6006. In step 4618, the energy transfer module 6404 transfers energy from the digital PM carrier signal 1016 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6006, to directly down-convert the digital PM carrier signal 1016 to the demodulated baseband signal 6012 or 6016.

Example implementations of the energy transfer module 6302 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

2.2.3 Other Embodiments

The embodiments described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These embodiments are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate embodiments, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate embodiments fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention. Example

implementations of the energy transfer module 6302 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

2.3 Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the method(s), structure(s), and/or embodiments described above are presented in Sections 4 and 5 below. These implementations are presented for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described therein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

3. Modulation Conversion

In an embodiment, the invention down-converts an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to a non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$, by transferring energy from the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} at an aliasing rate. This embodiment is illustrated in FIG. 45B as 4518.

In an example embodiment, the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} is down-converted to a phase modulated (PM) signal F_{PM}. In another example embodiment, the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} is down-converted to an amplitude modulated (AM) signal F_{AM}. The down-converted signal can be demodulated with any conventional demodulation technique to obtain a demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}.

The invention can be implemented with any type of FM signal. Exemplary embodiments are provided below for down-converting a

frequency shift keying (FSK) signal to a non-FSK signal. FSK is a sub-set of FM, wherein an FM signal shifts or switches between two or more frequencies. FSK is typically used for digital modulating baseband signals, such as the digital modulating baseband signal 310 in FIG. 3. For example, in FIG. 8, the digital FM signal 816 is an FSK signal that shifts between an upper frequency and a lower frequency, corresponding to amplitude shifts in the digital modulating baseband signal 310. The FSK signal 816 is used in example embodiments below.

In a first example embodiment, energy is transferred from the FSK signal 816 at an aliasing rate that is based on a mid-point between the upper and lower frequencies of the FSK signal 816. When the aliasing rate is based on the mid-point, the FSK signal 816 is down-converted to a phase shift keying (PSK) signal. PSK is a sub-set of phase modulation, wherein a PM signal shifts or switches between two or more phases. PSK is typically used for digital modulating baseband signals. For example, in FIG. 10, the digital PM signal 1016 is a PSK signal that shifts between two phases. The PSK signal 1016 can be demodulated by any conventional PSK demodulation technique(s).

In a second example embodiment, energy is transferred from the FSK signal 816 at an aliasing rate that is based upon either the upper frequency or the lower frequency of the FSK signal 816. When the aliasing rate is based upon the upper frequency or the lower frequency of the FSK signal 816, the FSK signal 816 is down-converted to an amplitude shift keying (ASK) signal. ASK is a sub-set of amplitude modulation, wherein an AM signal shifts or switches between two or more amplitudes. ASK is typically used for digital modulating baseband signals. For example, in FIG. 6, the digital AM signal 616 is an ASK signal that shifts between the first amplitude and the second amplitude. The ASK signal 616 can be demodulated by any conventional ASK demodulation technique(s).

The following sections describe methods for transferring energy from an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to down-convert it to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$. Exemplary structural embodiments for implementing the methods are also described. It should be understood that the invention is not limited to the particular embodiments described below. Equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the following will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., are within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

The following sections include a high level discussion, example embodiments, and implementation examples.

3.1 High Level Description

This section (including its subsections) provides a high-level description of transferring energy from the FM carrier signal F_{FM} to down-convert it to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$, according to the invention. In particular, an operational process for down-converting the FM carrier signal F_{FM} to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$ is described at a high-level. Also, a structural implementation for implementing this process is described at a high-level. The structural implementation is described herein for illustrative purposes, and is not limiting. In particular, the process described in this section can be achieved using any number of structural implementations, one of which is described in this section. The details of such structural implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein.

3.1.1 Operational Description

FIG. 46D depicts a flowchart 4619 that illustrates an exemplary method for down-converting the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$. The exemplary method illustrated in the flowchart 4619 is an embodiment of the flowchart 4601 in FIG. 46A.

Any and all forms of frequency modulation techniques are valid for this invention. For ease of discussion, the digital FM carrier (FSK) signal 816 is used to illustrate a high level operational description of the invention. Subsequent sections provide detailed flowcharts and descriptions for the FSK signal 816. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any type of FM signal.

The method illustrated in the flowchart 4619 is described below at a high level for down-converting the FSK signal 816 in FIG. 8C to a PSK signal. The FSK signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 84A for convenience.

The process of the flowchart 4619 begins at step 4620, which includes receiving an FM signal. This is represented by the FSK signal 816. The FSK signal 816 shifts between a first frequency 8410 and a second frequency 8412. The first frequency 8410 can be higher or lower than the second frequency 8412. In an exemplary embodiment, the first frequency 8410 is approximately 899 MHZ and the second frequency 8412 is approximately 901 MHZ.

Step 4622 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 84B illustrates an example energy transfer signal 8402 which includes a train of energy transfer pulses 8403 having non-negligible apertures 8405 that tend away from zero time in duration.

The energy transfer pulses 8403 repeat at the aliasing rate F_{AR}, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to a non-FM signal

$F_{(NON-FM)}$, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of a frequency within the FM signal. In this example overview embodiment, where the FSK signal 816 is to be down-converted to a PSK signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the mid-point between the first frequency 8410 and the second frequency 8412. For the present example, the mid-point is approximately 900 MHZ.

Step 4624 includes transferring energy from the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} at the aliasing rate to down-convert the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$. FIG. 84C illustrates a PSK signal 8404, which is generated by the modulation conversion process.

When the second frequency 8412 IS under-sampled, the PSK signal 8404 has a frequency of approximately 1 MHZ and is used as a phase reference. When the first frequency 8410 is under-sampled, the PSK signal 8404 has a frequency of 1 MHZ and is phase shifted 180 degrees from the phase reference.

FIG. 84D depicts a PSK signal 8406, which is a filtered version of the PSK signal 8404. The invention can thus generate a filtered output signal, a partially filtered output signal, or a relatively unfiltered stair step output signal. The choice between filtered, partially filtered and non-filtered output signals is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

Detailed exemplary embodiments for down-converting an FSK signal to a PSK signal and for down-converting an FSK signal to an ASK signal are provided below.

3.1.2 Structural Description

FIG. 63 illustrates the energy transfer system 6302 according to an embodiment of the invention. The energy transfer system 6302 includes the energy transfer module 6304. The energy transfer system 6302 is an example embodiment of the generic aliasing system 1302 in FIG. 13.

In a modulation conversion embodiment, the EM signal 1304 is an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} and the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from FM carrier signal at a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of a frequency within the FM frequency band. Preferably, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to down-convert it to a non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$ in the manner shown in the operational flowchart 4619. But it should be understood that the scope and spirit of the invention includes other structural embodiments for performing the steps of the flowchart 4619. The specifics of the other structural embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

The operation of the energy transfer system 6302 shall now be described with reference to the flowchart 4619 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 84A-84D. In step 4620, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the FSK signal 816. In step 4622, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 8402. In step 4624, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the FSK signal 816 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 8402 to down-convert the FSK signal 816 to the PSK signal 8404 or 8406.

Example implementations of the energy transfer module 6302 are provided in Section 4 below.

3.2 Example Embodiments

Various embodiments related to the method(s) and structure(s)

described above are presented in this section (and its subsections). These embodiments are described herein for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to these embodiments. Alternate embodiments (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the embodiments described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. The invention is intended and adapted to include such alternate embodiments.

The method for down-converting an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to a nonFM signal, $F_{(NON-FM)}$, illustrated in the flowchart 4619 of FIG.46D, can be implemented with any type of FM carrier signal including, but not limited to, FSK signals. The flowchart 4619 is described in detail below for down-converting an FSK signal to a PSK signal and for down-converting a PSK signal to an ASK signal. The exemplary descriptions below are intended to facilitate an understanding of the present invention. The present invention is not limited to or by the exemplary embodiments below.

3.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Down-Converting an FM Signal to a PM Signal

3.2.1.1 Operational Description

A process for down-converting the FSK signal 816 in FIG. 8C to a PSK signal is now described for the flowchart 4619 in FIG. 46D.

The FSK signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 61A for convenience. The FSK signal 816 shifts between a first frequency 6106 and a second frequency 6108. In the exemplary embodiment, the first frequency 6106 is lower than the second frequency 6108. In an alternative embodiment, the first frequency 6106 is higher than the second frequency 6108. For this example, the first frequency 6106 is approximately 899 MHZ and

the second frequency 6108 is approximately 901 MHZ.

FIG. 61B illustrates an FSK signal portion 6104 that represents a portion of the FSK signal 816 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4620, which includes receiving an FM signal. This is represented by the FSK signal 816.

Step 4622 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 61C illustrates an example energy transfer signal 6107 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 61B. The energy transfer signal 6107 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 6109 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 6109 repeat at the aliasing rate F_{AR}, which is determined or selected as described above. Generally, when down- converting an FM signal to a non-FM signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of a frequency within the FM signal.

In this example, where an FSK signal is being down-converted to a PSK signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic, of the mid-point between the frequencies 6106 and 6108. In this example, where the first frequency 6106 is 899 MHZ and second frequency 6108 is 901 MHZ, the mid-point is approximately 900 MHZ. Suitable aliasing rates thus include 1.8 GHZ, 900 MHZ, 450 MHZ, etc.

Step 4624 includes transferring energy from the FM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert it to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$. In FIG. 61D, an affected FSK signal 6118 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the FSK signal 816 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected FSK signal 6118 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 61B and 61C.

FIG. 61E illustrates a PSK signal 6112, which is generated by the modulation conversion process. PSK signal 6112 is illustrated with an

arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The PSK signal 6112 includes portions 6110A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 6107 in FIG. 61C. The PSK signal 6112 also includes portions 6110B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 6109. Portions 6110A represent energy transferred from the FSK 816 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 6110A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 6109. Portions 6110B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 6110B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 6107.

In FIG. 61F, a PSK signal 6114 represents a filtered version of the PSK signal 6112, on a compressed time scale. The present invention can output the unfiltered demodulated baseband signal 6112, the filtered demodulated baseband signal 6114, a partially filtered demodulated baseband signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention. The PSK signals 6112 and 6114 can be demodulated with a conventional demodulation technique(s)..

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate modulation conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the PSK signals 6112 in FIG. 61E and 6114 in FIG. 61F illustrate that the FSK signal 816 was successfully down-converted to a PSK signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

3.2.1.2 Structural Description

The operation of the energy transfer system 1602 is now described for down-converting the FSK signal 816 to a PSK signal, with reference to the flowchart 4619 and to the timing diagrams of FIGS. 61A-E. In step 4620, the energy transfer module 1606 receives the FSK signal 816 (FIG. 61A). In step 4622, the energy transfer module 1606 receives the energy transfer signal 6107 (FIG. 61C). In step 4624, the energy transfer module 1606 transfers energy from the FSK signal 816 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6107 to down-convert the FSK signal 816 to the PSK signal 6112 in FIG. 61E or the PSK signal 6114 in FIG. 61F.

3.2.2. Second Example Embodiment: Down-Converting an FM Signal to an AM Signal

3.2.2.1 Operational Description

A process for down-converting the FSK signal 816 in FIG. 8C to an ASK signal is now described for the flowchart 4619 in FIG. 46D.

The FSK signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 62A for convenience. The FSK signal 816 shifts between a first frequency 6206 and a second frequency 6208. In the exemplary embodiment, the first frequency 6206 is lower than the second frequency 6208. In an alternative embodiment, the first frequency 6206 is higher than the second frequency 6208. For this example, the first frequency 6206 is approximately 899 MHZ and the second frequency 6208 is approximately 901 MHZ.

FIG. 62B illustrates an FSK signal portion 6204 that represents a portion of the FSK signal 816 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4620, which includes receiving an FM signal. This is represented by the FSK signal 816.

Step 4622 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an

aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 62C illustrates an example energy transfer signal 6207 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 62B. The energy transfer signal 6207 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 6209 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 6209 repeat at the aliasing rate F_{AR}, which is determined or selected as described above. Generally, when down- converting an FM signal to a non-FM signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of a frequency within the FM signal.

In this example, where an FSK signal is being down-converted to an ASK signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic, of either the first frequency 6206 or the second frequency 6208. In this example, where the first frequency 6206 is 899 MHZ and the second frequency 6208 is 901 MHZ, the aliasing rate can be substantially equal to a harmonic or sub-harmonic of 899 MHZ or 901 MHZ.

Step 4624 includes transferring energy from the FM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert it to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$. In FIG. 62D, an affected FSK signal 6218 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the FSK signal 816 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected FSK signal 6218 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 62B and 62C.

FIG. 62E illustrates an ASK signal 6212, which is generated by the modulation conversion process. ASK signal 6212 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The ASK signal 6212 includes portions 6210A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 6209 in FIG. 62C. The ASK signal 6212 also includes portions 6210B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 6209. Portions 6210A represent energy transferred from the FSK

816 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. Portions 6210A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 6207. Portions 6210B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 6210B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 6207.

In FIG. 62F, an ASK signal 6214 represents a filtered version of the ASK signal 6212, on a compressed time scale. The present invention can output the unfiltered demodulated baseband signal 6212, the filtered demodulated baseband signal 6214, a partially filtered demodulated baseband signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention. The ASK signals 6212 and 6214 can be demodulated with a conventional demodulation technique(s).

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and/or polarity, as desired.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate modulation conversion III accordance with the invention. For example, the ASK signals 6212 in FIG. 62E and 6214 in FIG. 62F illustrate that the FSK signal 816 was successfully down-converted to an ASK signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

3.2.2.2 Structural Description

The operation of the energy transfer system 1602 is now described for down-converting the FSK signal 816 to an ASK signal, with reference to the flowchart 4619 and to the timing diagrams of FIGS. 62A-F. In step 4620, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the FSK signal 816 (FIG. 62A). In step 4622, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 6207 (FIG. 62C). In step 4624, the

energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the FSK signal 818 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6207 to down-convert the FSK signal 816 to the ASK signal 6212 in FIG. 62E or the ASK signal 6214 in FIG. 62F.

3.2.3 Other Example Embodiments

The embodiments described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These embodiments are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate embodiments, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate embodiments fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

Example implementations of the energy transfer module 6302 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

3.3 Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the method(s), structure(s), and/or embodiments described above are presented in Sections 4 and 5 below. These implementations are presented for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described therein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

4. Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the method(s), structure(s), and/or embodiments described above are presented in this section (and its subsections). These implementations are presented herein for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described herein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

FIG. 63 illustrates an energy transfer system 6302, which is an exemplary embodiment of the generic aliasing system 1302 in FIG. 13. The energy transfer system 6302 includes an energy transfer module 6304, which receives the EM signal 1304 and an energy transfer signal 6306. The energy transfer signal 6306 includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses repeat at an aliasing rate F_{AR}.

The energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the EM signal 1304 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6306, as described in the sections above with respect to the flowcharts 4601 in FIG. 46A, 4607 in FIG. 46B, 4613 in FIG. 46C and 4619 in FIG. 46D. The energy transfer module 6304 outputs a down-converted signal 1308B, which includes non-negligible amounts of energy transferred from the EM signal 1304.

FIG. 64A illustrates an exemplary gated transfer system 6402, which is an example of the energy transfer system 6302. The gated transfer system 6402 includes a gated transfer module 6404, which is described below.

FIG. 64B illustrates an exemplary inverted gated transfer system

6406, which is an alternative example of the energy transfer system 6302. The inverted gated transfer system 6406 includes an inverted gated transfer module 6408, which is described below.

4.1 The Energy Transfer System as a Gated Transfer System

FIG. 64A illustrates the exemplary gated transfer system 6402, which is an exemplary implementation of the energy transfer system 6302. The gated transfer system 6402 includes the gated transfer module 6404, which receives the EM signal 1304 and the energy transfer signal 6306. The energy transfer signal 6306 includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses repeat at an aliasing rate F_{AR}.

The gated transfer module 6404 transfers energy from the EM signal 1304 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6306, as described in the sections above with respect to the flowcharts 4601 in FIG. 46A, 4607 in FIG. 46B, 4613 in FIG. 46C and 4619 in FIG. 46D. The gated transfer module 6404 outputs the down-converted signal 1308B, which includes non-negligible amounts of energy transferred from the EM signal 1304.

4.1.1 The Gated Transfer System as a Switch Module and a Storage Module

FIG. 65 illustrates an example embodiment of the gated transfer module 6404 as including a switch module 6502 and a storage module 6506. Preferably, the switch module 6502 and the storage module 6506 transfer energy from the EM signal 1304 to down-convert it in any of the manners shown in the operational flowcharts 4601 in FIG. 46A, 4607 in FIG. 46B, 4613 in FIG. 46C and 4619 in FIG. 46D.

For example, operation of the switch module 6502 and the storage module 6506 is now described for down-converting the EM signal 1304 to an intermediate signal, with reference to the flowchart 4607 and the example timing diagrams in FIG. 83A-F.

In step 4608, the switch module 6502 receives the EM signal 1304 (FIG. 83A). In step 4610, the switch module 6502 receives the energy transfer signal 6306 (FIG. 83C). In step 4612, the switch module 6502 and the storage module 6506 cooperate to transfer energy from the EM signal 1304 and down-convert it to an intermediate signal. More specifically, during step 4612, the switch module 6502 closes during each energy transfer pulse to couple the EM signal 1304 to the storage module 6506. In an embodiment, the switch module 6502 closes on rising edges of the energy transfer pulses. In an alternative embodiment, the switch module 6502 closes on falling edges of the energy transfer pulses. While the EM signal 1304 is coupled to the storage module 6506, non-negligible amounts of energy are transferred from the EM signal 1304 to the storage module 6506. FIG. 83B illustrates the EM signal 1304 after the energy is transferred from it. FIG. 83D illustrates the transferred energy stored in the storage module 6506. The storage module 6506 outputs the transferred energy as the down-converted signal 1308B. The storage module 6506 can output the down-converted signal 1308B as an unfiltered signal such as signal shown in FIG. 83E, or as a filtered down-converted signal (FIG. 83F).

4.1.2 The Gated Transfer System as Break-Before Make Module

FIG. 67A illustrates an example embodiment of the gated transfer module 6404 as including a break-before-make module 6702 and a storage module 6716. Preferably, the break before make module 6702

and the storage module 6716 transfer energy from the EM signal 1304 to down-convert it in any of the manners shown in the operational flowcharts 4601 in FIG. 46A, 4607 in FIG. 46B, 4613 in FIG. 46C and 4619 in FIG. 46D.

In FIG. 67A, the break-before-make module 6702 includes a includes a normally open switch 6704 and a normally closed switch 6706. The normally open switch 6704 is controlled by the energy transfer signal 6306. The normally closed switch 6706 is controlled by an isolation signal 6712. In an embodiment, the isolation signal 6712 is generated from the energy transfer signal 6306. Alternatively, the energy transfer signal 6306 is generated from the isolation signal 6712. Alternatively, the isolation signal 6712 is generated independently from the energy transfer signal 6306. The break-before-make module 6702 substantially isolates an input 6708 from an output 6710.

FIG. 67B illustrates an example timing diagram of the energy transfer signal 6306, which controls the normally open switch 6704. FIG. 67C illustrates an example timing diagram of the isolation signal 6712, which controls the normally closed switch 6706. Operation of the break-before-make module 6702 is now described with reference to the example timing diagrams in FIGS. 67B and 67C.

Prior to time t0, the normally open switch 6704 and the normally closed switch 6706 are at their normal states.

At time t0, the isolation signal 6712 in FIG. 67C opens the normally closed switch 6706. Thus, just after time t0, the normally open switch 6704 and the normally closed switch 6706 are open and the input 6708 is isolated from the output 6710.

At time t1, the energy transfer signal 6306 in FIG. 67B closes the normally open switch 6704 for the non-negligible duration of a pulse. This couples the EM signal 1304 to the storage module 6716.

Prior to t2, the energy transfer signal 6306 in FIG. 67B opens the

normally open switch 6704. This de-couples the EM signal 1304 from the storage module 6716.

At time t2, the isolation signal 6712 in FIG. 67C closes the normally closed switch 6706. This couples the storage module 6716 to the output 6710.

The storage module 6716, is similar to the storage module 6506 FIG. 65. The break-before-make gated transfer system 6701 down-converts the EM signal 1304 in a manner similar to that described with reference to the gated transfer system 6501 in FIG. 65.

4.1.3 Example Implementations of the Switch Module

The switch module 6502 in FIG. 65 and the switch modules 6704 and 6706 in FIG. 67A can be any type of switch device that preferably has a relatively low impedance when closed and a relatively high impedance when open. The switch modules 6502, 6704 and 6706 can be implemented with normally open or normally closed switches. The switch modules need not be ideal switch modules.

FIG. 66B illustrates the switch modules 6502, 6704 and 6706 as a switch module 6610. Switch module 6610 can be implemented in either normally open or normally closed architecture. The switch module 6610 (e.g., switch modules 6502, 6704 and 6706) can be implemented with any type of suitable switch device, including, but not limited, to mechanical switch devices and electrical switch devices, optical switch devices, etc., and combinations thereof. Such devices include, but are not limited to transistor switch devices, diode switch devices, relay switch devices, optical switch devices, micro-machine switch devices, etc., or combinations thereof.

In an embodiment, the switch module 6610 can be implemented as a transistor, such as, for example, a field effect transistor (FET), a

bi-polar transistor, or any other suitable circuit switching device.

In FIG. 66A, the switch module 6610 is illustrated as a FET 6602. The FET 6602 can be any type of FET, including, but not limited to, a MOSFET, a JFET, a GaAsFET, etc .. The FET 6602 includes a gate 6604, a source 6606 and a drain 6608. The gate 6604 receives the energy transfer signal 6306 to control the switching action between the source 6606 and the drain 6608. In an embodiment, the source 6606 and the drain 6608 are interchangeable.

It should be understood that the illustration of the switch module 6610 as a FET 6602 in FIG. 66A is for example purposes only. Any device having switching capabilities could be used to implement the switch module 6610 (i.e., switch modules 6502, 6704 and 6706), as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art (s) based on the discussion contained herein.

In FIG. 66C, the switch module 6610 is illustrated as a diode switch 6612, which operates as a two lead device when the energy transfer signal 6306 is coupled to the output 6613.

In FIG. 66D, the switch module 6610 is illustrated as a diode switch 6614, which operates as a two lead device when the energy transfer signal 6306 is coupled to the output 6615.

4.1.4 Example Implementations of the Storage Module

The storage modules 6506 and 6716 store non-negligible amounts of energy from the EM signal 1304. In an exemplary embodiment, the storage modules 6506 and 6716 are implemented as a reactive storage module 6801 in FIG. 68A, although the invention is not limited to this embodiment. A reactive storage module is a storage module that employs one or more reactive electrical components to store energy transferred from the EM signal 1304. Reactive electrical components

include, but are not limited to, capacitors and inductors.

In an embodiment, the storage modules 6506 and 6716 include one or more capacitive storage elements, illustrated in FIG. 68B as a capacitive storage module 6802. In FIG. 68C, the capacitive storage module 6802 is illustrated as one or more capacitors illustrated generally as capacitor(s) 6804.

The goal of the storage modules 6506 and 6716 is to store non-negligible amounts of energy transferred from the EM signal 1304. Amplitude reproduction of the original, unaffected EM input signal is not necessarily important. In an energy transfer environment, the storage module preferably has the capacity to handle the power being transferred, and to allow it to accept a non-negligible amount of power during a non-negligible aperture period.

A terminal 6806 serves as an output of the capacitive storage module 6802. The capacitive storage module 6802 provides the stored energy at the terminal 6806. FIG. 68F illustrates the capacitive storage module 6802 as including a series capacitor 6812, which can be utilized in an inverted gated transfer system described below.

In an alternative embodiment, the storage modules 6506 and 6716 include one or more inductive storage elements, illustrated in FIG. 68D as an inductive storage module 6808.

In an alternative embodiment, the storage modules 6506 and 6716 include a combination of one or more capacitive storage elements and one or more inductive storage elements, illustrated in FIG. 68E as a capacitive/inductive storage module 6810.

FIG. 68G illustrates an integrated gated transfer system 6818 that can be implemented to down-convert the EM signal 1304 as illustrated in, and described with reference to, FIGS. 83A-F.

4.1.5 Optional Energy Transfer Signal Module

FIG. 69 illustrates an energy transfer system 6901, which is an example embodiment of the energy transfer system 6302. The energy transfer system 6901 includes an optional energy transfer signal module 6902, which can perform any of a variety of functions or combinations of functions including, but not limited to, generating the energy transfer signal 6306.

In an embodiment, the optional energy transfer signal module 6902 includes an aperture generator, an example of which is illustrated in FIG. 68J as an aperture generator 6820. The aperture generator 6820 generates non-negligible aperture pulses 6826 from an input signal 6824. The input signal 6824 can be any type of periodic signal, including, but not limited to, a sinusoid, a square wave, a saw-tooth wave, etc. Systems for generating the input signal 6824 are described below.

The width or aperture of the pulses 6826 is determined by delay through the branch 6822 of the aperture generator 6820. Generally, as the desired pulse width increases, the difficulty in meeting the requirements of the aperture generator 6820 decrease. hl other words, to generate non-negligible aperture pulses for a given EM input frequency, the components utilized in the example aperture generator 6820 do not require as fast reaction times as those that are required in an under-sampling system operating with the same EM input frequency.

The example logic and implementation shown in the aperture generator 6820 are provided for illustrative purposes only, and are not limiting. The actual logic employed can take many forms. The example aperture generator 6820 includes an optional inverter 6828, which is shown for polarity consistency with other examples provided herein.

An example implementation of the aperture generator 6820 is illustrated in FIG. 68K. Additional examples of aperture generation logic are provided in FIGS. 68B and 681. FIG. 68B illustrates a rising edge

pulse generator 6840, which generates pulses 6826 on rising edges of the input signal 6824. FIG. 681 illustrates a falling edge pulse generator 6850, which generates pulses 6826 on falling edges of the input signal 6824.

In an embodiment, the input signal 6824 is generated externally of the energy transfer signal module 6902, as illustrated in FIG. 69. Alternatively, the input signal 6924 is generated internally by the energy transfer signal module 6902. The input signal 6824 can be generated by an oscillator, as illustrated in FIG. 68L by an oscillator 6830. The oscillator 6830 can be internal to the energy transfer signal module 6902 or external to the energy transfer signal module 6902. The oscillator 6830 can be external to the energy transfer system 6901. The output of the oscillator 6830 may be any periodic waveform.

The type of down-conversion performed by the energy transfer system 6901 depends upon the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6306, which is determined by the frequency of the pulses 6826. The frequency of the pulses 6826 is determined by the frequency of the input signal 6824. For example, when the frequency of the input signal 6824 is substantially equal to a harmonic or a sub-harmonic of the EM signal 1304, the EM signal 1304 is directly down-converted to baseband (e.g. when the EM signal is an AM signal or a PM signal), or converted from FM to a non-FM signal. When the frequency of the input signal 6824 is substantially equal to a harmonic or a sub-harmonic of a difference frequency, the EM signal 1304 is down-converted to an intermediate signal.

The optional energy transfer signal module 6902 can be implemented in hardware, software, firmware, or any combination thereof.

4.2 The Energy Transfer System as an Inverted Gated

Transfer System

FIG. 64B illustrates an exemplary inverted gated transfer system 6406, which is an exemplary implementation of the energy transfer system 6302. The inverted gated transfer system 6406 includes an inverted gated transfer module 6408, which receives the EM signal 1304 and the energy transfer signal 6306. The energy transfer signal 6306 includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses repeat at an aliasing rate F_{AR}. The inverted gated transfer module 6408 transfers energy from the EM signal 1304 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6306, as described in the sections above with respect to the flowcharts 4601 in FIG. 46A, 4607 in FIG. 46B, 4613 in FIG. 46C and 4619 in FIG. 46D. The inverted gated transfer module 6408 outputs the down-converted signal 1308B, which includes non-negligible amounts of energy transferred from the EM signal 1304.

4.2.1 The Inverted Gated Transfer System as a Switch Module and a Storage Module

FIG. 74 illustrates an example embodiment of the inverted gated transfer module 6408 as including a switch module 7404 and a storage module 7406. Preferably, the switch module 7404 and the storage module 7406 transfer energy from the EM signal 1304 to down-convert it in any of the manners shown in the operational flowcharts 4601 in FIG. 46A, 4607 in FIG. 46B, 4613 in FIG. 46C and 4619 in FIG. 46D.

The switch module 7404 can be implemented as described above with reference to FIGS. 66A-D. The storage module 7406 can be implemented as described above with reference to FIGS. 68A-F.

In the illustrated embodiment, the storage module 7206 includes

one or more capacitors 7408. The capacitor(s) 7408 are selected to pass higher frequency components of the EM signal 1304 through to a terminal 7410, regardless of the state of the switch module 7404. The capacitor 7408 stores non-negligible amounts of energy from the EM signal 1304. Thereafter, the signal at the terminal 7410 is off-set by an amount related to the energy stored in the capacitor 7408.

Operation of the inverted gated transfer system 7401 is illustrated in FIGS. 75A-F. FIG. 75A illustrates the EM signal 1304. FIG. 75B illustrates the EM signal 1304 after transferring energy from it. FIG. 75C illustrates the energy transfer signal 6306, which includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible apertures.

FIG. 75D illustrates an example down-converted signal 1308B. FIG. 75E illustrates the down-converted signal 1308B on a compressed time scale. Since the storage module 7406 is a series element, the higher frequencies (e.g., RF) of the EM signal 1304 can be seen on the down-converted signal. This can be filtered as illustrated in FIG. 75F.

The inverted gated transfer system 7401 can be used to down-convert any type of EM signal, including modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signals.

4.3 Rail to Rail Operation for Improved Dynamic Range

4.3.1 Introduction

FIG. 110A illustrates aliasing module 11000 that down-converts EM signal 11002 to down-converted signal 11012 using aliasing signal 11014 (sometimes called an energy transfer signal). Aliasing module 11000 is an example of energy transfer module 6304 in FIG. 63. Aliasing module 11000 includes UFT module 11004 and storage module 11008. As shown in FIG. 110A, UFT module 11004 is implemented as a n-channel FET 11006, and storage module 11008 is implemented as a

capacitor 11010, although the invention is not limited to this embodiment.

FET 11006 receives the EM signal 11002 and aliasing signal 11014. In one embodiment, aliasing signal 11014 includes a train of pulses having non-negligible apertures that repeat at an aliasing rate. The aliasing rate may be harmonic or sub-harmonic of the EM signal 11002. FET 11006 samples EM signal 11002 at the aliasing rate of aliasing signal 11014 to generate down-converted signal 11012. In one embodiment, aliasing signal 11014 controls the gate of FET 11006 so that FET 11006 conducts (or turns on) when the FET gate-to-source voltage (V_{GS}) exceeds a threshold voltage (V_T). When the FET 11006 conducts, a channel is created from source to drain of FET 11006 so that charge is transferred from the EM signal 11002 to the capacitor 11010. More specifically, the FET 11006 conductance (1/R) vs V_{GS} is a continuous function that reaches an acceptable level at V_T, as illustrated in FIG. 110B. The charge stored by capacitor 11010 during successive samples forms down-converted signal 11012.

As stated above, n-channel FET 11006 conducts when V_{GS} exceeds the threshold voltage V_T. As shown in FIG. 110A, the gate voltage of FET 11006 is determined by aliasing signal 11014, and the source voltage is determined by the input EM signal 11002. Aliasing signal 11014 is preferably a plurality of pulses whose amplitude is predictable and set by a system designer. However, the EM signal 11002 is typically received over a communications medium by a coupling device (such as antenna). Therefore, the amplitude of EM signal 11102 may be variable and dependent on a number of factors including the strength of the transmitted signal, and the attenuation of the communications medium. Thus, the source voltage on FET 11006 is not entirely predictable and will affect V_{GS} and the conductance of FET 11006, accordingly.

For example, FIG. 111A illustrates EM signal 11102, which is an example of EM signal 11002 that appears on the source of FET 11006. EM signal 11102 has a section 11104 with a relatively high amplitude as shown. FIG. 111B illustrates the aliasing signal 11106 as an example of aliasing signal 11014 that controls the gate of FET 11006. FIG. 111C illustrates V_{GS} 11108, which is the difference between the gate and source voltages shown in FIGS. 111B and 111A, respectively. FET 11006 has an inherent threshold voltage V_T 11112 shown in FIG. 111 C, above which FET 11006 conducts. It is preferred that $V_{GS} > V_T$ during each pulse of aliasing signal 11106, so that FET 11006 conducts and charge is transferred from the EM signal 11102 to the capacitor 11010 during each pulse of aliasing signal 11106. As shown in FIG. 111C, the high amplitude section 11104 of EM signal 11102 causes a V_{GS} pulse 11110 that does exceed the V_T 11112, and therefore FET 11006 will not fully conduct as is desired. Therefore, the resulting sample of EM signal 11102 may be degraded, which potentially negatively affects the down-converted signal 11012.

As stated earlier, the conductance of FET 11006 vs V_{GS} is mathematically continuous and is not a hard cutoff. In other words, FET 11006 will marginally conduct when controlled by pulse 11110, even though pulse 11110 is below V_T 11112. However, the insertion loss of FET 11006 will be increased when compared with a V_{GS} pulse 11111, which is greater than V_T 11112. The performance reduction caused by a large amplitude input signal is often referred to as clipping or compression. Clipping causes distortion in the down-converted signal 11012, which adversely affects the faithful down conversion of input EM signal 11102. Dynamic range is a figure of merit associated with the range of input signals that can be faithfully down-converted without introducing distortion in the down-converted signal. The higher the dynamic range of a down-conversion circuit, the larger the input signals

that can down-converted without introducing distortion in the down-converted signal.

4.3.2 Complementary UFT Structure for Improved Dynamic Range

FIG. 112 illustrates aliasing module 11200, according to an embodiment of the invention, that down-converts EM signal 11208 to generate down-converted signal 11214 using aliasing signal 11220. Aliasing module 11200 is able to down-convert input signals over a larger amplitude range as compared to aliasing module 11000, and therefore aliasing module 11200 has an improved dynamic range when compared with aliasing module 11000. The dynamic range improvement occurs because aliasing module 11200 includes two UFT modules that are implemented with complementary FET devices. In other words, one FET is n-channel, and the other FET is p-channel, so that at least one FET is always conducting during an aliasing signal pulse, assuming the input signal does not exceed the power supply constraints. Aliasing module 11200 includes: delay 11202; UFT modules 11206, 11216; nodes 11210, 11212; and inverter 11222. Inverter 11222 is tied to voltage supplies V_+ 11232 and V_- 11234. UFT module 11206 comprises n-channel FET 11204, and UFT module 11216 comprises p-channel FET 11218.

As stated, aliasing module 11200 operates two complementary FETs to extend the dynamic range and reduce any distortion effects. This requires that two complementary aliasing signals 11224, 11226 be generated from aliasing signal 11220 to control the sampling by FETs 11218, 11204, respectively. To do so, inverter 11222 receives and inverts aliasing signal 11220 to generate aliasing signal 11224 that controls p-channel FET 11218. Delay 11202 delays aliasing signal

11220 to generate aliasing signal 11226, where the amount of time delay is approximately equivalent to that associated with inverter 11222. As such, aliasing signals 11224 and 11226 are approximately complementary in amplitude.

Node 11210 receives EM signal 11208, and couples EM signals 11227, 11228 to the sources of n-channel FET 11204 and p-channel FET 11218, respectively, where EM signals 11227, 11228 are substantially replicas of EM signal 11208. N-channel FET 11204 samples EM signal 11227 as controlled by aliasing signal 11226, and produces samples 11236 at the drain of FET 11204. Likewise, p-channel FET 11218 samples EM signal 11228 as controlled by aliasing signal 11224, and produces samples 11238 at the drain of PET 11218. Node 11212 combines the resulting charge samples into charge samples 11240, which are stored by capacitor 11230. The charge stored by capacitor 11230 during successive samples forms down-converted signal 11214. Aliasing module 11200 offers improved dynamic range over aliasing module 11000 because n-channel FET 11204 and p-channel FET 11214 are complementary devices. Therefore, if one device is cutoff because of a large input EM signal 11208, the other device will conduct and sample the input signal, as long as the input signal is between the power supply voltages V_+ 11232 and V_- 11234. This is often referred to as rail-to-rail operation as will be understood by those skilled in the arts.

For example, FIG. 113A illustrates EM signal 11302 which is an example of EM signals 11227, 11228 that are coupled to the sources of n-channel FET 11204 and p-channel FET 11218, respectively. As shown, EM signal 11302 has a section 11304 with a relatively high amplitude including pulses 11303, 11305. FIG. 113B illustrates the aliasing signal 11306 as an example of aliasing signal 11226 that controls the gate of n-channel FET 11204. Likewise for the p-channel FET, FIG. 113D illustrates the aliasing signal 11314 as an example of

aliasing signal 11224 that controls the gate of p-channel FET 11218. Aliasing signal 11314 is the amplitude complement of aliasing signal 11306.

FIG. 113C illustrates V_{GS} 11308, which is the difference between the gate and source voltages on n-channel FET 11204 that are depicted in FIGS. 113B and 113A, respectively. FIG. 113C also illustrates the inherent threshold voltage V_T 11309 for FET 11204, above which FET 11204 conducts. Likewise for the p-channel FET, FIG. 113E illustrates V_{GS} 11316, which is the difference between the gate and source voltages for p-channel FET 11218 that are depicted in FIGS. 113D and 113A, respectively. FIG. 113E also illustrates the inherent threshold voltage V_T 11317 for FET 11218, below which FET 11218 conducts.

As stated, n-channel FET 11204 conducts when V_{GS} 11308 exceeds V_T 11309, and p-channel FET 11218 conducts when V_{GS} 11316 drops below V_T 11317. As illustrated by FIG. 113C, n-channel FET 11204 conducts over the range of EM signal 11302 depicted in FIG. 113A, except for the EM signal pulse 11305 that results in a corresponding V_{GS} pulse 11310 (FIG. 113C) that does not exceed V_T 11309. However, p-channel FET 11218 does conduct because the same EM signal pulse 11305 causes a V_{GS} pulse 11320 (FIG. 113E) that drops well below that of V_T 11317 for the p-channel FET. Therefore, the sample of the EM signal 11302 is properly taken by p-channel FET 11218, and no distortion is introduced in down-converted signal 11214. Similarly, EM signal pulse 11303 results in V_{GS} pulse 11322 (FIG. 113E) that is inadequate for the p-channel FET 11218 to fully conduct. However, n-channel FET 11204 does fully conduct because the same EM signal pulse 11303 results in a V_{GS} 11311 (FIG. 113C) that greatly exceeds V_T 11309.

As illustrated above, aliasing module 11200 offers an

improvement in dynamic range over aliasing module 11000 because of the complimentary FET structure. Any input signal that is within the power supply voltages V_+ 11232 and V_- 11234 will cause either FET 11204 or FET 11218 to conduct, or cause both FETs to conduct, as is demonstrated by FIGS. 113A-113E. This occurs because any input signal that produces a V_{GS} that cuts-off the n-channe1 FET 11204 will push the p-channel FET 11218 into conduction. Likewise, any input signal that cuts-off the p-channe1 FET 11218 will push the n-channe1 FET 11204 into conduction, and therefore prevent any distortion of the down-converted output signal.

4.3.3 Biased Configurations

FIG. 114 illustrates aliasing module 11400, which is an alternate embodiment of aliasing module 11200. Aliasing module 11400 includes positive voltage supply (V_+) 11402, resistors 11404, 11406, and the elements in aliasing module 11200. V_+ 11402 and resistors 11404, 11406 produce a positive DC voltage at node 11405. This allows node 11405 to drive a coupled circuit that requires a positive voltage supply, and enables unipolar supply operation of aliasing module 11400. The positive supply voltage also has the effect of raising the DC level of the input EM signal 11208. As such, any input signal that is within the power supply voltages V_+ 11402 and ground will cause either FET 11204 or FET 11218 to conduct, or cause both FETs to conduct, as will be understood by those skilled in the arts based on the discussion herein.

FIG. 115 illustrates aliasing module 11500, which is an alternate biased configuration of aliasing module 11200. Aliasing module 11500 includes positive voltage supply 11502, negative voltage supply 11508, resistors 11504, 11506, and the elements in aliasing module 11200. The use of both a positive and negative voltage supply allows for node 11505

to be biased anywhere between V_+ 11502 and V_- 11508. This allows node 11505 to drive a coupled circuit that requires either a positive or negative supply voltage. Furthermore, any input signal that is within the power supply voltages V_+ 11502 and V_- 11508 will cause either FET 11204 or FET 11218 to conduct, or cause both FETs to conduct, as will be understood by those skilled in the arts based on the discussion herein.

4.3.4 Simulation Examples

As stated, an aliasing module with a complementary FET structure offers improved dynamic range when compared with a single (or unipolar) FET configuration. This is further illustrated by comparing the signal waveforms associated aliasing module 11602 (of FIG. 116) which has a complementary FET structure, with that of aliasing module 11702 (of FIG.117) which has a single (or unipolar) FET structure.

Aliasing module 11602 (FIG. 116) down-converts EM signal 11608 using aliasing signal 11612 to generate down-converted signal 11610. Aliasing module 11602 has a complementary FET structure and includes n-channel FET 11604, p-channel FET 11606, inverter 11614, and aliasing signal generator 11608. Aliasing module 11602 is biased by supply circuit 11616 as is shown. Aliasing module 11702 (FIG. 117) down-converts EM signal 11704 using aliasing signal 11708 to generate down-converted signal 11706. Aliasing module 11702 is a single FET structure comprising n-channel FET 11712 and aliasing signal generator 11714, and is biased using voltage supply circuit 11710.

FIGS. 118-120 are signal waveforms that correspond to aliasing module 11602, and FIGS. 121-123 are signal waveforms that correspond to aliasing module 11702. FIGS. 118, 121 are down-converted signals 11610, 11706, respectively. FIGS. 119, 122 are the sampled EM signal 11608, 11704, respectively. FIGS. 120, 123 are the aliasing signals

11612, 11708, respectively. Aliasing signal 11612 is identical to aliasing signal 11708 in order that a proper comparison between modules 11602 and 11702 can be made.

EM signals 11608, 11704 are relatively large input signals that approach the power supply voltages of ± 1.65 volts, as is shown in FIGS. 119, 122, respectively. In FIG. 119, sections 11902 and 11904 of signal 11608 depict energy transfer from EM signal 11608 to down-converted signal 11610 during by aliasing module 11602. More specifically, section 11902 depicts energy transfer near the -1.65v supply, and section 11904 depicts energy transfer near the +1.65v supply. The symmetrical quality of the energy transfer near the voltage supply rails indicates that at least one of complementary FETs 11604, 11606 are appropriately sampling the EM signal during each of the aliasing pulses 11612. This results in a down-converted signal 11610 that has minimal high frequency noise, and is centered between -1.0v and 1.0v (i.e. has negligible DC voltage component).

Similarly in FIG. 122, sections 12202 and 12204 illustrate the energy transfer from EM signal 11704 to down-converted signal 11706 by aliasing module 11702 (single FET configuration). More specifically, section 12202 depicts energy transfer near the -1.65v supply, and section 12204 depicts energy transfer near the +1.65v supply. By comparing sections 12202, 12204 with sections 11902, 11904 of FIG. 119, it is clear that the energy transfer in sections 12202, 12204 is not as symmetrical near the power supply rails as that of sections 11902, 11904. This is evidence that the EM signal 11704 is partially pinching off single FET 11712 over part of the signal 11704 trace. This results in a down-converted signal 11706 that has more high frequency noise when compared to down-converted signal 11610, and has a substantial negative DC voltage component.

In summary, down-converted signal 11706 reflects distortion

introduced by a relatively large EM signal that is pinching-off the single FET 11712 in aliasing module 11702. Down-converted signal 11610 that is produced by aliasing module 11602 is relatively distortion free. This occurs because the complementary FET configuration in aliasing module 11602 is able to handle input signals with large amplitudes without introducing distortion in the down-converted signal 11610. Therefore, the complementary FET configuration in the aliasing module 11602 offers improved dynamic range when compared with the single FET configuration of the aliasing module 11702.

4.4 Optimized Switch Structures

4.4.1 Splitter in CMOS

FIG. 124A illustrates an embodiment of a splitter circuit 12400 implemented in CMOS. This embodiment is provided for illustrative purposes, and is not limiting. In an embodiment, splitter circuit 12400 is used to split a local oscillator (LO) signal into two oscillating signals that are approximately 90° out of phase. The first oscillating signal is called the I-channel oscillating signal. The second oscillating signal is called the Q-channel oscillating signal. The Q-channel oscillating signal lags the phase of the I-channel oscillating signal by approximately 90°. Splitter circuit 12400 includes a first I-channel inverter 12402, a second I-channel inverter 12404, a third I-channel inverter 12406, a first Q-channel inverter 12408, a second Q-channel inverter 12410, an I-channel flip-flop 12412, and a Q-channel flip-flop 12414.

FIGS. 124F-J are example waveforms used to illustrate signal relationships of splitter circuit 12400. The waveforms shown in FIGS. 124F-J reflect ideal delay times through splitter circuit 12400 components. LO signal 12416 is shown in FIG. 124F. First, second, and

third I-channel inverters 12402, 12404, and 12406 invert LO signal 12416 three times, outputting inverted LO signal 12418, as shown in FIG. l24G. First and second Q-channel inverters 12408 and 12410 invert LO signal 12416 twice, outputting non-inverted LO signal 12420, as shown in FIG. l24H. The delay through first, second, and third I-channel inverters 12402, 12404, and 12406 is substantially equal to that through first and second Q-channel inverters 12408 and 12410, so that inverted LO signal 12418 and non-inverted LO signal 12420 are approximately 180° out of phase. The operating characteristics of the inverters may be tailored to achieve the proper delay amounts, as would be understood by persons skilled in the relevant art(s).

I-channel flip-flop 12412 inputs inverted LO signal 12418. Q-channel flip-flop 12414 inputs non-inverted LO signal 12420. In the current embodiment, I-channel flip-flop 12412 and Q-channel flip-flop 12414 are edge-triggered flip-flops. When either flip-flop receives a rising edge on its input, the flip-flop output changes state. Hence, I-channel flip-flop 12412 and Q-channel flip-flop 12414 each output signals that are approximately half of the input signal frequency. Additionally, as would be recognized by persons skilled in the relevant art(s), because the inputs to I-channel flip-flop 12412 and Q-channel flip-flop 12414 are approximately 180° out of phase, their resulting outputs are signals that are approximately 90° out of phase. I-channel flip-flop 12412 outputs I-channel oscillating signal 12422, as shown in FIG. 1241. Q-channel flip-flop 12414 outputs Q-channel oscillating signal 12424, as shown in FIG. 124J. Q-channel oscillating signal 12424 lags the phase of I-channel oscillating signal 12422 by 90°, also as shown in a comparison of FIGS. 1241 and 124J.

FIG. 124B illustrates a more detailed circuit embodiment of the splitter circuit 12400 of FIG. 124. The circuit blocks of FIG. 124B that are similar to those of FIG. 124A are indicated by corresponding

reference numbers. FIGS. 124C-D show example output waveforms relating to the splitter circuit 12400 of FIG. 124B. FIG. 124C shows I-channel oscillating signal 12422. FIG. 124D shows Q-channel oscillating signal 12424. As is indicated by a comparison of FIGS. 124C and 124D, the waveform of Q-channel oscillating signal 12424 of FIG. l24D lags the waveform of I-channel oscillating signal 12422 of FIG. l24C by approximately 90°.

It should be understood that the illustration of the splitter circuit 12400 in FIGS. 124A and l24B is for example purposes only. Splitter circuit 12400 may be comprised of an assortment of logic and semiconductor devices of a variety of types, as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

4.4.2 I/Q Circuit

FIG. 124E illustrates an example embodiment of a complete I/Q circuit 12426 in CMOS. I/Q circuit 12426 includes a splitter circuit 12400 as described in detail above. Further description regarding I/Q circuit implementations are provided herein, including the applications referenced above.

4.5 Example I and Q Implementations

4.5.1 Switches of Different Sizes

In an embodiment, the switch modules discussed herein can be implemented as a series of switches operating in parallel as a single switch. The series of switches can be transistors, such as, for example, field effect transistors (FET), bi-polar transistors, or any other suitable

circuit switching devices. The series of switches can be comprised of one type of switching device, or a combination of different switching devices.

For example, FIG. 125 illustrates a switch module 12500. In FIG. 125, the switch module is illustrated as a series of FETs 12502a-n. The FETs l2502a-n can be any type of FET, including, but not limited to, a MOSFET, a JFET, a GaAsFET, etc. Each of FETs 12502a-n includes a gate 12504a-n, a source 12506a-n, and a drain 12508a-n, similarly to that of FET 2802 of FIG. 28A. The series of FETs 12502a-n operate in parallel. Gates 12504a-n are coupled together, sources 12506a-n are coupled together, and drains 12508a-n are coupled together. Each of gates 12504a-n receives the control signal 1604, 8210 to control the switching action between corresponding sources 12506a-n and drains 12508a-n. Generally, the corresponding sources 12506a-n and drains 12508a-n of each of FETs 12502a-n are interchangeable. There is no numerical limit to the number of FETs. Any limitation would depend on the particular application, and the "a-n" designation is not meant to suggest a limit in any way.

In an embodiment, FETs 12502a-n have similar characteristics. In another embodiment, one or more of FETs l2502a-n have different characteristics than the other FETs. For example, FETs 12502a-n may be of different sizes. In CMOS, generally, the larger size a switch is (meaning the larger the area under the gate between the source and drain regions), the longer it takes for the switch to turn on. The longer turn on time is due in part to a higher gate to channel capacitance that exists in larger switches. Smaller CMOS switches turn on in less time, but have a higher channel resistance. Larger CMOS switches have lower channel resistance relative to smaller CMOS switches. Different turn on characteristics for different size switches provides flexibility in designing an overall switch module structure. By combining smaller

switches with larger switches, the channel conductance of the overall switch structure can be tailored to satisfy given requirements.

In an embodiment, FETs l2502a-n are CMOS switches of different relative sizes. For example, FET 12502a may be a switch with a smaller size relative to FETs 12502b-n. FET 12502b may be a switch with a larger size relative to FET 12502a, but smaller size relative to FETs 12502c-n. The sizes of FETs l2502c-n also may be varied relative to each other. For instance, progressively larger switch sizes may be used. By varying the sizes of FETs 12502a-n relative to each other, the turn on characteristic curve of the switch module can be correspondingly varied. For instance, the turn on characteristic of the switch module can be tailored such that it more closely approaches that of an ideal switch. Alternately, the switch module could be tailored to produce a shaped conductive curve.

By configuring FETs l2502a-n such that one or more of them are of a relatively smaller size, their faster turn on characteristic can improve the overall switch module turn on characteristic curve. Because smaller switches have a lower gate to channel capacitance, they can turn on more rapidly than larger switches.

By configuring FETs l2502a-n such that one or more of them are of a relatively larger size, their lower channel resistance also can improve the overall switch module turn on characteristics. Because larger switches have a lower channel resistance, they can provide the overall switch structure with a lower channel resistance, even when combined with smaller switches. This improves the overall switch structure's ability to drive a wider range of loads. Accordingly, the ability to tailor switch sizes relative to each other in the overall switch structure allows for overall switch structure operation to more nearly approach ideal, or to achieve application specific requirements, or to balance trade-offs to achieve specific goals, as will be understood by

persons skilled in the relevant arts(s) from the teachings herein.

It should be understood that the illustration of the switch module as a series of FETs l2502a-n in FIG. 125 is for example purposes only. Any device having switching capabilities could be used to implement the switch module (e.g., switch modules 2802, 2702, 2404 and 2406), as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

4.5.2 Reducing Overall Switch Area

Circuit performance also can be improved by reducing overall switch area. As discussed above, smaller switches (i.e., smaller area under the gate between the source and drain regions) have a lower gate to channel capacitance relative to larger switches. The lower gate to channel capacitance allows for lower circuit sensitivity to noise spikes. FIG. 126A illustrates an embodiment of a switch module, with a large overall switch area. The switch module of FIG. 126A includes twenty FETs 12602-12640. As shown, FETs 12602-12640 are the same size ("Wd" and "lng" parameters are equal). Input source 12646 produces the input EM signal. Pulse generator 12648 produces the energy transfer signal for FETs 12602-12640. Capacitor C1 is the storage element for the input signal being sampled by FETs 12602-12640. FIGS. 126B-126Q illustrate example waveforms related to the switch module of FIG. 126A. FIG. 126B shows a received 1.01 GHz EM signal to be sampled and down-converted to a 10 MHZ intermediate frequency signal. FIG. 126C shows an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate of 200 MHZ, which is applied to the gate of each of the twenty FETs 12602-12640. The energy transfer signal includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses repeat at the aliasing rate.

FIG. 126D illustrates the affected received EM signal, showing effects of transferring energy at the aliasing rate, at point 12642 of FIG. 126A. FIG. 126E illustrates a down-converted signal at point 12644 of FIG. 126A, which is generated by the down-conversion process.

FIG. 126F illustrates the frequency spectrum of the received 1.01 GHz EM signal. FIG. 126G illustrates the frequency spectrum of the received energy transfer signal. FIG. 126H illustrates the frequency spectrum of the affected received EM signal at point 12642 of FIG. 126A. FIG. 1261 illustrates the frequency spectrum of the down-converted signal at point 12644 of FIG. 126A.

FIGS. 126J-126M respectively further illustrate the frequency spectrums of the received 1.01 GHz EM signal, the received energy transfer signal, the affected received EM signal at point 12642 of FIG. 126A, and the down-converted signal at point 12644 of FIG. 126A, focusing on a narrower frequency range centered on 1.00 GHz. As shown in FIG. 126L, a noise spike exists at approximately 1.0 GHz on the affected received EM signal at point 12642 of FIG. 126A. This noise spike may be radiated by the circuit, causing interference at 1.0 GHz to nearby receivers.

FIGS. 126N-126Q respectively illustrate the frequency spectrums of the received 1.01 GHz EM signal, the received energy transfer signal, the affected received EM signal at point 12642 of FIG. l26A, and the down-converted signal at point 12644 of FIG. 126A, focusing on a narrow frequency range centered near 10.0 MHZ. In particular, FIG. 126Q shows that an approximately 5 mV signal was down-converted at approximately 10 MHZ.

FIG 127A illustrates an alternative embodiment of the switch module, this time with fourteen FETs 12702-12728 shown, rather than twenty FETs 12602-12640 as shown in FIG. 126A. Additionally, the FETs are of various sizes (some "Wd" and "lng" parameters are different between FETs).

FIGS. 127B-127Q, which are example waveforms related to the switch module of FIG. 127A, correspond to the similarly designated figures of FIGS. 126B-126Q. As FIG. 127L shows, a lower level noise spike exists at 1.0 GHz than at the same frequency of FIG. 126L. This correlates to lower levels of circuit radiation. Additionally, as FIG. 127Q shows, the lower level noise spike at 1.0 GHz was achieved with no loss in conversion efficiency. This is represented in FIG. 127Q by the approximately 5 mV signal down-converted at approximately 10 MHZ.

This voltage is substantially equal to the level down-converted by the circuit of FTG. 126A. In effect, by decreasing the number of switches, which decreases overall switch area, and by reducing switch area on a switch-by-switch basis, circuit parasitic capacitance can be reduced, as would be understood by persons skilled in the relevant art(s) from the teachings herein. In particular this may reduce overall gate to channel capacitance, leading to lower amplitude noise spikes and reduced unwanted circuit radiation.

It should be understood that the illustration of the switches above as FETs in FIGs. 126A-126Q and 127 A-127Q is for example purposes only. Any device having switching capabilities could be used to implement the switch module, as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

4.5.3 Charge Injection Cancellation

In embodiments wherein the switch modules discussed herein are comprised of a series of switches in parallel, in some instances it may be desirable to minimize the effects of charge injection. Minimizing charge injection is generally desirable in order to reduce the unwanted circuit radiation resulting therefrom. In an embodiment, unwanted charge injection effects can be reduced through the use of complementary n-channel MOSFETs and p-channel MOSFETs. N-channel MOSFETs and p-channel MOSFETs both suffer from charge injection. However, because signals of opposite polarity are applied to their respective gates to turn the switches on and off, the resulting charge injection is of opposite polarity. Resultingly, n-channel MOSFETs and p-channel MOSFETs may be paired to cancel their corresponding charge injection. Hence, in an embodiment, the switch module may be comprised of

n-channel MOSFETs and p-channel MOSFETS, wherein the members of each are sized to minimize the undesired effects of charge injection.

FIG 129A illustrates an alternative embodiment of the switch module, this time with fourteen n-channel FETs 12902-12928 and twelve p-channel FETs 12930-12952 shown, rather than twenty FETs 12602-12640 as shown in FIG. 126A. The n-channel and p-channel FETs are arranged in a complementary configuration. Additionally, the FETs are of various sizes (some "Wd" and "lng" parameters are different between FETs).

FIGS. 129B-129Q, which are example waveforms related to the switch module of FIG. 129A, correspond to the similarly designated figures of FIGS. 126B-126Q. As FIG. 129L shows, a lower level noise spike exists at 1.0 GHz than at the same frequency of FIG. 126L. This correlates to lower levels of circuit radiation. Additionally, as FIG. 129Q shows, the lower level noise spike at 1.0 GHz was achieved with no loss in conversion efficiency. This is represented in FIG. 129Q by the approximately 5 mV signal down-converted at approximately 10 MHZ. This voltage is substantially equal to the level down-converted by the circuit of FIG. 126A. In effect, by arranging the switches in a complementary configuration, which assists in reducing charge injection, and by tailoring switch area on a switch-by-switch basis, the effects of charge injection can be reduced, as would be understood by persons skilled in the relevant art(s) from the teachings herein. In particular this leads to lower amplitude noise spikes and reduced unwanted circuit radiation.

It should be understood that the use of FETs in FIGSs. 129A-129Q in the above description is for example purposes only. From the teachings herein, it would be apparent to persons of skill in the relevant art(s) to manage charge injection in various transistor

technologies using transistor pairs.

4.5.4 Overlapped Capacitance

The processes involved in fabricating semiconductor circuits, such as MOSFETs, have limitations. In some instances, these process limitations may lead to circuits that do not function as ideally as desired. For instance, a non-ideally fabricated MOSFET may suffer from parasitic capacitances, which in some cases may cause the surrounding circuit to radiate noise. By fabricating circuits with structure layouts as close to ideal as possible, problems of non-ideal circuit operation can be minimized.

FIG. 128A illustrates a cross-section of an example n-channel enhancement-mode MOSFET 12800, with ideally shaped n+ regions. MOSFET 12800 includes a gate 12802, a channel region 12804, a source contact 12806, a source region 12808, a drain contact 12810, a drain region 12812, and an insulator 12814. Source region 12808 and drain region 12812 are separated by p-type material of channel region 12804. Source region 12808 and drain region 12812 are shown to be n+ material. The n+ material is typically implanted in the p-type material of channel region 12804 by an ion implantation/diffusion process. Ion implantation/diffusion processes are well known by persons skilled in the relevant art(s). Insulator 12814 insulates gate 12802 which bridges over the p-type material. Insulator 12814 generally comprises a metal-oxide insulator. The channel current between source region 12808 and drain region 12812 for MOSFET 12800 is controlled by a voltage at gate 12802.

Operation of MOSFET 12800 shall now be described. When a positive voltage is applied to gate 12802, electrons in the p-type material of channel region 12804 are attracted to the surface below insulator

12814, forming a connecting near-surface region of n-type material between the source and the drain, called a channel. The larger or more positive the voltage between the gate contact 12806 and source region 12808, the lower the resistance across the region between.

In FIG. 128A, source region 12808 and drain region 12812 are illustrated as having n+ regions that were formed into idealized rectangular regions by the ion implantation process. FIG. 128B illustrates a cross-section of an example n-channel enhancement-mode MOSFET 12816 with non-ideally shaped n+ regions. Source region 12820 and drain region 12822 are illustrated as being formed into irregularly shaped regions by the ion implantation process. Due to uncertainties in the ion implantation/diffusion process, in practical applications, source region 12820 and drain region 12822 do not form rectangular regions as shown in FIG. 128A. FIG. 128B shows source region 12820 and drain region 12822 forming exemplary irregular regions. Due to these process uncertainties, the n+ regions of source region 12820 and drain region 12822 also may diffuse further than desired into the p-type region of channel region 12818, extending underneath gate 12802 The extension of the source region 12820 and drain region 12822 underneath gate 12802 is shown as source overlap 12824 and drain overlap 12826. Source overlap 12824 and drain overlap 12826 are further illustrated in FIG. 128C. FIG. 128C illustrates a top-level view of an example layout configuration for MOSFET 12816. Source overlap 12824 and drain overlap 12826 may lead to unwanted parasitic capacitances between source region 12820 and gate 12802, and between drain region 12822 and gate 12802. These unwanted parasitic capacitances may interfere with circuit function. For instance, the resulting parasitic capacitances may produce noise spikes that are radiated by the circuit, causing unwanted electromagnetic interference.

As shown in FIG. 128C, an example MOSFET 12816 may include a gate pad 12828. Gate 12802 may include a gate extension 12830, and a gate pad extension 12832. Gate extension 12830 is an unused portion of gate 12802 required due to metal implantation process tolerance limitations. Gate pad extension 12832 is a portion of gate 12802 used to couple gate 12802 to gate pad 12828. The contact required for gate pad 12828 requires gate pad extension 12832 to be of non-zero length to separate the resulting contact from the area between source region 12820 and drain region 12822. This prevents gate 12802 from shorting to the channel between source region 12820 and drain region 12822 (insulator 12814 of FIG. 128B is very thin in this region). Unwanted parasitic capacitances may form between gate extension 12830 and the substrate (FET 12816 is fabricated on a substrate), and between gate pad extension 12832 and the substrate. By reducing the respective areas of gate extension 12830 and gate pad extension 12832, the parasitic capacitances resulting therefrom can be reduced. Accordingly, embodiments address the issues of uncertainty in the ion implantation/diffusion process. It will be obvious to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) how to decrease the areas of gate extension 12830 and gate pad extension 12832 in order to reduce the resulting parasitic capacitances.

It should be understood that the illustration of the n-channe1 enhancement-mode MOSFET is for example purposes only. The present invention is applicable to depletion mode MOSFETs, and other transistor types, as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

4.6 Other Implementations

The implementations described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These implementations are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate implementations, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

5. Optional Optimizations of Energy Transfer at an Aliasing Rate

The methods and systems described in sections above can be optimized with one or more of the optimization methods or systems described below.

5.1 Doubling the Aliasing Rate (FAR) of the Energy Transfer Signal

In an embodiment, the optional energy transfer signal module 6902 in FIG. 69 includes a pulse generator module that generates aliasing pulses at twice the frequency of the oscillating source. The input signal 6828 may be any suitable oscillating source.

FIG. 71A illustrates a circuit 7102 that generates a doubler output signal 7104 (FIG. 71C) that may be used as an energy transfer signal 6306. The circuit 7102 generates pulses on both rising and falling edges of the input oscillating signal 7106 of FIG. 71B. The circuit 7102 can be implemented as a pulse generator and aliasing rate (F_{AR}) doubler. The doubler output signal 7104 can be used as the energy transfer signal 6306.

In the example of FIG. 71A, the aliasing rate is twice the

frequency of the input oscillating signal F_{OSC} 7106, as shown by EQ. (9) below.

$$F_{AR} = 2 * F_{osc} \qquad \text{EQ. (9)}$$

The aperture width of the aliasing pulses is determined by the delay through a first inverter 7108 of FIG. 71A. As the delay is increased, the aperture is increased. A second inverter 7112 is shown to maintain polarity consistency with examples described elsewhere. In an alternate embodiment inverter 7112 is omitted. Preferably, the pulses have non-negligible aperture widths that tend away from zero time. The doubler output signal 7104 may be further conditioned as appropriate to drive the switch module with non negligible aperture pulses. The circuit 7102 may be implemented with integrated circuitry, discretely, with equivalent logic circuitry, or with any valid fabrication technology.

5.2 Differential Implementations

The invention can be implemented in a variety of differential configurations. Differential configurations are useful for reducing common mode noise. This can be very useful in receiver systems where common mode interference can be caused by intentional or unintentional radiators such as cellular phones, CB radios, electrical appliances etc.. Differential configurations are also useful in reducing any common mode noise due to charge injection of the switch in the switch module or due to the design and layout of the system in which the invention is used. Any spurious signal that is induced in equal magnitude and equal phase in both input leads of the invention will be

substantially reduced or eliminated. Some differential configurations, including some of the configurations below, are also useful for increasing the voltage and/or for increasing the power of the down-converted signal 1308B.

Differential systems are most effective when used with a differential front end (inputs) and a differential back end (outputs). They can also be utilized in the following configurations, for example:

a) A single-input front end and a differential back end; and

b) A differential front end and a single-output back end.

Examples of these system are provided below, with a first example illustrating a specific method by which energy is transferred from the input to the output differentially.

While an example of a differential energy transfer module is shown below, the example is shown for the purpose of illustration, not limitation. Alternate embodiments (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations etc.) of the embodiment described herein will be apparent to those skilled in the relevant art based on the teachings contained herein. The invention is intended and adapted to include such alternate embodiments.

5.2.1 An Example Illustrating Energy Transfer Differentially

FIG.76A illustrates a differential system 7602 that can be included in the energy transfer module 6304. The differential system 7602 includes an inverted gated transfer design similar to that described with reference to FIG. 74. The differential system 7602 includes inputs 7604 and 7606 and outputs 7608 and 7610. The differential system 7602 includes a first inverted gated transfer module 7612, which includes a

storage module 7614 and a switch module 7616. The differential system 7602 also includes a second inverted gated transfer module 7618, which includes a storage module 7620 and a switch module 7616, which it shares in common with inverted gated transfer module 7612.

One or both of the inputs 7604 and 7606 are coupled to an EM signal source. For example, the inputs can be coupled to an EM signal source, wherein the input voltages at the inputs 7604 and 7606 are substantially equal in amplitude but 180 degrees out of phase with one another. Alternatively, where dual inputs are unavailable, one of the inputs 7604 and 7606 can be coupled to ground.

In operation, when the switch module 7616 is closed, the storage modules 7614 and 7620 are in series and, provided they have similar capacitive values, accumulate charge of equal magnitude but opposite polarities. When the switch module 7616 is open, the voltage at the output 7608 is relative to the input 7604, and the voltage at the output 7610 is relative to the voltage at the input 7606.

Portions of the signals at the outputs 7608 and 7610 include signals resulting from energy stored in the storage modules 7614 and 7620, respectively, when the switch module 7616 was closed. The portions of the signals at the outputs 7608 and 7610 resulting from the stored charge are generally equal in amplitude to one another but 180 degrees out of phase.

Portions of the signals at the outputs 7608 and 7610 also include ripple voltage or noise resulting from the switching action of the switch module 7616. But because the switch module is positioned between the two outputs 7608 and 7610, the noise introduced by the switch module appears at the outputs as substantially equal and in-phase with one another. As a result, the ripple voltage can be substantially canceled out by inverting the signal at one of the outputs 7608 or 7610 and adding it to

the other remaining output. Additionally, any noise that is impressed with equal amplitude and equal phase onto the input terminals 7604 and 7606 by any other noise sources will tend to be canceled in the same way.

5.2.1.1 Differential Input-to-Differential Output

FIG. 76B illustrates the differential system 7602 wherein the inputs 7604 and 7606 are coupled to equal and opposite EM signal sources, illustrated here as dipole antennas 7624 and 7626. In this embodiment, when one of the outputs 7608 or 7610 is inverted and added to the other output, the common mode noise due to the switching module 7616 and other common mode noise present at the input terminals 7604 and 7606 tend to substantially cancel out.

5.2.1.2 Single Input-to-Differential Output

FIG. 76C illustrates the differential system 7602 wherein the input 7604 is coupled to an EM signal source such as a monopole antenna 7628 and the input 7606 is coupled to ground. In this configuration, the voltages at the outputs 7608 and 7610 are approximately one half the value of the voltages at the outputs in the implementation illustrated in FIG. 76B, given all other parameters are equal.

FIG. 76E illustrates an example single input to differential output receiver/down-converter system 7636. The system 7636 includes the differential system 7602 wherein the input 7606 is coupled to ground as in FIG. 76C. The input 7604 is coupled to an EM signal source 7638 through an optional input impedance match 7642. The EM signal source

impedance can be matched with an impedance match system 7642 as described in section 5 below.

The outputs 7608 and 7610 are coupled to a differential circuit 7644 such as a filter, which preferably inverts one of the outputs 7608 or 7610 and adds it to the other output 7608 or 7610. This substantially cancels common mode noise generated by the switch module 7616. The differential circuit 7644 preferably filters the higher frequency components of the EM signal 1304 that pass through the storage modules 7614 and 7620. The resultant filtered signal is output as the down-converted signal 1308B.

5.2.1.3 Differential Input-to-Single Output

FIG. 76D illustrates the differential input to single output system 7629 wherein the inputs 7604 and 7606 of the differential system 7602 are coupled to equal and opposite EM signal dipole antennas 7630 and 7632. In system 7629, the common mode noise voltages are not canceled as in systems shown above. The output is coupled from terminal 7608 to a load 7648.

5.2.2 Specific Alternative Embodiments

In specific alternative embodiments, the present invention IS implemented using a plurality of gated transfer modules controlled by a common energy transfer signal with a storage module coupled between the outputs of the plurality of gated transfer modules. For example, FIG. 99 illustrates a differential system 9902 that includes first and second gated transfer modules 9904 and 9906, and a storage module 9908

coupled between. Operation of the differential system 9902 will be apparent to one skilled in the relevant art(s), based on the description herein.

As with the first implementation described above in section 5.5.1 and its sub-sections, the gated transfer differential system 9902 can be implemented with a single input, differential inputs, a single output, differential outputs, and combinations thereof. For example, FIG. 100 illustrates an example single input-to-differential output system 10002.

Where common-mode rejection is desired to protect the input from various common-mode effects, and where common mode rejection to protect the output is not necessary, a differential input-to-single output implementation can be utilized. FIG. 102 illustrates an example differential to-single ended system 10202, where a balance/unbalance (balun) circuit 10204 is utilized to generate the differential input. Other input configurations are contemplated. A first output 10206 is coupled to a load l0208. A second output 10210 is coupled to ground point 10212.

Typically, in a balanced-to-unbalanced system, where a single output is taken from a differential system without the use of a balun, (i.e., where one of the output signals is grounded), a loss of about 6 db is observed. In the configuration of FIG. 102, however, the ground point 10212 simply serves as a DC voltage reference for the circuit. The system 10202 transfers charge from the input in the same manner as if it were full differential, with its conversion efficiency generally affected only by the parasitics of the circuit components used, such as the Rds(on) on FET switches if used in the switch module. In other words, the charge transfer still continues in the same manner of a single ended implementation, providing the necessary single-ended ground to the input circuitry when the aperture is active, yet configured to allow the

input to be differential for specific common-mode rejection capability and/or interface between a differential input and a single ended output system.

5.2.3 Specific Examples of Optimizations and Configurations for Inverted and Non-Inverted Differential Designs

Gated transfer systems and inverted gated transfer systems can be implemented with any of the various optimizations and configurations disclosed through the specification, such as, for example, impedance matching, tanks and resonant structures, bypass networks, etc. For example, the differential system 10002 in FIG. 100, which utilizes gated transfer modules with an input impedance matching system 10004 and a tank circuit 10006, which share a common capacitor. Similarly, differential system 10102 in FIG. 101, utilizes an inverted gated transfer module with an input impedance matching system 10104 and a tank circuit 10106, which share a common capacitor.

5.3 Smoothing the Down-Converted Signal

The down-converted signal 1308B may be smoothed by filtering as desired. The differential circuit 7644 implemented as a filter in FIG 76E illustrates but one example. This may be accomplished in any of the described embodiments by hardware, firmware and software implementation as is well known by those skilled in the arts.

5.4 Impedance Matching

The energy transfer module has input and output impedances generally defined by (1) the duty cycle of the switch module, and (2) the impedance of the storage module, at the frequencies of interest (e.g. at the EM input, and intermediate/baseband frequencies).

Starting with an aperture width of approximately ½ the period of the EM signal being down-converted as a preferred embodiment, this aperture width (e.g. the "closed time") can be decreased. As the aperture width is decreased, the characteristic impedance at the input and the output of the energy transfer module increases. Alternatively, as the aperture width increases from ½ the period of the EM signal being down-converted, the impedance of the energy transfer module decreases.

One of the steps in determining the characteristic input impedance of the energy transfer module could be to measure its value. In an embodiment, the energy transfer module's characteristic input impedance is 300 ohms. An impedance matching circuit can be utilized to efficiently couple an input EM signal that has a source impedance of, for example, 50 ohms, with the energy transfer module's impedance of, for example, 300 ohms. Matching these impedances can be accomplished in various manners, including providing the necessary impedance directly or the use of an impedance match circuit as described below.

Referring to FIG. 70, a specific embodiment using an RF signal as an input, assuming that the impedance 7012 is a relatively low impedance of approximately 50 Ohms, for example, and the input impedance 7016 is approximately 300 Ohms, an initial configuration for the input impedance match module 7006 can include an inductor 7306 and a capacitor 7308, configured as shown in FIG. 73. The

configuration of the inductor 7306 and the capacitor 7308 is a possible configuration when going from a low impedance to a high impedance. Inductor 7306 and the capacitor 7308 constitute an L match, the calculation of the values which is well known to those skilled in the relevant arts.

The output characteristic impedance can be impedance matched to take into consideration the desired output frequencies. One of the steps 1ll determining the characteristic output impedance of the energy transfer module could be to measure its value. Balancing the very low impedance of the storage module at the input EM frequency, the storage module should have an impedance at the desired output frequencies that is preferably greater than or equal to the load that is intended to be driven (for example, in an embodiment, storage module impedance at a desired lMHz output frequency is 2K ohm and the desired load to be driven is 50 ohms). An additional benefit of impedance matching is that filtering of unwanted signals can also be accomplished with the same components.

In an embodiment, the energy transfer module's characteristic output impedance is 2K ohms. An impedance matching circuit can be utilized to efficiently couple the down-converted signal with an output impedance of, for example, 2K ohms, to a load of, for example, 50 ohms. Matching these impedances can be accomplished in various manners, including providing the necessary load impedance directly or the use of an impedance match circuit as described below.

When matching from a high impedance to a low impedance, a capacitor 7314 and an inductor 7316 can be configured as shown in FIG. 73. The capacitor 7314 and the inductor 7316 constitute an L match, the calculation of the component values being well known to those skilled in the relevant arts.

The configuration of the input impedance match module 7006 and

the output impedance match module 7008 are considered to be initial starting points for impedance matching, in accordance with the present invention. In some situations, the initial designs may be suitable without further optimization. In other situations, the initial designs can be optimized in accordance with other various design criteria and considerations.

As other optional optimizing structures and/or components are utilized, their affect on the characteristic impedance of the energy transfer module should be taken into account in the match along with their own original criteria.

5.5 Tanks and Resonant Structures

Resonant tank and other resonant structures can be used to further optimize the energy transfer characteristics of the invention. For example, resonant structures, resonant about the input frequency, can be used to store energy from the input signal when the switch is open, a period during which one may conclude that the architecture would otherwise be limited in its maximum possible efficiency. Resonant tank and other resonant structures can include, but are not limited to, surface acoustic wave (SAW) filters, dielectric resonators, diplexers, capacitors, inductors, etc.

An example embodiment is shown in FIG. 94A. Two additional embodiments are shown in FIG. 88 and FIG. 97. Alternate implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention. These implementations take advantage of properties of series and parallel (tank) resonant circuits.

FIG. 94A illustrates parallel tank circuits in a differential implementation. A first parallel resonant or tank circuit consists of a capacitor 9438 and an inductor 9420 (tank1). A second tank circuit consists of a capacitor 9434 and an inductor 9436 (tank2).

As is apparent to one skilled in the relevant art(s), parallel tank circuits provide:

low impedance to frequencies below resonance;
low impedance to frequencies above resonance; and
high impedance to frequencies at and near resonance.

In the illustrated example of FIG. 94A, the first and second tank circuits resonate at approximately 920Mhz. At and near resonance, the impedance of these circuits is relatively high. Therefore, in the circuit configuration shown in FIG 94A, both tank circuits appear as relatively high impedance to the input frequency of 950Mhz, while simultaneously appearing as relatively low impedance to frequencies in the desired output range of 50Mhz.

An energy transfer signal 9442 controls a switch 9414. When the energy transfer signal 9442 controls the switch 9414 to open and close, high frequency signal components are not allowed to pass through tank1 or tank2. However, the lower signal components (50Mhz in this embodiment) generated by the system are allowed to pass through tank1 and tank2 with little attenuation. The effect of tank1 and tank2 is to further separate the input and output signals from the same node thereby producing a more stable input and output impedance. Capacitors 9418 and 9440 act to store the 50Mhz output signal energy between energy transfer pulses.

Further energy transfer optimization is provided by placing an inductor 9410 in series with a storage capacitor 9412 as shown. In the

illustrated example, the series resonant frequency of this circuit arrangement is approximately 1 GHz. This circuit increases the energy transfer characteristic of the system. The ratio of the impedance of inductor 9410 and the impedance of the storage capacitor 9412 is preferably kept relatively small so that the majority of the energy available will be transferred to storage capacitor 9412 during operation. Exemplary output signals A and B are illustrated in FIGS. 94B and 94C, respectively.

In FIG. 94A, circuit components 9404 and 9406 form an input impedance match. Circuit components 9432 and 9430 form an output impedance match into a 50 ohm resistor 9428. Circuit components 9422 and 9424 form a second output impedance match into a 50 ohm resistor 9426. Capacitors 9408 and 9412 act as storage capacitors for the embodiment. Voltage source 9446 and resistor 9402 generate a 950Mhz signal with a 50ohm output impedance, which are used as the input to the circuit. Circuit element 9416 includes a l50Mhz oscillator and a pulse generator, which are used to generate the energy transfer signal 9442.

FIG. 88 illustrates a shunt tank circuit 8810 in a single-ended to-single-ended system 8812. Similarly, FIG. 97 illustrates a shunt tank circuit 9710 in a system 9712. The tank circuits 8810 and 9710 lower driving source impedance, which improves transient response. The tank circuits 8810 and 9710 are able store the energy from the input signal and provide a low driving source impedance to transfer that energy throughout the aperture of the closed switch. The transient nature of the switch aperture can be viewed as having a response that, in addition to including the input frequency, has large component frequencies above the input frequency, (i.e. higher frequencies than the input frequency are also able to effectively pass through the aperture). Resonant circuits or

structures, for example resonant tanks 8810 or 9710, can take advantage of this by being able to transfer energy throughout the switch's transient frequency response (i.e. the capacitor in the resonant tank appears as a low driving source impedance during the transient period of the aperture).

The example tank and resonant structures described above are for illustrative purposes and are not limiting. Alternate configurations can be utilized. The various resonant tanks and structures discussed can be combined or utilized independently as is now apparent.

5.6 Charge and Power Transfer Concepts

Concepts of charge transfer are now described with reference to FIGS. 109A-F. FIG. 109A illustrates a circuit 10902, including a switch S and a capacitor 10906 having a capacitance C. The switch S is controlled by a control signal 10908, which includes pulses 19010 having apertures T.

In FIG. 109B, Equation 10 illustrates that the charge q on a capacitor having a capacitance C, such as the capacitor 10906, is proportional to the voltage V across the capacitor, where:

q = Charge in Coulombs
C = Capacitance in Farads
V = Voltage in Volts
A = Input Signal Amplitude

Where the voltage V is represented by Equation 11, Equation 10 can be rewritten as Equation 12. The change in charge Δq over time t is illustrated as in Equation 13 as $\Delta q(t)$, which can be rewritten as Equation

14. Using the sum-to-product trigonometric identity of Equation 15, Equation 14 can be rewritten as Equation 16, which can be rewritten as equation 17.

Note that the sin term in Equation 11 is a function of the aperture T only. Thus, $\Delta q(t)$ is at a maximum when T is equal to an odd multiple of π (i.e., $\pi, 3\pi, 5\pi, ...$). Therefore, the capacitor 10906 experiences the greatest change in charge when the aperture T has a value of π or a time interval representative of 180 degrees of the input sinusoid. Conversely, when T is equal to $2\pi, 4\pi, 6n, ...$, minimal charge is transferred.

Equations 18, 19, and 20 solve for q(t) by integrating Equation 10, allowing the charge on the capacitor 10906 with respect to time to be graphed on the same axis as the input sinusoid sin(t), as illustrated in the graph of FIG. 109C. As the aperture T decreases in value or tends toward an impulse, the phase between the charge on the capacitor C or q(t) and sin(t) tend toward zero. This is illustrated in the graph of FIG. 109D, which indicates that the maximum impulse charge transfer occurs near the input voltage maxima. As this graph indicates, considerably less charge is transferred as the value of T decreases.

Power/charge relationships are illustrated in Equations 21-26 of FIG. 109E, where it is shown that power is proportional to charge, and transferred charge is inversely proportional to insertion loss.

Concepts of insertion loss are illustrated in FIG. 109F. Generally, the noise figure of a lossy passive device is numerically equal to the device insertion loss. Alternatively, the noise figure for any device cannot be less that its insertion loss. Insertion loss can be expressed by Equation 27 or 28.

From the above discussion, it is observed that as the aperture T increases, more charge is transferred from the input to the capacitor 10906, which increases power transfer from the input to the output. It has been observed that it is not necessary to accurately reproduce the input voltage at the output because relative modulated amplitude and phase information is retained in the transferred power.

5.7 Optimizing and Adjusting the Non-Negligible Aperture Width/Duration

5.7.1 Varying Input and Output Impedances

In an embodiment of the invention, the energy transfer signal 6306 of FIG.63 is used to vary the input impedance seen by the EM Signal 1304 and to vary the output impedance driving a load. An example of this embodiment is described below using the gated transfer module 6404 shown in FIG. 68G, and in FIG. 82A. The method described below is not limited to the gated transfer module 6404, as it can be applied to all of the embodiments of energy transfer module 6304.

In FIG. 82A, when switch 8206 is closed, the impedance looking into circuit 8202 is substantially the impedance of storage module illustrated as the storage capacitance 8208, in parallel with the impedance of the load 8212. When the switch 8206 is open, the impedance at point 8214 approaches infinity. It follows that the average impedance at point 8214 can be varied from the impedance of the

storage module illustrated as the storage capacitance 8208, in parallel with the load 8212, to the highest obtainable impedance when switch 8206 is open, by varying the ratio of the time that switch 8206 is open to the time switch 8206 is closed. Since the switch 8206 is controlled by the energy transfer signal 8210, the impedance at point 8214 can be varied by controlling the aperture width of the energy transfer signal, in conjunction with the aliasing rate.

An example method of altering the energy transfer signal 6306 of FIG. 63 is now described with reference to FIG. 71A, where the circuit 7102 receives the input oscillating signal 7106 and outputs a pulse train shown as doubler output signal 7104. The circuit 7102 can be used to generate the energy transfer signal 6306. Example waveforms of 7104 are shown on FIG. 71C.

It can be shown that by varying the delay of the signal propagated by the inverter 7108, the width of the pulses in the doubler output signal 7104 can be varied. Increasing the delay of the signal propagated by inverter 7108, increases the width of the pulses. The signal propagated by inverter 7108 can be delayed by introducing a R/C low pass network in the output of inverter 7108. Other means of altering the delay of the signal propagated by inverter 7108 will be well known to those skilled in the art.

5.7.2 Real Time Aperture Control

In an embodiment, the aperture width/duration is adjusted in real time. For example, referring to the timing diagrams in FIGS. 98B-F, a clock signal 9814 (FIG. 98B) is utilized to generate an energy transfer signal 9816 (FIG. 98F), which includes energy transfer pluses 9818, having variable apertures 9820. In an embodiment, the clock signal 9814 is inverted as illustrated by inverted clock signal 9822 (FIG. 98D). The clock signal 9814 is also delayed, as illustrated by delayed clock signal 9824

(FIG. 98E). The inverted clock signal 9814 and the delayed clock signal 9824 are then ANDed together, generating an energy transfer signal 9816, which is active - energy transfer pulses 9818 - when the delayed clock signal 9824 and the inverted clock signal 9822 are both active. The amount of delay imparted to the delayed clock signal 9824 substantially determines the width or duration of the apertures 9820. By varying the delay in real time, the apertures are adjusted in real time.

In an alternative implementation, the inverted clock signal 9822 is delayed relative to the original clock signal 9814, and then ANDed with the original clock signal 9814. Alternatively, the original clock signal 9814 is delayed then inverted, and the result ANDed with the original clock signal 9814.

FIG. 98A illustrates an exemplary real time aperture control system 9802 that can be utilized to adjust apertures in real time. The example real time aperture control system 9802 includes an RC circuit 9804, which includes a voltage variable capacitor 9812 and a resistor 9826. The real time aperture control system 9802 also includes an inverter 9806 and an AND gate 9808. The AND gate 9808 optionally includes an enable input 9810 for enabling/disabling the AND gate 9808. The RC circuit 9804. The real time aperture control system 9802 optionally includes an amplifier 9828.

Operation of the real time aperture control circuit is described with reference to the timing diagrams of FIGS. 98B-F. The real time control system 9802 receives the input clock signal 9814, which is provided to both the inverter 9806 and to the RC circuit 9804. The inverter 9806 outputs the inverted clock signal 9822 and presents it to the AND gate 9808. The RC circuit 9804 delays the clock signal 9814 and outputs the delayed clock signal 9824. The delay is determined primarily by the capacitance of the voltage variable capacitor 9812. Generally, as the capacitance decreases, the delay decreases.

The delayed clock signal 9824 is optionally amplified by the optional amplifier 9828, before being presented to the AND gate 9808. Amplification is desired, for example, where the RC constant of the RC circuit 9804 attenuates the signal below the threshold of the AND gate 9808.

The AND gate 9808 ANDs the delayed clock signal 9824, the inverted clock signal 9822, and the optional Enable signal 9810, to generate the energy transfer signal 9816. The apertures 9820 are adjusted in real time by varying the voltage to the voltage variable capacitor 9812.

In an embodiment, the apertures 9820 are controlled to optimize power transfer. For example, in an embodiment, the apertures 9820 are controlled to maximize power transfer. Alternatively, the apertures 9820 are controlled for variable gain control (e.g. automatic gain control-AGC). In this embodiment, power transfer is reduced by reducing the apertures 9820.

As can now be readily seen from this disclosure, many of the aperture circuits presented, and others, can be modified in the manner described above (e.g. circuits in FIGS. 68 H-K). Modification or selection of the aperture can be done at the design level to remain a fixed value in the circuit, or in an alternative embodiment, may be dynamically adjusted to compensate for, or address, various design goals such as receiving RF signals with enhanced efficiency that are in distinctively different bands of operation, e.g. RF signals at 900MHz and 1.8GHz.

5.8 Adding a Bypass Network

In an embodiment of the invention, a bypass network is added to improve the efficiency of the energy transfer module. Such a bypass

network can be viewed as a means of synthetic aperture widening. Components for a bypass network are selected so that the bypass network appears substantially lower impedance to transients of the switch module (i.e., frequencies greater than the received EM signal) and appears as a moderate to high impedance to the input EM signal (e.g., greater that 100 Ohms at the RF frequency).

The time that the input signal is now connected to the opposite side of the switch module is lengthened due to the shaping caused by this network, which in simple realizations may be a capacitor or series resonant inductor-capacitor. A network that is series resonant above the input frequency would be a typical implementation. This shaping improves the conversion efficiency of an input signal that would otherwise, if one considered the aperture of the energy transfer signal only, be relatively low in frequency to be optimal.

For example, referring to FIG. 95 a bypass network 9502 (shown in this instance as capacitor 9512), is shown bypassing switch module 9504. In this embodiment the bypass network increases the efficiency of the energy transfer module when, for example, less than optimal aperture widths were chosen for a given input frequency on the energy transfer signal 9506. The bypass network 9502 could be of different configurations than shown in FIG 95. Such an alternate is illustrated in FIG.90. Similarly, FIG. 96 illustrates another example bypass network 9602, including a capacitor 9604.

The following discussion will demonstrate the effects of a minimized aperture and the benefit provided by a bypassing network. Beginning with an initial circuit having a 550ps aperture in FIG. 103, its output is seen to be 2.8mVpp applied to a 50 ohm load in FIG. 107A. Changing the aperture to 270ps as shown in FIG. 104 results in a diminished output of 2.5Vpp applied to a 50 ohm load as shown in FIG. 107B. To compensate for this loss, a bypass network may be added, a

specific implementation is provided in FIG. 105. The result of this addition is that 3.2Vpp can now be applied to the 50 ohm load as shown in FIG. 108A. The circuit with the bypass network in FIG. 105 also had three values adjusted in the surrounding circuit to compensate for the impedance changes introduced by the bypass network and narrowed aperture. FIG. 106 verifies that those changes added to the circuit, but without the bypass network, did not themselves bring about the increased efficiency demonstrated by the embodiment in FIG. 105 with the bypass network. FIG. 108B shows the result of using the circuit in FIG. 106 in which only 1.88Vpp was able to be applied to a 50 ohm load.

5.9 Modifying the Energy Transfer Signal Utilizing Feedback

FIG. 69 shows an embodiment of a system 6901 which uses down-converted Signal 1308B as feedback 6906 to control various characteristics of the energy transfer module 6304 to modify the down-converted signal 1308B.

Generally, the amplitude of the down-converted signal 1308B varies as a function of the frequency and phase differences between the EM signal 1304 and the energy transfer signal 6306. In an embodiment, the down-converted signal 1308B is used as the feedback 6906 to control the frequency and phase relationship between the EM signal 1304 and the energy transfer signal 6306. This can be accomplished using the example logic in FIG 85A. The example circuit in FIG. 85A can be included in the energy transfer signal module 6902. Alternate implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention. In this embodiment a state-machine is used as an example.

In the example of FIG. 85A, a state machine 8504 reads an analog to digital converter, A/D 8502, and controls a digital to analog converter, DAC 8506. In an embodiment, the state machine 8504 includes 2 memory locations, *Previous* and *Current,* to store and recall the results of reading A/D 8502. In an embodiment, the state machine 8504 utilizes at least one memory flag.

The DAC 8506 controls an input to a voltage controlled oscillator, VCO 8508. VCO 8508 controls a frequency input of a pulse generator 8510, which, in an embodiment, is substantially similar to the pulse generator shown in FIG. 68J. The pulse generator 8510 generates energy transfer signal 6306.

In an embodiment, the state machine 8504 operates in accordance with a state machine flowchart 8519 in FIG. 85B. The result of this operation is to modify the frequency and phase relationship between the energy transfer signal 6306 and the EM signal 1304, to substantially maintain the amplitude of the down-converted signal 1308B at an optimum level.

The amplitude of the down-converted signal 1308B can be made to vary with the amplitude of the energy transfer signal 6306. In an embodiment where the switch module 6502 is a FET as shown in FIG 66A, wherein the gate 6604 receives the energy transfer signal 6306, the amplitude of the energy transfer signal 6306 can determine the "on" resistance of the FET, which affects the amplitude of the down-converted signal 1308B. The energy transfer signal module 6902, as shown in FIG. 85C, can be an analog circuit that enables an automatic gain control function. Alternate implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

5.10 Other Implementations

The implementations described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These implementations are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate implementations, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

6. Example Energy Transfer Downconverters

Example implementations are described below for illustrative purposes. The invention is not limited to these examples.

FIG. 86 is a schematic diagram of an exemplary circuit to down convert a 915 MHz signal to a 5 MHz signal using a 101.1 MHz clock.

FIG. 87 shows example simulation waveforms for the circuit of figure 86. Waveform 8602 is the input to the circuit showing the distortions caused by the switch closure. Waveform 8604 is the unfiltered output at the storage unit. Waveform 8606 is the impedance matched output of the downconverter on a different time scale.

FIG. 88 is a schematic diagram of an exemplary circuit to downconvert a 915 MHz signal to a 5 MHz signal using a 101.1 MHz clock. The circuit has additional tank circuitry to improve conversion efficiency.

FIG. 89 shows example simulation waveforms for the circuit of figure 88. Waveform 8802 is the input to the circuit showing the distortions caused by the switch closure. Waveform 8804 is the unfiltered output at the storage unit. Waveform 8806 is the output of the downconverter after the impedance match circuit.

FIG. 90 is a schematic diagram of an exemplary circuit to

downconvert a 915 MHz signal to a 5 MHz signal using a 101.1 MHz clock. The circuit has switch bypass circuitry to improve conversion efficiency.

FIG. 91 shows example simulation waveforms for the circuit of figure 90. Waveform 9002 is the input to the circuit showing the distortions caused by the switch closure. Waveform 9004 is the unfiltered output at the storage unit. Waveform 9006 is the output of the downconverter after the impedance match circuit.

FIG. 92 shows a schematic of the example circuit in FIG. 86 connected to an FSK source that alternates between 913 and 917 MHz, at a baud rate of 500 Kbaud. FIG. 93 shows the original FSK waveform 9202 and the downconverted waveform9204 at the output of the load impedance match circuit.

IV. Mathematical Description of the Present Invention

As described and illustrated in the preceding sections and sub-sections, embodiments of the present invention down-convert an electromagnetic signal by repeatedly transferring energy from portions of the electromagnetic signal. This section describes the operation of the present invention mathematically using matched filter theory, sampling theory, and frequency domain techniques. The concepts and principles of these theories are used to describe the present invention's waveform processing and would be known to persons skilled in the relevant arts.

As will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant arts based on the teachings contained herein, the description of the present invention contained herein is a unique and specific application of matched filter theory, sampling theory, and frequency domain techniques. It is not taught or suggested in the present literature. Therefore, a new transform has been developed, based on matched filter theory, sampling theory, and

frequency domain techniques, to describe the present invention. This new transform is referred to as the UFT transform, and it is described in Section 8, below.

It is noted that the following describes embodiments of the invention, and it is provided for illustrative purposes. The invention is not limited to the descriptions and embodiments described below. It is also noted that characterizations such as "optimal," "sub-optimal," "maximum," "minimum," "ideal," "non-ideal," and the like, contained herein, denote relative relationships.

1. Overview of the Invention

Embodiments of the present invention down-convert an electromagnetic signal by repeatedly performing a matched filtering or correlating operation on a received carrier signal. Embodiments of the invention operate on or near approximate half cycles (e.g., ½, 1 ½ , 2 ½, etc.) of the received signal. The results of each matched filtering/correlating process are accumulated, for example using a capacitive storage device, and used to form a down-converted version of the electromagnetic signal. In accordance with embodiments of the invention, the matched filtering/correlating process can be performed at a sub-harmonic or fundamental rate.

Operating on an electromagnetic signal with a matched filtering/correlating process or processor produces enhanced (and in some cases the best possible) signal-to-noise ration (SNR) for the processed waveform. A matched filtering/correlating process also preserves the energy of the electromagnetic signal and transfers it through the processor.

Since it is not always practical to design a matched filtering/correlating processor with passive networks, the sub-sections

that follow also describe how to implement the present invention using a finite time integrating operation and an RC processing operation. These embodiments of the present invention are very practical and can be implemented using existing technologies, for example but not limited to CMOS technology.

1.1 High Level Description of a Matched Filtering/Correlating Characterization/Embodiment of the Invention

In order to understand how embodiments of the present invention operate, it is useful to keep in mind the fact that such embodiments do not operate by trying to emulate an ideal impulse sampler. Rather, the present invention operates by accumulating the energy of a carrier signal and using the accumulated energy to produce the same or substantially the same result that would be obtained by an ideal impulse sampler, if such a device could be built. Stated more simply, embodiments of the present invention recursively determine a voltage or current value for approximate half cycles (e.g., ½ , 1 ½ , 2 ½ , etc.) of a carrier signal, typically at a sub-harmonic rate, and use the determined voltage or current values to form a down-converted version of an electromagnetic signal. The quality of the down-converted electromagnetic signal is a function of how efficiently the various embodiments of the present invention are able to accumulate the energy of the approximate half cycles of the carrier signal.

Ideally, some embodiments of the present invention accumulate all of the available energy contained in each approximate half cycle of the carrier signal operated upon. This embodiment is generally referred to herein as a matched filtering/correlating process or processor. As described in detail below, a matched filtering/correlating processor is

able to transfer substantially all of the energy contained in a half cycle of the carrier signal through the processor for use in determining, for example, a peak or an average voltage value of the carrier signal. This embodiment of the present invention produces enhanced (and in some cases the best possible) signal-to-noise ration (SNR), as described in the sub-sections below.

FIG. 148 illustrates an example method 14800 for down-converting an electromagnetic signal using a matched filtering/correlating operation. Method 14800 starts at step 14810.

In step 14810, a matched filtering/correlating operation is performed on a portion of a carrier signal. For example, a match filtering/correlating operation can be performed on a 900 MHz RF signal, which typically comprises a 900 MHz sinusoid having noise signals and information signals superimposed on it. Many different types of signals can be operated upon in step 14810, however, and the invention is not limited to operating on a 900 MHz RF signal. In embodiments, Method 14800 operates on approximate half cycles of the carrier signal.

In an embodiment of the invention, step 14810 comprises the step of convolving an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal with a representation of itself in order to efficiently acquire the energy of the approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. As described elsewhere herein, other embodiments use other means for efficiently acquiring the energy of the approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. The matched filtering/correlating operation can be performed on any approximate half cycle of the carrier signal (although the invention is not limited to this), as described in detail in the subsections below.

In step 14820, the result of the matched filtering/correlating operation in step 14810 is accumulated, preferably in an energy storage device. In an embodiment of the present invention, a capacitive storage

devise is used to store a portion of the energy of an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal.

Steps 14810 and 14820 are repeated for additional half cycles of the carrier signal. In an embodiment of the present invention, steps 14810 and 14820 are normally performed at a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal, for example at a third sub-harmonic rate. In another embodiment, steps 14810 and 14820 are repeated at an off-set of a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal.

In step 14830, a down-converted signal is output. In embodiments, the results of steps 14810 and 14820 are passed on to a reconstruction filter or an interpolation filter.

FIG. 149 illustrates an example gated matched filtering/correlating system 14900, which can be used to implement method 14800. Ideally, in an embodiment, an impulse response of matched filtering/corre1ating system 14900 is identical to the modulated carrier signal, $S_i(t)$, to be processed. As can be seen in FIG. 149, system 14900 comprises a multiplying module 14902, a switching module 14904, and an integrating module 14906.

System 14900 can be thought of as a convolution processor. System 14900 multiplies the modulated carrier signal, $S_i(t)$, by a representation of itself, $S_i(t-\tau)$, using multiplication model 14902. The output of multiplication module 14902 is then gated by switching module 14904 to integrating module 14906. As can be seen in FIG. 149, switching module 14904 is controlled by a windowing function, $u(t) - u(t-T_A)$. The length of the windowing function aperture is T_A, which is in an embodiment equal to an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. Switching module 14904 in an embodiment ensures that approximate half cycles of the carrier signal are normally operated upon at a sub-harmonic rate. In an embodiment shown in FIG. 72, preprocessing is used to select a portion of the carrier signal to be operated upon in

accordance with the present invention. In an embodiment of system 14900, the received carrier signal is operated on at an off-set of a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal. Integration module 14906 integrates the gated output of multiplication module 14902 and passes on its result, S_0 (t). This embodiment of the present invention is described in more detail in subsequent sub-sections.

As will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant arts given the discussion herein, the present invention is not a traditional realization of a matched filter/correlator.

1.2 High Level Description of a Finite Time Integrating Characterization/Embodiment of the Invention

As described herein, in some embodiments, a matched filter/correlator embodiment according to the present invention provides maximum energy transfer and maximum SNR. A matched filter/correlator embodiment, however, might not always provide an optimum solution for all applications. For example, a matched filter/correlator embodiment might be too expensive or too complicated to implement for some applications. In such instances, other embodiments according to the present invention may provide acceptable results at a substantially lower cost, using less complex circuitry. The invention is directed to those embodiments as well.

As described herein in subsequent sub-sections, a gated matched filter/correlator processor can be approximated by a processor whose impulse response is a step function having a duration substantially equal to the time interval defined for the waveform, typically a half cycle of the electromagnetic signal, and an integrator. Such an approximation of a gated matched filter/correlator is generally referred to as a finite time integrator. A finite time integrator in accordance with an embodiment of

the present invention can be implemented with, for example, a switching device controlled by a train of pulses having apertures substantially equal to the time interval defined for the waveform. The energy transfer and SNR of a finite time integrator implemented in accordance with an embodiment of the present invention is nearly that of a gated matched filter/correlator, but without having to tailor the matched filter/correlator for a particular type of electromagnetic signal. As described in sub-section 6, a finite time integrator embodiment according to the present invention can provide a SNR result that differs from the result of matched filter/correlator embodiment by only 0.91dB.

FIG. 150 illustrates an example method 15000 for down-converting an electromagnetic signal using a matched filtering/correlating operation. Method 15000 starts at step 15010.

In step 15010, a matched filtering/correlating operation is performed on a portion of a carrier signal. For example, a match filtering/correlating operation can be performed on a 900 MHz RF signal, which typically comprises a 900 MHz sinusoid having noise signals and information signals superimposed on it. Many different types of signals can be operated upon in step 15010, however, and the invention is not limited to operating on a 900 MHz RF signal. In embodiments, Method 15000 operates on approximate half cycles of the carrier signal.

In an embodiment of the invention, step 15010 comprises the step of convolving an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal with a representation of itself in order to efficiently acquire the energy of the approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. As described elsewhere herein, other embodiments use other means for efficiently acquiring the energy of the approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. The matched filtering/correlating operation can be performed on any approximate half cycle of the carrier signal (although the invention is not limited to

this), as described in detail in the subsections below.

In step 15020, the result of the matched filtering/correlating operation in step 15010 is accumulated, preferably in an energy storage device. In an embodiment of the present invention, a capacitive storage devise is used to store a portion of the energy of an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal.

Steps 15010 and 15020 are repeated for additional half cycles of the carrier signal. In one embodiment of the present invention, steps 15010 and 15020 are performed at a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal. In another embodiment, steps 15010 and 15020 are repeated at an off-set of a subharmonic rate of the carrier signal.

In step 15030, a down-converted signal is output. In embodiments, the results of steps 15010 and 15020 are passed on to a reconstruction filter or an interpolation filter.

FIG. 151 illustrates an example finite time integrating system 15100, which can be used to implement method 15000. Finite time integrating system 15100 has an impulse response that is approximately rectangular, as further described in sub-section 4. As can be seen in FIG. 151, system 15100 comprises a switching module 15102 and an integrating module 15104.

Switching module 15102 is controlled by a wind owing function, $u(t) - u(t-T_A)$. The length of the windowing function aperture is T_A, which is equal to an approximate half cycle of the received carrier signal, $S_i(t)$,. Switching module 15102 ensures that approximate half cycles of the carrier signal can be operated upon at a sub-harmonic rate. In an embodiment of system 15100, the received carrier signal is operated on at an off-set of a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal.

Integration module 15104 integrates the output of switching module 15102 and passes on its result, $S_0(t)$. This embodiment of the present invention is described in more detail in sub-section 4 below.

1.3 High Level Description of an RC Processing Characterization/Embodiment of the Invention

The prior sub-section describes how a gated matched filter/correlator can be approximated with a finite time integrator. This sub-section describes how the integrator portion of the finite time integrator can be approximated with a resistor/capacitor (RC) processor. This embodiment of the present invention is generally referred to herein as an RC processor, and it can be very inexpensive to implement. Additionally, the RC processor embodiment according to the present invention can be implemented using only passive circuit devices, and it can be implemented, for example, using existing CMOS technology. This RC processor embodiment, shown in FIG. 153, utilizes a very low cost integrator or capacitor as a memory across the aperture or switching module. If the capacitor is suitably chosen for this embodiment, the performance of the RC processor approaches that of the matched filter/correlator embodiments described herein.

FIG. 152 illustrates an example method 15200 for down-converting an electromagnetic signal using a matched filtering/correlating operation. Method 15200 starts at step 15210.

In step 15210, a matched filtering/correlating operation is performed on a portion of a carrier signal. For example, a match filtering/correlating operation can be performed on a 900 MHz RF signal, which typically comprises a 900 MHz sinusoid having noise signals and information signals superimposed on it. Many different types of signals can be operated upon in step 15210, however, and the invention is not limited to operating on a 900 MHz RF signal. In embodiments, Method 15200 operates on approximate half cycles of the carrier signal.

In an embodiment of the invention, step 15210 comprises the step of convolving an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal with a representation of itself in order to efficiently acquire the energy of the approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. As described elsewhere herein, other embodiments use other means for efficiently acquiring the energy of the approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. The matched filtering/correlating operation can be performed on any approximate half cycle of the carrier signal (although the invention is not limited to this), as described in detail in the subsections below.

In step 15220, the result of the matched filtering/correlating operation in step 15210 is accumulated, preferably in an energy storage device. In an embodiment of the present invention, a capacitive storage devise is used to store a portion of the energy of an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal.

Steps 15210 and 15220 are repeated for additional half cycles of the carrier signal. In an embodiment of the present invention, steps 15210 and 15220 are normally performed at a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal, for example at a third sub-harmonic rate. In another embodiment, steps 15210 and 15220 are repeated at an off-set of a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal.

In step 15230, a down-converted signal is output. In embodiments, the results of steps 15210 and 15220 are passed on to a reconstruction filter or an interpolation filter.

FIG. 153 illustrates an example RC processing system 15300, which can be used to implement method 15200. As can be seen in FIG. 153, system 15300 comprises a source resistance 15302, a switching module 15304, and a capacitance 15306. Source resistance 15302 is a lumped sum resistance.

Switching module 15304 is controlled by a windowing function, $u(t) - u(t-T_A)$. The length of the windowing function aperture is T_A,

which is equal to an approximate half cycle of the received carrier signal, $S_i(t)$. Switching module 15304 ensures that approximate half cycles of the carrier signal are normally processed at a sub-harmonic rate. In an embodiment of system 15300, the received carrier signal is processed on at an off-set of a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal.

Capacitor 15306 integrates the output of switching module 15304 and accumulates the energy of the processed portions of the received carrier signal. RC processor 15300 also passes on its result, $S_0(t)$, to subsequent circuitry for further processing. This embodiment of the present invention is described in more detail in subsequent sub-sections.

It is noted that the implementations of the invention presented above are provided for illustrative purposes. Other implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the art based on the herein teachings, and the invention is directed to such implementations.

2. Representation of a Power Signal as a Sum of Energy Signals

This sub-section describes how a power signal can be represented as a sum of energy signals. The detailed mathematical descriptions in the sub-sections below use both Fourier transform analysis and Fourier series analysis to describe embodiments of the present invention. Fourier transform analysis typically is used to describe energy signals while Fourier series analysis is used to describe power signals. In a strict mathematical sense, Fourier transforms do not exist for power signals. It is occasionally mathematically convenient, however, to analyze certain repeating or periodic power signals using Fourier transform analysis.

Both Fourier series analysis and Fourier transform analysis can be used to describe periodic waveforms with pulse like structure. For example, consider the ideal impulse sampling train in EQ. (10).

$$x(t) = \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - mT_s) \qquad \text{EQ. (10)}$$

Suppose that this sampling train is convolved (in the time domain) with a particular waveform s(t), which is of finite duration T_A. Hence s(t) is an energy waveform. Then:

$$s(t) * x(t) = \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - mT_s) * s(t) \qquad \text{EQ.(11)}$$

$$= \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} s(t - mT_s) \qquad \text{EQ. (12)}$$

The above equation is a well known form of the sampler equation for arbitrary pulse shapes which may be of finite time duration rather than impulse-like. The sampler equation possesses a Fourier transform on a term-by-term basis because each separate is an energy waveform.

Applying the convolution theorem and a term-by-term Fourier transform yields:

$$\Im\{s(t) * x(t)\} \triangleq \Im\left\{\sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty}\right\} \delta(t - mT_s) s(f)$$

$$= \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} T_s^{-1} \delta\left(f - {}^{m}\!/_{T_s}\right) S\left({}^{n}\!/_{T_s}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (13)}$$

where $f_s = T_s^{-1}$. In this manner the Fourier transform may be derived for a train of pulses of arbitrary time domain definition provided that each pulse is of finite time duration and each pulse in the train is identical to the next. If the pulses are not deterministic then techniques viable for stochastic signal analysis may he required. It is therefore possible to represent the periodic signal, which is a power signal, by an infinite linear sum of finite duration energy signals. If the power signal is of infinite time duration, an infinite number of energy waveforms are required to create the desired representation.

FIG. 154 illustrates a pulse train 15402. Each pulse of pulse deterministic train 15402, for example pulse 15404, is an energy signal.

FIG. 155 illustrates one heuristic method based on superposition for combining pulses to form pulse deterministic train 15402.

The method of FIG. 155 shows how a power signal can be obtained from a linear piece-wise continuous sum of energy signals.

2.1 De-Composition of a Sine Wave into an Energy Signal Representation

The heuristic discussion presented in the previous section can be applied to the piecewise linear reconstruction of a sine wave function or carrier. FIG. 156 illustrates a simple way to view such a construction.

Using the previously developed equations, the waveform y(t) can be represented by:

$$\sin(\omega_c t + \phi)\Big|_{t=0}^{\infty} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \sin(\omega_c t + \phi)\left[u(t) - u\left(t - \frac{T_s}{2}\right)\right] * \delta\left(t - k\frac{T_s}{2}\right) + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \sin(\omega_c t + \phi)\left[u\left(t - \frac{T_s}{2}\right) - u\left(t - \frac{3T_s}{2}\right)\right] * \delta\left(t - k\frac{T_s}{2}\right)$$

EQ. (14)

and y(t) can be rewritten as:

$$y(t) = \sum_{k=0}^{m_{sine}} \left[u\left(t - \frac{(T_s}{2}\right) - u\left(t - \frac{(T_s}{2} - \frac{T_c}{2}\right) \right] \cdot \sin\left(\omega_c \left(t - \frac{(T_s}{2}\right) + \phi\right)$$
$$+ \sum_{k=1}^{m_{cosine}} [u(t - kT_s) - u(t - kT_s)] \cdot \sin\left(\omega_c \left(t - kT_s - \frac{T_c}{2}\right)\right) \sin(\omega_c (t - kT_s) + \phi)$$

EQ. (15)

In general, T_S is usually integrally related to T_C. That is, the sampling interval T_S divided by T_C usually results in an integer, which further reduces the above equation. The unit step functions are employed to carve out the portion of a sine function applicable for positive pulses and negative pulse, respectively. The point is a power signal may be viewed as an infinite linear sum of energy signals.

2.2 Decomposition of Sine Waveforms

FIG. 157 illustrates how portions of a carrier signal or sine waveform are selected for processing according to embodiments of the present invention. Embodiments of the present invention operate recursively, at a sub-harmonic rate, on a carrier signal (i.e., sine wave waveform). FIG. 157 shows the case where there is synchronism in phase and frequency between the clock of the present invention and the carrier signal. This sub-section, as well as the previous sub-sections, illustrates the fact that each half-sine segment of a carrier signal can be viewed as an energy signal, and may be partitioned from the carrier or power signal by a gating process.

3. Matched Filtering/Correlating Characterization/Embodiment

3.1 Time Domain Description

Embodiments of the present invention are interpreted as a specific implementation of a matched filter and a restricted Fourier sine or cosine transform. The matched filter of such embodiments is not a traditional realization of a matched filter designed to extract information at the data bandwidth. Rather, the correlation properties of the filter of the embodiments exploit specific attributes of bandpass waveforms to efficiently down convert signals from RF. A controlled aperture specifically designed to the bandpass waveform is used. In addition, the matched filter operation of embodiments of the present invention is applied recursively to the bandpass signal at a rate sub-harmonically related to the carrier frequency. Each matched filtered result or correlation of embodiments of the present invention is retained and accumulated to provide an initial condition for subsequent recursions of the correlator. This accumulation is approximated as a zero order data hold filter.

An attribute of bandpass waveforms is that they inherently possess time domain structure, which can be compared to sampling processes. For example, FIG. 158 illustrates a double sideband large carrier AM waveform 15802, with a dashed reference 15804 and black sample dots 15806. Each half sine above or below the dashed reference 15804 can represent a finite duration pulse that possesses information impressed on the carrier by the modulation process.

Sampled systems attempt to extract information in the envelope, at the black sample dots 15806, if possible. The sample times illustrated by the black sample dots 15806 are shown here at optimum sampling times.

Difficulties arise when the bandpass waveform is at RF. Then sampling is difficult because of sample rate, sample aperture, and

aperture uncertainty. When the traditional sampler acquires, the aperture and aperture uncertainty must be minimized such that the number associated with the acquired waveform value possesses great accuracy at a particular instant in time with minimum variance. Sample rate can be reduced by sampling sub-harmonically. However, precisely controlling a minimized aperture makes the process very difficult, if not impossible, at RF.

In FIG. 158, the area under a half-sine cycle 15808 is illustrated with hatched marks. In accordance with embodiments of the present invention, instead of obtaining a sample of a single waveform voltage value, energy in the hatched area is acquired. By acquiring energy in the hatched area, the effects of aperture uncertainty can he minimized. Moreover, the waveform itself possesses the sampling information between the half sine zero crossings. This is true because the total energy of the hatched area is proportional to the peak of the modulated half sine peak. This is illustrated by EQ. (16), below. All that remains is to extract that latent information. IN embodiments, the underlying theory for optimal extractions of the energy is in fact matched filter theory.

$$E_A = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_i(t)^2\,dt = 2A^2 \int_{0}^{T_0/2} \left(\sin(2\pi ft)\right)^2 dt = \frac{A^2 T_0}{2} \qquad \text{EQ. (16)}$$

Historically, an optimization figure of merit is signal-to-noise ration (SNR) at the system output. FIG. 159 illustrates a block diagram of an example optimum processor system 15902, which considers additive white Gaussian noise (AWGN). The general theory described herein can be extended to systems operating in the presence of colored noise as well.

Although an RF carrier with modulated information is typically a power signal, the analysis which follows considers the power signal to be a piece-wise construct of sequential energy signals where each energy

waveform is a half sine pulse (single aperture) or multiple sine pulses (see sub-section 2 above). Hence, theorems related to finite time observations, Fourier transforms, etc., may be applied throughout.

Analysis begins with the assumption that a filtering process can improve SNR. No other assumptions are necessary except that the system is casual and linear. The analysis determines the optimum processor for SNR enhancement and maximum energy transfer.

The output of the system is given by the convolution integral illustrated in EQ. (17):

$$S_o(t) = \int_0^\infty h(\tau) S_i(t-\tau)\,d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (17)}$$

where $h(\tau)$ is the unknown impulse response of the optimum processor.

The output noise variance is found from EQ. (18):

$$\sigma_o^2 = N_o \int_0^\infty h^2(\tau)\,d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (18)}$$

The signal to noise ratio at time to is given by EQ. (19):

$$\frac{S_o^2(t_o)}{\sigma_o^2} = \frac{\left[\int_0^\infty h(\tau) S_i(t_o-\tau)\,d\tau\right]^2}{N_o \int_0^\infty h^2(\tau)\,d\tau} \qquad \text{EQ. (19)}$$

The Schwarz inequality theorem may be used to maximize the above ratio by recognizing, in EQ. (20), that:

$$\frac{S_o^2(t_o)}{\sigma_o^2} \le \frac{\int_0^\infty h^2(\tau)\int_0^\infty S_i^2(t_o-\tau)\,d\tau}{N_o \int_0^\infty h^2(\tau)\,d\tau} \qquad \text{EQ. (20)}$$

The maximum SNR occurs for the case of equality in EQ. 20, which yields EQ. (21):

$$\left|\frac{S_0^2(t_0)}{\sigma_0^2}\right|\max = \frac{1}{N_0}\int_0^\infty S_i^2(t_0 - \tau)d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (21)}$$

In general therefore:

$$h(\tau) = kS_i(t_0 - \tau)u(\tau) \qquad \text{EQ. (22)}$$

where $u(\tau)$ is added as a statement of causality and k is an arbitrary gain constant. Since, in general, the original waveform $S_i(t)$, can be considered as an energy signal (single half sine for the present case), it is important to add the consideration of t_0, a specific observation time. That is, an impulse response for an optimum processor may not be optimal for all time. This is due to the fact that an impulse response for realizable systems operating on energy signals will typically die out over time. Hence, the signal at t_0 is said to possess the maximum SNR.

This can be verified by maximizing EQ. (21) in general.

$$\left(\frac{d}{dt}\right)\frac{S_0^2(t)}{\sigma_0^2} = 0 \qquad \text{EQ. (23)}$$

It is of some interest to rewrite EQ. (21) by a change of variable, substituting

$t = t_0 - \tau$ This yields:

$$k\int_0^\infty S_i^2(t_0 - \tau)d\tau = k\int_{-\infty}^{t_0} S_i^2(t)dt \qquad \text{EQ. (24)}$$

This is the energy of the waveform up to time t_0. After t_0, the energy falls off again due to the finite impulse response nature of the processor. EQ. (24) is of great importance because it reveals an often useful form of a matched filter known as a correlator. That is, the matched filter may be implemented by multiplying the subject waveform by itself over the time interval defined for the waveform, and then integrated. In this realization the maximum output occurs when the waveform and its optimal processor aperture are exactly overlapped for $t_0 = T_a$. It should also be evident from the matched filter equivalency stated in EQ. (24) that the maximum SNR solution also preserves the maximum energy transfer of the desired waveform through the processor. This may be proven using the Parseval and/or Rayliegh energy theorems. EQ. (24) relates directly to Parseval's theorem.

3.2 Frequency Domain Description

The previous sub-section derived an optimal processor from the time domain point-of-view according to embodiments of the invention. Alternately, Fourier transforms may be applied to obtain a frequency domain representation for h(t). This result is shown below.

$$H(f) = kS_i^*(f)e^{-i2\pi ft_0} \qquad \text{EQ. (25)}$$

Letting $j\omega = j2Bf$ and $t_0 = T_a$, we can write the following EQ. (26) for FIGS.

$$H(j\omega) = \frac{2}{T_A} e^{-j\omega T_A/2} \frac{\sin(\omega T_A/2)}{\omega T_A/2} \qquad \text{EQ. (20)}$$

160 and 161.

The frequency domain representation in FIG. 160 represents the response of an optimum processor according to embodiments. FIG. 161 illustrates responses of processors that use parameters different than T_A. For $t_0 \ll T_A$, the frequency domain response possesses too wide a bandwidth which captures too little of the main lobe of desired energy with respect to out of band noise power. Conversely, when $t_0 \ll T_A$, the energy transfer from the signal's main lobe is very inefficient. Therefore, proper selection of T_A is key for implementation efficiency.

Another simple but useful observation is gleaned from EQ. (24) and Rayleigh's Energy Theorem for Fourier transforms:

$$E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |S_i(t)|^2 dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |H(f)|^2 df \qquad \text{EQ. (27)}$$

EQ. (27) verifies that the transform of the optimal filter of various embodiments should substantially match the transform of the specific pulse, which is being processed, for efficient energy transfer.

4. Finite Time Integrating Characterization/Embodiment

It is not always practical to design the matched filter with passive networks. Sometimes the waveform correlation of $S_i(t)$ is also cumbersome to generate exactly. However, a single apeliure realization of embodiments of the present invention is practical, even in CMOS, with certain concessions.

Consider FIGS. 162 and 163, which illustrate an optimum single aperture realization of embodiments of the present invention using sub harmonic sampling (3rd harmonic) and a processor 16310 according to such embodiments. Ideally over the aperture of interest, T_A, a half sine impulse response or waveform is used to operate on the original gated $S_i(t)$. Suppose for ease of implementation, however, that a rectangular impulse response is used, as illustrated in FIGS. 164A and 164B. The Fourier transform of this processor still overlaps the Fourier transform for the original pulse $S_i(t)$ with exactly the same nulls, as shown in FIG. 164C. Although the Fourier correlation is not perfect, it is still quite good. Furthermore, it can be implemented using a simple switch that lets the half sine through in order to charge a capacitor, which acquires the total energy of the half sine at $t_0 \cong T_A$.

Applying EQ. (26) for both the matched filter and non-matched filter embodiments yields:

$$E_{MF} = \int_0^{T_A} S_i^2(t)\, dt = \frac{A^2 T_A}{2} \qquad \textit{Optimal Matched Filter Embodiment Result; and}$$

$$E_{MFI} = \left(\int_0^{T_A} A \cdot S(t) \right)^2 dt = \left(\frac{2T_A A}{\pi} \right)^2 \qquad \textit{Finite Time Integrator Embodiment Result}$$

It turns out in practice that realizable apertures are not perfectly rectangular and do possess a finite rise and fall time. In particular, they become triangular or nearly sinusoidal for very high frequency implementations. Thus, the finite time integrating processor result tends toward the matched filtering/correlating processor result when the aperture becomes sine-like, if the processor possesses constant impedance across the aperture duration. Even though the matched

filter/correlator response produces a lower output value at T_A, it yields a higher SNR by a factor of 0.9dB, as further illustrated below in sub-section 6.

5. RC Processing Characterization/Embodiment

Sometimes a precise matched filter is difficult to construct, particularly if the pulse shape is complex. Often, such complexities are avoided in favor of suitable approximations, which preserve the essential features. The single aperture realization of embodiments of the present invention is usually implemented conceptually as a first order approximation to a matched filter where the pulse shape being matched is a half-sine pulse. As shown in above, in embodiments, the matched filter is applied recursively to a carrier waveform. The time varying matched filter output correlation contains information modulated onto the carrier. If many such matched filter correlation samples are extracted, the original information modulated onto the carrier is recovered.

A baseband filter, matched or otherwise, may be applied to the recovered information to optimally process the signal at baseband. The present invention should not be confused with this optimal baseband processing. Rather embodiments of the present invention are applied on a time microscopic basis on the order of the time scale of a carrier cycle.

FIG. 165 illustrates a basic circuit 16502 that can be used to describe an example RC processor according to embodiments of the present invention. Circuit 16502 comprises a switch 16504. The switch 16504 is closed on a T_A basis in order to sample $V_i(t)$. In the analysis that follows, the transfer function and impulse response are derived for circuit 16502.

The switch 16504 functions as a sampler, which possesses multiplier attributes. Heviside's operator is used to model the switch

function. The operator is multiplied in the impulse response, thus rendering it essential to the matched filtering/correlating process.

In the analysis that follows, only one aperture event is considered. That is, the impulse response of the circuit is considered to be isolated aperture-to-aperture, except for the initial value inherited from the previous aperture.

For circuit 16502, shown in Figure 165:

$$V_0(t) = \frac{1}{C}\int i(t)\ dt \qquad \text{EQ. (28)}$$

$$i(t) = \frac{V_i(t)[u(t) - u(t - T_A)] - V_0(t)}{R} \qquad \text{EQ. (29)}$$

$$V_0(t) = \int \frac{V_i(t)[u(t) - (t - T_A)] - V_0(t)}{RC}\ dt \qquad \text{EQ. (30)}$$

$$V_0(t) + \int \frac{V_0(t)}{RC}\ dt = \int \frac{V_i(t)[u(t) - u(t - T_A)]}{RC}\ dt \qquad \text{EQ. (31)}$$

EQ. (31) represents the integro-differential equation for circuit 16502. The right hand side of EQ. (31) represents the correlation between the input waveform $V_i(t)$ and a rectangular window over the period T_A.

The Laplace transform of EQ. (31) is:

initial condition initial condition

$$V_0(s)\left(1 + \frac{1}{sRC}\right) + \frac{V_0(0)}{sRC} = V_i(s)\left(\frac{1 - e^{-sT_A}}{s^2RC}\right) + \frac{V_i(0)}{sRC} \qquad \text{EQ. (32)}$$

Consider that the initial condition equal to zero, then:

$$H(s)=\frac{V_0(s)}{V_i(s)}=RC^{-1}\cdot\left(\frac{1-e^{-sT_A}}{s}\right)\cdot\left(\frac{1}{s+(RC)^{-1}}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (33)}$$

$$\therefore h(t)=\left(\frac{e^{\frac{-t}{RC}}}{RC}\right)[u(t)-u(t-T_A)] \qquad \text{EQ. (34)}$$

Suppose that $V_i(t)=A\sin\left(2\pi\frac{f_A}{2}t+\phi\right)$, as illustrated in FIG. 166,

where $f_A = T_A^{-1}$ and $\emptyset$ is an arbitrary phase shift. (FIG. 166 also shows h(t).) Note in FIG. 166 that h(t) is not ideally a sine pulse. However, the cross correlation of h(t) and $V_i(t)$ can still be quite good if RC is properly selected. This is the optimization, which is required in order to approximate a matched filter result (namely SNR optimization given h(t) and $V_i(t)$).

$$V_0(t)=V_i(t)*h(t)=A\sin(\pi f_A t)*h(t)\ ;0\le t\le T_A \qquad \text{EQ. (35)}$$

$$V_0(t)=\int_0^{\infty}\sin(\pi f_A(t-\tau))\frac{e^{\frac{-\tau}{RC}}}{RC}\,d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (36)}$$

By a change of variables;

$$V_0(t)=\int_{-\infty}^{t}A\sin(\pi f_A\tau+\phi)\cdot\frac{e^{\frac{-(t-\tau)}{RC}}}{RC}\,[u(t-\tau)-u(t-\tau-T_A)]d\tau$$

where $f_A \triangleq 2f = T_A^{-1}$ EQ. (37)

$$\therefore V_0(t)=\frac{A}{1+(\pi f_A RC)^2}(-\pi f_A t+\phi)+\sin(\pi f_A t+\phi)-Ae^{-t/RC}\left(\sin\phi-\frac{(\pi f_A RC)^2}{1+(\pi f_A RC)^2}\sin\phi-\frac{\pi f_A RC}{1+(\pi f_A RC)^2}\cos\phi\right)$$
$0\le t\le T_A$

$$V_0(t)=\left[\frac{1}{1+(RC\pi f_A)^2}\right]\left(\sin(\pi f_A t)-\pi f_A RC\cdot\cos(\pi f_A t)+\pi f_A RC\cdot e^{-t/RC}\right)0\le t\le T_A$$
, $\phi=0$

Notice that the differential equation solution provides for carrier phase skew, ϕ. It is not necessary to calculate the convolution beyond T_A since the gating function restricts the impulse response length.

FIG. 167 illustrates the response $V_0(t)$. The output peaks just before T_A because the example RC processor is not a perfect matched filtering/correlating processor, but rather an approximation. FIG. 168 illustrates that the maximum of the function occurs at $t \cong .75T_A$, for a $\beta = 2.6$, which can be verified by evaluating:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} V_0(t) = 0 \qquad \text{EQ. (38)}$$

Solving the differential equation for $V_0(t)$ permits an optimization of $\beta = (RC)^{-1}$ for maximization of V_0.

FIG. 169 illustrates a spread of values for beta. In embodiments, the peak β occurs at approximately $\beta = 2.6$. FIG. 169 illustrates a family of output responses for processors according to embodiments of the present invention having different beta values. In embodiments, the definition used for optimality to obtain $\beta = 2.6$ is the highest value of signal obtained at the cutoff instant, T_A. Other criteria can be applied, particularly for multiple pulse accumulation and SNR consideration.

In embodiments, one might be tempted to increase β and cutoff earlier (i.e., arbitrarily reduce T_A). However, this does not necessarily always lead to enhanced SNR, and it reduces charge transfer in the process. It can also create impedance matching concerns, and possibly make it necessary to have a high-speed buffer. That is, reducing T_A and C is shown below to decrease SNR. Nevertheless, some gain might be achieved by reducing T_A to .75 for $\beta = 2.6$, if maximum voltage is the goal.

In embodiments, in order to maximize SNR, consider the following. The power in white noise can be found from:

$$\sigma^2 = N_0 \int_0^{\infty} h^2(\lambda) d\lambda \qquad \text{EQ. (39)}$$

$$\sigma^2 = N_0 \int_0^{\infty} \left(\frac{e^{-2\lambda/RC}}{RC} \right) (u(t) - u(\lambda - T_A))\, d\lambda \qquad \text{EQ. (40)}$$

$$\sigma^2 = \frac{\beta N_0 \left(1 - e^{-2\beta^{-1} N_0 T_A}\right)}{2} \quad @ T_\lambda \qquad \text{EQ. (41)}$$

$$\beta = (RC)^{-1}$$

Notice that σ^2 is a function of RC.

The signal power is calculated from:

$$(V_0(t))^2 = \left(\frac{1}{1 + (\beta^{-1} \pi f_A)^2} \right)^2 \left(\sin(\pi f_A t) - \beta^{-1} \pi f_A \cdot \cos(\pi f_A t) + \beta^{-1} \pi f_A e^{-\beta t} \right)^2$$

EQ. (42)

Hence, the SNR at T_A is given by:

$$\frac{(V_0(t))^2}{\sigma^2}\bigg|_{t=T_1} = \frac{2}{\beta N_0 (1 - e^{-2\beta N_0 T_1})} \left(\frac{1}{1 + (\beta^{-1} \pi f_A)^2} \right)^2 (\beta^{-1} \pi f_A + \beta^{-1} \pi f_A e^{-\beta T_1})^2 \qquad \text{EQ. (43)}$$

Maximizing the SNR requires solving:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \beta} \left(\frac{V_0(t)^2}{\sigma^2} \right) = 0 \qquad \text{EQ. (44)}$$

Solving the SNR_{max} numerically yields β values that are ever decreasing but with a diminishing rate of return.

As can be seen in FIG. 170, in embodiments, $\beta = 2.6$ for the maximum voltage response, which corresponds to a normalized SNR relative to an ideal matched filter of 0.431. However, in embodiments, selecting a β of $1/10$ the β, which optimizes voltage, produces a

superior normalized SNR of 0.805 (about 80.5% efficiency) This is a gain in SNR performance of about 2.7dB.

In certain embodiments, it turns out that for an ideal matched filter the optimum sampling point corresponding to correlator peak is precisely T_A.

However, in embodiments, for the RC processor, the peak output of occurs at approximately 0.75 T_A for large β (i.e., $\beta = 2.6$). That is because the impulse response is not perfectly matched to the carrier signal. However, as β is reduced significantly, the RC processor response approaches the efficiency of the finite time integrating processor response in terms of SNR performance. As β is lowered, the optimal SNR point occurs closer to T_A, which simplifies design greatly. Embodiments of the present invention provides excellent energy accumulation over T_A for low β, particularly which simplicity is valued.

5.1 Charge Transfer and Correlation

The basic equation for charge transfer is:

$$\frac{dq}{dt} = C\frac{dv}{dt}, \text{ (assuming C constant over time)} \qquad \text{EQ. (45)}$$

$$q = CV$$

Similarly the energy u stored by a capacitor can be found from:

$$u = \int_0^q \frac{q_x}{C}\, dq_x = \frac{q^2}{2C} \qquad \text{EQ. (46)}$$

From EQs. (45) and (46):

$$u = \frac{Cv^2}{2} \qquad \text{EQ. (47)}$$

Thus, the charge stored by a capacitor is proportional to the voltage across the capacitor, and the energy stored by the capacitor is proportional to the square of the charge or the voltage. Hence, by transferring charge, voltage and energy are also transferred. If little charge is transferred, little energy is transferred, and a proportionally small voltage results unless C is lowered.

The law of conversation of charge is an extension of the law of the conservation of energy. EQ. (45) illustrates that if a finite amount of charge must be transferred in an infinitesimally short amount of time then the voltage, and hence voltage squared, tends toward infinity. The situation becomes even more troubling when resistance is added to the equation. Furthermore,

$$V_c = \frac{1}{C}\int_0^{T_A} i dt \qquad \text{EQ. (48)}$$

This implies an infinite amount of current must be supplied to create the infinite voltage if T_A is infinitesimally small. Clearly, such a situation is impractical, especially for a device without gain.

In most radio systems, the antenna produces a small amount of power available for the first conversion, even with amplification from an LNA. Hence, if a finite voltage and current restriction do apply to the front end of a radio then a conversion device, which is an impulse sampler, must by definition possess infinite gain. This would not be practical for a switch. What is usually approximated in practice is a fast sample time, charging a small capacitor, then holding the value acquired by a hold amplifier, which preserves the voltage from sample to sample.

The analysis that follows shows that given a finite amount of time for energy transfer through a conversion device, the impulse response of the ideal processor, which transfers energy to a capacitor when the input

voltage source is a sinusoidal carrier and possesses a finite source impedance, is represented by embodiments of the present invention. If a significant amount of energy can be transferred in the sampling process then the tolerance on the charging capacitor can be reduced, and the requirement for a hold amplifier is significantly reduced or even eliminated.

In embodiments, the maximum amount of energy available over a half sine pulse can be found from:

$$u = \int_0^{T_A} S_i^2(t)dt = \frac{A^2 T_A}{2} \qquad \text{EQ. (49)}$$

This points to a correlation processor or matched filter processor. If energy is of interest then a useful processor, which transfers all of the half sine energy, is revealed in EQ. (48), where T_A is an aperture equivalent to the half sine pulse. In embodiments, EQ. (49) provides the clue to an optimal processor.

Consider the following equation sequence.

$$\int_0^{\infty} h(\tau)S_i(t-\tau)d\tau \Rightarrow \int_0^{T_A} kS_i^2(T_A-\tau)d\tau \Rightarrow \int_{-0}^{T_A} S_i^2(t)dt$$

EQ. (50)

Where $h(\vartheta) = S_i(t-\tau)$ and $t = T_{A-}\vartheta$.

This is the matched filter equation with the far most right hand side revealing a correlator implementation, which is obtained by a change of variables as indicated. The matched filter proof for $h(\tau) = S_i(T_A - \tau)$ is provided in sub-section 8.4 below. Note that the correlator form of the matched filter is exactly a statement of the desired signal energy. Therefore a matched filter/correlator accomplishes acquisition of all the energy available across a finite duration aperture. Such a matched

filter/correlator can be implemented as shown in FIG. 171.

In embodiments, when optimally configured, the example matched filter/correlator of FIG. 171 operates in synchronism with the half sine pulse $S_i(t)$ over the aperture T_A. Phase skewing and phase roll will occur for clock frequencies, which are imprecise. Such imprecision can be compensated for by a carrier recovery loop, such as a Costas Loop. A Costas Loop can develop the control for the acquisition clock, which also serves as a sub-harmonic carrier. However, phase skew and non-conherency does not invalidate the optimal form of the processor provided that the frequency or phase errors are small, relative to $T^{-1}A$. Non-coherent and differentially coherent processors may extract energy from both I and Q with a complex correlation operation followed by a rectifier or phase calculator. It has been shown that phase skew does not alter the optimum SNR processor formulation. The energy which is not transferred to I is transferred to Q and vice versa when phase skew exists. This is an example processor for a finite duration sample window with finite gain sampling function, where energy or charge is the desired output.

A matched filter/correlator embodiment according to the present invention might be too expensive and complicated to build for some applications. In such cases, however, other processes and processors according to embodiments of the invention can be used. The approximation to the matched filter/correlator embodiment shown in FIG. 172 is just one embodiment that can be used in such instances. The finite time integrator embodiment of FIG. 172 requires only a switch and an integrator. Sub-section 6 below shows that this embodiment of the present invention has only a 0.9ldB difference in SNR compared to the matched filter/correlator embodiment.

Another very low cost and easy to build embodiment of the present invention is the RC processor. This embodiment, shown in FIG. 173,

utilizes a very low cost integrator or capacitor as a memory across the aperture. If C is suitable chosen for this embodiment, its performance approaches that of the matched filter/correlator embodiment, shown in FIG. 171. Notice the inclusion of the source impedance, R, along with the switch and capacitor. This simple embodiment nevertheless can approximate the optimum energy transfer of the matched filter/correlator embodiment if properly designed.

When maximum charge is transferred, the voltage across the capacitor 17304 in PIG. 173 is maximized over the aperture period for a specific RC combination.

Using EQs. (45) and (48) yields:

$$q = C \cdot \frac{1}{C} \int_0^{T_A} i_c dt \qquad \text{EQ. (51)}$$

If it is accepted that an infinite amplitude impulse with zero time duration is not available or practical, due to physical parameters of capacitors like ESR, inductance and breakdown voltages, as well as currents, then EQ. (51) reveals the following important considerations for embodiments of the invention:

- The transferred charge, q, is influenced by the amount of time available for transferring the charge;
- The transferred charge, q, is proportional to the current available for charging the energy storage device; and
- Maximization of charge, q, is a function of i_c, C, and T_A.

Therefore, it can be shown that for embodiments:

$$q_{max} = Cv_{max} = C\left[\frac{1}{C}\int_0^{T_A} i_c dt\right]_{max} \qquad \text{(EQ. 52)}$$

The impulse response for the RC processing network was found in subsection 5.2 below to be;

$$h(t) = \frac{e^{\frac{-\tau}{RC}}}{RC}[u(\tau) - u(\tau - T_A)] \qquad \text{EQ. (53)}$$

Suppose that T_A is constrained to be less than or equal to ½ cycle of the carrier period. Then, for a synchronous forcing function, the voltage across a capacitor is given by EQ. (54).

$$V_0(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{t} \sin(\pi f_A \tau) \cdot \frac{e^{\frac{-(t-\tau)}{RC}}}{RC}\, d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (54)}$$

Maximizing the charge, q, requires maximizing EQ. (37) with respect to t and β.

$$\frac{\partial^2 V_0(t)}{\partial t\, \partial \beta} = 0 \qquad \text{EQ. (55)}$$

It is easier, however, to set R = 1, T_A = 1, A = 1, $f_A = T_A^{-1}$ and then calculate $q = cV_0$ from the previous equations by recognizing that $q = \frac{\beta^{-1}}{R} V_0 = cV_0$, which produces a normalized response.

FIG. 174 illustrates that increasing C is preferred in embodiments of the invention. It can be seen in FIG. 174 that as C increases (i.e., as ∃ decreases) the charge transfer also increases. This is what is to be expected based on the optimum SNR solution. Hence, for embodiments of the present invention, an optimal SNR design results in optimal charge transfer. As C is increased, bandwidth considerations should he taken

into account.

In embodiments, EQ. (49) establishes T_A as the entire half sine for an optimal processor. However, in embodiments, optimizing jointly for t and β reveals that the RC processor response creates an output across the energy storage capacitor that peaks for $t_{max} \cong .75T_A$, and $\beta_{max} \cong 2.6$, when the forcing function to the network is a half sine pulse.

In embodiments, if the capacitor of the RC processor embodiment is replaced by an ideal integrator then $t_{max} \rightarrow T_A$.

$$\beta T_A \simeq 1.95 \qquad \text{EQ. (56)}$$

where $\beta = (RC)^{-1}$

For example, for a 2.45 GHz signal and a source impedance of 50Ω, EQ. (56) above suggests the use of a capacitor of ≅2pf. This is the value of capacitor for the aperture selected, which permits the optimum voltage peak for a single pulse accumulation. For practical realization of the present invention, the capacitance calculated by EQ. (56) is a minimum capacitance. SNR is not considered optimized at $\beta T_A \simeq 1.95$. As shown earlier, a smaller β yields better SNR and better charge transfer. In embodiments, as discussed below, it turns out that charge can also be optimized if multiple apertures are used for collecting the charge.

In embodiments, for the ideal matched filter/correlator approximation, βT_A is constant and equivalent for both consideration of optimum SNR and optimum charge transfer, and charge is accumulated over many apertures for most practical designs. Consider the following example, $\beta = .25$, and $T_A = 1$.

Thus $\beta T_A = .25$. At 2.45 GHz, with R=50Ω, C can be calculated from:

$$C \geq \frac{T_A}{R(25)} \geq 16.3pf \qquad \text{EQ. (57)}$$

The charge accumulates over several apertures, and SNR is simultaneously optimized melding the best of two features of the present invention. Checking CV for $\beta\, T_A \simeq 1.95$ vs. $\beta\, T_A = .25$ confirms that charge is optimized for the latter.

5.2 Load Resistor Consideration

The general forms of the differential equation and transfer function, described above, for embodiments of the present invention are the same as for a case involving a load resistor, R_L, applied across capacitor, C. FIG. 175A illustrates an example RC processor embodiment 17502 of the present invention having a load resistance 17504 across a capacitance 17506.

Consider RC processing embodiment 17502 (without initial conditions).

EQ. (33) becomes:

$$H(s) = \frac{1 - e^{-sT_A}}{s}\left(\frac{1}{sCR + k}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (58)}$$

$$k = \left(R/R_L + 1\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (59)}$$

$$h(t) = \left(\frac{e^{-\frac{t \cdot k}{RC}}}{RC}\right)\left[u(t) - (t - T_A)\right] \qquad \text{EQ. (60)}$$

It should be clear that R_L 17504, and therefore k, accelerate the

exponential decay cycle.

$$V_0(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{t} \sin(\pi f_s \tau) \cdot \frac{e^{-\frac{k(t-\tau)}{RC}}}{RC} \, d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (61)}$$

$$V_0(t) = \left(\frac{1}{k^2 + (\pi f_A)^2}\right) \left[k \cdot \sin(\pi f_A t) - \pi f_A RC \cdot \cos(\pi f_A t) + RCe^{-\frac{kt}{RC}}\right] \quad 0 \le t \le T_A$$

EQ.(62)

This result is valid only over the acquisition aperture. After the switch is opened, the final voltage that occurred at the sampling instance $t \cong T_A$ becomes an initial condition for a discharge cycle across R_L17504. The discharge cycle possesses the following response:

$$V_D = \frac{V_A \cdot e^{-\frac{t}{R_L C}}}{R_L C} u(t - T_A) \quad \textit{(single event discharge)}$$

EQ. (63)

V_A is defined as $V_0(t \cong T_A)$. Of course, if the capacitor 17506 does not completely discharge, there is an initial condition present for the next acquisition cycle.

FIG. 175B illustrates an example implementation of the invention, modeled as a switch S, a capacitor C_S, and a load resistance R. FIG. 175D illustrates example energy transfer pulses, having apertures A, for controlling the switch S. FIG. 175C illustrates an example charge/discharge timing diagram for the capacitorC_S, where the capacitor C_S charges during the apertures A, and discharge between the apertures A.

Equations 63.1 through 63.15 derive a relationship between the capacitance of the capacitor $C_S(C_S(R))$, the resistance of the resistor R, the duration of the aperture A (aperture width), and the frequency of the energy transfer pulses (freq LO). Equation 63.11 illustrates that optimum

energy transfer occurs when x = 0.841. Based on the disclosure herein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will realize that values other that 0.841 can be utilized.

$$\phi = \frac{1}{C}\int i(t)\partial t + Ri(t) \qquad \text{EQ. (63.1)}$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\phi = \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left[\frac{1}{C}\int i(t)\partial t + Ri(t)\right] \qquad \text{EQ. (63.2)}$$

$$\phi = \frac{i(t)}{C_s} + \frac{R\partial i(t)}{\partial t} \qquad \text{EQ. (63.3)}$$

$$\phi = \frac{1}{C_s} + R \cdot s \qquad \text{EQ. (63.4)}$$

$$s = \frac{-1}{C_s \cdot R}, \text{ by definition: } i_{out}(t) = \frac{V_{C_s}init}{R} \qquad \text{EQ. (63.5)}$$

$$i(t) = \left(\frac{V_{C_s}init}{R}\right) \cdot e^{\left(\frac{-t}{C_s \cdot R}\right)} \qquad \text{EQ. (63.6)}$$

$$V_{out}(t) = R \cdot i(t) = V_{C_s}init \cdot e\left(\frac{-t}{C_s \cdot R}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (63.7)}$$

Maximum power transfer occurs when:

$$Power\_Final = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \cdot Peak\_Power \qquad \text{EQ. (63.8)}$$

$$Power\_Peak = \frac{\left(V_{C_s}\,peak\right)^2}{R} \qquad \text{EQ. (63.9)}$$

$$Power\_Final = \frac{\left(x \cdot V_{C_s}\,peak\right)^2}{R} \qquad \text{EQ. (63.10)}$$

$$\frac{\left(x \cdot V_{C_s}\,peak\right)^2}{R} = \frac{\left(V_{C_s}\,peak\right)^2}{R} \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \text{ yields } x = 0.841 \qquad \text{EQ. (63.11)}$$

Let $V_{Cs}init = 1$, then $V_{out}(t) = 0.841$ when

$$t = \frac{1}{freqLO} - Aperture\_Width\,. \qquad \text{EQ. (63.12)}$$

$$0.841 = 1 \cdot e^{\left(\frac{\frac{1}{freqLO} - Aperture\_Width}{C_s \cdot R}\right)} \qquad \text{EQ. (63.13)}$$

$$\ln(0.841) = \left(\frac{\frac{1}{freqLO} - Aperture\_Width}{C_s \cdot R}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (63.14)}$$

$$C_s(R) = \left(\frac{\frac{1}{freqLO} - Aperture\_Width}{-\ln(0.841) \cdot R}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (63.15)}$$

6. Signal-To-Noise Ratio Comparison of the Various Embodiments

The prior sub-sections described the basic SNR definition and the SNR of an optimal matched filter/correlator processor according to embodiments of the present invention. This sub-section section describes the SNR of additional processor embodiments of the present invention and compares their SNR with the SNR of a optimal matched filter/correlator embodiment. The description in this sub-section is based on calculations relating to single apertures and not accumulations of multiple aperture averages. Since SNR is a relative metric, this method is useful for comparing different embodiments of the present invention.

EQ. (65), which can be obtained from EQ. (64), represents the output SNR for a single aperture embodiment assuming a constant envelope sine wave input. The results could modify according to the auto-correlation function of the input process, however, over a single carrier half cycle, this relationship is exact.

$$SNR_{opt} \triangleq \frac{1}{N_0}\int_0^{\infty} S_i^2(t_0 - \tau)\, d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (64)}$$

$$SNR_{opt} \triangleq \frac{T_A A^2}{2N_0} \quad \text{(single aperture case)} \qquad \text{EQ. (65)}$$

The description that follows illustrates the SNR for three processor embodiments of the present invention for a given input waveform. These embodiments are:

- An Example Optimal Matched Filter/Correlator Processor Embodiment;
- An Example Finite Time Integrator processor Embodiment; and
- An Example RC Processor Embodiment

The relative value of the SNR of these three embodiments is accurate for

purposes of comparing the embodiments. The absolute SNR may be adjusted according to the statistic and modulation of the input process and its complex envelope.

Consider an example finite time integrator processor, such as the one illustrated in FIG. 164B. The impulse response of the finite time integrator processor is given by EQ. (66):

$$h(t) = k, \ 0 \le t \le T_s \qquad \text{EQ. (66)}$$

Where k is defined as an arbitrary constant.

The output of the finite time integrator processor, $y(t)$ is found from the input, $x(t)$ using:

$$y(t) = \int_{t-T_s}^{t} x(u)\, du \qquad \text{EQ. (67)}$$

A change of variables yields EQ. (68):

$$y(t-\tau) = \int_{t-\tau-T_s}^{t-\tau} x(v)\, dv \qquad \text{EQ. (68)}$$

The output auto correlation then becomes that shown in EQ. (69):

$$R_y(\tau) = \int_{t-T_s}^{t} du \int_{t-\tau-T_s}^{t-\tau} R_x(u-v)\, dv \qquad \text{EQ. (69)}$$

which leads to:

$$R_x(u-v) = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_x(\omega)\, e^{j\omega(u-v)} d\omega \qquad \text{EQ. (70)}$$

This Fourier transform may be substituted into the expression for $R_y(\tau)$, in EQ. (71), which becomes:

$$R_y(\tau) = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_x(\omega)d\omega \int_{-T_A}^{0} e^{j\omega u} du \int_{\tau-T_A}^{\tau} e^{-j\omega v} dv \qquad \text{EQ. (71)}$$

$$R_y(\tau) = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_x(\omega)\left[\frac{e^{j\omega}\left(1-e^{-j\omega T_A}\right)}{j\omega}\right]\left[\frac{e^{-j\omega(\tau-\tau)}\left(1-e^{-j\omega T_A}\right)}{j\omega}\right] d\omega$$

EQ. (72)

$$\therefore S_y(\omega) = S_x(\omega)\frac{\sin^2 \omega T_A/2}{(\omega/2)^2} \qquad \text{EQ. (73)}$$

$S_y(\omega)$ is the power spectral density at the output of the example finite time integrator, whose integration aperture is T_A and whose input power spectrum is defined by $S_y(\omega)$. For the case of wide band noise:

$$S_{yn}(\omega) = \frac{N_0 \sin^2 \omega T_A/2}{2\pi \quad (\omega/2)^2} \qquad \text{EQ. (74)}$$

The total noise power across the band can be found from EQ. (75):

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_{yn}(\omega)d\omega = \frac{N_0}{2\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\sin^2(\omega T_A/2)}{(\omega/2)^2}\, d\omega = T_A N_0 \qquad \text{EQ. (75)}$$

This result can be verified by EQ. (76):

$$\overline{\overline{Y^2}} = N_0\int_0^{\infty} h^2(\tau)\, d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (76)}$$

This signal power over a single aperture is obtained by EQ. (77):

$$y(t)^2 = \left(2A\int_0^{T_A/2} \sin(\omega t)dt\right)^2 \qquad \text{EQ. (77)}$$

Choosing A=1, the finite time integrator output SNR becomes:

$$SNR_{ISI} = \frac{4T_A}{\pi^2 N_0} \qquad \text{EQ. (78)}$$

An example RC filter can also be used to model an embodiment of the present invention. This mean squared output of a linear system may be found

from EQ. (79):

$$\overline{Y^2} = \int_0^\infty d\tau_1 \int_0^\infty R_x(\tau_A - \tau_1)h(\tau_1)h(\tau_2)\, d\tau_2 \qquad \text{EQ. (79)}$$

For the case of input AWGN:

$$R_{xx}(\tau) = N_0\delta(\tau) \qquad \text{EQ. (80)}$$

$$\overline{Y^2} = N_0 \int_0^\infty d\tau_1 \int_0^\infty \delta(\tau_2 - \tau_1)h(\tau_1)h(\tau_2)\, d\tau_2 \qquad \text{EQ. (81)}$$

$$\overline{Y_n^2} = N_0 \int_0^\infty h^2(\tau)\, d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (82)}$$

This leads to the result in EQ. (83):

$$H(s) = \frac{1/RC}{s + 1/RC} * \left(\frac{1 - e^{-sT_\lambda}}{s}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (83)}$$

R is the resistor associated with processor source, and C is the energy storage capacitor.

Therefore;

$$h(t) = \frac{1}{RC} e^{-t/RC}\ (u(t) - u(t - T_\lambda)) \qquad \text{EQ. (84)}$$

And finally:

$$\overline{Y_n^2} = \frac{N_0}{2RC}\left(1 - e^{-\left(2N_0 T/RC\right)}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (85)}$$

The detailed derivation for the signal voltage at the output to the RC filter is provided in sub-section 5 above. The use of the β parameter is also described in sub-section 5. Hence, the $\mathrm{SNR_{RC}}$ is given by:

$$SNR_{RC} = \frac{2(V_0(t_s))^2}{\beta N_0} \quad T_A = 1, \quad A = 1 \qquad \text{EQ. (86)}$$

Illustrative SNR performance values of the three example processor embodiments of the present invention are summarized in the table below:

Example Matched Filter	Performance Relative to the Performance of an Optimal Matched Filter Embodiment
$SNR_{MF} = \frac{T_A}{2N_0}$	0dB
Example Integrator Approximate	
$SNR_{INT} = \frac{4T_A}{\pi^2 N_0}$	-.91dB
Example RC Approximate (3 example cases for reference)	
$SNR_{RC} = \frac{V_0(t)^2 \cdot 2}{\beta N_0} \cong \frac{.2142}{N_0}$	-3.7dB, at $T_A = 1$, $\beta = 2.6$
$SNR_{RC} \cong \frac{.377}{N_0}$	-1.2dB, at $T_A = .75$, $\beta = 2.6$
$SNR_{RC} \cong \frac{.405}{N_0}$	-.91dB at $T_A = 1$, $\beta \leq .25$

Notice that as the capacitor becomes larger, the RC processor behaves like a finite time integrator and approximates its performance. As described above in sub-section 5, with a β of 0.25, a carrier signal of 2450 MHz, and R = 50Ω, the value for *C* becomes C≥16.3*pf.*

FIG. 176 illustrates the output voltage waveforms for all three processor embodiments. (Note that two curves are shown for the RC correlator processor, ∃=2.6 and ∃=0.25). FIG. 177 A illustrates the relative SNR's over the aperture.

6.2 Carrier Offset and Phase Skew Characteristics of Embodiments of the Present Invention

FIG. 177B illustrates some basic matched filter waveforms that are common to some communications applications. The first waveform 17750 is a baseband rect function. Since this waveform is symmetric it is easy to visualize the time reversed waveform corresponding to the ideal matched filter impulse response, $h(t)$, which is also a rect function:

$$h(t) * S_i(t-\tau) \int_{t_0}^{t_1} S_i(t-\tau)h(t)dt \qquad \text{EQ. (86.1)}$$

The second waveform 17760 illustrates the same rect function envelope at passband (RF) and it's matched filter impulse response. Notice the sine function phase reversal corresponding to the required time axis flip. FIG. 177C shows a waveform 17770. Waveform 17770 is a single half sine pulse whose time reversed representation is identical. This last impulse response would be optimal but as pointed out earlier may be difficult to implement exactly. Fortunately, an exact replica is not required.

FIG. 177D illustrates some exemplary approaches for a complex matched filter/correlator processor applied to a variety of waveforms. As shown in FIG. 177D, approaches 17780 and 17785 are classical ways to producing a complex matched filter/correlator processor. FIG. 177E shows approach 17790. Approach 17790 shows one embodiment of a complex matched filter/correlator processor implemented with the UFT as the processor. The only difference in the UFT approach 17790 is the duration of the pulse envelope. The fact that the gating pulse is small compared to other applications for a correlator is of little consequence to the complex baseband processor. When there is no phase skew then all of the correlated energy is transferred to the I output. When there is a phase skew then a portion of the aliased down converted energy is transferred to the I output and the remainder to the Q. All of the correlated energy is still available, in its optimally filtered form, for final processing in the BB processor.

The fact that a non-coherent processor is used or a differentially coherent BB processor used in lieu of a coherent Costas Loop in no way diminishes the contribution of the UFT correlator effect obtained by selecting the optimal aperture T_A based on matched filter theory.

Consider FIG. 177E which illustrates an aperture with a phase shifted sine function. In addition, a derivation is provided which indicates that the aperture with phase skew, as referenced to the half sine function, can be represented by the fundamental correlator kernel multiplied by a constant. This provides insight into the interesting SNR properties of the UFT which are based on matched filter principles over the aperture regardless of phase skew ϕ.

Moreover, Section IV, part 5.1 above illustrates that a complex UFT downconverter which utilizes a bandpass filter actually resembles the optimal matched filter/correlator kernel in complex form with the in phase result scaled by cosϕ and the quadrature phase component scaled by sinϕ. This process preserves all the energy of the downconverter signal envelope (minus system loses) with a part of the energy in I and the remainder in Q.

7. Multiple Aperture Embodiments of the Present Invention

The above sub-sections describe single aperture embodiments of the present invention. That is, the above sub-sections describe the acquisition of single half sine waves according to embodiments of the invention. Other embodiments of the present invention are also possible, however, and the present invention can be extended to other waveform partitions that capture multiple half sine waves. For example, capturing two half sine waves provides twice the energy compared to capturing only a single half sine. Capturing *n* half sines provides *n* times the energy, et cetera, until sub harmonic sampling is no longer applicable. The invention is directed to other embodiments as well. Of course, the matched filter waveform requires a different correlating aperture for each new *n*. This aspect of the present invention is illustrated in FIGS. 178A and 178B.

In the example of FIG. 178B, the sample aperture window is twice as long as the examples in the previous sub-sections. The matched filter impulse response in FIG. 178B is bipolar to accommodate a full sine cycle. The embodiment of this example can be implemented, for example, with a rectangular bipolar function (Haar's Wavelet) gating device.

Fourier transforming the components for the example processor yields the results shown in FIG. 179 and EQ. (87).

$$S(f) \cong \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{Af_s T_A}{2} \left[\frac{\sin(\pi(nf_s - Nf_s)T_A)}{(\pi(nf_s - Nf_s)T_A)} + \frac{\sin(\pi nf_s + Nf_s)T_A)}{(\pi(nf_s + Nf_s)T_A)} \right] \delta(f - nf_s)$$

EQ. (87)

The transform of the periodic, sampled, signal is first given a Fourier series representation (since the Fourier transform of a power signal does not exist in strict mathematical sense) and each term in the series is transformed sequentially to produce the result illustrated. Notice that outside of the desired main lobe aperture response that certain harmonics are nulled by the (sinx)/x response. Even those harmonics, which are not completely nulled, are reduced by the side lobe attenuation. Some sub-harmonics and super-harmonics are eliminated or attenuated by the frequency domain nulls and side lobes of the bipolar matched filter/correlator processor, which is a remarkable result.

Theoretically, arbitrary impulse responses may be constructed in the manner above, particularly if weighting is applied across the aperture or if multiple apertures are utilized to create a specific Fourier response. FIR filters and convolvers may be constructed by extending the aperture and utilizing the appropriate weighting factors. Likewise, disjoint or staggered apertures may be constructed to provide a particular desired impulse response. These apertures can be rearranged and tuned 'on the fly'.

FIG. 180 (I/Q Bipolar Aperture for 2.4 - 2.5 GHz 3rd Harmonic Down Converter Application) and FIG. 181 (Down Converted I/Q Waveforms-Slight Carrier Offset) illustrate the results from an actual circuit design and simulation targeting the 2.4 - 2.5 GHz ISM band and implementing a bipolar weighted aperture. FIG. 180 illustrates actual gating pulses, which form the apertures for I-, I+, Q-, and Q+. FIG. 181 illustrates the baseband I and Q outputs corresponding to the down converter. In embodiments, the sequence I-, I+, Q-, and Q+ apertures are repeated every three carrier cycles, nominally. Hence, out of six sine

carrier segments, four are captured. Conversion losses well below 10dB are possible with this embodiment of the present invention.

8. Mathematical Transform Describing Embodiments of the Present Invention

8.1 Overview

The operation of the present invention represents a new signal-processing paradigm. Embodiments of the invention can be shown to be related to particular Fourier sine and cosine transforms. Hence, the new term UFT transform is utilized to refer to the process. As already stated, in embodiments of the present invention can be viewed as a matched filter or correlator operation, which in embodiments is normally applied recursively to the carrier signal at a sub-harmonic rate. A system equation may be written to describe this operation, assuming a rectangular sample aperture and integrators as operators, as shown in FIG. 182 and EQ. (88). The process integrates across an acquisition aperture then stores that value, or a significant portion thereof, to be accumulated with the next aperture. Hence, energy from the input is acquired during T_A and held for $T_S - T_A$ until the next acquisition.

$$D_n \triangleq \sum_{n=1}^{k} \int_{nT_S}^{nT_S+T_A} \left(u\left(t-nT_S\right)-u\left(t-\left(nT_S+T_A\right)\right)\right)\cdot A_n \sin\left(\omega t+\phi_{(n-\ell)}\right)dt$$
$$-\alpha \sum_{n=1}^{k} \int_{(n-\ell)T_S}^{(n-\ell)T_S+T_A} \left(u\left(t-(n-\ell)T_S\right)-u\left(t-\left(n-(1-\ell)\right)T_S+T_A\right)\right)\cdot A_{(n-\ell)} S_i\left(\omega t+\phi_{(n-\ell)}\right)dt$$

EQ. (88)

where:

T_A is the aperture duration;

T_S is the sub-harmonic sample period;

k is the total number of collected apertures;

ℓ is the sample memory depth;

$\forall$ is the UFT leakage coefficient;

A_n is the amplitude weighting on the nth aperture due to modulation, noise, etc.; and

$\vee_n$ is the phase domain shift of nth aperture due to modulation, noise, carrier offset, etc.

D_n represents the UFT transform applicable to embodiments of the invention. The first term defines integration over a rectangular segment of the carrier signal of T_A time duration. k pulses are summed to form a memory of the recursively applied kernel. The second term in the equation provides for the fact that practical implementations possess finite memory. Hence, embodiments of the present invention are permitted to leak after a fashion by selecting α and ℓ. This phenomena is reflected in the time variant differential equation, EQ. (31), derived in sub-section 5. In embodiments, for a perfect zero order data hold function, $\alpha = 0$.

8.2 The Kernel for Embodiments of the Invention

The UFT kernel applicable to embodiments of the invention is given by EQ. (89):

$$D_1 = \int_0^{T_A} (u(t) - u(t - T_A)) \cdot A \sin(\omega t + \phi) dt \qquad \text{EQ. (89)}$$

EQ. 89 accounts for the integration over a single aperture of the carrier signal with arbitrary phase, ϕ, and amplitude, A. Although A and ϕ are

shown as constants in this equation, they actually may vary over many (often hundreds or thousands) of carrier cycles. Actually, $\phi(t)$ and $A(t)$ may contain the modulated information of interest at baseband. Nevertheless, over the duration of a pulse, they may be considered as constant.

8.3 Waveform Information Extraction

Ever since Nyquist developed general theories concerning waveform sampling and information extraction, researchers and developers have pursued optimum sampling techniques and technologies. In recent years, many radio architectures have embraced these technologies as a means to an end for ever more 'digital like' radios. Sub sampling, IF sampling, syncopated sampling, etc., are all techniques employed for operating on the carrier to extract the information of interest. All of these techniques share a common theory and common technology theme, i.e., Nyquist's theory and ideal impulse samplers. Clearly, Nyquist's theory is truly ideal, from a theoretical perspective, while ideal impulse samplers are pursued but never achieved.

Consider the method of developing an impulse sample using functions with shrinking apertures, as illustrated in FIG. 183. The method illustrated in FIG. 183 utilizes a pulse shape, for example a normalized Gaussian, a modified sine, or some other suitable type, and permits the pulse width to shrink as the peak amplitude grows. As the pulse width shrinks, the area of the pulse becomes unity. These pulse generation methods are formulated

using distribution mathematics techniques. Typically, such formulations require the assumption that causality is violated as is illustrated by the precursors in FIG. 183. Hence, such pulses are not practical because they are non-causal. In addition, since impulse samplers are implemented to store the sample value at an instantaneous waveform point, they typically utilize a sample and hold approach, which typically implies the charging of a capacitor. As would be known to persons skilled in the relevant arts given the discussion herein, parasitics can present significant charging concerns for such pulses because of the relationships represented by EQ. (90) and EQ. (91).

$$\frac{dq}{dt} = C\frac{dv}{dt} \text{ (Charge Differential)} \qquad \text{EQ. (90)}$$

$$u = \int_0^q \frac{q_x}{c} = dq_x = \frac{q^2}{2c} = \frac{Cv^2}{2} \text{ (Energy)} \qquad \text{EQ. (91)}$$

As would be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant arts given the discussion herein, an arbitrary capacitance, c, cannot be charged in an infinitesimally short time period without an infinite amount of energy. Even approximations to an ideal impulse therefore can place unrealistic demands on analog sample acquisition interface circuits in terms of parasitic capacitance vs. pulse width, amplitude, power source, etc. Therefore, a trade-off is typically made concerning some portion of the mix.

The job of a sample and hold circuit is to approximate an ideal impulse sampler followed by a memory. There are limitations in practice, however. A hold capacitor of significant value must be selected in order to store the sample without droop between samples. This requires a healthy charging current and a buffer, which isolates the capacitor in between samples, not to mention a capacitor, which is not 'leaky,' and a buffer

without input leakage currents. In general, ideal impulse samplers are very difficult to approximate when they must operate on RF waveforms, particularly if IC implementations and low power consumption are required.

The ideal sample extraction process is mathematically represented in EQ. (92) by the sifting function.

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t)\delta\left(t - T_A/2\right)\,dt = x\left(\frac{T_A}{2}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (92)}$$

where: $\frac{T_A}{2}$ ≙ Sample Time; $x(t)$ ≙ Sampled Function; and $\delta(t)$ ≙ Impulse

Sample Function.

Suppose now that:

$$x(t) = A\sin(t+\phi) \qquad \text{EQ. (93)}$$

then:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} A\sin(t+\phi)\delta\left(t - T_A/2\right)dt = A\sin\left(T_A/2 + \phi\right)$$

$$= A\cos(\phi)\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\sin(t)\delta\left(t - T_A/2\right)dt + A\sin(\phi)\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\cos(t)\delta\left(t - T_A/2\right)\,dt$$

EQ. (94)

$$= A\cos(\phi)\sin\left(T_A/2\right) = A\cos(\phi)\,T_A = \pi \qquad \text{EQ. (95)}$$

This represents the sample value acquired by an impulse sampler operating on a carrier signal with arbitrary phase shift ϕ. EQ. (95) illustrates that the equivalence of representing the output of the sampler operating on a signal, $X(t)$ without phase shift, ϕ, weighted by $\cos\phi$, and the original sampled $X(t)$ which does have a phase shift. The additional requirement is that a time aperture of T_A corresponds to π radians.

Next, consider the UFT kernel:

$$D_1 \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (u(t) - u(t - T_A))\sin(t + \phi)dt \qquad \text{EQ. (96)}$$

Using trigonometric identities yields:

$$D_2 \triangleq A\cos(\phi)\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (u(t) - u(t - T_A))\sin(t)dt \qquad \text{EQ. (97)}$$

Now the kernel does not possess a phase term, and it is clear that the aperture straddles the sine half cycle depicted in FIG. 184. In EQ. (97), $\cos\phi$ is a weighting factor on the result, which originally illustrated the non-ideal alignment of the present invention clock and carrier signal. Trigonometric identities provide a means of realigning the present invention clock and carrier signal while accounting for the output result due to phase skew.

Consider the ideal aperture of embodiments of the invention shown in FIG. 185. Notice that the ideal aperture is illustrated as possessing two equal ½ aperture components. Hence the UFT kernel for embodiments of the invention can be rewritten as:

$$D_1 \triangleq A\cos(\phi)\left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\left(u(t)-u\left(T_s/2\right)\right)\sin(t)dt+\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\left(u\left(t-T_s/2\right)-u(t-T_s)\right)\sin(t)dt\right]$$

EQ. (98)

It should also be apparent to those skilled in the relevant arts given the discussion herein that the first integral is equivalent to the second, so that;

$$D_1 = 2A\cos(\phi)\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\left(u(t)-u\left(t-T_s/2\right)\right)\sin(t)dt$$

EQ. (99)

As illustrated in FIG. 186, a property relating unit step functions and delta functions is useful. In FIG. 186, a step function is created by integrating a delta function. Therefore;

$$D_1 = 2A\cos(\phi)\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\left[\int_{-\infty}^{t}\delta(t')\,dt' - \int_{-\infty}^{t}\delta\left(t' - T_A/2\right)dt'\right]\sin(t)\,dt$$

EQ. (100)

Using the principle of integration by parts yields EQ. (101).

$$\begin{aligned} D_1 &= 2A\cos(\phi)\int_{-\infty}^{t}\cos(t')\,\delta(t')\,dt' + 2A\cos(\phi)\int_{-\infty}^{t}\cos(t')\,\delta\left(t' - T_A/2\right)dt \\ &= 2A\cos\phi\int_{-\infty}^{t}\sin(t')\delta\left(t - T_A/2\right)dt' \\ &= 2A\cos(\phi), \text{ for } T_A = \pi \end{aligned}$$

EQ. (101)

This is a remarkable result because it reveals the equivalence of the output of embodiments of the present invention with the result presented earlier for the arbitrarily phased ideal impulse sampler, derived by time sifting. That is, in embodiments, the UFT transform calculates the numerical result obtained by an ideal sampler. It accomplishes this by averaging over a specially constructed aperture. Hence, the impulse sampler value expected at $T_A/2$ implicitly derived by the UFT transform operating over an interval, T_A. This leads to the following very important implications for embodiments of the invention:

- The UFT transform is very easy to construct with existing circuitry hardware, and it produces the results of an ideal impulse sampler, indirectly, without requiring an impulse sampler.
- Various processor embodiments of the present invention reduce the variance of the expected ideal sample, over that

obtained by impulse sampling, due to the averaging process over the aperture.

8.4 Proof Statement for UFT Complex Downconverter Embodiment of the Present Invention

The following analysis utilizes concepts of the convolution property for the sampling waveform and properties of the Fourier transform to analyze the complex clock waveform for the UFT as well as the down conversion correlation process. FIG. 187 illustrates this process.

In addition *r(t)* is considered filtered, by a bandpass filter. In one exemplary embodiment, sub-optimal correlators approximate the UFT. This analysis illustrates that some performance is regained when the front-end bandpass filter is used, such that the derived correlator kernel resembles the optimal form obtained from matched filter theory. Furthermore, the analysis illustrates that the arbitrary phase shift of a carrier on which the UFT operates, does not alter the optimality of the correlator structure which can always be modeled as a constant times the optimal kernel. This is due to the fact that UFT is by definition matched to a pulse shape resembling the carrier half cycle which permits phase skew to be viewed as carrier offset rather than pulse shape distortion.

Using the pulse techniques described above, describing pulse trains, the clock signal for UFT may be written as equation 18802 of FIG. 188.

$P_c(t)\underline{\Delta}$ A basic pulse shape of the clock (gating waveform),in our case defined to have specific correlation properties matched to the half sine of the carrier waveform.

$T_S\underline{\Delta}$ Time between recursively applied gating waveforms.

$T_A\underline{\Delta}$ Width of gating waveform

In FIG. 188, $C_1(t)$ in equation 18804 and $C_Q(t)$ in equation 18806 are considered to be complex clocks shifted in phase by $T_A/2$. The received carrier is related to T_A by $f_c \approx (2T_A)^{-1}$.

Although the approximation is used, ideal carrier tracking for coherent demodulation will yield an equal sign after lock. However, this is not required to attain the excellent benefit from UFT processing. Other sections herein provide embodiments that develop expressions for C_1 and C_Q from Fourier series analysis to illustrate the components of the gating waveforms at the Carrier frequency which are harmonically related to T_S.

By the methods described above, the Fourier transform of the clock is found from:

$$C_1(f) = \Im\left\{\sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty}\delta(t-mT_s)\right\}P_s(f) \qquad \text{EQ. (102)}$$

$$C_1(f) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty}\frac{T_\Delta}{T_s}\frac{\sin(n\pi f_s T_\Delta)}{n\pi f_s T_\Delta}\cdot\delta(f-nf_s) \qquad \text{EQ. (103)}$$

C_Q possesses the same magnitude response of course but is delayed or shifted in phase and therefore may be written as:

$$C_Q(f) = C_1(f)e^{-j\pi f T_\Delta} \qquad \text{EQ. (104)}$$

When T_A corresponds to a half sine width then the above phase shift related to a $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians phase skew for C_Q relative to C_1.

In one exemplary embodiment, consider then the complex UFT processor operating on a shifted carrier for a single recursion only,

$$S_0(t) = \int_0^{T_A} r(t)C_I(t)dt + \int_{T_A-T_A/2}^{3T_A/2} r(t)C_Q(t)dt \qquad \text{EQ. (105.1)}$$

$$S_0(t) = \int_0^{T_A} (A\sin(\omega t + \phi) + n(t))C_I(t)dt + \int_{T_A-T_A/2}^{3T_A/2} (A\sin(\omega t + \phi) + n(t))C_Q(t)dt \qquad \text{EQ. (105.2)}$$

This analysis assumes that *r(t),* the input carrier plus noise, is band limited by a filter. In this case therefore the delta function comb evident in the transform of C_1 and C_Q are ignored except for the components at the carrier. Embodiments in other sections break C_1 and C_Q into a Fourier series. In this series, only the harmonic of interest would be retained when the input waveform *r(t)* is bandpass limited because all other cross correlations tend to zero. Hence,

$$S_0(t) \cong K\int_0^{T_A} (A\sin(\omega t + \phi) + n(t))\sin(\omega t)dt + K\int_{T_A-T_A/2}^{3T_A/2} (A\sin(\omega t + \phi) + n(t))\cos(\omega t)dt \qquad \text{EQ. (105.3)}$$

$$S_0(t) \cong K\int_0^{T_A} (A\sin(\omega t)\cos\phi + \cos(\omega t)\sin\phi + n(t))\sin(\omega t)dt + K\int_{T_A-T_A/2}^{3T_A/2} (A\sin(\omega t)\cos\phi + \cos(\omega t)\sin\phi + n(t))\cos(\omega t)dt \qquad \text{EQ. (105.4)}$$

The clock waveforms have been replaced by the single sine and

cosine components from the Fourier transform and Fourier series, which produce the desired result due to the fact that a front-end filter filters all other spectral components. This produces a myriad of cross correlations for the complex UFT processor. *K* is included as a scaling factor evident in the transform.

$$S_0(t) = KA\cos\phi \overbrace{\int_0^{T_A} (\sin(\omega t))^2 dt}^{optimal\ correlator} +$$

$$K\int_0^{T_A} n(t)\sin\omega t dt + KA\sin\phi \int_{T_A/2}^{3T_A/2} \overbrace{(\cos(\omega t))^2}^{optimal\ correlator} dt + K\int_{T_A/2}^{3T_A/2} n(t)\cos\omega t dt$$

EQ. (106.1)

$$\therefore S_0(t) = \left(\frac{KA\pi}{2}\cos\phi + \tilde{n}_I\right) I \text{ component} \qquad \text{EQ. (106.2)}$$

$$+\left(\frac{KA\pi}{2}\sin\phi + \tilde{n}_Q\right) Q \text{ component} \qquad \text{EQ. (106.2.1)}$$

$$\text{where } K = \left(\frac{T_A}{T_s}\frac{\sin\left(n\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}\right)}{\left(n\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}\right)}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (106.3)}$$

A and ϕ are the original components of the complex modulation envelope (amplitude and phase) for the carrier and are assumed to vary imperceptibly over the duration for T_A. What is very interesting to note is that the above equations are exactly the optimum form for the complex correlator whose pulse shape is a half sine with components weighted by cosine for I, and sine for Q. Furthermore, when an input bandpass filter is considered as a part of the system then the approximate kernels used

throughout various analyses based on the gating function become replaced by the ideal matched filter analogy. Hence, the approximation in CMOS using rectangular gating functions, which are known to cause only a 0.91 dB hit in performance if C is selected correctly, probably can be considered pessimistic if the receiver front end is filtered.

8.5 Acquisition and Hold Processor Embodiment

As illustrated in FIG. 189, embodiments of the present invention can be approximately modeled as a particular case of a sampling system. In the example model in FIG. 189, both an acquisition phase and a hold phase for each T_S cycle is shown, where:

$r(t)\triangleq$	Input Waveform RF Modulated Carrier Plus Noise
$C_A(t)\triangleq$	Present Invention Aperture Waveform Pulse Train
$\delta_H(t)\triangleq$	Holding Phase Impulse Train
$h_A(t)\triangleq$	Integrator Impulse Response of the present Invention
$h_H(t)\triangleq$	Z0DH Portion of Present Invention Impulse Response

The embodiment in FIG. 189 consists of a gating device followed by a finite time integrator, then an ideal sampler, and finally a holding filter, which accumulates and stores the energy from the acquisition phase. This is called an acquisition and hold processor. The acquisition phase of the operation is described by:

$$X(t) = C_T(t)r(t) * h_A(t) \qquad \text{EQ. (107)}$$

$$X(t) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \left(u(t - kT_s) - u(t - (kT_s + T_A))A_k(\sin(\omega_c t + \phi_k)) * h_A(t)\right)$$

EQ. (108)

The ultimate output includes the hold phase of the operation and is written as:

$$S_0(t) = (X(t)\delta_H(t)) * h_H(t) \qquad \text{EQ. (109)}$$

$$S_0(t) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} (X(t)\delta_H(t - k(T_s))) * u(t - (kT_s + T_A)) - u(t - (k+1)T_s)$$

EQ. (110)

$$T = T_s - T_A \qquad \text{EQ. (111)}$$

This embodiment considers the aperture operation as implemented with an ideal integrator and the hold operation as implemented with the ideal integrator. As shown elsewhere herein, this can be approximated by energy storage in a capacitor under certain circumstances.

The acquisition portion of the operation possesses a Fourier transform given by:

$$X_s(\omega) = \Im\{X_0(t)\} = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \overbrace{\frac{1}{2\pi T_s}\delta(\omega - k\omega_s)}^{\text{Harmonic Sifter}} \overbrace{\left(\frac{T_A}{2} e^{j\omega T_A/2} \frac{\sin(\omega T_A/2)}{\omega T_A/2}\right)}^{\text{Finite Time Integrator}} \underbrace{S_i(\omega)_C}_{\text{Original Information Spectrum Changed by C(z)}}$$

$S_i(\omega) = \Im\{r(t)\}$ (Modulated Information Spectrum)

$S_0(\omega)$ can be found in a similar manner.

$$\Im\{S_0(t)\} = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \overbrace{\frac{1}{2\pi T_s}\delta(\omega - k\omega_s)}^{\text{Harmonic Sifter}} \overbrace{\left(\frac{T}{2} e^{j\omega T_s/2} \frac{\sin(\omega T/2)}{\omega T/2}\right)}^{\text{ZOH Response}} X(\omega)$$

$T = T_s - T_A$

The example of FIG. 190 illustrates the various components of the above transform superimposed on the same graph, for a down conversion case, where T_A is chosen as a single aperture realization and the 3rd sub harmonic is used for down conversion. The analysis does not consider the affect of noise, although, it is straightforward to accomplish, particularly in the case of AWGN. The lowpass spectrum possesses nulls at $nf_{SA}, n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots$, where $f_S = (T_S - T_A)^{-1}$. This Z0DH spectral response is also present at each harmonic of f_S although it is not indicated by the graphic.

The acquisition portion of the Fourier transform yields the following an important insight:

$$X_s(\omega) = \frac{KT_A}{T_s} \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(\omega - k\omega_s) \left(e^{j\omega T_A/2} \frac{\sin\left(\omega T_A/2\right)}{\omega T_A/2} \right) \cdot S_I(\omega)_c$$

EQ. (112)

$$S_I(\omega)_c = A_k T_A e^{j\omega T_A/2} \frac{\sin\left(\omega\left(T_A/2\right)\right)}{\omega\left(T_A/2\right)} \left(\delta(\omega - \omega_c) + \delta(\omega + \omega_c)\right)$$

EQ. (113)

As should be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant arts given the discussion herein, down conversion occurs whenever $k\omega_s = \omega_c$. It is useful to find T_A. which maximizes the component of the spectrum at ω_c, which is subject to down conversion and is the desired signal. This is accomplished simply by examining the kernel.

$$\tilde{X} \triangleq \left| \frac{T_A}{T_c} \frac{\sin\left(\omega\left(T_A/2\right)\right)}{\omega\left(T_A/2\right)} \right| \qquad \text{EQ. (114)}$$

For $\omega = \omega_c$,

$$\tilde{X} = \left| \frac{T_A}{n \cdot T_c} \frac{\sin\left(\pi \frac{T_A}{T_c}\right)}{\left(\pi \frac{T_A}{T_c}\right)} \right|, \quad nT_c = T_s \text{ for Harmonic Conversion}$$

$$\therefore \tilde{X} = \frac{1}{n\pi} \sin\left(\pi \frac{T_A}{T_c}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (115)}$$

The kernel is maximized for values of $\frac{T_A}{T_c} = {}^1/_2, {}^3/_2, {}^5/_2, \ldots$

Advocates of impulse samplers might be quick to point out that letting $T_A \to 0$ maximizes the sine function. This is true, but the sine function is multiplied by T_A in the acquisition phase. Hence, a delta function that does not have infinite amplitude will not acquire any energy during the acquisition phase of the sampler process. It must possess infinite amplitude to cancel the effect of $T_A \to 0$ so that the multiplier of the sine function possesses unity weighting. Clearly, this is not possible for practical circuits.

On the other hand, embodiments of the present invention with $\frac{T_A}{T_c} = {}^1/_2, {}^3/_2, {}^5/_2, \ldots$ etc., does pass significant calculable energy during the acquisition phase. This energy is directly used to drive the energy storage element of Ƶ0DH filter or other interpolation filter, resulting in practical RF impedance circuits. The cases for ${}^{T_A}/_{T_c}$ other than ${}^1/_2$ can be represented by multiple correlators, for example, operating on multiple half sine basis.

Moreover, it has been shown that the specific gating aperture, *C(t)* does not destroy the information. Quite the contrary, the aperture design for embodiments of the present invention produces the result of the impulse sampler, scaled by a gain constant, and possessing less variance. Hence, the delta sifting criteria, above trigonometric optimization, and correlator principles all point to an aperture of $\frac{T_A}{T_c} = \frac{1}{2}$ nominal.

If other impulse responses are added around the present invention (i.e., energy storage networks, matching networks, etc.) or if the present invention is implemented by simple circuits (such as the RC processor) then in embodiments the optimal aperture can be adjusted slightly to reflect the peaking of these other embodiments. It is also of interest to note that the Fourier analysis above predicts greater DC offsets for increasing ratios of $\frac{T_A}{T_c}$.

Therefore, for various embodiments, $\frac{T_A}{T_c} = \frac{1}{2}$ is probably the best design parameter for a low DC offset system.

9. *Comparison of the UFT Transform to the Fourier Sine and Cosine Transforms*

The sine and cosine transforms are defined as follows:

$$F_s(\omega) \triangleq \int_0^\infty f(t)\sin\ \omega t\ dt\ \ \omega \geq 0 \text{ (sine transform)} \qquad \text{EQ. (116)}$$

$$F_c(\omega) \triangleq \int_0^\infty f(t)\cos\ \omega t\ dt\ \ \omega \geq 0 \text{ (cosine transform)} \qquad \text{EQ. (117)}$$

Notice that when *f(t)* is defined by EQ. (118):

$$f(t) = u(t) - u(t - T_A) \qquad \text{EQ. (118)}$$

the UFT transform kernel appears as a sine or cosine transform depending on ϕ. Hence, many of the Fourier sine and cosine transform

properties may be used in conjunction with embodiments of the present invention to solve signal processing problems.

The following sine and cosine transform properties predict the following results of embodiments of the invention:

Sine and Cosine Transform Property	Prediction of Embodiments of the Invention
Frequency Shift Property	Modulation and Demodulation Preserving Information
Time Shift Property	Aperture Values Equivalent to Constant Time Delta Time Sift.
Frequency Scale Property	Frequency Division and Multiplication

Of course many other properties are applicable as well. The subtle point presented here is that for embodiments the UFT transform does in fact implement the transform, and therefore inherently possesses these properties.

Consider the following specific example: let $f(t) = u(t) - u(t - T_A)$ and let $\omega = 2\pi f = \pi f_A = 1$.

$$\Im_s[f(t)] = \int_0^{T_A} \cos(\omega t)\, dt = \frac{1}{\omega} \sin \omega T_A = 0 \qquad \text{EQ. (119)}$$

$$\Im_s[f(t)] = \frac{1}{\omega} - \frac{1}{\omega} \cos \omega T_A = 2 \qquad \text{EQ. (120)}$$

This is precisely the result for D_{1c} *and* D_{1s}. Time shifting yields:

$$\Im_s[f_0(t + T_s) + f_0(t - T_s)] = 2F_s(\omega)\cos(T_s\omega) \text{(Time Shift Property)}$$

Let the time shift to be denoted by T_s .

$$f(t) = u(t) - u(t - T_A) \qquad \text{EQ. (121)}$$

$$f_0(t) \triangleq \frac{1}{2}(u(t + T_s) - u(t)) + \frac{1}{2}(u(t) - u(t - T_s)) \qquad \text{EQ. (122)}$$

Notice that $f_0(t)$ has been formed due to the single sided nature of the sine and cosine transforms. Nevertheless, the amplitude is adjusted by $1/2$ to

accommodate the fact that the energy must be normalized to reflect the odd function extension. Then finally:

$$\Im_c\left[f_0(t+T_s)+f_0(t-T_s)\right]=\frac{2}{2}F_c(\omega)\cos(T_s\omega)=2\cos\left(\pi T_s/T_s\right)$$

EQ. (123)

which is the same solution for phase offset obtained earlier by other means.

The implications of this transform may be far reaching when it is considered that the discrete Fourier sine and cosine transforms are originally based on the continuous transforms as follows:

$$\Im_c\{f(t)\}=\int_0^\infty f(t)\cos\omega t\ dt \qquad \text{EQ. (124)}$$

$$\Im_{DC}\{f(t)\}\ \underline{\Delta}\ \Im\{f(n)\}=\sqrt{\frac{2}{N}}\sum_{n=0}^{N}\alpha_m\alpha_n\cos\left(\frac{mn\pi}{N}\right)f(n) \qquad \text{EQ. (125)}$$

That is, the original kernel $\cos(\omega t)$ and function *f(t)* are sampled such that:

$f(n)\ \underline{\Delta}$ Sampled Version of $f(t)$

$\omega_m=2\pi_m\Delta f$

$t_n=n\Delta t$

$\Delta f\ \underline{\Delta}$ Frequency Sample Interval

$\Delta t\ \underline{\Delta}$ Time Sample Interval

Hence the new discrete cosine transform kernel is:

$$k_c(m,n)=\cos(2\pi mn\ \Delta f\Delta t)=\cos(\pi mn/n)\ \Delta f\Delta t=1/2N$$

EQ. (126)

N is the total number of accumulated samples for *m, n,* or the total record length.

In recent years, the discrete cosine transform (DCT) and discrete

sine transform (DST) have gained much recognition due to their efficiency for waveform coding compression, spectrum analysis, etc. In fact, it can he shown that these transforms can approach the efficiency of Karhunen-Loeve transforms (KLT), with minimal computational complexity. The implication is that the sifted values from D_1 could be used as DCT sample values *f(n)*. Then the DCT and DST properties will apply along with their processing architectures. In this manner, communications signals, like OFDM, could he demodulated in a computationally efficient manner. Many other signal processing applications are possible using the present invention, and the possibilities are rich and varied.

10. Conversion, Fourier Transform, and Sampling Clock Considerations

The previous sub-sections described how embodiments of the present invention involve gating functions of controlled duration over which integration can occur. This section now addresses some consideration for the controlling waveform of the gating functions.

For sub harmonic sampling:

$f_s = f_c / M$

$f_s \triangleq$ Sample Rate

$f_c \triangleq$ Carrier Frequency

$M \triangleq$ As an integer such that $0 < M < \infty$

The case M=l represents a classic down conversion scenario since $f_s = f_c$ In general though, M will vary from 3 to 10 for most practical applications.

Thus the matched filtering operation of embodiments of the present invention is applied successively at a rate, f_S, using the approach of embodiments of the present invention. Each matched filter/correlator operation represents a new sample of the bandpass waveform.

The subsequent equations illustrate the sampling concept, with an analysis base on approximations that ignore some circuit phenomena. A more rigorous analysis requires explicit transformation of the circuit impulse response. This problem can be solved by convolving in the time domain as well, as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant arts given the discussion herein. The results will be the same. The analysis presented herein is an abbreviated version of one provided above. As in the subsection 8, the acquisition portion of the present invention response is analyzed separately from the hold portion of the response to provide some insight into each. The following sub-section uses a shorthand notation for convenience.

$$X_0(t) = S_i(t)\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty}\tilde{C}(t-kT_s) \text{ (approximate output of acquisition)}$$

EQ. (127)

$X_0(t)\triangleq$ Output of Sample

$S_i[t]\triangleq$ Waveform being Sampled

$k\triangleq$ Sampling Index

$T_s\triangleq$ Sampling Interval $= f_s^{-1}$

$\tilde{C}(t-kT_s)\ \triangleq$ Quasi-Matched Filter/Correlator Sampling Aperture, which includes averaging over the Aperture.

EQ. (127) can be rewritten a:

$$X_0(t) \cong \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} S_i(kT_s) * \tilde{C}(t-kT_s) \qquad \text{EQ. (128)}$$

If $\tilde{C}$(t) possesses a very small aperture with respect to the inverse information bandwidth, $T_A \ll BW_i^{-1}$ then the sampling aperture will weight the frequency domain harmonics of f_s. The Fourier transform and the modulation property may be applied to EQ. (128) to obtain EQ. (129) (note this problem was solved above by convolving in the time domain).

$$X_0(\omega) = \left(S_i(\omega), \tilde{C}(\omega) \right) \qquad \text{EQ. (129)}$$

$$\therefore X_0(\omega) \cong \frac{K}{T_s} \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta_i(\omega - k\omega_s) \left[\frac{T_A \cdot e^{j\omega T_A/2} \sin(\omega T_A/2)}{2 \quad \omega T_A/2} \right] \cdot S_i(\omega), \qquad \text{EQ. (130)}$$

$K \triangleq$ Arbitrary Gain Constant, which includes a $1/2\pi$ factor $\omega \triangleq 2\pi f$.

Essentially, on the macroscopic frequency scale, there is a harmonic sample comb generated, which possesses components at every Nf_s for N= 1,2,3…∞, with nulls at every Z f_A, where f_A is defined as T_A^{-1}. FIG. 191 illustrates this result..

The thickness of each spike in FIG. 191 illustrates the surrounding band produced from $S_i(\omega)$. $S_i(\omega)$ is a complex transform including magnitude and phase, which can be assigned a vector representation in the time domain (i.e., I and Q components). The natural action of embodiments of the present invention, in the hold portion of the response, acts as a lowpass filter in the down conversion case, thereby reducing the levels of all the harmonic sidebands. Likewise, the up converter utilizes a bandpass matched filter to extract the desired carrier and reject unwanted images.

Notice that each harmonic including basehand possesses a replica of $S_i(\omega)$ which is in fact the original desired signal. { $S_i(\omega)$ is the original information spectrum and is shown to survive the acquisition response of the present invention (i.e., independent integration over each aperture)}. Lathi and many others pointed out that (ω) could be virtually any

harmonic function and that conversion to baseband or passband will result from such operations on $S_i(t)$.

Each discrete harmonic spectrum provides a potential down conversion source to baseband (at DC). Of course, theoretically, there cannot be a conversion of $Z \cdot f_a$ because of the spectral nulls. FIG. 191 illustrates the important relationships between f_s, f_a and the relative harmonic conversion efficiency related to the sinc^2 function harmonic comb weighting, resulting from a simple rectangular sampling aperture.

It should also be noted that in all practical cases, $f_s \gg 2 \cdot BW_i$, so hat Nyquist criteria are more than satisfied. The lowpass response of embodiments of the present invention can be ideally modeled as a zero order data hold filter, with a finite time integrator impulse response duration of $T = T_s - T_A$. The ultimate output Fourier transform is given by EQ. (131).

$$S_o(\omega) = \underbrace{\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{K}{T_s}\delta(\omega - k\omega_s)}_{\text{Harmonic Sifter}} \underbrace{\left(\frac{T}{2} e^{j\omega T/2} \frac{\sin \omega T/2}{\omega T/2}\right)}_{\text{Z0DH Response}} \cdot \underbrace{X(\omega)}_{\text{Acquisition Response}}$$

EQ. (131)

The *Z0DH* is a type of lowpass filter or sample interpolator which provides a memory in between acquisitions. Each acquisition is accomplished by a correlation over T_A, and the result becomes an accumulated initial condition for the next acquisition.

10.1 Phase Noise Multiplication

Typically, processor embodiments of the present invention sample at a sub-harmonic rate. Hence the carrier frequency and associated bandpass signal are down converted by a $M \cdot f_s$ harmonic. The harmonic generation operation can be represented with a complex phasor.

$$S_{osc}(t) \triangleq \left(e^{-j\omega_s t + \phi(t)}\right)^M \qquad \text{EQ. (132)}$$

$S_{amp}(t)$can be rewritten as:

$$S_{amp}(t) = e^{-jM\omega_s t} \cdot e^{M\phi(t)} \qquad \text{EQ. (133)}$$

ϕ(t)$\underline{\Delta}$ Phase Noise on the Conversion Clock

As EQ. (133) indicates, not only is the frequency content of the phasor multiplied by M but the phase noise is also multiplied by M. This results in an M-tuple convolution of the phase noise spectrum around the harmonic. The total phase noise power increase is approximated by EQ. (134).

$$\phi = \underline{\Delta}\, 20 \log_{10} M \text{ (Phase Noise)} \qquad \text{EQ. (134)}$$

That is, whatever the phase jitter component, ϕ(t)existing on the original sample clock at Mf_s it possesses a phase noise floor degraded according to EQ. (134).

10.2 AM-PM Conversion and Phase Noise

This section describes what the conversion constant and the output noise is for AM to PM conversion according to embodiments of the present invention, considering the noise frequency of the threshold operation. As illustrated in FIG. 192, suppose that the output of a sine signal source must be filtered and compared, in order to obtain a suitable clock signal. For cases where the equivalent input noise power of the threshold device can be considered to be much less than the input power source sine wave, a single zero crossing per cycle of sine wave can be assumed to occur. For such low noise cases, the threshold operation may be viewed as an AM to PM conversion device.

The slope at the zero crossings of a pure sine wave, $s(t) = A \sin \omega t$, can be calculated. Differentiating $s(t)$ with respect to t yields $s(t)$

$= \omega A \cos \omega t$. For $\omega A \neq 0$, the zero crossings occur at $\omega t = {}^{\pi}/_{2}, {}^{3\pi}/_{2}, {}^{5\pi}/_{2} \ldots$

$$\therefore t = \frac{1}{4f}, \frac{3}{4f}, \frac{5}{4f} \ldots \{\text{for } s(t)\} \qquad \text{EQ. (135)}$$

These zero crossings represent the points of minimum slope or crests of the original *s(t)*. The maximum slope is found at the zero crossings of. s(t) at $\omega t = 0, \pi, 2\pi, \ldots$ etc. Plugging those arguments into *s(t)* give slopes of: Slope $= \omega A, -\omega A, \omega A, -\omega A$ …etc. The time at which these zero crossings occur is given by: $\omega t = \pi, 2\pi, 3\pi \ldots t = \frac{1}{2f}, \frac{1}{f}, \frac{3}{2f}, \ldots \{for\ s(t)\}$.

It stands to reason that for the low noise power assumption, which implies one zero crossing per carrier cycle, the slope at the zero crossing will be modified randomly if a Gaussian process *(n(t))* is summed to the signal. Of course, if the change in slope of the signal is detectable, the delta time of the zero crossing is detectable, and hence phase noise is produced. The addition of noise to the signal has the effect of moving the signal up and down on the amplitude axis while maintaining a zero mean. This can be written more formally as:

$$\left|\frac{\partial\, s(t)}{\partial\, t}\right| = \omega A = \text{for } \omega\, t = n\,{}^{\pi}/_{2} \qquad \text{EQ. (136)}$$

If A is replaced by A-Δa, where Δa represents the noise deviation, then one will not always observe a zero crossing at the point of maximum slope ωA. Sometimes the zero crossing will occur at (A-Δa). This leads to the low noise approximation:

$$\omega(A - \Delta a) = \omega A \cos[\omega(t \pm \varepsilon)] \qquad \text{EQ. (137)}$$

$$\arccos\left(\frac{\frac{A - \Delta a}{A}}{\omega}\right) = t \pm \varepsilon \qquad \text{EQ. (138)}$$

The low noise assumption implies that the low noise power prohibits the arcos function from transforming the Gaussian pdf of the noise. That is, $\pm\Delta a$ occurs over minute ranges for the argument of the arcos and hence the relationship is essentially linear. Secondly, since A is a peak deviation in the sine wave Δa will be considered as a peak deviation of the additive noise process. This is traditionally accepted as being 4σ where σ is the standard deviation of the process and σ^2 is the variance. Therefore we write K arcos (1-4 σ / A) = t$\pm\varepsilon$, where ε represents a peak time deviation in the zero crossing excursion, $K = {}^{1}/_{\omega}$ and t is the mean zero crossing time given previously as: $t = {}^{1}/_{sf}, {}^{1}/_{f}, {}^{3}/_{2f}, \ldots$ If only the deviation contribution to the above equation is retained, the equation reduces to:

$$K\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{4\sigma}{A}\right) = \varepsilon = \Delta t \qquad \text{EQ. (139)}$$

Since for$4\sigma / A \ll .01,$, the above function is quasi-linear, one can write the final approximation as:

$$\therefore \sigma_\varepsilon = \frac{(360)\sigma}{2\pi A} \text{ degrees rms} \qquad \text{EQ. (142)}$$

An appropriate conversion to degrees becomes,

$$360^\circ f_c = \frac{4\sigma_x}{\frac{4\sigma}{\omega_c A}} \qquad \text{EQ. (141)}$$

f_c = frequency of carrier

σ_x = phase noise in degrees rms

σ = standard deviation of equivalent input comparator noise

$$\therefore \sigma_x = \frac{(360)\sigma}{2\pi A} \text{ degrees rms} \qquad \text{EQ. (142)}$$

$\frac{\sigma_x}{57.3}$ = radians rms = σ_ϕ

$\sigma_{\phi_{rms}}^2$ = variance or power in dBc

Now a typical threshold operator may have a noise figure, NF, of approximately 15 dB. Hence, one can calculate σ_x (assume $\sigma_\phi^2 = 2.4x10^{-8} rad^2$ source phase noise):

$$-174 dBm/Hz + 15 + 10\log_{10} 100x10^6 = -79 dBm \qquad \text{EQ. (143)}$$

where 100 MHz of input bandwidth is assumed.

$$anti\log -7.9 = 1.26x10^{-8} milliwatts = 1.26x10^{-11} watts \qquad \text{EQ. (144)}$$

$$\therefore \sigma = \sqrt{1.26x10^{-13}} \cong 3.55x10^{-6} \qquad \text{EQ. (145)}$$

$$\sigma_x = \frac{(360)3.55x10^{-6}}{2\pi(.6)} \cong 3.39x10^{-4} \text{ degrees rms}$$

$\sigma_{\phi_{rms}} \cong 5.92x10^{-6}$ rad rms

$\sigma_{\phi_T}^2 = \sigma_\phi^2 + \sigma_{\phi_{rms}}^2 \cong 2.4x10^{-8} + 3.5x10^{-11} \cong 2.4x10^{-8} rad^2$

σ_ϕ^2 = phase noise of source before threshold device

Therefore, the threshold device has little to no impact on the total phase noise modulation on this particular source because the original source phase noise dominates. A more general result can be obtained for arbitrarily shaped waveforms (other than simple sine waves) by using a Fourier series expansion and weighting each component of the series according to the previously described approximation. For simple waveforms like a triangle pulse, the slope is simply the amplitude divided by the time period so that in the approximation:

$$\Delta t \simeq \frac{k4\sigma T_r}{A_T} \qquad \text{EQ. (146)}$$

k; an arbitrary scaling constant

T_r; time period for the ramping edge of the triangle

Hence, the ratio of $\left(\sigma T_r / A_r\right)$ is important and should he minimized.

As an example, suppose that the triangle pulse rise time is 500 nsec. Furthermore, suppose that the amplitude, A_T, is 35 milli volts. Then, with a 15 dB NF, the Δt becomes:

$$\Delta t \simeq \frac{k\cdot 4\cdot (3.55\times 10^{-6})V500\text{nsec}}{.035} \simeq 203 \text{ ps}$$

$\sigma \simeq 203/4 \cong 50.7\ ps\ (1\Omega)$

This is all normalized to a 1Ω system. If a 50Ω system were assumed then:

$\sigma \simeq 358.5$ ps (50Ω)

In addition, it is straight forward to extend these results to the case of DC offset added to the input of the threshold device along with the sine wave.

Essentially the zero crossing slope is modified due to the virtual phase shift of the input sine function at the threshold. DC offset will increase the phase noise component on the present invention clock, and it could cause significant degradation or certain link budgets and modulation types.

11. Pulse Accumulation and System Time Constant

11.1 Pulse Accumulation

Examples and derivations presented in previous sub-sections illustrate that in embodiments single aperture acquisitions recover energies proportional to:

$$E_s = \int_0^{T_A} S_i^2(t)dt = \frac{A_n^2 T_A}{2} \text{ (optimum aperture)} \qquad \text{EQ. (147)}$$

$A_n\underline{\Delta}$ as the carrier envelope weighting of the nth sample.
In addition, sub-section 8 above, describes a complete UFT transform over many pulses applicable to embodiments of the invention. The following description therefore is an abbreviated description used to illustrate a long-term time constant consideration for the system.

As described elsewhere herein, the sample rate is much greater than the information bandwidth of interest for most if not all practical applications.

$$f_s >> BW_i \qquad \text{EQ. (148)}$$

Hence, many samples may be accumulated as indicated in previous sub-sections, provided that the following general rule applies:

$$\frac{f_s}{\ell} > BW_i \qquad \text{EQ. (149)}$$

where ℓ represents the total number of accumulated samples. EQ. (149) requires careful consideration of the desired information at baseband, which must be extracted. For instance, if the baseband waveform consists of sharp features such as square waves then several harmonics would necessarily be required to reconstruct the square wave which could require BW_i of up to seven times the square wave rate. In many applications however the base band waveform has been optimally prefiltered or bandwidth limited apriori (in a transmitter), thus permitting significant accumulation. In such circumstances, f_s / ℓ will approach BW_i.

This operation is well known in signal processing and historically has been used to mimic an average. In fact it is a means of averaging scaled by a gain constant. The following equation relates to EQ. (127).

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\ell} E_i = \sum_{i=1}^{\ell} \frac{A_n^2 T_A}{2} \cong \frac{\ell A^2 T_A}{2} \qquad \text{EQ. (150)}$$

Notice that the *nth* index has been removed from the sample weighting. In fact, the bandwidth criteria defined in EQ. (149) pennits the approximation because the information is contained by the pulse amplitude. A more accurate description is given by the complete UFT transform, which does permit variation in A. A cannot significantly vary from pulse to pulse over an ℓ pulse interval of accumulation, however. If A does vary significantly, ℓ is not properly selected. A must be permitted to vary naturally, however, according to the information envelope at a rate proportional to BW_i. This means that ℓ cannot be permitted to be too great because information would be lost due to filtering. This shorthand approximation illustrates that there is a long term system time constant that should be considered in addition to the short-term aperture integration interval.

In embodiments, usually the long term time constant is controlled

by the integration capacitor value, the present invention source impedance, the present invention output impedance, and the load. The detailed models presented elsewhere herein consider all these affects. The analysis in this section does not include a leakage term that was presented in previous sub-sections.

EQs. (149) and (150) can be considered a specification for slew rate. For instance, suppose that the bandwidth requirement can be specified in terms of a slew rate as follows:

$$SR = \times \frac{volts}{\mu sec} \qquad \text{EQ. (151)}$$

The number of samples per μsec is given by:

$\ell_s = f_s \times 1 \times 10^{-6}$ (f_s is derived from the present invention clock rate)

If each sample produces a voltage proportional to $A^2 \, {}^{T_A}/_2$ then the total voltage accumulated per microsecond is:

$$V_{\mu sec} \cong \ell_s \frac{A^2 T_A}{2} \qquad \text{EQ. (152)}$$

The previous sub-sections illustrates how the present invention output can accumulate voltage (proportional to energy) to acquire the information modulated onto a carrier. For down conversion, this whole process is akin to lowpass filtering, which is consistent with embodiments of the present invention that utilize a capacitor as a storage device or means for integration.

11.2 Pulse Accumulation by Correlation

The previous sub-sections introduced the idea that in embodiments information bandwidth is much less than the bandwidth associated with the present invention's impulse response for practical applications. The concept

of single aperture energy accumulation was used above to describe the central ideas of the present invention. As shown in FIG. 193, multiple aperture accumulation permits baseband waveform reconstruction. FIG. 193 illustrates the results from simulation of actual circuits according to emhodiments of the present invention implemented with CMOS and passive components.

The staircase output of the example in FIG. 193 follows the complex modulation envelope for the input signal. Sub-section 5 predicts this result via the time variant linear differential equation. FIG. 193 illustrates the staircase accumulation of half sine energy for three apertures based on 3x sampling. As can be seen in FIG. 193, the leakage between accumulations is very small.

12. Energy Budget Considerations

Consider the following equation for a window correlator aperture:

$$E_{ASO} = \int_0^{TA} A \cdot S_i(t)dt \qquad \text{EQ. (153)}$$

In EQ. (153), the rectangular aperture correlation function is weighted by A. For convenience, it is now assumed to be weighted such that:

$$E_{ASO} = \int_0^{TA} kA \cdot S_i(t)dt = 2A \text{ (normalized)} \qquad \text{EQ. (154)}$$

Since embodiments of the present invention typically operate at a sub-harmonic rate, not all of the energy is directly available due to the sub-harmonic sampling process. For the case of single aperture acquisition, the energy transferred versus the energy available is given by:

$$\frac{E_b}{E_i} = \frac{E_{ASO}}{2N} = \frac{A}{N} \qquad \text{EQ. (155)}$$

N ≙ harmonic of operation

The power loss due to harmonic operation is:

$$E_{LN} = 10 \log_{10}(2N) \qquad \text{EQ. (156)}$$

There is an additional loss due to the finite aperture, T_A, which induces (sin x/x) like weighting onto the harmonic of interest. This energy loss is proportional to:

$$E_{LSINC} \simeq \left(\frac{\sin(\pi N f_s T_A)}{\pi N f_s T_A} \right) \text{(up conversion only)} \qquad \text{EQ. (157)}$$

$N \cdot f_s$ ≙ operating carrier frequency

f_s ≙ sampling rate (directly related to the clock)

EQ. (157) indicates that the harmonic spectrum attenuates rapidly as $N \cdot f_s$ approaches T_A^{-1}. Of course there is some attenuation even if that scenario is avoided. EQ. (157) also reveals, however, that in embodiments for single aperture operation the conversion loss due to E_{LSINC} will always be near 3.92dB. This is because:

$$(2 \cdot N f_s)^{-1} = T_A \text{ (~3.92dB condition)} \qquad \text{EQ. (158)}$$

Another way of stating the condition is that T_A is always ½ the carrier period.

Consider an ideal implementation of an embodiment of the present invention, without any circuit losses, operating on a 5th harmonic basis. Without any other considerations, the energy loss through the device is at minimum:

$$E_L = E_{LN} + E_{LSINC} = 10\text{dB} + 3.92 \simeq 14\text{dB (for up conversion)} \qquad \text{EQ. (159)}$$

Down conversion does not possess the 3.92dB loss so that the baseline

loss for down conversion is that represented by EQ. (156). Parasitics will also affect the losses for practical systems. These parasitics must be examined in detail for the particular technology of interest.

Next suppose that a number of pulses may be accumulated using the multi-aperture strategy and diversity means of an embodiment of the present invention, as described above. In this case, some of the energy loss calculated by EQ. (159) can be regained. For example, if four apertures are used then the pulse energy accumulation gain is 6dB. For the previous example, this results in an overall gain of 6dB - 14dB, or -8dB (instead of -14dB). This energy gain is significant and will translate to system level specification improvements in the areas of noise frequency, intercept point, power consumption, size, etc. It should be recognized, however, that a diversity system with active split or separate amplifier chains would use more power and become more costly. In addition, in embodiments, energy storage networks coupled to the circuitry of the present invention may be used to accumulate energy between apertures so that each aperture delivers some significant portion of the stored energy from the network. In this manner, some inefficiencies of the sub harmonic sampling process can be removed by trading impedance matching vs. complexity, etc., as further described below.

12.1 Energy Storage Networks

Embodiments of the present invention have been shown to be a type of correlator, which is applied to the carrier on a sub harmonic basis. It is also been shown herein that certain architectures according to embodiments of the invention benefit significantly from the addition of passive networks, particular when coupled to the front end of a processor according to the present invention used as a receiver. This result can be explained using linear systems theory.

To understand this, it is useful to consider thc following. Embodiments of the present invention can be modeled as a linear, time-variant (LTV) device. Therefore, the following concepts apply:

- The LTV circuits can be modeled to have an average impcdance; and
- The LTV circuits can be modeled to have an average power transfer or gain.

These are powerful concepts because they permit the application of the maximum bilateral power transfer theorem to embodimcnts of the present invention. As a result, in embodiments, energy storage devices/circuits which fly wheel between apertures to pump up the inter sample power can be viewed on the many sample basis (long time average) as providing optimum power transfer through matching propcrtics. The betwecn sample model on thc timc microscopic scale is hest viewed on a differential equation hasis while the time macroscopic view can utilize simpler analysis techniques such as the maximum power transfer equations for networks, correlator theory, etc. The fact that the differential equations can be written for all time unifies the theory between the short time (between sample) view and long time (many sample accumulation) view. Fortunately, the concepts for information extraction from the output of the present invention are easily formulated without differential equation analysis.

Network theory can be used to explain why certain networks according to the present invention provide optimum power gain. For example, network theory explains embodiments of the present invention when energy storage networks or matching networks are utilized to 'fly wheel' between apertures, thereby, on the average, providing a good impedance match. Network theory does not explain, however, why T_A is optimal. For instance, in some embodiments, one may deliberately utilize an aperture that is much less than a carrier half cycle. For such an

aperture, there is an optimal matching network nonetheless. That is, a processor according to an emhodiment of the present invention utilizing an improper aperture can be optimized, although it will not perform as well as a processor according to an embodiment of the present invention that utilizes an optimal aperture accompanied by an optimal matching network.

The idea behind selecting an optimal aperture is matched filter theory, which provides a general guideline for obtaining the best correlation properties between the incoming waveform and the selected aperture. Any practical correlator or matched filter is constrained hy the same physical laws, however, which spawned the maximum power transfer theorems for networks. It does not do any good to design the optimum correlator aperture if the device possesses extraordinary impedance mismatches with its source and load. The circuit theorems do predict the optimal impedance match while matched filter theory does not. The two work hand in hand to permit a practical explanation for:

- Why T_A is optimal; and
- How processors according to embodiments of the present invention are optimized for performance in practical circuits.

The following sub-section analyzes the present invention on a macroscopic scale using the notions of average impedance and power transfer.

12.2 Impedance Matching

When a processor embodiment according to the present invention is 'off,' there is one impedance, and when a processor embodiment according to the present invention is 'on,' there is another impedance due to the architecture of the present invention and its load. In practice, the aperture will affect the 'on' impedance. Hence, on the average, the input

impedance looking into the circuitry of an embodiment of the present invention (i.e., its ports) is modified according to the present invention clock and T_A. Impedance matching networks must take this into account.

$$\not{Z}_{av} = \frac{V}{I_{av}} \qquad \text{EQ. (160)}$$

EQ. (160) illustrates that the average impedance, $\not{Z}_{av}$, is related to the voltage, V, divided by the average current flow, I_{av}, into a device, for example a processor according to an embodiment of the present invention. EQ. (160) indicates that for a processor according to an embodiment of the present invention the narrower T_A and the less frequent a sample is acquired, the greater $\not{Z}_{av}$ becomes.

To understand this, consider the fact that a 10th harmonic system according to an embodiment of the present invention operates with half as many samples as a 5th harmonic sample according to the present invention. Thus, according to EQ. (160), a 5th harmonic sample according to an embodiment of the present invention would typically possess a higher input/output impedance than that a 10th harmonic system according to the present invention. Of course, practical board and circuit parasitics will place limits on how much the impedance scaling properties of the present invention processor clock signals control the processor's overall input/output impedance.

As will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant arts given the discussion herein, in embodiments, matching networks should be included at the ports of a processor according to the present invention to accommodate $\not{Z}_{av}$, as measured by a typical network analyzer.

13. Time Domain Analysis

All signals can be represented by vectors in the complex signal plane. Previous sub-sections derived the result for down converting (or up converting) $S_i(t)$ in the transform domain via $S_i(\omega)$. An I/Q modem embodiment of the present invention, however, was developed using a time domain analysis. This time domain analysis is repeated here and provides a complementary view to the previous sub-sections.

FIG. 194 illustrates an embodiment of the present invention implementing a complex down converter architecture. Operation of this embodiment is described given by:

$$S_0(t_k) \cong \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (S_i(t_k) + n(t_k)) (C_{Ik} + C_{Qk}) \qquad \text{EQ. (161.1)}$$

where $S_i(t_k)$ is defined as the kth sample from the UFT transform such that $S_i(t_k)$ is filtered over the kth interval, $n(t_k)$ is defined as the noise sample at the output of the kth present invention kernel interval such that it has been averaged by the present invention process over the interval, C_{Ik} is defined as the kth in phase gating waveform (the present invention clock), and C_{Qk} is defined as the kth quadrature phase gating waveform (the present invention clock).

The 'goodness' of $S_i(t_k)$ and $n_i(t_k)$ has been shown previously herein as related to the type of present invention processor used (e.g .. , matched filtering/correlating processor, finite time integrating processor, or RC processor). Each t_k instant is the time tick corresponding to the averaging of input waveform energy over a T_A (aperture) duration. It has been assumed that C_{Ik} and C_{Qk} arc constant envelope and phase for the current analysis, although in general this is not required. Many different, interesting processors according to embodiments of the present invention can be constructed by manipulating the amplitudes and phases of the present invention clock.

C_{Ik} and C_{Qk} can he expanded as follows:

$$C_{Ik} = K\frac{T_A}{T_s}\left[1+2\left(\frac{\sin\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}{\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}\cdot\cos 2\pi f_s t_k + \frac{\sin 2\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}{\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}\cdot\cos 4\pi f_s t_k + \frac{\sin 3\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}{3\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}\cdot\cos 6\pi f_s t_k + \ldots \frac{\sin n\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}{n\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}\cdot\cos n\cdot 2\pi f_s t_k\right)\right]$$

EQ. (161.2)

$$C_{Qk} = K\frac{T_A}{T_s}\left[1+2\left(\frac{\sin\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}{\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}\cdot\sin 2\pi f_s t_k - \frac{\sin 2\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}{\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}\cdot\cos 4\pi f_s t_k - \frac{\sin 3\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}{3\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}\cdot\sin 6\pi f_s t_k \ldots \frac{\sin n\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}{n\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}\cdot\cos(n\cdot 2\pi f_s t_k + n\phi)\right)\right]$$

EQ. (161.3)

The above treatment is a Fourier series expansion of the present invention clocks where:

K $\triangleq$ Arbitrary Gain Constant

T_A $\triangleq$ Aperture Time = f_s^{-1}

T_s $\triangleq$ The Present Invention Clock Interval or Sample Time

n $\triangleq$ Harmonic Spectrum Harmonic Order

ϕ $\triangleq$ As phase shift angle usually selected as 90° $(\pi/2)$ for orthogonal signaling

Each term from C_{Ik}, C_{Qk} will down convert (or up convert). However, only the odd terms in the above formulation (for $\phi = \pi/2$) will convert in quadrature. ϕ could be selected otherwise to utilize the even harmonics, but this is typically not done in practice.

For the case of down conversion, *r(t)* can be written as:

$$r(t_k) = \sqrt{2}A\left(\tilde{S}_{il}(t_k)\cos(m \cdot 2\pi f t_k + \Theta) - \tilde{S}_{iQ}(t_k)\sin(m \cdot 2\pi f t_k + \Theta) + n(t)\right)$$

EQ. (162)

After applying (C_{Ik}, C_{Qk}) and lowpass filtering, which in embodiments is inherent to the present invention process, the down converted components become:

$$S_0(t_k)_I = A\ S_{il}(t_k) + \tilde{n}_{Ik} \qquad \text{EQ. (163)}$$

$$S_0(t_k)_Q = A\ S_{iQ}(t_k) + \tilde{n}_{Qk} \qquad \text{EQ. (164)}$$

where:

$S_{il}(t_k)$ $\triangleq$ The In phase component of the desired baseband signal.

$S_{iQ}(t_k)$ $\triangleq$ The quadrature phase component of the desired baseband signal

n_I, n_Q $\triangleq$ In phase and quadrature phase noise samples

m $\triangleq$ Is the harmonic of interest equal to one of the 'n' numbers, for perfect carrier synchronization.

Now m and n can be selected such that the down conversion ideally strips the carrier (mf_s), after lowpass filtering.

If the carrier is not perfectly coherent, a phase shift occurs as described in previous sub-section. The result presented above would modify to:

$$S_0(t) = \left(S_{il}(t)_I + jS_{il}(t)_Q\right) e^{j\phi} \qquad \text{EQ. (165)}$$

where ϕ is the phase shift. This is the same phase shift affect derived earlier as cosϕ in the present invention transform. When there is a slight carrier offset then ϕ can be written as ϕ(t) and the I and Q outputs represent orthogonal, harmonically oscillating vectors super imposed on the desired signal output with a beat frequency proportional to:

$$f_{error} \triangleq nf_s \pm m(f_s \pm f_\Delta) = f_s(n-m) + mf_\Delta \qquad \text{EQ. (166)}$$

$f_\Delta \triangleq$ as a slight frequency offset between the carrier and the present invention clock

This entire analysis could have been accomplished in the frequency domain as described herein, or it could have been formulated from the present invention kernel as:

$$S_0(t) = \mathrm{D}_{IQ}(S_1(t) + n(t)) \qquad \text{EQ. (167)}$$

The recursive kernel D_{IQ} is defined in sub-section 8 and the I/Q version is completed by superposition and phase shifting the quadrature kernel.

The previous equation for *r*(t) could be replaced with:

$$BB(t) = \tilde{S}_a \pm \tilde{S}_{iQ} \text{ where } f = 0 \text{ and } \Theta = \pi/4 \text{ and } n(t) = 0 \quad \text{EQ. (168)}$$

BB(t) could be up converted by applying C_I, C_Q. The desired carrier then is the appropriate harmonic of C_I, C_Q whose energy is optimally extracted by a network matched to the desired carrier.

14. *Complex Passband Waveform Generation Using the Present Invention Cores*

This sub-section introduces the concept of using a present invention core to modulate signals at RF according to embodiments of the invention. Although many specific modulator architectures are possible, which target individual signaling schemes such as AM, FM, PM, etc., the example architecture presented here is a vector signal modulator. Such a modulator can be used to create virtually every known useful waveform to encompass the whole of analog and digital communications applications, for "wired" or "wireless," at radio frequency or intermediate frequency. In essence, a receiver process, which utilizes the present

invention, may be reversed to create signals of interest at passband. Using I/Q waveforms at baseband, all points within the two dimensional complex signaling constellation may be synthesized when cores according to the present invention are excited by orthogonal subharmonic clocks and connected at their outputs with particular comhining networks. A basic architecture that can be used is shown in FIG. 195.

FIG. 195 depicts one embodiment of a based vector modulator according to the present invention. FIG. 195 shows I and Q inputs that can accept analog or halanced digital waveforms. By selecting I and Q appropriately, AM, FM, BPSK, QPSK, MSK, QAM, OFDM, multi-tone, and a host of other signals can be synthesized. In this embodiment of the present invention, the present invention cores are driven differentially on I and Q. C_I, $C_{\overline{I}}, C_Q, C_{\overline{Q}}$ are the in phase and quadrature sub-harmonic clocks, respectively, with their inverted phases as well. C_I and C_Q can be created in quadrature for IQ operation if the output power combiner is a 0° combiner. On the other hand, C_I and C_Q can be in phase when a 90° output power combiner is utilized at RF. This latter architecture can be used whenever the signaling bandwidth is very small with respect to the RF center frequency of the output and small with respect to the ldB passband response of the combiner. If one assumes constant values on I and $\overline{I}$, the waveform diagrams in FIG 196 can be constructed. As indicated in FIG. 195, the power combiner and bandpass reconstruction filter are optional components.

In FIG. 196, C_I and $\overline{C_1}$ are out of phase by 180^0 if referenced back to the clock. In this case, clock refers to the suh-harmonic waveform used to generate C_I and $\overline{C_1}$. C_I is coincident with the rising edges of clock with a pulse width of T_A while $\overline{C_1}$ is coincident with the falling edges of clock with a pulse width of T_A. C_I and $\overline{C_1}$ activate two of the processors according to the present invention, as shown in FIG. 195, which are driven

by differential signals. I_c is illustrated as if the system is ideal without losses, parasitics, or distortions. The time axis for I_c may be arranged in a manner to represent the waveform as an odd function. For such an arrangement, the Fourier series is calculated to obtain EQ. (169).

$$I_c(t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{4 \sin\left(\frac{n\pi T_s}{T_s}\right) \cdot \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right)}{n\pi} \right) \cdot \sin\left(\frac{2n\pi t}{T_s}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (169)}$$

To illustrate this, if a passband waveform must be created at five times the frequency of the sub-harmonic clock then a baseline power for that harmonic extraction can be calculated for n = 5. For the case of n = 5, it is found that the 5th harmonic yields:

$$I_c(t)\big|_{n=5} = \frac{4}{5\pi}(\sin(5\omega_s t)) \qquad \text{EQ. (170)}$$

This component can be extracted from the Fourier series via a bandpass filter centered around f_s. This component is a carrier at 5 times the sampling frequency.

This illustration can be extended to show the following:

$$m(t) \cdot I_c(t)\big|_{n=5,\ \phi=\phi(t)} = \frac{4 \cdot m(t)}{5\pi}(\sin(5\omega_s t + 5\phi(t))) \qquad \text{EQ. (171)}$$

This equation illustrates that a message signal may have been superposed on I and $\bar{I}$ such that both amplitude and phase are modulated, i.e., m(t) for amplitude and $\phi(t)$ for phase. In such cases, it should be noted that $\phi(t)$ is augmented modulo n while the amplitude modulation m(t) is scaled. The point of this illustration is that complex waveforms may be reconstructed from their Fourier series with multi-aperture processor combinations, according to the present invention.

In a practical system according to an embodiment of the present invention, parasitics, filtering, etc., may modify $I_c(t)$. In many

applications according to the present invention, charge injection properties of processors playa significant role. However, if the processors and the clock drive circuits according to embodiments of the present invention are matched then even the parasitics can be managed, particularly since unwanted distortions are removed by the final bandpass filter, which tends to completely reconstruct the waveform at passband.

Like the receiver embodiments of the present invention, which possess a lowpass information extraction and energy extraction impulse response, various transmitter embodiments of the present invention use a network to create a bandpass impulse response suitable for energy transfer and waveform reconstruction. In embodiments, the simplest reconstruction network is an L-C tank, which resonates at the desired carrier frequency $N \cdot f_s = f_c$.

V. Additional Embodiments

1. Example 1/Q Modulation Receiver Embodiment

FIG. 197 illustrates an example I/Q modulation receiver 19700, according to an embodiment of the present invention. I/Q modulation receiver 19700 comprises a first Processing module 19702, a first optional filter 19704, a second Processing module 19706, a second optional filter 19708, a third Processing module 19710, a third optional filter 19712, a fourth Processing module 19714, a fourth filter 19716, an optional LNA 19718, a first differential amplifier 19720, a second differential amplifier 19722, and an antenna 19772.

I/Q modulation receiver 19700 receives, down-converts, and demodulates a I/Q modulated RF input signal 19782 to an I baseband output signal 19784, and a Q baseband output signal 19786. I/Q modulated RF input signal comprises a first information signal and a

second information signal that are I/Q modulated onto an RF carrier signal. I baseband output signal 19784 comprises the first baseband information signal. Q baseband output signal 19786 comprises the second baseband information signal.

Antenna 19772 receives I/Q modulated RP input signal 19782. I/Q modulated RF input signal 19782 is output by antenna 19772 and received by optional LNA 19718. When present, LNA 19718 amplifies I/Q modulated RF input signal 19782, and outputs amplified I/Q signal 19788.

First Processing module 19702 receives amplified I/Q signal 19788. First Processing module 19702 down-converts the I-phase signal portion of amplified input I/Q signal 19788 according to an I control signal 19790. First Processing module 19702 outputs an I output signal 19798.

In an emhodiment, first Processing module 19702 compnses a first storage module 19724, a first UFT module 19726, and a first voltage reference 19728. In an embodiment, a switch contained within first UFT module 19726 opens and closes as a function of I control signal 19790. As a result of the opening and closing of this switch, which respectively couples and de-couples first storage module 19724 to and from first voltage reference 19728, a downconverted signal, referred to as I output signal 19798, results. First voltage reference 19728 may be any reference voltage, and is ground in some emhodiments. I output signal 1979H is stored hy first storage module 19724.

In an embodiment, first storage module 19724 comprises a first capacitor 19774. In addition to storing I output signal 19798, first capacitor 19774 reduces or prevents a DC offset voltage resulting from charge injection from appearing on I output signal19798

I output signal 19798 is received by optional first filter 19704. When present, first filter 19704 is a high pass filter to at least filter I

output signal 19798 to remove any carrier signal "bleed through". In an embodiment, when present, first filter 19704 comprises a first resistor 19730, a first filter capacitor 19732, and a first filter voltage reference 19734. Preferably, first resistor 19730 is coupled between I output signal 19798 and a filtered I output signal 19707, and first filter capacitor 19732 is coupled between filtered I output signal 19707 and first filter voltage reference 19734. Alternately, first filter 19704 may comprise any other applicahle filter configuration as would he understood by persons skilled in the relevant arts. First filter 19704 outputs filtered I output signal 19707.

Second Processing module 19706 receives amplified I/Q signal 19788. Second Processing module 19706 down-converts the inverted I-phase signal portion of amplified input I/Q signal 19788 according to an inverted I control signal 19792. Second Processing module 19706 outputs an inverted I output signal 19701.

In an emhodiment, second Processing module 19706 compnses a second storage module 19736, a second UFT module 19738, and a second voltage reference 19740. In an embodiment, a switch contained within second UFT module 19738 opens and closes as a function of inverted I control signal 19792. As a result of the opening and closing of this switch, which respectively couples and de-couples second storage module 19736 to and from second voltage reference 19740, a down-converted signal, referred to as inverted I output signal 19701, results. Second voltage reference 19740 may be any reference voltage, and is preferahly ground. Inverted I output signal 19701 is stored by second storage module 19736.

In an embodiment, second storage module 19736 comprises a second capacitor 19776. In addition to storing inverted I output signal 19701, second capacitor 19776 reduces or prevents a DC offset voltage resulting from above described charge injection from appearing on

inverted I output signal 19701.

Inverted I output signal 19701 is received by optional second filter 19708. When present, second filter 19708 is a high pass filter to at least filter inverted I output signal 19701 to remove any carrier signal "bleed through". In an embodiment, when present, second filter 19708 comprises a second resistor 19742, a second filter capacitor 19744, and a second filter voltage reference 19746. In an embodiment, second resistor 19742 is coupled between inverted I output signal 19701 and a filtered inverted I output signal 19709, and second filter capacitor 19744 is coupled between filtered inverted I output signal 19709 and second filter voltage reference 19746. Alternately, second filter 19708 may comprise any other applicable filter configuration as would be understood by persons skilled in the relevant arts. Second filter 19708 outputs filtered inverted I output signal 19709.

First differential amplifier 19720 receives filtered I output signal 19707 at its non-inverting input and receives filtered inverted I output signal 19709 at its inverting input. First differential amplifier 19720 suhtracts filtered inverted I output signal 19709 from filtered I output signal 19707, amplifies the result, and outputs I baseband output signal 19784. Other suitable subtractor modules may be substituted for first differential amplifier 19720, and second differential amplifier 19722, as would be understood by persons skilled in the relevant arts from the teachings herein. Because filtered inverted I output signal 19709 is substantially equal to an inverted version of filtered I output signal 19707, I baseband output signal 19784 is substantially equal to filtered I output signal 19709, with its amplitude douhled. Furthermore, filtered I output signal 19707 and filtered inverted I output signal 19709 may comprise substantially equal noise and DC offset contributions of the same polarity from prior down-conversion circuitry, including first Processing module 19702 and second Processing module 19706,

respectively. When first differential amplifier 19720 subtracts filtered inverted I output signal 19709 from filtered I output signal 19707, these noise and DC offset contributions substantially cancel each other.

Third Processing module 19710 receives amplified I/Q signal 19788. Third Processing module 19710 down-converts the Q-phase signal portion of amplified input I/Q signal 19788 according to an Q control signal 19794. Third Processing module 19710 outputs an Q output signal 19703.

In an embodiment, third Processing module 19710 comprises a third storage module 19748, a third UFT module 19750, and a third voltage reference 19752. In an embodiment, a switch contained within third UFT module 19750 opens and closes as a function of Q control signal 19794. As a result of the opening and closing of this switch, which respectively couples and de-couples third storage module 19748 to and from third voltage reference 19752, a down-converted signal, referred to as Q output signal 19703, results. Third voltage reference 19752 may be any reference voltage, and is preferably ground. Q output signal 19703 is stored by third storage module 19748.

In an embodiment, third storage module 19748 comprises a third capacitor 19778. In addition to storing Q output signal 19703, third capacitor 19778 reduces or prevents a DC offset voltage resulting from above described charge injection from appearing on Q output signal 19703.

Q output signal 19703 is received hy optional third filter 19716. When present, third filter 19716 is a high pass filter to at least filter Q output signal 19703 to remove any carrier signal "bleed through". In an embodiment, when present, third filter 19712 comprises a third resistor 19754, a third filter capacitor 19758, and a third filter voltage reference 19758. In an embodiment, third resistor 19754 is coupled between Q output signal 19703 and a filtered Q output signal 19711, and third filter

capacitor 19756 is coupled between filtered Q output signal 19711 and third filter voltage reference 19758. Alternately, third filter 19712 may comprise any other applicable filter configuration as would be understood by persons skilled in the relevant arts. Third filter 19712 outputs filtered Q output signal 19711.

Fourth Processing module 19714 receives amplified I/Q signal 19788. Fourth Processing module 19714 down-converts the inverted Q-phase signal portion of amplified input I/Q signal 19788 according to an inverted Q control signal 19796. Fourth Processing module 19714 outputs an inverted Q output signal 19705.

In an embodiment, fourth Processing module 19714 comprises a fourth storage module 19760, a fourth UFT module 19762, and a fourth voltage reference 19764. In an embodiment, a switch contained within fourth UFT module 19762 opens and closes as a function of inverted Q control signal 19796. As a result of the opening and closing of this switch, which respectively couples and de-couples fourth storage module 19760 to and from fourth voltage reference 19764, a down-converted signal, referred to as inverted Q output signal 19705, results. Fourth voltage reference 19764 may be any reference voltage, and is preferably ground. Inverted Q output signal 19705 is stored hy fourth storage module 19760.

In an embodiment, fourth storage module 19760 compnses a fourth capacitor 19780. In addition to storing inverted Q output signal 19705, fourth capacitor 19780 reduces or prevents a DC offset voltage resulting from above described charge injection from appearing on inverted Q output signal 19705.

Inverted Q output signal 19705 is received by optional fourth filter 19716. When present, fourth filter 19716 is a high pass filter to at least filter inverted Q output signal 19705 to remove any carrier signal "bleed through". In an embodiment, when present, fourth filter 19716

comprises a fourth resistor 19766, a fourth filter capacitor 19768, and a fourth filter voltage reference 19770. In an embodimnet, fourth resistor 19766 is coupled between inverted Q output signal 19705 and a filtered inverted Q output signal 19713, and fourth filter capacitor 19768 is coupled between filtered inverted Q output signal 19713 and fourth filter voltage reference 19770. Alternately, fourth filter 19716 may comprise any other applicable filter configuration as would be understood by persons skilled in the relevant arts. Fourth filter 19716 outputs filtered inverted Q output signal 19713.

Second differential amplifier 19722 receives filtered Q output signal 19711 at its non-inverting input and receives filtered inverted Q output signal 19713 at its inverting input. Second differential amplifier 19722 subtracts filtered inverted Q output signal 19713 from filtered Q output signal 19711, amplifies the result, and outputs Q baseband output signal 19786. Because filtered inverted Q output signal 19713 is substantially equal to an inverted version of filtered Q output signal 19711, Q baseband output signal 19786 is substantially equal to filtered Q output signal 19713, with its amplitude douhled. Furthermore, filtered Q output signal 19711 and filtered inverted Q output signal 19713 may comprise substantially equal noise and DC offset contributions of the same polarity from prior down-conversion circuitry, including third Processing module 19710 and fourth Processing module 19714, respectively. When second differential amplifier 19722 subtracts filtered inverted Q output signal 19713 from filtered Q output signal 19711, these noise and DC offset contributions substantially cancel each other.

2. Example I/Q Modulation Control Signal Generator Embodiments

FIG. 198 illustrates an exemplary block diagram for an example I/Q modulation control signal generator 19800, according to an embodiment ofthe present invention. I/Q modulation control signal generator 19800 generates I control signal 19790, inverted I control signal 19792, Q control signal 19794, and inverted Q control signal 19796 used by I/Q modulation receiver 19700 of FIG. 197. I control signal 19790 and inverted I control signal 19792 operate to down-convert the I-phase portion of an input I/Q modulated RF signal. Q control signal 19794 and inverted Q control signal 19796 act to down-convert the Q-phase portion of the input I/Q modulated RF signal. Furthermore, I/Q modulation control signal generator 19800 has the advantage of generating control signals in a manner such that resulting collective circuit re-radiation is radiated at one or more frequencies outside of the frequency range of interest. For instance, potential circuit re-radiation is radiated at a frequency substantially greater than that of the input RF carrier signal frequency.

I/Q modulation control signal generator 19800 comprises a local oscillator 19802, a first divide-hy-two module 19804, a 180 degree phase shiner 19806, a second divide-by-two module 19808, a first pulse generator 19810, a second pulse generator 19812, a third pulse generator 19814, and a fourth pulse generator 19816.

Local oscillator 19802 outputs an oscillating signal 19818. FIG. 199 shows an exemplary oscillating signal 19818.

First divide-by-two module 19804 receives oscillating signal 19818, divides oscillating signal 19818 by two, and outputs a half frequency LO signal 19820 and a half frequency inverted LO signal 19826. FIG. 199 shows an exemplary half frequency LO signal 19820. Half frequency inverted LO signal 19826 is an inverted version of half frequency LO signal 19820. First divide-by-two module 19804 may be implemented in circuit logic, hardware, software, or any comhination

thereof, as would he known hy persons skilled in the relevant arts.

180 degree phase shifter 19806 receives oscillating signal 19818, shifts the phase of oscillating signal 19818 by 180 degrees, and outputs phase shifted LO signal 19822. 180 degree phase shifter 19806 may he implemented in circuit logic, hardware, software, or any combination thereof, as would be known by persons skilled in the relevant arts. In alternative embodiments, other amounts of phase shift may be used.

Second divide-by two module 19808 receives phase shifted LO signal 19822, divides phase shifted LO signal 19822 by two, and outputs a half frequency phase shifted LO signal 19824 and a half frequency inverted phase shifted LO signal 19828. FIG. 199 shows an exemplary half frequency phase shifted LO signal 19824. Half frequency inverted phase shifted LO signal 19828 is an inverted version of half frequency phase shifted LO signal 19824. Second divide-by-two module 19808 may be implemented in circuit logic, hardware, software, or any combination thereof, as would be known by persons skilled in the relevant arts.

First pulse generator 19810 receives half frequency LO signal 19820, generates an output pulse whenever a rising edge is received on half frequency LO signal 19820, and outputs I control signal 19790. FIG. 199 shows an exemplary I control signal 19790.

Second pulse generator 19812 receIves half frequency inverted LO signal 19826, generates an output pulse whenever a rising edge is received on half frequency inverted LO signal 19826, and outputs inverted I control signal 19792. FIG. 199 shows an exemplary inverted I control signal 19792.

Third pulse generator 19814 receives half frequency phase shifted LO signal 19824, generates an output pulse whenever a rising edge is received on half frequency phase shifted LO signal 19824, and outputs Q control signal 19794. FIG. 199 shows an exemplary Q control signal 19794.

Fourth pulse generator 19816 receives half frequency inverted phase shifted LO signal 19828, generates an output pulse whenever a rising edge is received on half frequency inverted phase shifted LO signal 19828, and outputs inverted Q control signal 19796. FIG. 199 shows an exemplary inverted Q control signal 19796.

In an embodiment, control signals 19790, 19792, 19794 and 19796 output pulses having a width equal to one-half of a period of I/Q modulated RF input signal 19782. The invention, however, is not limited to these pulse widths, and control signals 19790, 19792, 19794, and 19796 may comprise pulse widths of any fraction of, or multiple and fraction of, a period of I/Q modulated RF input signal 19782. Also, other circuits for generating control signals 19790, 19792, 19794, and 19796 will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant arts based on the herein teachings.

First, second, third, and fourth pulse generators 19810, 19812, 19814, and 19816 may be implemented in circuit logic, hardware, software, or any comhination thereof, as would he known hy persons skilled in the relevant arts.

As shown in FIG. 199, in embodiments control signals 19790, 19792, 19794, and 19796 comprise pulses that are non-overlapping. Furthermore, in this example, pulses appear on these signals in the following order: I control signal 19790, Q control signal 19794, inverted I control signal 19792, and inverted Q control signal 19796. Potential circuit re-radiation from I/Q modulation receiver 19700 may comprise frequency components from a comhination of these control signals.

For example, FIG. 200 shows an overlay of pulses from I control signal 19790, Q control signal 19794, inverted I control signal 19792, and inverted Q control signal 19796. When pulses from these control signals leak through first, second, third, and fourth Processing modules 19702, 19706, 19710, and 19714 to antenna 19782 (shown in FIG. 197), they

may be radiated from I/Q modulation receiver 19700, with a combined waveform that appears to have a primary frequency equal to four times the frequency of any single one of control signals 19790, 19792, 19794, and 19796. FIG. 199 shows an example combined control signal 19902.

FIG. 200 also shows an example I/Q modulation RF input signal 19782 overlaid upon control signals 19790, 19792, 19794, and 19796. As shown in FIG. 200, pulses on I control signal 19790 overlay and act to down-convert a positive I-phase portion of I/Q modulation RF input signal 19782. Pulses on inverted I control signal 19792 overlay and act to down-convert a negative 1phase portion of I/Q modulation RF input signal 19782. Pulses on Q control signal 19794 overlay and act to down-convert a rising Q-phase portion of I/Q modulation RF input signal 19782. Pulses on inverted Q control signal 19796 overlay and act to down-convert a falling Q-phase portion of I/Q modulation RF input signal 19782.

As FIG. 200 further shows in this example, the frequency ratio hetween the combination of control signals 19790, 19792, 19794, and 19796 and I/Q modulation RF input signal 19782 is 4:3. Because the frequency of the potentially re-radiated signal, combined control signal 19902, is substantially different from that of the signal heing down-converted, I/Q modulation RF input signal 19782, it does not interfere with signal down-conversion as it is out of the frequency band of interest, and hence may be filtered out. In this manner, I/Q modulation receiver 19700 reduces problems due to circuit reradiation. As will he understood hy persons skilled in the relevant arts from the teachings herein, frequency ratios other than 4:3 may be implemented to achieve similar reduction of problems of circuit re-radiation.

It should be understood that the above control signal generator circuit example is provided for illustrative purposes only. The invention is not limited to these embodiments. Alternative embodiments

(including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the embodiments described herein) for I/Q modulation control signal generator 19800 will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant arts from the teachings herein, and are within the scope of the present invention.

3. Detailed Example I/Q Modulation Receiver Embodiment with Exemplary Waveforms

FIG. 201 illustrates a more detailed example circuit implementation of I/Q modulation receiver 19700, according to an embodiment of the present invention. FIGS. 202-40 show waveforms related to an example implementation of I/Q modulation receiver 19700 of FIG. 201.

FIGS. 202 and 203 show first and second input data signals 20102 and 20104 to be I/Q modulated with a RF carrier signal frequency as the I-phase and Q-phase information signals, respectively.

FIGS. 205 and 206 show the signals of FIG. 202 and 203 after modulation with a RF carrier signal frequency, respectively, as I-modulated signal 20106 and Q-modulated signal 20108.

FIG. 204 shows an I/Q modulation RF input signal 19782 formed from I-modulated signal 20106 and Q-modulated signal 20108 of FIGS. 205 and 206, respectively.

FIG. 211 shows an overlaid view of filtered I output signal 21102 and filtered inverted I output signal 21104.

FIG. 212 shows an overlaid view of filtered Q output signal 21202 and filtered inverted Q output signal 21204.

FIGS. 207 and 208 show I baseband output signal 19784 and Q baseband output signal 19786, respectfully. A data transition 20402 IS indicated in both I baseband output signal 19784 and Q baseband output

signal 19786. The corresponding data transition 20402 is indicated in I-modulated signal 20106 of FIG. 205, Q-modulated signal 20108 of FIG. 206, and I/Q modulation RF input signal 19782 of FIG. 204.

FIGS. 209 and 210 show I baseband output signal 19784 and Q baseband output signal 19786 over a wider time interval.

4. Example Single Channel Receiver Embodiment

FIG. 213 illustrates an example single channel receIver 21300, corresponding to either the I or Q channel of I/Q modulation receiver 19700, according to an embodiment of the present invention. Single channel receiver 21300 can down-convert an input RF signal 21306 modulated according to AM, PM, FM, and other modulation schemes. Refer to the section above for further description on the operation of single channel receiver 21300.

5. Example Automatic Gain Control (AGC) Embodiment

According to embodiments of the invention, the amplitude level of the down-converted signal can be controlled by modifying the aperture of the control signal that controls the switch module. Consider FIG. 43, that illustrates an equation that represents the change in charge in the storage device of embodiments of the UFT module, such as a capacitor. This equation is a function of T, which is the aperture of the control signal. Thus, by modifying the aperture T of the control signal, it is possible to modify the amplitude level of the down-convelied signal.

Some embodiments may include a control mechanism to enable manual control of aperture T, and thus manual control of the amplitude level of the down-converted signal. Other embodiments may include automatic or semi-automatic control modules to enable automatic or

semi-automatic control of aperture T, and thus automatic or semi-automatic control of the amplitude level of the down-converted signal. Such embodiments are herein referred to (without limitation) as automatic gain control (AGC) embodiments. Other embodiments include a combination of manual and automatic control of aperture T.

6. Other Example Embodiments

Additional aspects/embodiments of the invention are considered in this section.

In one embodiment of the present invention there is provided a method of transmitting information between a transmitter and a receiver comprising the steps of transmitting a first series of signals each having a known period from the transmitter at a known first repetition rate; sampling by the receiver each signal in the first series of signals a single time and for a known time interval the sampling of the first series of signals being at a second repetition rate that is a rate different from the first repetition rate by a known amount; and generating by the receiver an output signal indicative of the signal levels sampled in step B and having a period longer than the known period of a transmitted signal.

In another embodiment of the invention there is provided a communication system comprising a transmitter means for transmitting a first series of signals of known period at a known first repetition rate, a receiver means for receiving the first series of signals, the receiver means including sampling means for sampling the signal level of each signal first series of signals for a known time interval at a known second repetition rate, the second repetition rate heing different from the first repetition rate hy a known amount as established by the receiver means. The receiver means includes first circuit means for generating a first receiver output signal indicative of the signal levels sampled and having

a period longer than one signal of the first series of signals. The transmitter means includes an oscillator for generating an oscillator output signal at the first repetition rate, switch means for receiving the oscillator output signal and for selectively passing the oscillator output signal, waveform generating means for receiving the oscillator output signal for generating a waveform generator output signal having a time domain and frequency domain established by the waveform generating means.

The embodiment of the invention described herein involves a single or multi-user communications system that utilizes coherent signals to enhance the system performance over conventional radio frequency schemes while reducing cost and complexity. The design allows direct conversion of radio frequencies into baseband components for processing and provides a high level of rejection for signals that are not related to a known or controlled slew rate between the transmitter and receiver timing oscillators. The system can be designed to take advantage of broadband techniques that further increase its reliahility and permit a high user density within a given area. The technique employed allows the system to be configured as a separate transmitter-receiver pair or a transceiver.

An objective of the present system is to provide a new communication technique that can he applied to hoth narrow and wide hand systems. In its most robust form, all of the advantages of wide band communications are an inherent part of the system and the invention does not require complicated and costly circuitry as found in conventional wide band designs. The communications system utilizes coherent signals to send and receive information and consists of a transmitter and a receiver in its simplest form. The receiver contains circuitry to turn its radio frequency input on and off in a known relationship in time to the transmitted signal. This is accomplished by

allowing the transmitter timing oscillator and the receiver timing oscillator to operate at different but known frequencies to create a known slew rate between the oscillators. If the slew rate is small compared to the timing oscillator frequencies, the transmitted waveform will appear stable in time, i.e., coherent (moving at the known slew rate) to the receiver's switched input. The transmitted waveform is the only waveform that will appear stable in time to the receiver and thus the receiver's input can be averaged to achieve the desired level filtering of unwanted signals. This methodology makes the system extremely selective without complicated filters and complex encoding and decoding schemes and allows the direct conversion of radio frequency energy from an antenna or cable to baseband frequencies with a minimum number of standard components further reducing cost and complexity. The transmitted waveform can be a constant carrier (narrowband), a controlled pulse (wideband and ultra-wideband) or a combination of both such as a dampened sinusoidal wave and or any arbitrary periodic waveform thus the system can be designed to meet virtually any bandwidth requirement. Simple standard modulation and demodulation techniques such as AM and Pulse Width Modulation can he easily applied to the system.

Depending on the system requirements such as the rate of information transfer, the process gain, and the intended use, there are multiple preferred embodiments of the invention. The embodiment discussed herein will be the amplitude and pulse width modulated system. It is one of the simplest implementations of the technology and has many common components with the subsequent systems. A amplitude modulated transmitter consists of a Transmitter Timing Oscillator, a Multiplier, a Waveform Generator, and an Optional Amplifier. The Transmitter Timing Oscillator frequency can he determined by a number of resonate circuits including an inductor and

capacitor, a ceramic resonator, a SAW resonator, or a crystal. The output waveform is sinusoidal, although a squarewave oscillator would produce identical system performance.

The Multiplier component multiplies the Transmitter Timing Oscillator output signal by 0 or 1 or other constants, Kl and K2, to switch the oscillator output on and off to the Waveform Generator. In this embodiment, the information input can he digital data or analog data in the form of pulse width modulation. The Multiplier allows the Transmitter Timing Oscillator output to be present at the Waveform Generator input when the information input is above a predetermined value. In this state the transmitter will produce an output waveform. When the information input is below a predetermined value, there is no input to the Wavefonn Generator and thus there will be no transmitter output waveform. The output of the Waveform Generator determines the system's bandwidth in the frequency domain and consequently the number of users, process gain immunity to interference and overall reliability), the level of emissions on any given frequency, and the antenna or cable requirements. The Waveform Generator in this example creates a one cycle pulse output which produces an ultra-wideband signal in the frequency domain. An optional power Amplifier stage boosts the output of the Waveform Generator to a desired power level.

With reference now to the drawings, the amplitude and pulse width modulated transmitter in accord with the present invention is depicted at numeral 13000 in FIGS. 130 and 131. The Transmitter Timing Oscillator 13002 is a crystal-controlled oscillator operating at a frequency of 25 MHZ. Multiplier 13004 includes a two-input NAND gate 13102 controlling the gating of oscillator 13002 output to Waveform Generator 13006. Waveform Generator 13006 produces a pulse output as depicted at 13208 in FIGS. 132D and 133, which

produces a frequency spectrum 13402 in FIG. 134. Amplifier 13008 is optional. The transmitter 13000 output is applied to antenna or cable 13010, which as understood in the art, may be of various designs as appropriate in the circumstances.

FIGS. 132A-132D, 133, and 134 illustrate the ~~vanous~~ various signals present in transmitter 13000. The output of transmitter 13000 at "A" may be either a sinusoidal or squarewave signal 13202 that is provided as one input into NAND gate 13102. Gate 13102 also receives an information signal 13204 at "B" which, in the emhodiment shown, is digital in form. The output 13206 of Multiplier 13004 can be either sinusoidal or squarewave depending upon the original signal 13202. Waveform Generator 13006 provides an output of a single cycle impulse signal 13208. The single cycle impulse 13210 vanes m voltage around a static level 13212 and is created at 40 nanoseconds intervals. In the illustrated embodiment, the frequency of transmitter 13002 is 25 MHZ and accordingly, one cycle pulses of 1.0 GHZ are transmitted every 40 nanoseconds during the total time interval that gate 13102 is "on" and passes the output of transmitter oscillator 13002.

FIG. 135 shows the preferred embodiment receiver block diagram to recover the amplitude or pulse width modulated information and consists of a Receiver Timing Oscillator 13510, Waveform Generator 13508, RF Switch Fixed or Variable Integrator 13506, Decode Circuit 13514, two optional Amplifier/Pilter stages 13504 and 13512, antenna or cahle input 13502, and Information Output 13516. The Receiver Timing Oscillator 13510 frequency can be determined by a number of resonate circuits including an inductor and capacitor, a ceramic resonator, a SAW resonator, or a crystal. As in the case of the transmitter, the oscillator 13510 shown here is a crystal oscillator. The output waveform is a squarewave, although a smewave oscillator would produce identical system performance. The squarewave timing oscillator output 13602 is

shown ~~as A~~ in FIG. 136A. The Receiver Timing Oscillator 13510 is designed to operate within a range of frequencies that creates a known range of slew rates relative to the Transmitter Timing Oscillator 13002. In this embodiment, the Transmitter Timing Oscillator 13002 frequency is 25 MHZ and the Receiver Timing Oscillator 13510 outputs between 25.0003 MHZ and 25.0012 MHZ which creates a +300 to +1200 Hz slew rate.

The Receiver Timing Oscillator 13510 is connected to the Waveform Generator 13508 which shapes the oscillator signal into the appropriate output to control the amount of the time that the RF switch 13506 is on and off. The on-time of the RP switch 13506 should he less than ½ of a cycle (1/1 0 of a cycle is preferred) or in the case of a single pulse, no wider than the pulse width of the transmitted waveform or the signal gain of the system will be reduced. Examples are illustrated in Table A1. Therefore the output of the Waveform Generator 13508 is a pulse of the appropriate width that occurs once per cycle of the receiver timing oscillator 13510. The output 13604 of the Waveform Generator is shown ~~as B~~ in FIG. 136B.

Transmitted Waveform	Gain Limit on-time	Preferred on-time
Single 1 nanosecond pulse	1 nanosecond	100 picoseconds
1 Gigahertz 1,2,3..etc. cycle output	500 picoseconds	50 picoseconds
10 Gigahertz 1,2,3..etc. cycle output	50 picoseconds	5 picoseconds

Table A1

The RF Switch/Integrator 13506 samples the RF signal 13606 shown ~~as "C"~~ in FIG. 136C when the Waveform Generator output 13604 is below a predetermined value. When the Waveform Generator output 13604 is above a predetermined value, the RF Switch 13506 becomes a

high impedance node and allows the Integrator to hold the last RF signal sample 13606 until the next cycle of the Wavefonn Generator 13508 output. The Integrator section of 13506 is designed to charge the Integrator quickly (fast attack) and discharge the Integrator at a controlled rate (slow decay). This embodiment provides unwanted signal rejection and is a factor in determining the baseband frequency response of the system. The sense of the switch control is arbitrary depending on the actual hardware implementation.

In an embodiment of the present invention, the gating or sampling rate of the receiver 13500 is 300 Hz higher than the 25 MHZ transmission rate from the transmitter 13000. Altematively, the sampling rate could be less than the transmission rate. The difference in repetition rates between the transmitter 13000 and receiver 13500, the "slew rate," is 300 Hz and results in a controlled drift of the sampling pulses over the transmitted pulse which thus appears "stable" in time to the receiver 13500. With reference now to FIGS. 132A-132D and 136A-136G, an example is illustrated for a simple case of an output signal 13608 (FIG. 136D, ~~"D"~~) that is constructed of four samples from four RF input pulses 13606 for ease of explanation. As can be clearly seen, by sampling the RF pulses 13606 passed when the transmitter information signal 13204 (FIG. 132B) is above a predetermine threshold the signal 13608 is a replica of a signal 13606 but mapped into a different time base. In the case of this example, the new time base has a period four times longer than real time signal. The use of an optional amplifier/filter 13512 results in a further refinement of the signal 13608 which is ~~present at "E"~~ shown as signal 13610 in FIG. 136E.

Decode Circuitry 13514 extracts the information contained in the transmitted signal and includes a Rectifier that rectifies signal 13608 or 13610 to provide signal 13612 ~~at "G"~~shown in FIG. 136G. The Variable Threshold Generator circuitry in circuit 13514 provides a DC threshold

signal level 13614 for signal 13610 that is used to determine a high (transmitter output on) or low (transmitter output off) and is also shown ~~at "H."~~in FIG. 136G. The final output signal 13616 ~~at "F"~~shown in FIG. 136F is created by an output voltage comparator in circuit 13514 that combines signals 13612 and 13614 such that when the signal 13612 is a higher voltage than signal 13614, the information output signal goes high. Accordingly, signal 13616 represents, for example, a digital "1" that is now time-hased to a 1:4 expansion of the period of an original signal 13606. While this illustration provides a 4:1 reduction in frequency, it is sometimes desired to provide a reduction of more than 50,000:1; in the preferred embodiment, 100,000:1 or greater is achieved. This results in a shift directly from RF input frequency to low frequency baseband without the requirement of expensive intermediate circuitry that would have to be used if only a 4:1 conversion was used as a first stage. Table A2 provides information as to the time base conversion and includes examples.

Units

Receiver Timing Oscillator Frequency = 25.0003 MHz

Transmitter Timing Oscillator Frequency = 25 MHz

period =

period = 40 ns

time base multiplier =

time hase multiplier = 8.333_10^4

Example 1:

1 nanosecond translates into 83.33 microseconds

time base = (1 ns)_time base multiplier

time base = 83.333 us

Example 2:

2 Gigahertz translates into 24 Kilohertz 2 Gigahertz = 500 picosecond period

time base = (500 ps)_time base multiplier

time base = 41.667 us

frequency =

frequency = 24 KHz

Table A2

In the illustrated embodiment, the signal 13616 at "F" has a period of 83.33 usec, a frequency of 12 KHz and it is produced once every 3.3 msec for a 300 Hz slew rate. Stated another way, the system is converting a 1 gigahertz transmitted signal into an 83.33 microsecond signal.

Accordingly, the series of RF pulses 13210 that are transmitted during the presence of an "on" signal at the information input gate 13102 are used to reconstruct the information input signal 13204 by sampling the series of pulses at the receiver 13500. The system is designed to provide an adequate numher of RF inputs 13606 to allow for signal reconstruction.

An optional Amplifier/Filter stage or stages 13504 and 13512 may be included to provide additional receiver sensitivity, bandwidth

control or signal conditioning for the Decode Circuitry 13514. Choosing an appropriate time base multiplier will result in a signal at the output of the Integrator 13506 that can be amplified and filtered with operational amplifiers rather than RF amplifiers with a resultant simplification of the design process. The signal 13610 ~~at "E"~~shown in FIG. 136E illustrates the use of Amplifier/Pilter 13512 (FIG. 137). The optional RF amplifier 13504 shown as the first stage of the receiver should be included in the design when increased sensitivity and/or additional filtering is required. Example receiver schematics are shown in FIGS. 137-139.

FIGS. 140-143 illustrate different pulse output signals 14002 and 14202 and their respective frequency domain at 14102 and 14302. As can be seen from FIGS. 140 and 141, the half-cycle signal 14002 generates a spectrum less subject to interference than the single cycle of FIG. 133 and the 10-cycle pulse of FIG. 142. The various outputs determine the system's immunity to interference, the number of users in a given area, and the cable and antenna requirements. FIGS. 133 and 134 illustrate example pulse outputs.

FIGS. 144 and 145 show example differential receiver designs. The theory of operation is similar to the non-differential receiver of FIG. 135 except that the differential technique provides an increased signal to noise ratio by means of common mode rejection. Any signal impressed in phase at both inputs on the differential receiver will attenuated by the differential amplifier shown in FIGS. 144 and 145 and conversely any signal that produces a phase difference between the receiver inputs will be amplified.

FIGS. 146 and 147 illustrate the time and frequency domains of a narrow hand/constant carrier signal in contrast to the ultra-wide hand signals used in the illustrated embodiment.

VI. Additional Features of the Invention

1. Architectural Features of the Invention

The present invention provides, among other things, the following architectural features:

optimal baseband signal to noise ratio regardless of modulation (programmable RF matched filter);

exceptional linearity per milliwatt consumed;

easily integrated into bulk C-MOS (small size/low cost, high level of integration);

fundamental or sub-harmonic operation (does not change conversion efficiency);

transmit function provides frequency multiplication and signal gain

and

optimal power transfer into a scalable output impedance (independent of device voltage or current);

The present invention provides simultaneous solutions for two domains: power sampling and matched filtering. A conventional sampler is a voltage sampling device, and does not suhstantially affect the input signal. A power sampler according to the present invention attempts to take as much power from the input to construct the output, and does not necessarily preserve the input signal.

2. Additional Benefits of the Invention

2.1 Compared to an Impulse Sampler

The present invention out-performs a theoretically perfect impulse sampler. The performance of a practical implementation of the present invention exceeds the performance of a practical implementation of an impulse sampler. The present invention is easily implemented (does not require impulse circuitry).

2.2 Linearity

The present invention provides exceptional linearity per milliwatt. For example, rail to rail dynamic range is possible with

minimal increase in power. In an example integrated circuit embodiment, the present invention provides +55dmb IP2, +15 dbm IP3, @ 3.3V, 4.4ma, -15dmb LO. GSM system requirements are +22dbm IP2, -10.5dmb IP3. CDMA system requirements are +50dmb IP2, +10dbm IP3.

2.3 Optimal Power Transfer into a Scalable Output Impedance

In an embodiment of the present invention, output impedance is scalable to facilitate a low system noise figure. In an embodiment, changes in output impedance do not affect power consumption.

2.4 System Integration

In an embodiment, the present invention enables a high level of integration in bulk C-MOS. Other features include:

small footprint;

no multiplier circuits (no device matching or balancing transistors);

transmit and receive filters at baseband;

low frequency synthesizers;

DC offset solutions;

Referring to FIG. 218A, a single-switch, differential input, differential output receiver 21800, according to an emhodiment of the present invention, is shown. If an I/Q signal is being received, receiver 21800 could be implemented for each of the I- and Q-phase signals. No balanced transistor is required in receiver 21800. Any charge injection that creates a DC offset voltage on a first switch input 21802 creates a

suhstantially equal DC offset voltage on a second switch input 21804, so that any resulting DC offset due to charge injection is substantially canceled.

In an embodiment, LO signal 21806 runs at a sub-harmonic. Gilbert cells lose efficiency when run at a sub-hannonic, as compared to the receiver of the present invention.

FIG. 218A shows a substantially maximal linearity configuration. The drain and source voltages are virtually fixed in relation to V_{gs}. The DC voltage across first switch input 21802 and second switch input 21804 remains substantially constant.

Single-switch, differential input, differential output receiver embodiments according to the present invention, are discussed in further detail elsewhere herein.

architecturally reduces re-radiation;

Referring to FIG. 218A, re-radiation is substantially all common mode. With a perfect splitter, the re-radiation will be substantially eliminated.

Referring to FIG. 218B, a first switch 21810 and a second switch 21812 are implemented in a receiver 21814, according to an emhodiment of the present invention. Receiver 21814 moves re-radiation off frequency to the next even harmonic frequency higher. Referring to FIG. 218D, re-radiation was substantially shifted from 2.49 GHz (see re-radiation spike 21818) to 3.29 GHz (see larger re-radiation spike 21820).

Receiver embodiments, according to the present invention, for reducing or eliminating circuit re-radiation, such as receiver 21814, are discussed in further detail elsewhere herein.

inherent noise rejection; and
lower cost.

2.5 Fundamental or Sub-Harmonic Operation

Sub-harmonic operation is preferred for many direct down-conversion implementations hecause it tends to avoid oscillators and/or signals near the desired operating frequency.

Conversion efficiency is generally constant regardless of the sub-harmonic. Suh-harmonic operation enahles micro power receiver designs.

2.6 Frequency Multiplication and Signal Gain

A transmit function in accordance with the present invention provides frequency multiplication and signal gain. For example, a 900 MHz design example (0.35 μ CMOS) embodiment features -15 dbm 180 MHz LO, 0 dbm 900 MHz I/O output, 5 VDC, 5 ma. A 2400 MHz design example (0.35 μ CMOS) embodiment features -15 dhm 800 MHz LO, -6 dhm 2.4 GHz I/O output, 5 VDC, 16 ma.

A transmit function in accordance with the present invention also provides direct up-conversion (true zero IF).

3. Controlled Aperture Sub-Harmonic Matched Filter Features

3.1 Non-Negligible Aperture

A non-negligible aperture, as taught herein, substantially preserves amplitude and phase information, but not necessarily the carrier signal. A general concept is to under-sample the carrier while over sampling the information.

The present invention transfers optimum energy. Example embodiments have been presented herein, including DC examples and carrier half cycle examples.

3.2 Bandwidth

With regard to input bandwidth, optimum energy transfer generally occurs every n + ½ cycle. Output bandwidth is generally a function of the LO.

3.3 Architectural Advantages of a Universal Frequency Down-Converter

A universal frequency down-converter (UDP), in accordance with the invention, can be designed to provides, among other things, the following features:

filter Q's of 100,000+;
filters with gain;
filter integration in CMOS;
electrically modified center frequency and bandwidth;
stable filter parameters in the presence of high level signals; and
UDF's can be mass produced without tuning.

3.4 Complimentary FET Switch Advantages

Complimentary FET switch implementations of the invention provide, among other things, increased dynamic range (lower Rds_{on} - increased conversion efficiency, higher IIP2, IIP3, minimal current increase (+CMOS inverter), and lower re-radiation (charge cancellation). For example, refer to FIGS. 240 and 241.

3.5 Differential Configuration Characteristics

Differential configuration implementations of the invention provide, among other things, DC off-set advantages, lower re-radiation, input and output common mode rejection, and minimal current increase. For example, refer to FIG. 242.

3.6 Clock Spreading Characteristics

Clock spreading aspects of the invention provide, among other things, lower re-radiation, DC off-set advantages, and flicker noise advantages. For example, refer to FIGS. 243-245.

3.7 Controlled Aperture Sub Harmonic Matched Filter Principles

The invention provides, among other things, optimization of signal to noise ratio subject to maximum energy transfer given a controlled aperture, and maximum energy transfer while preserving information. The invention also provides bandpass wave form auto sampling and pulse energy accumulation

3.8 Effects of Pulse Width Variation

Pulse width can be optimized for a frequency of interest. Generally, pulse width is n plus ½ cycles of a desired input frequency. Generally, in CMOS implementations of the invention, pulse width variation across process variations and temperature of interest is less than +/- 16 percent.

4. Conventional Systems

4.1 Heterodyne Systems

Conventional heterodyne systems, in contrast to the present invention, are relatively complex, require multiple RF synthesizers, require management of various electromagnetic modes (shield, etc.), require significant intermodulation management, and require a myriad of technologies that do not easily integrate onto integrated circuits.

4.2 Mobile Wireless Devices

High quality mobile wireless devices have not been implemented via zero IF because of the high power requirements for the first conversion in order to ohtain necessary dynamic range, the high level of LO required (LO re-radiation), adjacent channel interference rejection filtering, transmitter modulation filtering, transmitter LO leakage, and limitations on RF synthesizer performance and technology.

5. Phase Noise Cancellation

The complex phasor notation of a harmonic signal IS known from Euler's equation, shown here as equation 172.

$$S(t) = e^{-j(\omega_c t+\varphi)}$$

EQ. (172)

Suppose that φ is also some function of time $\varphi(t)$. $\varphi(t)$ represents phase noise or some other phase perturbation of the waveform. Furthermore, suppose that $\varphi(t)$ and $-\varphi(t)$. can be derived and manipulated. Then if follows that the multiplication of $S_1(t)$ and $S_2(t)$ will yield equation 173.

$$S(t) = S_1(t) \bullet S_2(t) = e^{-j(\omega_c t+\varphi(t))} \bullet e^{-j(\omega_c t-\varphi(t))} = e^{-j2\omega_c t}$$

EQ. (173)

Thus, the phase noise $\varphi(t)$ can be canceled. Trigonometric identities verify the same result except for an additional term at DC. This can be implemented with, for example, a four-quadrant version of the invention. FIG. 268 illustrates an implementation for a doubler (2X clock frequency and harmonics thereof). FIG. 269 illustrates another implementation (harmonics with odd order phase noise canceling).

In an embodiment two clocks are utilized for phase noise cancellation of odd and even order harmonics by cascading stages. A four quadrant implementation of the invention can be utilized to eliminate the multiplier illustrated in FIG. 269.

6. Multiplexed UFD

In an embodiment, parallel receivers and transmitters are implemented usmg single pole, double throw, triple throw, etc.,

implementations of the invention.

A multiple throw implementation of the invention can also be utilized. In this embodiment, many frequency conversion options at multiple rates can be performed in parallel or serial. This can be implemented for multiple receive functions, multi-band radios, multi-rate filters, etc.

7. Sampling Apertures

Multiple apertures can he utilized to accomplish a variety of effects. For example, FIG. 270 illustrates a bipolar sample aperture and a corresponding sine wave being sampled. The bipolar sample aperture IS operated at a sub harmonic of the sine wave being sampled. By calculating the Pourier transform of each component within the Pourier series, it can be shown that the sampling power spectrum goes to zero at the sub harmonics and super harmonics. As a result, the comb spectrum is substantially eliminated except at the conversion frequency.

Similarly, the numher of apertures can be extended with associated bipolar weighting to form a variety of impulse responses and to perform filtering at RF.

8. Diversity Reception and Equalizers

The present invention can be utilized to implement maximal ratio post detection combiners, equal gain post detection combiners, and selectors.

FIG. 271 illustrates an example diversity receiver implemented in accordance with the present invention.

FIG. 272 illustrates an example equalizer implemented in accordance with the present invention.

The present invention can serve as a quadrature down converter and as a unit delay function. In an example of such an implementation, the unit delay function is implemented with a decimated clock at baseband.

VII. Conclusions

Example embodiments of the methods, systems, and components of the present invention have been described herein. As noted elsewhere, these example embodiments have been described for illustrative purposes only, and are not limiting. Other embodiments are possible and are covered by the invention. Such other embodiments include but are not limited to hardware, software, and software/hardware implementations of the methods, systems, and components of the invention. Such other embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Thus, the breadth and scope of the present invention should not be limited by any of the above-described exemplary embodiments, but should be defined only in accordance with the following claims and their equivalents.

VIII. Glossary of Terms

A.M.	Amplitude Modulation
A/D	Analog/Digital
AWGN	Additive White Gaussian
C	Capacitor

CMOS	Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor
dB	Decibel
dBm	Decibels with Respect to One Milliwatt
DC	Direct Current
DCT	Discrete Cosine Transform
DST	Discrete Sine Transform
FIR	Finite Impulse Response
GHz	Giga Hertz
I/Q	In Phase/Quadrature Phase
IC	Integrated Circuits, Initial Conditions
IF	Intermediate Frequency
ISM	Industrial, Scientific, Medical Band
L-C	Inductor-Capacitor
LO	Local Oscillator
NF	Noise Frequency
OFDM	Olihogonal Frequency Division Multiplex
R	Resistor
RF	Radio Frequency
rms	Root Mean Square
SNR	Signal to Noise Ratio
WT"AN	Wireless T "ocal Area Network
UFT	Universal Frequency Translation

What Is Claimed Is:

1. A system for frequency down-converting a modulated carrier signal, comprising:

a first switch, a first aperture signal, and a first energy storage element that down-converts said modulated carrier signal according to a first control signal and outputs a down-converted in-phase signal portion of said modulated carrier signal;

a second switch, a second aperture signal, and a second energy storage element that down-converts said modulated carrier signal according to a second control signal and outputs a down-converted inverted in-phase signal portion of said modulated carrier signal; and

a first differential amplifier circuit that combines said down-converted in-phase signal portion with said inverted in-phase signal portion and outputs a first channel down-converted differential in-phase signal.

Abstract

Methods, systems, and apparatuses, and combinations and sub-combinations thereof, for down-converting an electromagnetic (EM) signal are described herein. Briefly stated, in embodiments the invention operates by receiving an EM signal and recursively operating on approximate half cycles (½ , 1 ½ , 2 ½ , etc) of the carrier signal. The recursive operations can be performed at a suh-harmonic rate of the carrier signal. The invention accumulates the results of the recursive operations and uses the accumulated results to form a down-converted signal. In an embodiment, the EM signal is down-converted to an intermediate frequency (IF) signal. In another emhodiment, the EM signal is down-converted to a hasehand information signal. In another embodiment, the EM signal is a frequency modulated (FM) signal, which is down-converted to a non-FM signal, such as a phase modulated (PM) signal or an amplitude modulated (AM) signal.

What Is Claimed Is:

1. A system for frequency down-converting a modulated carrier signal, comprising:

a first switch, a first aperture signal, and a first energy storage element that down-converts said modulated carrier signal according to a first control signal and outputs a down-converted in-phase signal portion of said modulated carrier signal;

a second switch, a second aperture signal, and a second energy storage element that down-converts said modulated carrier signal according to a second control signal and outputs a down-converted inverted in-phase signal portion of said modulated carrier signal; and

a first differential amplifier circuit that combines said down-converted in-phase signal portion with said inverted in-phase signal portion and outputs a first channel down-converted differential in-phase signal.

PTO/AIA/22 (03-13)
Approved for use through 7/31/2016. OMB 0651-0031
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

PETITION FOR EXTENSION OF TIME UNDER 37 CFR 1.136(a)

Docket Number (Optional): 19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

Application Number: 14/172,392

Filed: February 4, 2014

For: Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships

Art Unit: 2649

Examiner:

This is a request under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a) to extend the period for filing a reply in the above-identified application.

The requested extension and fee are as follows (check time period desired and enter the appropriate fee below):

		Fee	Small Entity Fee	Micro Entity Fee	
☑	One month (37 CFR 1.17(a)(1))	$200	$100	$50	$ 200.00
☐	Two months (37 CFR 1.17(a)(2))	$600	$300	$150	$
☐	Three months (37 CFR 1.17(a)(3))	$1,400	$700	$350	$
☐	Four months (37 CFR 1.17(a)(4))	$2,200	$1,100	$550	$
☐	Five months (37 CFR 1.17(a)(5))	$3,000	$1,500	$750	$

☐ Applicant asserts small entity status. See 37 CFR 1.27.

☐ Applicant certifies micro entity status. See 37 CFR 1.29.
Form PTO/SB/15A or B or equivalent must either be enclosed or have been submitted previously.

☐ A check in the amount of the fee is enclosed.

☐ Payment by credit card. Form PTO-2038 is attached.

☐ The Director has already been authorized to charge fees in this application to a Deposit Account.

☑ The Director is hereby authorized to charge any fees which may be required, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account Number 233178.

☑ Payment made via EFS-Web.

WARNING: Information on this form may become public. Credit card information should not be included on this form. Provide credit card information and authorization on PTO-2038.

I am the

☐ applicant.

☐ attorney or agent of record. Registration number _____.

☑ attorney or agent acting under 37 CFR 1.34. Registration number 55,301.

/Shane K. Jensen 55,301/ — Signature

May 15, 2014 — Date

Shane K. Jensen — Typed or printed name

801-533-9800 — Telephone Number

NOTE: This form must be signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.33. See 37 CFR 1.4 for signature requirements and certifications. Submit multiple forms if more than one signature is required, see below*.

☑ * Total of 1 forms are submitted.

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.136(a). The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public, which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 6 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Mail Stop PCT, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

Privacy Act Statement

The **Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579)** requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether disclosure of these records is required by the Freedom of Information Act.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (*i.e.*, GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspection or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships

Inventors: David F. Sorrells
Michael J. Bultman
Robert W. Cook
Richard C. Looke
Charley D. Moses, Jr.
Gregory S. Rawlins
Michael W. Rawlins

Cross-Reference to Other Applications

The present application is a continuation of pending U.S. application "Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships", Ser. No. 13/549,213, filed July 13, 2012, which is a continuation of "Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal and Transforms for the Same, and Aperture Relationships", Ser. No. 12/976,839, filed December 22, 2010, which is a continuation of U.S. application "Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships," Ser. No, 12/349,802, filed January 7, 2009 (now U.S. Patent No. 7,865,177), which is a divisional application of U.S. application "Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships," Ser. No. 09/550,644, filed April 14, 2000 (now U.S. Patent No. 7,515,896), which is a continuation-in-part application of U.S. application "Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal Including Resonant Structures for Enhanced

Energy Transfer," Ser. No. 09/293,342, filed April 16, 1999 (now U.S. Patent No. 6,687,493), which is a continuation-in-part application of U.S. application "Method and System for Down-Converting Electromagnetic Signals," Ser. No. 09/176,022, filed October 21, 1998 (now U.S. Patent No. 6,061,551), each of which is herein incorporated by reference in their entireties.

The following applications of common assignee are related to the present application, and are herein incorporated by reference in their entireties:

"Method and System for Frequency Up-Conversion," Ser. No. 09/176,154, filed October 21, 1998 (now U.S. Patent No. 6,091,940);

"Method and System for Ensuring Reception of a Communications Signal," Ser. No. 09/176,415, filed October 21, 1998 (now U.S. Patent No. 6,061,555);

"Integrated Frequency Translation and Selectivity," Ser. No. 09/175,966, filed October 21, 1998 (now U.S. Patent No. 6,049,706);

"Universal Frequency Translation, and Applications of Same," Ser. No. 09/176,027, filed October 21, 1998 (now abandoned);

"Method and System for Down-Converting Electromagnetic Signals Having Optimized Switch Structures," Ser. No. 09/293,095, filed April 16, 1999 (now U.S. Patent No. 6,580,902);

"Method and System for Frequency Up-Conversion with a Variety of Transmitter Configurations," Ser. No. 09/293,580, filed April 16, 1999 (U.S. Patent No. 6,542,722); and

"Integrated Frequency Translation and Selectivity with a Variety of Filter Embodiments," Ser. No. 09/293,283, filed April 16, 1999 (now U.S. Patent No. 6,560,301).

Background of the Invention

Field of the Invention

The present invention relates to down-conversion of electromagnetic (EM) signals. More particularly, the present invention relates to down-conversion of EM signals to intermediate frequency signals, to direct down-conversion of EM modulated carrier signals to demodulated baseband signals, and to conversion of FM signals to non-FM signals. The present invention also relates to under-sampling and to transferring energy at aliasing rates.

Related Art

Electromagnetic (EM) information signals (baseband signals) include, but are not limited to, video baseband signals, voice baseband signals, computer baseband signals, etc. Baseband signals include analog baseband signals and digital baseband signals.

It is often beneficial to propagate EM signals at higher frequencies. This is generally true regardless of whether the propagation medium is wire, optic fiber, space, air, liquid, etc.. To enhance efficiency and practicality, such as improved ability to radiate and added ability for multiple channels of baseband signals, up-conversion to a higher frequency is utilized. Conventional up-conversion processes modulate higher frequency carrier signals with baseband signals. Modulation refers to a variety of techniques for impressing information from the baseband signals onto the higher frequency carrier signals. The resultant signals are referred to herein as modulated carrier signals. For example, the amplitude of an AM carrier signal varies in relation to changes in the baseband signal, the frequency of an FM carrier signal varies in relation to changes in the baseband signal, and the phase of a PM carrier signal varies in relation to changes in the baseband signal.

In order to process the information that was in the baseband signal, the information must be extracted, or demodulated, from the modulated carrier signal. However, because conventional signal processing technology is limited in operational speed, conventional signal processing technology cannot easily demodulate a baseband signal from higher frequency modulated carrier signal directly. Instead, higher frequency modulated carrier signals must be down-converted to an intermediate frequency (IF), from where a conventional demodulator can demodulate the baseband signal.

Conventional down-converters include electrical components whose properties are frequency dependent. As a result, conventional down-converters are designed around specific frequencies or frequency ranges and do not work well outside their designed frequency range.

Conventional down-converters generate unwanted Image signals and thus must include filters for filtering the unwanted image signals. However, such filters reduce the power level of the modulated carrier signals. As a result, conventional down-converters include power amplifiers, which require external energy sources.

When a received modulated carrier signal is relatively weak, as in, for example, a radio receiver, conventional down-converters include additional power amplifiers, which require additional external energy.

What is needed includes, without limitation:

an improved method and system for down-converting EM signals;

a method and system for directly down-converting modulated carrier signals to demodulated baseband signals;

a method and system for transferring energy and for augmenting such energy transfer when down-converting EM signals;

a controlled impedance method and system for down-converting an EM signal;

a controlled aperture under-sampling method and system for down- converting an EM signal;

a method and system for down-converting EM signals using a universal down-converter design that can be easily configured for different frequencies;

a method and system for down-converting EM signals using a local oscillator frequency that is substantially lower than the carrier frequency;

a method and system for down-converting EM signals using only one local oscillator;

a method and system for down-converting EM signals that uses fewer filters than conventional down-converters;

a method and system for down-converting EM signals using less power than conventional down-converters;

a method and system for down-converting EM signals that uses less space than conventional down-converters;

a method and system for down-converting EM signals that uses fewer components than conventional down-converters;

a method and system for down-converting EM signals that can be implemented on an integrated circuit (IC); and

a method and system for down-converting EM signals that can also be used as a method and system for up-converting a baseband signal.

Summary of the Invention

Briefly stated, the present invention is directed to methods, systems, and apparatuses for down-converting an electromagnetic (EM), and applications thereof.

Generally, in an embodiment, the invention operates by receiving

an EM signal and recursively operating on approximate half cycles of a carrier signal. The recursive operations are typically performed at a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal. The invention accumulates the results of the recursive operations and uses the accumulated results to form a down-converted signal.

In an embodiment, the invention down-converts the EM signal to an intermediate frequency (IF) signal.

In another embodiment, the invention down-converts the EM signal to a demodulated baseband information signal.

In another embodiment, the EM signal is a frequency modulated (FM) signal, which is down-converted to a non-FM signal, such as a phase modulated (PM) signal or an amplitude modulated (AM) signal.

The invention is applicable to any type of EM signal, including but not limited to, modulated carrier signals (the invention is applicable to any modulation scheme or combination thereof) and unmodulated carrier signals.

Further features and advantages of the invention, as well as the structure and operation of various embodiments of the invention, are described in detail below with reference to the accompanying drawings. It is noted that the invention is not limited to the specific embodiments described herein. Such embodiments are presented herein for illustrative purposes only. Additional embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein.

Brief Description of the Drawings

The drawing in which an element first appears is typically indicated by the leftmost digit(s) in the corresponding reference number.

The present invention will be described with reference to the accompanying drawings wherein:

FIGS. 1 illustrates a structural block diagram of an example modulator;

FIG. 2 illustrates an example analog modulating baseband signal;

FIG. 3 illustrates an example digital modulating baseband signal;

FIG. 4 illustrates an example carrier signal;

FIGS. 5A-5C illustrate example signal diagrams related to amplitude modulation;

FIGS. 6A-6C illustrate example signal diagrams related to amplitude shift keying modulation;

FIGS. 7A-7C illustrate example signal diagrams related to frequency modulation;

FIGS. 8A-8C illustrate example signal diagrams related to frequency shift keying modulation;

FIGS. 9A-9C illustrate example signal diagrams related to phase modulation;

FIGS. 10A-10C illustrate example signal diagrams related to phase shift keying modulation;

FIG. 11 illustrates a structural block diagram of a conventional receiver;

FIG.12A-D illustrate various flowcharts for down-converting an EM-signal according to embodiments of the invention;

FIG. 13 illustrates a structural block diagram of an aliasing system according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIGS. 14A-D illustrate various flowcharts for down-converting an EM signal by under-sampling the EM signal according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 15A-E illustrate example signal diagrams associated with flowcharts in FIGS. 14A-D according to embodiments of the invention;

FIG. 16 illustrates a structural block diagram of an

under-sampling system according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 17 illustrates a flowchart of an example process for determining an aliasing rate according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIGS. 18A-E illustrate example signal diagrams associated with down-converting a digital AM signal to an intermediate frequency signal by under-sampling according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 19A-E illustrate example signal diagrams associated with down-converting an analog AM signal to an intermediate frequency signal by under-sampling according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 20A-E illustrate example signal diagrams associated with down-converting an analog FM signal to an intermediate frequency signal by under-sampling according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 21A-E illustrate example signal diagrams associated with down-converting a digital FM signal to an intermediate frequency signal by under-sampling according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 22A-E illustrate example signal diagrams associated with down-converting a digital PM signal to an intermediate frequency signal by under-sampling according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 23A-E illustrate example signal diagrams associated with down-converting an analog PM signal to an intermediate frequency signal by under-sampling according to embodiments of the invention;

FIG. 24A illustrates a structural block diagram of a make before break under-sampling system according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 24B illustrates an example timing diagram of an under sampling signal according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 24C illustrates an example timing diagram of an isolation signal according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIGS. 25A-H illustrate example aliasing signals at various

aliasing rates according to embodiments of the invention;

FIG. 26A illustrates a structural block diagram of an exemplary sample and hold system according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 26B illustrates a structural block diagram of an exemplary inverted sample and hold system according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 27 illustrates a structural block diagram of sample and hold module according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIGS. 28A-D illustrate example implementations of a switch module according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 29A-F illustrate example implementations of a holding module according to embodiments of the present invention;

FIG. 29G illustrates an integrated under-sampling system according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 29H-K illustrate example implementations of pulse generators according to embodiments of the invention;

FIG. 29L illustrates an example oscillator;

FIG. 30 illustrates a structural block diagram of an under-sampling system with an under-sampling signal optimizer according to embodiments of the invention;

FIG. 31A illustrates a structural block diagram of an under-sampling signal optimizer according to embodiments of the present invention;

FIGS. 31B and 31C illustrate example waveforms present in the circuit of FIG. 31A;

FIG. 32A illustrates an example of an under-sampling signal module according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 32B illustrates a flowchart of a state machine operation associated with an under-sampling module according to embodiments of the invention;

FIG. 32C illustrates an example under-sampling module that includes an analog circuit with automatic gain control according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 33A-D illustrate example signal diagrams associated with direct down-conversion of an EM signal to a baseband signal by under-sampling according to embodiments of the present invention;

FIGS. 34A-F illustrate example signal diagrams associated with an inverted sample and hold module according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 35A-E illustrate example signal diagrams associated with directly down-converting an analog AM signal to a demodulated baseband signal by under-sampling according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 36A-E illustrate example signal diagrams associated with down-converting a digital AM signal to a demodulated baseband signal by under-sampling according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 37A-E illustrate example signal diagrams associated with directly down-converting an analog PM signal to a demodulated baseband signal by under-sampling according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 38A-E illustrate example signal diagrams associated with down-converting a digital PM signal to a demodulated baseband signal by under-sampling according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 39A-D illustrate down-converting a FM signal to a non-FM signal by under-sampling according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 40A-E illustrate down-converting a FSK signal to a PSK signal by under-sampling according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 41A-E illustrate down-converting a FSK signal to an ASK signal by under-sampling according to embodiments of the invention;

FIG. 42 illustrates a structural block diagram of an inverted sample and hold according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 43 illustrates an equation that represents the change in charge in an storage device of embodiments of a UFT module.

FIG. 44A illustrates a structural block diagram of a differential system according to embodiments of the invention;

FIG. 44B illustrates a structural block diagram of a differential system with a differential input and a differential output according to embodiments of the invention;

FIG. 44C illustrates a structural block diagram of a differential system with a single input and a differential output according to embodiments of the invention;

FIG. 44D illustrates a differential input with a single output according to embodiments of the invention;

FIG. 44E illustrates an example differential input to single output system according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS 45A-B illustrate a conceptual illustration of aliasing including under-sampling and energy transfer according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 46A-D illustrate various flowchart for down-converting an EM signal by transferring energy from the EM signal at an aliasing rate according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 47A-E illustrate example signal diagrams associated with the flowcharts in FIGS. 46A-D according to embodiments of the invention;

FIG. 48 is a flowchart that illustrates an example process for determining an aliasing rate associated with an aliasing signal according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 49A-H illustrate example energy transfer signals according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 50A-G illustrate example signal diagrams associated with down-converting an analog AM signal to an intermediate frequency by transferring energy at an aliasing rate according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 51A-G illustrate example signal diagrams associated with down-converting an digital AM signal to an intermediate frequency by transferring energy at an aliasing rate according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 52A-G illustrate example signal diagrams associated with down-converting an analog FM signal to an intermediate frequency by transferring energy at an aliasing rate according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 53A-G illustrate example signal diagrams associated with down-converting an digital FM signal to an intermediate frequency by transferring energy at an aliasing rate according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 54A-G illustrate example signal diagrams associated with down-converting an analog PM signal to an intermediate frequency by transferring energy at an aliasing rate according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 55A-G illustrate example signal diagrams associated with down-converting an digital PM signal to an intermediate frequency by transferring energy at an aliasing rate according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 56A-D illustrate an example signal diagram associated with direct down-conversion according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 57A-F illustrate directly down-converting an analog AM signal to a demodulated baseband signal according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 58A-F illustrate directly down-converting an digital AM signal to a demodulated baseband signal according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 59A-F illustrate directly down-converting an analog PM signal to a demodulated baseband signal according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 60A-F illustrate directly down-converting an digital PM signal to a demodulated baseband signal according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 61A-F illustrate down-converting an FM signal to a PM signal according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 62A-F illustrate down-converting an FM signal to a AM signal according to embodiments of the invention;

FIG. 63 illustrates a block diagram of an energy transfer system according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 64A illustrates an exemplary gated transfer system according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 64B illustrates an exemplary inverted gated transfer system according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 65 illustrates an example embodiment of the gated transfer module according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIGS. 66A-D illustrate example implementations of a switch module according to embodiments of the invention;

FIG. 67A illustrates an example embodiment of the gated transfer module as including a break-before-make module according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 67B illustrates an example timing diagram for an energy transfer signal according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 67C illustrates an example timing diagram for an isolation signal according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIGS. 68A-F illustrate example storage modules according to embodiments of the invention;

FIG. 68G illustrates an integrated gated transfer system according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIGS. 68H-K illustrate example aperture generators;

FIG. 68L illustrates an oscillator according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 69 illustrates an energy transfer system with an optional energy transfer signal module according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 70 illustrates an aliasing module with input and output impedance match according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 71A illustrates an example pulse generator;

FIGS. 71 Band C illustrate example waveforms related to the pulse generator of FIG. 71A;

FIG. 72 illustrates an example embodiment where preprocessing is used to select a portion of the carrier signal to be operated upon;

FIG. 73 illustrates an example energy transfer module with a switch module and a reactive storage module according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 74 illustrates an example inverted gated transfer module as including a switch module and a storage module according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIGS. 75A-F illustrate an example signal diagrams associated with an inverted gated energy transfer module according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 76A-E illustrate energy transfer modules in configured in various differential configurations according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 77A-C illustrate example impedance matching circuits

according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 78A-B illustrate example under-sampling systems according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 79A-F illustrate example timing diagrams for under-sampling systems according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 80A-F illustrate example timing diagrams for an under-sampling system when the load is a relatively low impedance load according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 81A-F illustrate example timing diagrams for an under-sampling system when the holding capacitance has a larger value according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 82A-B illustrate example energy transfer systems according to embodiments of the invention;

FIGS. 83A-F illustrate example timing diagrams for energy transfer systems according to embodiments of the present invention;

FIGS. 84A-D illustrate down-converting an FSK signal to a PSK signal according to embodiments of the present invention;

FIG. 85A illustrates an example energy transfer signal module according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 85B illustrates a flowchart of state machine operation according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 85C is an example energy transfer signal module;

FIG. 86 is a schematic diagram of a circuit to down-convert a 915 MHZ signal to a 5 MHZ signal using a 101.1 MHZ clock according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 87 shows simulation waveforms for the circuit of FIG. 86 according to embodiments of the present invention;

FIG. 88 is a schematic diagram of a circuit to down-convert a 915 MHZ signal to a 5 MHz signal using a 101 MHZ clock according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 89 shows simulation waveforms for the circuit of FIG. 88 according to embodiments of the present invention;

FIG. 90 is a schematic diagram of a circuit to down-convert a 915 MHZ signal to a 5 MHZ signal using a 101.1 MHZ clock according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 91 shows simulation waveforms for the circuit of FIG. 90 according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 92 shows a schematic of the circuit in FIG. 86 connected to an FSK source that alternates between 913 and 917 MHZ at a baud rate of 500 Kbaud according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 93 shows the original FSK waveform 9202 and the down--converted waveform 9204 at the output of the load impedance match circuit according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 94A illustrates an example energy transfer system according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIGS. 94B-C illustrate example timing diagrams for the example system of FIG. 94A;

FIG. 95 illustrates an example bypass network according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 96 illustrates an example bypass network according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 97 illustrates an example embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 98A illustrates an example real time aperture control circuit according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 98B illustrates a timing diagram of an example clock signal for real time aperture control, according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 98C illustrates a timing diagram of an example optional enable signal for real time aperture control, according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 98D illustrates a timing diagram of an inverted clock signal for real time aperture control, according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 98E illustrates a timing diagram of an example delayed clock signal for real time aperture control, according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 98F illustrates a timing diagram of an example energy transfer including pulses having apertures that are controlled in real time, according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 99 is a block diagram of a differential system that utilizes non-inverted gated transfer units, according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG.100 illustrates an example embodiment of the invention;

FIG.101 illustrates an example embodiment of the invention;

FIG.102 illustrates an example embodiment of the invention;

FIG.103 illustrates an example embodiment of the invention;

FIG.104 illustrates an example embodiment of the invention;

FIG.105 illustrates an example embodiment of the invention;

FIG.106 illustrates an example embodiment of the in invention;

FIG.107A is a timing diagram for the example embodiment of FIG. 103;

FIG.107B is a timing diagram for the example embodiment of FIG. 104;

FIG.108A is a timing diagram for the example embodiment of FIG. 105;

FIG.108B is a timing diagram for the example embodiment of FIG. 106;

FIG.109A illustrates and example embodiment of the invention;

FIG.109B illustrates equations for determining charge transfer, in accordance with the present invention;

FIG.109C illustrates relationships between capacitor charging and aperture, in accordance with the present invention;

FIG.109D illustrates relationships between capacitor charging and aperture, in accordance with the present invention;

FIG.109E illustrates power-charge relationship equations, in accordance with the present invention;

FIG.109F illustrates insertion loss equations, in accordance with the present invention;

FIG.110A illustrates aliasing module 11000 a single FET configuration;

FIG .110B illustrates FET conductivity vs. V_{GS};

FIGS.111A-C illustrate signal waveforms associated with aliasing module 11000;

FIG. 112 illustrates aliasing module 11200 with a complementary FET configuration;

FIGS. 113A-E illustrate signal waveforms associated with aliasing module 11200;

FIG. 114 illustrates aliasing module 11400;

FIG. 115 illustrates aliasing module 11500;

FIG. 116 illustrates aliasing module 11602;

FIG. 117 illustrates aliasing module 11702;

FIGS. 118-120 illustrate signal waveforms associated with aliasing module 11602;

FIGS. 121-123 illustrate signal waveforms associated with aliasing module 11702.

FIG. 124A is a block diagram of a splitter according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 124B is a more detailed diagram of a splitter according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIGS. 124C and 124D are example waveforms related to the

splitter of FIGS. 124A and 124B;

FIG. 124E is a block diagram of an I/Q circuit with a splitter according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIGS. 124F-124J are example waveforms related to the diagram of FIG. 124A;

FIG. 125 is a block diagram of a switch module according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 126A is an implementation example of the block diagram of FIG. 125;

FIGS. 126B-126Q are example waveforms related to FIG. 126A;

FIG. 127A is another implementation example of the block diagram of FIG. 125;

FIGS. 127B-127Q are example waveforms related to FIG. 127A;

FIG. 128A is an example MOSFET embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 128B is an example MOSFET embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 128C is an example MOSFET embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 129A is another implementation example of the block diagram of FIG. 125;

FIGS. 129B-129Q are example waveforms related to FIG. 127A;

FIGS. 130 and 131 illustrate the amplitude and pulse width modulated transmitter according to embodiments of the present invention;

FIGS. 132A-132D, 133, and134 illustrate example signal diagrams associated with the amplitude and pulse width modulated transmitter according to embodiments of the present invention;

FIG. 135 shows an embodiment of a receiver block diagram to recover the amplitude or pulse width modulated information;

FIGS. 136A-136G illustrate example signal diagrams associated with a waveform generator according to embodiments of the present invention;

FIGS. 137-139 are example schematic diagrams illustrating various circuits employed in the receiver of FIG. 135;

FIGS. 140-143 illustrate time and frequency domain diagrams of alternative transmitter output waveforms;

FIGS. 144 and 145 illustrate differential receivers in accord with embodiments of the present invention;

FIGS. 146 and 147 illustrate time and frequency domains for a narrow bandwidth/constant carrier signal in accord with an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 148 illustrates a method for down-converting an electromagnetic signal according to an embodiment of the present invention using a matched filtering/correlating operation;

FIG. 149 illustrates a matched filtering/correlating processor according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 150 illustrates a method for down-converting an electromagnetic signal according to an embodiment of the present invention using a finite time integrating operation;

FIG. 151 illustrates a finite time integrating processor according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 152 illustrates a method for down-converting an electromagnetic signal according to an embodiment of the present invention using an RC processing operation.

FIG. 153 illustrates an RC processor according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 154 illustrates an example pulse train;

FIG. 155 illustrates combining a pulse train of energy signals to produce a power signal according to an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. 156 illustrates an example piecewise linear reconstruction of a sine wave.

FIG. 157 illustrates how certain portions of a carrier signal or sine waveform are selected for processing according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 158 illustrates an example double sideband large carrier AM waveform;

FIG. 159 illustrates a block diagram of an example optimum processor system;

FIG. 160 illustrates the frequency response of an optimum processor according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 161 illustrates example frequency responses for a processor at various apertures;

FIGS. 162-163 illustrates an example processor embodiment according to the present invention;

FIGS. 164A-C illustrate example impulse responses of a matched filter processor and a finite time integrator;

FIG. 165 illustrates a basic circuit for an RC processor according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIGS. 166-167 illustrate example plots of voltage signals;

FIGS. 168-170 illustrate the various characteristics of a processor according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIGS. 171-173 illustrate example processor embodiments according to the present invention;

FIG. 174 illustrates the relationship between beta and the output charge of a processor according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 175A illustrates an RC processor according to an embodiment of the present invention coupled to a load resistance;

FIG. 175B illustrates an example implementation of the present

invention;

FIG. 175C illustrates an example charge/discharge timing diagram according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. l75D illustrates example energy transfer pulses according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 176 illustrates example performance characteristics of an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 177 A illustrates example performance characteristics of an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 177B illustrates example waveforms for elementary matched
filters.

FIG. l77C illustrates a waveform for an embodiment of a UFT subharmonic matched filter of the present invention.

FIG. l77D illustrates example embodiments of complex matched filter/correlator processor;

FIG. l77E illustrates an embodiment of a complex matched filter/correlator processor of the present invention;

FIG. l77F illustrates an embodiment of the decomposition of a non-ideal correlator alignment into an ideally aligned UFT correlator component of the present invention;

FIGS. l78A-178B illustrate example processor waveforms according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 179 illustrates the Fourier transforms of example waveforms waveforms according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIGS. 180-181 illustrates actual waveforms from an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 182 illustrates a relationship between an example UFT waveform and an example carrier waveform;

FIG. 183 illustrates example impulse samplers having various

apertures;

FIG. 184 illustrates the alignment of sample apertures according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 185 illustrates an ideal aperture according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 186 illustrates the relationship of a step function and delta functions;

FIG. 187 illustrates an embodiment of a receiver with bandpass filter for complex down-converting of the present invention;

FIG. 188 illustrates Fourier transforms used to analyze a clock embodiment in accordance with the present invention;

FIG. 189 illustrates an acquisition and hold processor according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIGS. 190-191 illustrate frequency representations of transforms according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 192 illustrates an example clock generator;

FIG. 193 illustrates the down-conversion of an electromagnetic signal according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 194 illustrates a receiver according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 195 illustrates a vector modulator according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 196 illustrates example waveforms for the vector modulator of FIG. 195;

FIG. 197 illustrates an exemplary I/Q modulation receiver, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 198 illustrates a I/Q modulation control signal generator, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 199 illustrates example waveforms related to the I/Q modulation control signal generator of FIG. 198;

FIG. 200 illustrates example control signal waveforms overlaid upon an example input RF signal;

FIG. 201 illustrates a I/Q modulation receiver circuit diagram, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIGS. 202-212 illustrate example waveforms related to a receiver implemented in accordance with the present invention;

FIG. 213 illustrates a single channel receiver, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 214 illustrates exemplary waveforms associated with quad aperture implementations of the receiver of FIG. 281, according to embodiments of the present invention;

FIG. 215 illustrates a high-level example UFT module radio architecture, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 216 illustrates wireless design considerations;

FIG. 217 illustrates noise figure calculations based on RMS voltage and current noise specifications;

FIG. 218A illustrates an example differential input, differential output receiver configuration, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 218B illustrates a example receiver implementation, configured as an I-phase channel, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 218C illustrates example waveforms related to the receiver of FIG. 218B;

FIG. 218D illustrates an example re-radiation frequency spectrum related to the receiver of FIG. 218B, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 218E illustrates an example re-radiation frequency spectral plot related to the receiver of FIG. 218B, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 218F illustrates example impulse sampling of an input signal;

FIG. 218G illustrates example impulse sampling of an input signal in a environment with more noise relative to that of FIG. 218F;

FIG. 219 illustrates an example integrated circuit conceptual schematic, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 220 illustrates an example receiver circuit architecture, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 221 illustrates example waveforms related to the receiver of FIG. 220, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 222 illustrates DC equations, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 223 illustrates an example receiver circuit, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 224 illustrates example waveforms related to the receiver of FIG. 223;

FIG. 225 illustrates an example receiver circuit, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIGS. 226 and 227 illustrate example waveforms related to the receiver of FIG. 225;

FIGS. 228-230 illustrate equations and information related to charge transfer;

FIG. 231 illustrates a graph related to the equations of FIG. 230;

FIG. 232 illustrates example control signal waveforms and an example input signal waveform, according to embodiments of the present invention;

FIG. 233 illustrates an example differential output receiver, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 234 illustrates example waveforms related to the receiver of FIG. 233;

FIG. 235 illustrates an example transmitter circuit, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 236 illustrates example waveforms related to the transmitter of FIG. 235;

FIG. 237 illustrates an example frequency spectrum related to the transmitter of FIG. 235;

FIG. 238 illustrates an intersection of frequency selectivity and frequency translation, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 239 illustrates a multiple criteria, one solution aspect of the present invention;

FIG. 240 illustrates an example complementary FET switch structure, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 241 illustrates example waveforms related to the complementary FET switch structure of FIG. 240;

FIG. 242 illustrates an example differential configuration, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 243 illustrates an example receiver implementing clock spreading, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 244 illustrates example waveforms related to the receiver of FIG. 243;

FIG. 245 illustrates waveforms related to the receiver of FIG. 243 implemented without clock spreading, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 246 illustrates an example recovered I/Q waveforms, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 247 illustrates an example CMOS implementation, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 248 illustrates an example LO gain stage of FIG. 247 at a gate level, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 249 illustrates an example LO gain stage of FIG. 247 at a transistor level, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 250 illustrates an example pulse generator of FIG. 247 at a gate level, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 251 illustrates an example pulse generator of FIG. 247 at a transistor level, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 252 illustrates an example power gain block of FIG. 247 at a gate level, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 253 illustrates an example power gain block of FIG. 247 at a transistor level, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 254 illustrates an example switch of FIG. 247 at a transistor level, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 255 illustrates an example CMOS "hot clock" block diagram, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 256 illustrates an example positive pulse generator of FIG. 255 at a gate level, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 257 illustrates an example positive pulse generator of FIG. 255 at a transistor level, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 258 illustrates pulse width error effect for ½ cycle;

FIG. 259 illustrates an example single-ended receiver circuit implementation, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 260 illustrates an example single-ended receiver circuit implementation, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 261 illustrates an example full differential receiver circuit implementation, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 262 illustrates an example full differential receiver implementation, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 263 illustrates an example single-ended receiver implementation, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 264 illustrates a plot of loss in sensitivity vs. clock phase deviation, according to an example embodiment of the present invention;

FIGS. 265 and 266 illustrate example 802.11 WLAN receiver/transmitter implementations, according to embodiments of the present invention;

FIG. 267 illustrates 802.11 requirements in relation to embodiments of the present invention;

FIG. 268 illustrates an example doubler implementation for phase noise cancellation, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 269 illustrates an example doubler implementation for phase noise cancellation, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 270 illustrates a example bipolar sampling aperture, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 271 illustrates an example diversity receiver, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 272 illustrates an example equalizer implementation, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 273 illustrates an example multiple aperture receiver using two apertures, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 274 illustrates exemplary waveforms related to the multiple aperture receiver of FIG. 273, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 275 illustrates an example multiple aperture receiver using three apertures, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 276 illustrates exemplary waveforms related to the multiple aperture receiver of FIG. 275, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 277 illustrates an example multiple aperture transmitter, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 278 illustrates example frequency spectrums related to the transmitter of FIG. 277;

FIG. 279 illustrates an example output waveform in a double aperture implementation of the transmitter of FIG. 277;

FIG. 280 illustrates an example output waveform in a single aperture implementation of the transmitter of FIG. 277;

FIG. 281 illustrates an example multiple aperture receiver implementation, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 282 illustrates exemplary waveforms in a single aperture implementation of the receiver of FIG. 281, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 283 illustrates exemplary waveforms in a dual aperture implementation of the receiver of FIG. 281, according to an embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 284 illustrates exemplary waveforms in a triple aperture implementation of the receiver of FIG. 281, according to an embodiment of the present invention; and

FIG. 285 illustrates exemplary waveforms in quad aperture implementations of the receiver of FIG. 281, according to embodiments of the present invention.

Detailed Description of the Invention

Table of Contents

I. Introduction

1. General Terminology
    1.1 Modulation
        1.1.1 Amplitude Modulation
        1.1.2 Frequency Modulation
        1.1.3 Phase Modulation

1.2 Demodulation
2. Overview of the Invention
2.1 Aspects of the Invention
2.2 Down-Converting by Under-Sampling
2.2.1 Down-Converting to an Intermediate Frequency (IF) Signal
2.2.2 Direct-to-Data Down-Converting
2.2.3 Modulation Conversion
2.3 Down-Converting by Transferring Energy
2.3.1 Down-Converting to an Intermediate Frequency (IF) Signal
2.3.2 Direct-to-Data Down-Converting
2.3.3 Modulation Conversion
2.4 Determining the Aliasing rate
3. Benefits of the Invention Using an Example Conventional Receiver for Comparison

II. Under-Sampling

1. Down-Converting an EM Carrier Signal to an EM Intermediate Signal by Under-Sampling the EM Carrier Signal at the Aliasing Rate
1.1 High Level Description
1.1.1 Operational Description
1.1.2 Structural Description
1.2 Example Embodiments
1.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Amplitude Modulation
1.2.1.1 Operational Description
1.2.1.1.1 Analog AM Carrier Signal
1.2.1.1.2 Digital AM Carrier Signal
1.2.1.2 Structural Description
1.2.2 Second Example Embodiment: Frequency

Modulation

1.2.2.1 Operational Description

1.2.2.1.1 Analog FM Carrier Signal

1.2.2.1.2 Digital FM Carrier Signal

1.2.2.2 Structural Description

1.2.3 Third Example Embodiment: Phase Modulation

1.2.3.1 Operational Description

1.2.3.1.1 Analog PM Carrier Signal

1.2.3.1.2 Digital PM Carrier Signal

1.2.3.2 Structural Description

1.2.4 Other Embodiments

1.3 Implementation Examples

2. Directly Down-Converting an EM Signal to a Baseband Signal (Direct-to-Data)

2.1 High Level Description

2.1.1 Operational Description

2.1.2 Structural Description

2.2 Example Embodiments

2.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Amplitude Modulation

2.2.1.1 Operational Description

2.2.1.1.1 Analog AM Carrier Signal

2.2.1.1.2 Digital AM Carrier Signal

2.2.1.2 Structural Description

2.2.2 Second Example Embodiment: Phase Modulation

2.2.2.1 Operational Description

2.2.2.1.1 Analog PM Carrier Signal

2.2.2.1.2 Digital PM Carrier Signal

2.2.2.2 Structural Description

2.2.3 Other Embodiments

2.3 Implementation Examples

3. Modulation Conversion

3.1 High Level Description

3.1.1 Operational Description

3.1.2 Structural Description

3.2 Example Embodiments

3.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Down-Converting an FM Signal to a PM Signal

3.2.1.1 Operational Description
3.2.1.2 Structural Description
3.2.2 Second Example Embodiment: Down-Converting an PM Signal to an AM Signal
3.2.2.1 Operational Description
3.2.2.2 Structural Description
3.2.3 Other Example Embodiments
3.3 Implementation Examples
4. Implementation Examples
4.1 The Under-Sampling System as a Sample and Hold System
4.1.1 The Sample and Hold System as a Switch Module and a Holding Module
4.1.2 The Sample and Hold System as Break-Before-Make Module
4.1.3 Example Implementations of the Switch Module
4.1.4 Example Implementations of the Holding Module
4.1.5 Optional Under-Sampling Signal Module
4.2 The Under-Sampling System as an Inverted Sample and Hold
4.3 Other Implementations

5. Optional Optimizations of Under-Sampling at an Aliasing Rate
5.1 Doubling the Aliasing Rate (F_{AR}) of the Under-Sampling Signal
5.2 Differential Implementations
5.2.1 Differential Input-to-Differential Output
5.2.2 Single Input-to-Differential Output
5.2.3 Differential Input-to-Single Output
5.3 Smoothing the Down-Converted Signal
5.4 Load Impedance and Input/Output Buffering
5.5 Modifying the Under-Sampling Signal Utilizing Feedback

III. Energy Transfer

0.1 Energy Transfer Compared to Under-Sampling

0.1.1 Review of Under-Sampling

0.1.1.1 Effects of Lowering the Impedance of the Load

0.1.1.2 Effects of Increasing the Value of the Holding Capacitance

0.1.2 Introduction to Energy Transfer

1. Down-Converting an EM Signal to an IF EM Signal by Transferring Energy from the EM Signal at an Aliasing Rate

1.1 High Level Description

1.1.1 Operational Description

1.1.2 Structural Description

1.2 Example Embodiments

1.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Amplitude Modulation

1.2.1.1 Operational Description

1.2.1.1.1 Analog AM Carrier Signal

1.2.1.1.2 Digital AM Carrier Signal

1.2.1.2 Structural Description

1.2.2 Second Example Embodiment: Frequency Modulation

1.2.2.1 Operational Description

1.2.2.1.1 Analog FM Carrier Signal

1.2.2.1.2 Digital FM Carrier Signal

1.2.2.2 Structural Description

1.2.3 Third Example Embodiment: Phase Modulation

1.2.3.1 Operational Description

1.2.3.1.1 Analog PM Carrier Signal

1.2.3.1.2 Digital PM Carrier Signal

1.2.3.2 Structural Description

1.2.4 Other Embodiments

1.3 Implementation Examples

2. Directly Down-Converting an EM Signal to an Demodulated Baseband Signal by Transferring Energy from the EM Signal
   2.1 High Level Description
      2.1.1 Operational Description
      2.1.2 Structural Description
   2.2 Example Embodiments
      2.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Amplitude Modulation
         2.2.1.1 Operational Description
            2.2.1.1.1 Analog AM Carrier Signal
            2.2.1.1.2 Digital AM Carrier Signal
         2.2.1.2 Structural Description
      2.2.2 Second Example Embodiment: Phase Modulation
         2.2.2.1 Operational Description
            2.2.2.1.1 Analog PM Carrier Signal
            2.2.2.1.2 Digital PM Carrier Signal
         2.2.2.2 Structural Description
      2.2.3 Other Embodiments
   2.3 Implementation Examples

3. Modulation Conversion
   3.1 High Level Description
      3.1.1 Operational Description
      3.1.2 Structural Description
   3.2 Example Embodiments
      3.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Down-Converting an FM Signal to a PM Signal
         3.2.1.1 Operational Description
         3.2.1.2 Structural Description

3.2.2 Second Example Embodiment: Down-Converting an FM Signal to an AM Signal
3.2.2.1 Operational Description
3.2.2.2 Structural Description
3.2.3 Other Example Embodiments
3.3 Implementation Examples

4. Implementation Examples
4.1 The Energy Transfer System as a Gated Transfer System
4.1.1 The Gated Transfer System as a Switch Module and a Storage Module
4.1.2 The Gated Transfer System as Break-Before-Make Module
4.1.3 Example Implementations of the Switch Module
4.1.4 Example Implementations of the Storage Module
4.1.5 Optional Energy Transfer Signal Module
4.2 The Energy Transfer System as an Inverted Gated Transfer System
4.2.1 The Inverted Gated Transfer System as a Switch Module and a Storage Module
4.3 Rail to Rail Operation for Improved Dynamic Range
4.3.1 Introduction
4.3.2 Complementary UFT Structure for Improved Dynamic Range
4.3.3 Biased Configurations
4.3.4 Simulation Examples
4.4 Optimized Switch Structures
4.4.1 Splitter in CMOS
4.4.2 I/Q Circuit
4.5 Example I and Q Implementations

4.5.1 Switches of Different Sizes
4.5.2 Reducing Overall Switch Area
4.5.3 Charge Injection Cancellation
4.5.4 Overlapped Capacitance
4.6 Other Implementations

5. Optional Optimizations of Energy Transfer at an Aliasing Rate
5.1 Doubling the Aliasing Rate (F_{AR}) of the Energy Transfer Signal
5.2 Differential Implementations
5.2.1 An Example Illustrating Energy Transfer Differentially
5.2.1.1 Differential Input-to-Differential Output
5.2.1.2 Single Input-to-Differential Output
5.2.1.3 Differential Input-to-Single Output
5.2.2 Specific Alternative Embodiments
5.2.3 Specific Examples of Optimizations and Configurations for Inverted and Non-Inverted Differential Designs
5.3 Smoothing the Down-Converted Signal
5.4 Impedance Matching
5.5 Tanks and Resonant Structures
5.6 Charge and Power Transfer Concepts
5.7 Optimizing and Adjusting the Non-Negligible Aperture Width/Duration
5.7.1 Varying Input and Output Impedances
5.7.2 Real Time Aperture Control
5.8 Adding a Bypass Network
5.9 Modifying the Energy Transfer Signal Utilizing Feedback
5.10 Other Implementations

6. Example Energy Transfer Downconverters

IV. Mathematical Description of the Present Invention

1. Overview of the Invention
   1.1 High Level Description of a Matched Filtering/Correlating Characterization/Embodiment of the Invention
   1.2 High Level Description of a Finite Time Integrating Characterization/Embodiment of the Invention
   1.3 High Level Description of an RC Processing Characterization/Embodiment of the Invention

2. Representation of a Power Signal as a Sum of Energy Signals
   2.1 De-Composition of a Sine Wave into an Energy Signal Representation
   2.2 Decomposition of Sine Waveforms

3. Matched Filtering/Correlating Characterization/Embodiment
   3.1 Time Domain Description
   3.2 Frequency Domain Description

4. Finite Time Integrating Characterization/Embodiment

5. RC Processing Characterization/Embodiment
   5.1 Charge Transfer and Correlation
   5.2 Load Resistor Consideration

6. Signal-To-Noise Ratio Comparison of the Various Embodiments
   6.1 Carrier Offset and Phase Skew Characteristics in Embodiments of the Present Invention
7. Multiple Aperture Embodiments of the Present Invention

8. Mathematical Transform Describing Embodiments of the Present Invention
8.1 Overview
8.2 The Kernel for Embodiments of the Invention
8.3 Waveform Information Extraction
8.4 Proof Statement for UFT Complex Downconverter Embodiment of the Present Invention
8.5 Acquisition and Hold Processor Embodiment

9. Comparison of the UFT Transform to the Fourier Sine and Cosine Transforms

10. Conversion, Fourier Transform, and Sampling Clock Considerations
10.1 Phase Noise Multiplication
10.2 AM-PM Conversion and Phase Noise

11. Pulse Accumulation and System Time Constant
11.1 Pulse Accumulation
11.2 Pulse Accumulation by Correlation

12. Energy Budget Considerations
12.1 Energy Storage Networks
Impedance Matching

13. Time Domain Analysis

14. Complex Passband Waveform Generation Using the Present Invention Cores

V. Additional Embodiments

1. Example I/Q Modulation Receiver Embodiment
2. Example I/Q Modulation Control Signal Generator Embodiments
3. Detailed Example T/Q Modulation Receiver Embodiment with Exemplary Waveforms
4. Example Single Channel Receiver Embodiment
5. Example Automatic Gain Control Embodiment
6. Other Example Embodiments

VI. Additional Features of the Invention

1. Architectural Features of the Invention
2. Additional Benefits of the Invention
   - 2.1 Compared to an Impulse Sampler
   - 2.2 Linearity
   - 2.3 Optimal Power Transfer into a Scalable Output Impedance
   - 2.4 System Integration
   - 2.5 Fundamental or Sub-Harmonic Operation
   - 2.6 Frequency Multiplication and Signal Gain
3. Controlled Aperture Sub-Harmonic Matched Filter Features
   - 3.1 Non-Negligible Aperture
   - 3.2 Bandwidth
   - 3.3 Architectural Advantages of a Universal Frequency Down-Converter
   - 3.4 Complimentary FET Switch Advantages
   - 3.5 Differential Configuration Characteristics
   - 3.6 Clock Spreading Characteristics
   - 3.7 Controlled Aperture Sub Harmonic Matched Filter Principles
   - 3.8 Effects of Pulse Width Variation
4. Conventional Systems
   - 4.1 Heterodyne Systems

4.2 Mobile Wireless Devices
5. Phase Noise Cancellation
6. Multiplexed UFD
7. Sampling Apertures
8. Diversity Reception and Equalizers

VII. Conclusions

VIII. Glossary of Terms

1. Introduction

1. General Terminology

For illustrative purposes, the operation of the invention is often represented by flowcharts, such as flowchart 1201 in FIG. 12A. It should be understood, however, that the use of flowcharts is for illustrative purposes only, and is not limiting. For example, the invention is not limited to the operational embodiment(s) represented by the flowcharts. Instead, alternative operational embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein. Also, the use of flowcharts should not be interpreted as limiting the invention to discrete or digital operation. In practice, as will be appreciated by persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the herein discussion, the invention can be achieved via discrete or continuous operation, or a combination thereof. Further, the flow of control represented by the flowcharts is provided for illustrative purposes only. As will be appreciated by persons skilled in the relevant art(s), other operational control flows are within the scope and spirit of the present invention. Also, the ordering of steps may differ in various embodiments.

Various terms used in this application are generally described in this section. The description in this section is provided for illustrative and convenience purposes only, and is not limiting. The meaning of these terms will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the entirety of the teachings provided herein. These terms may be discussed throughout the specification with additional detail.

The term modulated carrier signal, when used herein, refers to a earlier signal that is modulated by a baseband signal.

The term unmodulated carrier signal, when used herein, refers to

a signal having an amplitude that oscillates at a substantially uniform frequency and phase.

The term baseband signal, when used herein, refers to an information signal including, but not limited to, analog information signals, digital information signals and direct current (DC) information signals.

The term carrier signal, when used herein, and unless otherwise specified when used herein, refers to modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signals, information signals, digital information signals, and direct current (DC) information signals.

The term electromagnetic (EM) signal, when used herein, refers to a signal in the EM spectrum. EM spectrum includes all frequencies greater than zero hertz. EM signals generally include waves characterized by variations in electric and magnetic fields. Such waves may be propagated in any medium, both natural and manmade, including but not limited to air, space, wire, cable, liquid, waveguide, micro-strip, strip-line, optical fiber, etc. Unless stated otherwise, all signals discussed herein are EM signals, even when not explicitly designated as such.

The term intermediate frequency (IF) signal, when used herein, refers to an EM signal that is substantially similar to another EM signal except that the IF signal has a lower frequency than the other signal. An IF signal frequency can be any frequency above zero HZ. Unless otherwise stated, the terms lower frequency, intermediate frequency, intermediate and IF are used interchangeably herein.

The term analog signal, when used herein, refers to a signal that is constant or continuously variable, as contrasted to a signal that changes between discrete states.

The term baseband, when used herein, refers to a frequency band occupied by any generic information signal desired for transmission and/or reception.

The term baseband signal, when used herein, refers to any generic information signal desired for transmission and/or reception.

The term carrier frequency, when used herein, refers to the frequency of a carrier signal. Typically, it is the center frequency of a transmission signal that is generally modulated.

The term carrier signal, when used herein, refers to an EM wave having at least one characteristic that may be varied by modulation, that is capable of carrying information via modulation.

The term demodulated baseband signal, when used herein, refers to a signal that results from processing a modulated signal. In some cases, for example, the demodulated baseband signal results from demodulating an intermediate frequency (IF) modulated signal, which results from down converting a modulated carrier signal. In another case, a signal that results from a combined down conversion and demodulation step.

The term digital signal, when used herein, refers to a signal that changes between discrete states, as contrasted to a signal that is continuous. For example, the voltage of a digital signal may shift between discrete levels.

The term electromagnetic (EM) spectrum, when used herein, refers to a spectrum comprising waves characterized by variations in electric and magnetic fields. Such waves may be propagated in any communication medium, both natural and manmade, including but not limited to air, space, wire, cable, liquid, waveguide, microstrip, stripline, optical fiber, etc. The EM spectrum includes all frequencies greater than zero hertz.

The term electromagnetic (EM) signal, when used herein, refers

to a signal in the EM spectrum. Also generally called an EM wave. Unless stated otherwise, all signals discussed herein are EM signals, even when not explicitly designated as such.

The term modulating baseband signal, when used herein, refers to any generic information signal that is used to modulate an oscillating signal, or carrier signal.

1.1 Modulation

It is often beneficial to propagate electromagnetic (EM) signals at higher frequencies. This includes baseband signals, such as digital data information signals and analog information signals. A baseband signal can be up-converted to a higher frequency EM signal by using the baseband signal to modulate a higher frequency carrier signal, F_C. When used in this manner, such a baseband signal is herein called a modulating baseband signal F_{MB}.

Modulation imparts changes to the carrier signal F_C that represent information in the modulating baseband signal F_{MB}. The changes can be in the form of amplitude changes, frequency changes, phase changes, etc., or any combination thereof. The resultant signal is referred to herein as a modulated carrier signal F_{MC}. The modulated carrier signal F_{MC} includes the carrier signal F_C modulated by the modulating baseband signal, F_{MB}, as in:

$$F_{MB} \text{ combined with } F_C \rightarrow F_{MC}$$

The modulated carrier signal F_{MC} oscillates at, or near the frequency of the carrier signal F_C and can thus be efficiently propagated.

FIG. 1 illustrates an example modulator 110, wherein the carrier

signal F_C is modulated by the modulating baseband signal F_{MB}, thereby generating the modulated carrier signal F_{MC}.

Modulating baseband signal F_{MB} can be an analog baseband signal, a digital baseband signal, or a combination thereof.

FIG. 2 illustrates the modulating baseband signal F_{MB} as an exemplary analog modulating baseband signal 210. The exemplary analog modulating baseband signal 210 can represent any type of analog information including, but not limited to, voice/speech data, music data, video data, etc. The amplitude of analog modulating baseband signal 210 varies in time.

Digital information includes a plurality of discrete states. For ease of explanation, digital information signals are discussed below as having two discrete states. But the invention is not limited to this embodiment.

FIG. 3 illustrates the modulating baseband signal F_{MB} as an exemplary digital modulating baseband signal 310. The digital modulating baseband signal 310 can represent any type of digital data including, but not limited to, digital computer information and digitized analog information. The digital modulating baseband signal 310 includes a first state 312 and a second state 314. In an embodiment, first state 312 represents binary state 0 and second state 314 represents binary state 1. Alternatively, first state 312 represents binary state 1 and second state 314 represents binary state 0. Throughout the remainder of this disclosure, the former convention is followed, whereby first state 312 represents binary state zero and second state 314 represents binary state one. But the invention is not limited to this embodiment. First state 312 is thus referred to herein as a low state and second state 314 is referred to herein as a high state.

Digital modulating baseband signal 310 can change between first state 312 and second state 314 at a data rate, or baud rate, measured as

bits per second.

Carrier signal F_C is modulated by the modulating baseband signal F_{MB}, by any modulation technique, including, but not limited to, amplitude modulation (AM), frequency modulation (FM), phase modulation (PM), etc., or any combination thereof. Examples are provided below for amplitude modulating, frequency modulating, and phase modulating the analog modulating baseband signal 210 and the digital modulating baseband signal 310, on the carrier signal F_C. The examples are used to assist in the description of the invention. The invention is not limited to, or by, the examples.

FIG. 4 illustrates the carrier signal F_C as a carrier signal 410. In the example of FIG. 4, the carrier signal 410 is illustrated as a 900 MHZ carrier signal. Alternatively, the carrier signal 410 can be any other frequency. Example modulation schemes are provided below, using the examples signals from FIGS. 2, 3 and 4.

1.1.1 Amplitude Modulation

In amplitude modulation (AM), the amplitude of the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} is a function of the amplitude of the modulating baseband signal F_{MB}. FIGS. 5A-5C illustrate example timing diagrams for amplitude modulating the carrier signal 410 with the analog modulating baseband signal 210. FIGS. 6A-6C illustrate example timing diagrams for amplitude modulating the carrier signal 410 with the digital modulating baseband signal 310.

FIG. 5A illustrates the analog modulating baseband signal 210. FIG. 5B illustrates the carrier signal 410. FIG. 5C illustrates an analog AM carrier signal 516, which is generated when the carrier signal 410 is amplitude modulated using the analog modulating baseband signal 210. As used herein, the term "analog AM carrier signal" is used to indicate

that the modulating baseband signal is an analog signal.

The analog AM carrier signal 516 oscillates at the frequency of carrier signal 410. The amplitude of the analog AM carrier signal 516 tracks the amplitude of analog modulating baseband signal 210, illustrating that the information contained in the analog modulating baseband signal 210 is retained in the analog AM carrier signal 516.

FIG. 6A illustrates the digital modulating baseband signal 310. FIG. 6B illustrates the carrier signal 410. FIG. 6C illustrates a digital AM carrier signal 616, which is generated when the carrier signal 410 is amplitude modulated using the digital modulating baseband signal 310. As used herein, the term "digital AM carrier signal" is used to indicate that the modulating baseband signal is a digital signal.

The digital AM carrier signal 616 oscillates at the frequency of carrier signal 410. The amplitude of the digital AM carrier signal 616 tracks the amplitude of digital modulating baseband signal 310, illustrating that the information contained in the digital modulating baseband signal 310 is retained in the digital AM signal 616. As the digital modulating baseband signal 310 changes states, the digital AM signal 616 shifts amplitudes. Digital amplitude modulation is often referred to as amplitude shift keying (ASK), and the two terms are used interchangeably throughout the specification.

1.1.2 Frequency Modulation

In frequency modulation (FM), the frequency of the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} varies as a function of the amplitude of the modulating baseband signal F_{MB}. FIGS. 7A-7C illustrate example timing diagrams for frequency modulating the carrier signal 410 with the analog modulating baseband signal 210. FIGS. 8A-8C illustrate example timing diagrams for frequency modulating the carrier signal 410 with the digital modulating baseband signal 310.

FIG. 7A illustrates the analog modulating baseband signal 210. FIG. 7B illustrates the carrier signal 410. FIG. 7C illustrates an analog FM carrier signal 716, which is generated when the carrier signal 410 is frequency modulated using the analog modulating baseband signal 210. As used herein, the term "analog FM carrier signal" is used to indicate that the modulating baseband signal is an analog signal.

The frequency of the analog FM carrier signal 716 varies as a function of amplitude changes on the analog baseband signal 210. In the illustrated example, the frequency of the analog FM carrier signal 716 varies in proportion to the amplitude of the analog modulating baseband signal 210. Thus, at time t1, the amplitude of the analog baseband signal 210 and the frequency of the analog FM carrier signal 716 are at maximums. At time t3, the amplitude of the analog baseband signal 210 and the frequency of the analog AM carrier signal 716 are at minimums.

The frequency of the analog FM carrier signal 716 is typically centered around the frequency of the carrier signal 410. Thus, at time t2, for example, when the amplitude of the analog baseband signal 210 is at a mid-point, illustrated here as zero volts, the frequency of the analog FM carrier signal 716 is substantially the same as the frequency of the carrier signal 410.

FIG. 8A illustrates the digital modulating baseband signal 310. FIG. 8B illustrates the carrier signal 410. FIG. 8C illustrates a digital FM carrier signal 816, which is generated when the carrier signal 410 is frequency modulated using the digital baseband signal 310. As used herein, the term "digital FM carrier signal" is used to indicate that the modulating baseband signal is a digital signal.

The frequency of the digital FM carrier signal 816 varies as a function of amplitude changes on the digital modulating baseband signal 310. In the illustrated example, the frequency of the digital FM carrier signal 816 varies in proportion to the amplitude of the digital

modulating baseband signal 310. Thus, between times t0 and t1, and between times t2 and t4, when the amplitude of the digital baseband signal 310 is at the higher amplitude second state, the frequency of the digital FM carrier signal 816 is at a maximum. Between times t1 and t2, when the amplitude of the digital baseband signal 310 is at the lower amplitude first state, the frequency of the digital FM carrier signal 816 is at a minimum. Digital frequency modulation is often referred to as frequency shift keying (FSK), and the terms are used interchangeably throughout the specification.

Typically, the frequency of the digital FM carrier signal 816 is centered about the frequency of the carrier signal 410, and the maximum and minimum frequencies are equally offset from the center frequency. Other variations can be employed but, for ease of illustration, this convention will be followed herein.

1.1.3 Phase Modulation

In phase modulation (PM), the phase of the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} varies as a function of the amplitude of the modulating baseband signalF_{MB}. FIGS. 9A-9C illustrate example timing diagrams for phase modulating the carrier signal 410 with the analog modulating baseband signal 210. FIGS. 10A-10C illustrate example timing diagrams for phase modulating the carrier signal 410 with the digital modulating baseband signal 310.

FIG. 9A illustrates the analog modulating baseband signal 210. FIG. 9B illustrates the carrier signal 410. FIG. 9C illustrates an analog PM carrier signal 916, which is generated by phase modulating the carrier signal 410 with the analog baseband signal 210. As used herein, the term "analog PM carrier signal" is used to indicate that the modulating baseband signal is an analog signal.

Generally, the frequency of the analog PM carrier signal 916 is substantially the same as the frequency of carrier signal 410. But the phase of the analog PM carrier signal 916 varies with amplitude changes on the analog modulating baseband signal 210. For relative comparison, the carrier signal 410 is illustrated in FIG. 9C by a dashed line.

The phase of the analog PM carrier signal 916 varies as a function of amplitude changes of the analog baseband signal 210. In the illustrated example, the phase of the analog PM signal 916 lags by a varying amount as determined by the amplitude of the baseband signal 210. For example, at time t1, when the amplitude of the analog baseband signal 210 is at a maximum, the analog PM carrier signal 916 is in phase with the carrier signal 410. Between times t1 and t3, when the amplitude of the analog baseband signal 210 decreases to a minimum amplitude, the phase of the analog PM carrier signal 916 lags the phase of the carrier signal 410, until it reaches a maximum out of phase value at time t3. In the illustrated example, the phase change is illustrated as approximately 180 degrees. Any suitable amount of phase change, varied in any manner that is a function of the baseband signal, can be utilized.

FIG. 10A illustrates the digital modulating baseband signal 310. FIG. 10B illustrates the carrier signal 410. FIG. 10C illustrates a digital PM carrier signal 1016, which is generated by phase modulating the carrier signal 410 with the digital baseband signal 310. As used herein, the term "digital PM carrier signal" is used to indicate that the modulating baseband signal is a digital signal.

The frequency of the digital PM carrier signal 1016 is substantially the same as the frequency of carrier signal 410. The phase of the digital PM carrier signal 1016 varies as a function of amplitude changes on the digital baseband signal 310. In the illustrated example, when the digital baseband signal 310 is at the first state 312, the digital

PM carrier signal 1016 is out of phase with the carrier signal 410. When the digital baseband signal 310 is at the second state 314, the digital PM carrier signal 1016 is in-phase with the carrier signal 410. Thus, between times t1 and t2, when the amplitude of the digital baseband signal 310 is at the first state 312, the digital PM carrier signal 1016 is out of phase with the carrier signal 410. Between times t0 and t1, and between times t2 and t4, when the amplitude of the digital baseband signal 310 is at the second state 314, the digital PM carrier signal 1016 is in phase with the carrier signal 410.

In the illustrated example, the out of phase value between times t1 and t3 is illustrated as approximately 180 degrees out of phase. Any suitable amount of phase change, varied in any manner that is a function of the baseband signal, can be utilized. Digital phase modulation is often referred to as phase shift keying (PSK), and the terms are used interchangeably throughout the specification.

1.2 Demodulation

When the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} is received, it can be demodulated to extract the modulating baseband signal F_{MB}. Because of the typically high frequency of modulated carrier signal F_{MC}, however, it is generally impractical to demodulate the baseband signal F_{MB} directly from the modulated carrier signal F_{MC}. Instead, the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} must be down-converted to a lower frequency signal that contains the original modulating baseband signal.

When a modulated carrier signal is down-converted to a lower frequency signal, the lower frequency signal is referred to herein as an intermediate frequency (IF) signal F_{IF}. The IF signal F_{IF} oscillates at any frequency, or frequency band, below the frequency of the modulated carrier frequency F_{MC}. Down-conversion of F_{MC} to F_{IF} is

illustrated as:

$$F_{MC} \rightarrow F_{IF}$$

After F_{MC} is down-converted to the IF modulated carrier signal F_{IF}, F_{IF} can be demodulated to a baseband signal F_{DMB}, as illustrated by:

$$F_{IF} \rightarrow F_{DMB}$$

F_{DMB} is intended to be substantially similar to the modulating baseband signal F_{MB}, illustrating that the modulating baseband signal F_{MB} can be substantially recovered.

It will be emphasized throughout the disclosure that the present invention can be implemented with any type of EM signal, including, but not limited to, modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signals. The above examples of modulated carrier signals are provided for illustrative purposes only. Many variations to the examples are possible. For example, a carrier signal can be modulated with a plurality of the modulation types described above. A carrier signal can also be modulated with a plurality of baseband signals, including analog baseband signals, digital baseband signals, and combinations of both analog and digital baseband signals.

2. Overview of the Invention

Conventional signal processing techniques follow the Nyquist sampling theorem, which states that, in order to faithfully reproduce a sampled signal, the signal must be sampled at a rate that is greater than

twice the frequency of the signal being sampled. When a signal is sampled at less than or equal to twice the frequency of the signal, the signal is said to be undersampled, or aliased. Conventional signal processing thus teaches away from under-sampling and aliasing, in order to faithfully reproduce a sampled signal.

2.1 Aspects of the Invention

Contrary to conventional wisdom, the present invention is a method and system for down-converting an electromagnetic (EM) signal by aliasing the EM signal. Aliasing is represented generally in FIG. 45A as 4502.

By taking a carrier and aliasing it at an aliasing rate, the invention can down-convert that carrier to lower frequencies. One aspect that can be exploited by this invention is realizing that the carrier is not the item of interest, the lower baseband signal is of interest to reproduce sufficiently. This baseband signal's frequency content, even though its carrier may be aliased, does satisfy the Nyquist criteria and as a result, the baseband information can be sufficiently reproduced.

FIG. 12A depicts a flowchart 1201 that illustrates a method for aliasing an EM signal to generate a down-converted signal. The process begins at step 1202, which includes receiving the EM signal. Step 1204 includes receiving an aliasing signal having an aliasing rate. Step 1206 includes aliasing the EM signal to down-convert the EM signal. The term aliasing, as used herein, refers to both down-converting an EM signal by under-sampling the EM signal at an aliasing rate and to down-converting an EM signal by transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate. These concepts are described below.

FIG. 13 illustrates a block diagram of a generic aliasing system 1302, which includes an aliasing module 1306. In an embodiment, the

aliasing system 1302 operates in accordance with the flowchart 1201. For example, in step 1202, the aliasing module 1306 receives an EM signal 1304. In step 1204, the aliasing module 1306 receives an aliasing signal 1310. In step 1206, the aliasing module 1306 down-converts the EM signal 1304 to a down-converted signal 1308. The generic aliasing system 1302 can also be used to implement any of the flowcharts 1207, 1213 and 1219.

In an embodiment, the invention down-converts the EM signal to an intermediate frequency (IF) signal. FIG. 12B depicts a flowchart 1207 that illustrates a method for under-sampling the EM signal at an aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to an IF signal. The process begins at step 1208, which includes receiving an EM signal. Step 1210 includes receiving an aliasing signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. Step 1212 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to an IF signal.

In another embodiment, the invention down-converts the EM signal to a demodulated baseband information signal. FIG. l2C depicts a flowchart 1213 that illustrates a method for down- converting the EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal. The process begins at step 1214, which includes receiving an EM signal. Step 1216 includes receiving an aliasing signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. Step 1218 includes down-converting the EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal. The demodulated baseband signal can be processed without further down-conversion or demodulation.

In another embodiment, the EM signal is a frequency modulated (FM) signal, which is down-converted to a non-FM signal, such as a phase modulated (PM) signal or an amplitude modulated (AM) signal. FIG. 12D depicts a flowchart 1219 that illustrates a method for down-converting the FM signal to a non-FM signal. The process begins at step 1220, which includes receiving an EM signal. Step 1222 includes receiving an aliasing

signal having an aliasing rate. Step 1224 includes down-converting the FM signal to a non-FM signal.

The invention down-converts any type of EM signal, including, but not limited to, modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signals. For ease of discussion, the invention is further described herein using modulated carrier signals for examples. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert signals other than carrier signals as well. The invention is not limited to the example embodiments described above.

In an embodiment, down-conversion is accomplished by under-sampling an EM signal. This is described generally in Section I.2.2. below and in detail in Section II and its sub-sections. In another embodiment, down-conversion is achieved by transferring non-negligible amounts of energy from an EM signal. This is described generally in Section I.2.3. below and in detail in Section III.

2.2 Down-Converting by Under-Sampling

The term aliasing, as used herein, refers both to down-converting an EM signal by under-sampling the EM signal at an aliasing rate and to down-converting an EM signal by transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate. Methods for under-sampling an EM signal to down-convert the EM signal are now described at an overview level. FIG. 14A depicts a flowchart 1401 that illustrates a method for under-sampling the EM signal at an aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal. The process begins at step 1402, which includes receiving an EM signal. Step 1404 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate. Step 1406 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal.

Down-converting by under-sampling is illustrated by 4504 in FIG. 45A and is described in greater detail in Section II.

2.2.1 Down-Converting to an Intermediate Frequency (IF) Signal

In an embodiment, an EM signal is under-sampled at an aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to a lower, or intermediate frequency (IF) signal. The EM signal can be a modulated carrier signal or an unmodulated carrier signal. In an exemplary example, a modulated carrier signal F_{MC} is down-converted to an IF signal F_{IF}.

$$F_{MC} \rightarrow F_{IF}$$

FIG. 14B depicts a flowchart 1407 that illustrates a method for undersampling the EM signal at an aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to an IF signal. The process begins at step 1408, which includes receiving an EM signal. Step 1410 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate. Step 1412 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to an IF signal.

This embodiment is illustrated generally by 4508 in FIG. 45B and is described in Section II.1.

2.2.2 Direct-to-Data Down-Converting

In another embodiment, an EM signal is directly down-converted to a demodulated baseband signal (direct-to-data down-conversion), by undersampling the EM signal at an aliasing rate. The EM signal can be a modulated EM signal or an unmodulated EM signal. In an exemplary

embodiment, the EM signal is the modulated carrier signal F_{MC}, and is directly down-converted to a demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}.

$$F_{MC} \rightarrow F_{DMB}$$

FIG. 14C depicts a flowchart 1413 that illustrates a method for under-sampling the EM signal at an aliasing rate to directly down-convert the EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal. The process begins at step 1414, which includes receiving an EM signal. Step 1416 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate. Step 1418 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert the EM signal to a baseband information signal.

This embodiment is illustrated generally by 4510 in FIG. 45B and is described in Section II.2.

2.2.3 Modulation Conversion

In another embodiment, a frequency modulated (FM) carrier signal F_{FMC} is converted to a non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$, by under-sampling the FM carrier signal F_{FMC}.

$$F_{FMC} \rightarrow F_{(NON-FM)}$$

FIG. 14D depicts a flowchart 1419 that illustrates a method for under-sampling an FM signal to convert it to a non-FM signal. The process begins at step 1420, which includes receiving the FM signal. Step 1422 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate. Step 1424 includes under-sampling the FM signal at the aliasing rate to convert

the FM signal to a non-FM signal. For example, the FM signal can be under-sampled to convert it to a PM signal or an AM signal.

This embodiment is illustrated generally by 4512 in FIG. 45B, and described in Section II.3

2.3 Down-Converting by Transferring Energy

The term aliasing, as used herein, refers both to down-converting an EM signal by under-sampling the EM signal at an aliasing rate and to down--converting an EM signal by transferring non-negligible amounts energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate. Methods for transferring energy from an EM signal to down-convert the EM signal are now described at an overview level. More detailed descriptions are provided in Section III.

FIG. 46A depicts a flowchart 4601 that illustrates a method for transferring energy from the EM signal at an aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal. The process begins at step 4602, which includes receiving an EM signal. Step 4604 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate. Step 4606 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal.

Down-converting by transferring energy is illustrated by 4506 in FIG. 45A and is described in greater detail in Section III.

2.3.1 Down-Converting to an Intermediate Frequency (IF) Signal

In an embodiment, EM signal is down-converted to a lower, or intermediate frequency (IF) signal, by transferring energy from the EM signal at an aliasing rate. The EM signal can be a modulated carrier signal or an unmodulated carrier signal. In an exemplary example, a modulated carrier signal F_{MC} is down-converted to an IF signal F_{IF}.

$$F_{MC} \rightarrow F_{IF}$$

FIG. 46B depicts a flowchart 4607 that illustrates a method for transferring energy from the EM signal at an aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to an IF signal. The process begins at step 4608, which includes receiving an EM signal. Step 4610 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate. Step 4612 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to an IF signal.

This embodiment is illustrated generally by 4514 in FIG. 45B and is described in Section III.1.

2.3.2 Direct-to-Data Down-Converting

In another embodiment, an EM signal is down-converted to a demodulated baseband signal by transferring energy from the EM signal at an aliasing rate. This embodiment is referred to herein as direct-to-data down-conversion. The EM signal can be a modulated EM signal or an unmodulated EM signal. In an exemplary embodiment, the EM signal is the modulated carrier signal F_{MC}, and is directly down-converted to a demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}.

$$F_{MC} \rightarrow F_{DMB}$$

FIG. 46C depicts a flowchart 4613 that illustrates a method for transferring energy from the EM signal at an aliasing rate to directly down--convert the EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal. The process begins at step 4614, which includes receiving an EM signal. Step 4616

includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate. Step 4618 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert the EM signal to a baseband signal.

This embodiment is illustrated generally by 4516 in FIG. 45B and is described in Section III.2

2.3.3 Modulation Conversion

In another embodiment, a frequency modulated (FM) carrier signal F_{FMC} is converted to a non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$, by transferring energy from the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} at an aliasing rate.

$$F_{FMC} \rightarrow F_{(NON-FM)}$$

The FM carrier signal F_{FMC} can be converted to, for example, a phase modulated (PM) signal or an amplitude modulated (AM) signal. FIG. 46D depicts a flowchart 4619 that illustrates a method for transferring energy from an FM signal to convert it to a non-FM signal. Step 4620 includes receiving the FM signal. Step 4622 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate. In FIG. 46D, step 4612 includes transferring energy from the FM signal to convert it to a non-FM signal. For example, energy can be transferred from an FSK signal to convert it to a PSK signal or an ASK signal.

This embodiment is illustrated generally by 4518 in FIG. 45B, and described in Section III.3

2.3 Determining the Aliasing Rate

In accordance with the definition of aliasing, the aliasing rate is

equal to, or less than, twice the frequency of the EM carrier signal. Preferably, the aliasing rate is much less than the frequency of the carrier. The aliasing rate is preferably more than twice the highest frequency component of the modulating baseband signal F_{MB} that is to be reproduced. The above requirements are illustrated in EQ. (1).

$$2 \bullet F_{MC} \geq F_{AR} > 2 \bullet \text{(Highest Freq. Component of } F_{MB}) \qquad \text{EQ. (1)}$$

In other words, by taking a carrier and aliasing it at an aliasing rate, the invention can down-convert that carrier to lower frequencies. One aspect that can be exploited by this invention is that the carrier is not the item of interest; instead the lower baseband signal is of interest to be reproduced sufficiently. The baseband signal's frequency content, even though its carrier may be aliased, satisfies the Nyquist criteria and as a result, the baseband information can be sufficiently reproduced, either as the intermediate modulating carrier signal F_{IF} or as the demodulated direct-to-data baseband signal F_{DMB}.

In accordance with the invention, relationships between the frequency of an EM carrier signal, the aliasing rate, and the intermediate frequency of the down-converted signal, are illustrated in EQ. (2).

$$F_C = n \bullet F_{AR} \pm F_{IF} \qquad \text{EQ. (2)}$$

Where:

F_C is the frequency of the EM carrier signal that is to be aliased;

F_{AR} is the aliasing rate;

n identifies a harmonic or sub-harmonic of the aliasing rate (generally, n=0.5, 1, 2, 3, 4, ...); and

F_{IF} is the intermediate frequency of the down-converted signal.

Note that as $(n \bullet F_{AR})$ approaches F_C, F_{IF} approaches zero. This is a special case where an EM signal is directly down-converted to a demodulated baseband signal. This special case is referred to herein as Direct-to-Data down-conversion. Direct-to-Data down-conversion is described in later sections.

High level descriptions, exemplary embodiments and exemplary implementations of the above and other embodiments of the invention are provided in sections below.

3. Benefits of the Invention Using an Example Conventional Receiver for Comparison

FIG. 11 illustrates an example conventional receiver system 1102. The conventional system 1102 is provided both to help the reader to understand the functional differences between conventional systems and the present invention, and to help the reader to understand the benefits of the present invention.

The example conventional receiver system 1102 receives an electromagnetic (EM) signal 1104 via an antenna 1106. The EM signal 1104 can include a plurality of EM signals such as modulated carrier signals. For example, the EM signal 1104 includes one or more radio frequency (RF) EM signals, such as a 900 MHZ modulated carrier signal. Higher frequency RF signals, such as 900 MHZ signals, generally cannot be directly processed by conventional signal processors. Instead, higher frequency RF signals are typically down-converted to lower intermediate frequencies (IF) for processing. The receiver system 1102 down-converts the EM signal 1104 to an intermediate frequency (IF) signal 1108n, which can be provided to a signal processor 1110. When the EM signal 1104 includes a modulated

carrier signal, the signal processor 1110 usually includes a demodulator that demodulates the IF signal 1108n to a baseband information signal (demodulated baseband signal).

Receiver system 1102 includes an RF stage 1112 and one or more IF stages 1114. The RF stage 1112 receives the EM signal 1104. The RF stage 1112 includes the antenna 1106 that receives the EM signal 1104.

The one or more IF stages 1114a-1114n down-convert the EM signal 1104 to consecutively lower intermediate frequencies. Each of the one or more IF sections 1114a-1114n includes a mixer 1118a-1118n that down-converts an input EM signal 1116 to a lower frequency IF signal 1108. By cascading the one or more mixers 1118a-1118n, the EM signal 1104 is incrementally down-converted to a desired IF signal 1108n.

In operation, each of the one or more mixers 1118 mixes an input EM signal 1116 with a local oscillator (LO) signal 1119, which is generated by a local oscillator (LO) 1120. Mixing generates sum and difference signals from the input EM signal 1116 and the LO signal 1119. For example, mixing an input EM signal 1116a, having a frequency of 900 MHZ, with a LO signal 1119a, having a frequency of 830 MHZ, results in a sum signal, having a frequency of 900 MHZ + 830 MHZ = 1.73 GHZ, and a difference signal, having a frequency of 900 MHZ - 830 MHZ = 70 MHZ.

Specifically, in the example of FIG. 11, the one or more mixers 1118 generate a sum and difference signals for all signal components in the input EM signal 1116. For example, when the EM signal 1116a includes a second EM signal, having a frequency of 760 MHZ, the mixer 1118a generates a second sum signal, having a frequency of 760 MHZ + 830 MHZ = 1.59 GHZ, and a second difference signal, having a frequency of 830 MHZ - 760 MHZ = 70 MHZ. In this example, therefore, mixing two input EM signals, having frequencies of 900 MHZ and 760 MHZ, respectively, with an LO signal having a frequency

of 830 MHZ, results in two IF signals at 70 MHZ.

Generally, it is very difficult, if not impossible, to separate the two 70 MHZ signals. Instead, one or more filters 1122 and 1123 are provided upstream from each mixer 1118 to filter the unwanted frequencies, also known as image frequencies. The filters 1122 and 1123 can include various filter topologies and arrangements such as bandpass filters, one or more high pass filters, one or more low pass filters, combinations thereof, etc.

Typically, the one or more mixers 1118 and the one or more filters 1122 and 1123 attenuate or reduce the strength of the EM signal 1104. For example, a typical mixer reduces the EM signal strength by 8 to 12 dB. A typical filter reduces the EM signal strength by 3 to 6 dB.

As a result, one or more low noise amplifiers (LNAs) 1121 and 1124a-l124n are provided upstream of the one or more filters 1123 and 1122a-1122n. The LNAs and filters can be in reversed order. The LNAs compensate for losses in the mixers 1118, the filters 1122 and 1123, and other components by increasing the EM signal strength prior to filtering and mixing. Typically, for example, each LNA contributes 15 to 20 dB of amplification.

However, LNAs require substantial power to operate. Higher frequency LNAs require more power than lower frequency LNAs. When the receiver system 1102 is intended to be portable, such as a cellular telephone receiver, for example, the LNAs require a substantial portion of the total power.

At higher frequencies, impedance mismatches between the various stages further reduce the strength of the EM signal 1104. In order to optimize power transferred through the receiver system 1102, each component should be impedance matched with adjacent components. Since no two components have the exact same impedance characteristics, even for components that were manufactured with high

tolerances, impedance matching must often be individually fine tuned for each receiver system 1102. As a result, impedance matching in conventional receivers tends to be labor intensive and more art than science. Impedance matching requires a significant amount of added time and expense to both the design and manufacture of conventional receivers. Since many of the components, such as LNA, filters, and impedance matching circuits, are highly frequency dependent, a receiver designed for one application is generally not suitable for other applications. Instead, a new receiver must be designed, which requires new impedance matching circuits between many of the components.

Conventional receiver components are typically positioned over multiple IC substrates instead of on a single IC substrate. This is partly because there is no single substrate that is optimal for both RF, IF, and baseband frequencies. Other factors may include the sheer number of components, their various sizes and different inherent impedance characteristics, etc. Additional signal amplification is often required when going from chip to chip. Implementation over multiple substrates thus involves many costs in addition to the cost of the ICs themselves.

Conventional receivers thus require many components, are difficult and time consuming to design and manufacture, and require substantial external power to maintain sufficient signal levels. Conventional receivers are thus expensive to design, build, and use.

In an embodiment, the present invention is implemented to replace many, if not all, of the components between the antenna 1106 and the signal processor 1110, with an aliasing module that includes a universal frequency translator (UFT) module. (More generally, the phrase "universal frequency translator," "universal frequency translation," "UFT," "UFT transform," and "UFT technology" (or similar phrases) are used herein to refer to the frequency translation technology/concepts described herein.) The UFT is able to down-

-convert a wide range of EM signal frequencies using very few components. The UFT is easy to design and build, and requires very little external power. The UFT design can be easily tailored for different frequencies or frequency ranges. For example, UFT design can be easily impedance matched with relatively little tuning. In a direct-to-data embodiment of the invention, where an EM signal is directly down-converted to a demodulated baseband signal, the invention also eliminates the need for a demodulator in the signal processor 1110.

When the invention is implemented in a receiver system, such as the receiver system 1102, power consumption is significantly reduced and signal to noise ratio is significantly increased.

In an embodiment, the invention can be implemented and tailored for specific applications with easy to calculate and easy to implement impedance matching circuits. As a result, when the invention is implemented as a receiver, such as the receiver 1102, specialized impedance matching experience is not required.

In conventional receivers, components in the IF sections comprise roughly eighty to ninety percent of the total components of the receivers. The UFT design eliminates the IF section(s) and thus eliminates the roughly eighty to ninety percent of the total components of conventional receivers.

Other advantages of the invention include, but are not limited to:

The invention can be implemented as a receiver with only a single local oscillator;

The invention can be implemented as a receiver with only a single, lower frequency, local oscillator;

The invention can be implemented as a receiver using few filters;

The invention can be implemented as a receiver using unit delay filters;

The invention can be implemented as a receiver that can change

frequencies and receive different modulation formats with no hardware changes;

The invention can be also be implemented as frequency up-converter in an EM signal transmitter;

The invention can be also be implemented as a combination up-converter (transmitter) and down-converter (receiver), referred to herein as a transceiver;

The invention can be implemented as a method and system for ensuring reception of a communications signal, as disclosed in co-pending patent application titled, "Method and System for Ensuring Reception of a Communications Signal," Attorney Docket No. 1711.0030000 Ser. No. 09/176,415 (now U.S. Patent No. 6,091,940), incorporated herein by reference in its entirety;

The invention can be implemented in a differential configuration, whereby signal to noise ratios are increased;

A receiver designed in accordance with the invention can be implemented on a single IC substrate, such as a silicon-based IC substrate;

A receiver designed in accordance with the invention and implemented on a single IC substrate, such as a silicon-based IC substrate, can down-convert EM signals from frequencies in the giga Hertz range;

A receiver built in accordance with the invention has a relatively flat response over a wide range of frequencies. For example, in an embodiment, a receiver built in accordance with the invention to operate around 800 MHZ has a substantially flat response (i.e., plus or minus a few dB of power) from 100 MHZ to 1 GHZ. This is referred to herein as a wide-band receiver; and

A receiver built in accordance with the invention can include multiple, user-selectable, Impedance match modules, each designed for

a different wide-band of frequencies, which can be used to scan an ultra-wide-band of frequencies.

II. Down-Converting by Under-Sampling

1. Down-Converting an EM Carrier Signal to an EM Intermediate Signal by Under- Sampling the EM Carrier Signal at the Aliasing Rate

In an embodiment, the invention down-converts an EM signal to an IF signal by under-sampling the EM signal. This embodiment is illustrated by 4508 in FIG. 45B.

This embodiment can be implemented with modulated and unmodulated EM signals. This embodiment is described herein using the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} in FIG. 1, as an example. In the example, the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} is down-converted to an IF signal F_{IF}. The IF signal F_{IF} can then be demodulated, with any conventional demodulation technique to obtain a demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any EM signal, including but not limited to, modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signals.

The following sections describe example methods for down-converting the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to the IF signal F_{IF}, according to embodiments of the invention. Exemplary structural embodiments for implementing the methods are also described. It should be understood that the invention is not limited to the particular embodiments described below. Equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the following will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such equivalents,

extensions, variations, deviations, etc., are within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

The following sections include a high level discussion, example embodiments, and implementation examples.

1.1 High Level Description

This section (including its subsections) provides a high-level description of down-converting an EM signal to an IF signal F_{IF}, according to an embodiment of the invention. In particular, an operational process of under-sampling a modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to down-convert it to the IF signalF_{IF}, is described at a high-level. Also, a structural implementation for implementing this process is described at a high-level. This structural implementation is described herein for illustrative purposes, and is not limiting. In particular, the process described in this section can be achieved using any number of structural implementations, one of which is described in this section. The details of such structural implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein.

1.1.1 Operational Description

FIG. 14B depicts a flowchart 1407 that illustrates an exemplary method for under-sampling an EM signal to down-convert the EM signal to an intermediate signal F_{IF}. The exemplary method illustrated in the flowchart 1407 is an embodiment of the flowchart 1401 in FIG. 14A.

Any and all combinations of modulation techniques are valid for this invention. For ease of discussion, the digital AM carrier signal 616

is used to illustrate a high level operational description of the invention. Subsequent sections provide detailed flowcharts and descriptions for AM, FM and PM example embodiments. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any type of EM signal, including any form of modulated carrier signal and unmodulated carrier signals.

The method illustrated in the flowchart 1407 is now described at a high level using the digital AM carrier signal 616 of FIG. 6C. The digital AM carrier signal 616 is re-illustrated in FIG. 15A for convenience. FIG. 15E illustrates a portion 1510 of the AM carrier signal 616, between time t1 and t2, on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1408, which includes receiving an EM signal. Step 1408 is represented by the digital AM carrier signal 616.

Step 1410 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG 5B illustrates an example under-sampling signal 1502, which includes a train of pulses 1504 having negligible apertures that tend toward zero time in duration. The pulses 1504 repeat at the aliasing rate, or pulse repetition rate. Aliasing rates are discussed below.

Step 1412 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to the intermediate signal F_{IF}. When down-converting an EM signal to an IF signal, the frequency or aliasing rate of the pulses 1504 sets the IF.

FIG. 15C illustrates a stair step AM intermediate signal 1506, which is generated by the down-conversion process. The AM intermediate signal 1506 is similar to the AM carrier signal 616 except that the AM intermediate signal 1506 has a lower frequency than the AM carrier signal 616. The AM carrier signal 616 has thus been down-converted to the AM intermediate signal 1506. The AM intermediate signal 1506 can be generated at any frequency below the

frequency of the AM carrier signal 616 by adjusting the aliasing rate.

FIG. 15D depicts the AM intermediate signal 1506 as a filtered output signal 1508. In an alternative embodiment, the invention outputs a stair step, non-filtered or partially filtered output signal. The choice between filtered, partially filtered and non-filtered output signals is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The intermediate frequency of the down-converted signal F_{IF}, which in this example is the AM intermediate signal 1506, can be determined from EQ. (2), which is reproduced below for convenience.

$$F_C = n \bullet F_{AR} \pm F_{IF} \qquad \text{EQ. (2)}$$

A suitable aliasing rate F_{AR} can be determined in a variety of ways. An example method for determining the aliasing rate F_{AR}, is provided below. After reading the description herein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand how to determine appropriate aliasing rates for EM signals, including ones in addition to the modulated carrier signals specifically illustrated herein.

In FIG. 17, a flowchart 1701 illustrates an example process for determining an aliasing rate F_{AR}. But a designer may choose, or an application may dictate, that the values be determined in an order that is different than the illustrated order. The process begins at step 1702, which includes determining, or selecting, the frequency of the EM signal. The frequency of the FM carrier signal 616 can be, for example, 901 MHZ.

Step 1704 includes determining, or selecting, the intermediate frequency. This is the frequency to which the EM signal will be down--converted. The intermediate frequency can be determined, or selected, to match a frequency requirement of a down-stream demodulator. The

intermediate frequency can be, for example, 1 MHZ.

Step 1706 includes determining the aliasing rate or rates that will down-convert the EM signal to the IF specified in step 1704.

EQ. (2) can be rewritten as EQ. (3):

$$n * F_{AR} = F_C \pm F_{IF} \qquad \text{EQ. (3)}$$

Which can be rewritten as EQ. (4):

$$n = \frac{F_C \pm F_{IF}}{F_{AR}} \qquad \text{EQ. (4)}$$

or as EQ. (5):

$$F_{AR} = \frac{F_C \pm F_{IF}}{n} \qquad \text{EQ. (5)}$$

$(F_C \pm F_{IF})$ can be defined as a difference value F_{DIFF}, as illustrated in EQ. (6):

$$(F_C \pm F_{IF}) = F_{DIFF} \qquad \text{EQ. (6)}$$

EQ. (4) can be rewritten as EQ. (7):

$$n = \frac{F_{DIFF}}{F_{AR}} \qquad \text{EQ. (7)}$$

From EQ. (7), it can be seen that, for a given n and a constant F_{AR}, F_{DIFF} is constant. For the case of $F_{DIFF} = F_C - F_{IF}$, and for a constant F_{DIFF}, as F_C increases, F_{IF} necessarily increases. For the case of $F_{DIFF} = F_C + F_{IF}$, and for a constant F_{DIFF}, as F_C increases, F_{IF} necessarily decreases. In the latter case of $F_{DIFF} = F_C + F_{IF}$, any phase or frequency changes on F_C correspond to reversed or inverted phase or frequency changes on F_{IF}. This is mentioned to teach the reader that $F_{DIFF} = F_C - F_{IF}$, is used, the above effect will affect the phase and frequency response of the modulated intermediate signal F_{IF}.

EQs. (2) through (7) can be solved for any valid n. A suitable n can be determined for any given difference frequency F_{DIFF} and for any desired aliasing rate $F_{AR\,(Desired)}$. EQs. (2) through (7) can be utilized to identify a specific harmonic closest to a desired aliasing rate $F_{AR\,(Desired)}$ that will generate the desired intermediate signal F_{IF}.

An example is now provided for determining a suitable n for a given difference frequency F_{DIFF} and for a desired aliasing rate $F_{AR\,(Desired)}$. For ease of illustration, only the case of $(F_C - F_{IF})$ is illustrated in the example below.

$$n = \frac{F_C - F_{IF}}{F_{AR(Desired)}} = \frac{F_{DIFF}}{F_{AR(Desired)}}$$

The desired aliasing rate $F_{AR\,(Desired)}$ can be, for example, 140 MHZ. Using the previous examples, where the carrier frequency is 901 MHZ and the IF is 1 MHZ, an initial value of n is determined as:

$$n = \frac{901\ \text{MHZ} - 1\ \text{MHZ}}{140\ \text{MHZ}} = \frac{900}{140} = 6.4$$

The initial value 6.4 can be rounded up or down to the valid nearest n, which was defined above as including (0.5, 1, 2, 3, ...). In this example, 6.4 is rounded down to 6.0, which is inserted into EQ. (5) for the case of $(F_C - F_{IF}) = F_{DIFF}$.:

$$F_{AR} = \frac{F_C - F_{IF}}{n}$$

$$F_{AR} = \frac{901\ \text{MHZ} - 1\ \text{MHZ}}{n} = \frac{900\ \text{MHZ}}{n} = 150\ \text{MHZ}$$

In other words, under-sampling a 901 MHZ EM carrier signal at 150 MHZ generates an intermediate signal at 1 MHZ. When the under-sampled EM carrier signal is a modulated carrier signal, the intermediate signal will also substantially include the modulation. The modulated intermediate signal can be demodulated through any conventional demodulation technique.

Alternatively, instead of starting from a desired aliasing rate, a list of suitable aliasing rates can be determined from the modified form of EQ. (5), by solving for various values of n. Example solutions are listed

below.

$$F_{AR} = \frac{(F_C - F_{IF})}{n} = \frac{F_{DIFF}}{n} = \frac{901\ MHZ - 1\ MHZ}{n} = \frac{900\ MHZ}{n}$$

Solving for n = 0.5, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6:

900 MHZ/0.5 = 1.8 GHZ (i.e., second harmonic, illustrated in FIG. 25A as 2502);

900 MHZ/1 = 900 MHZ (i.e., fundamental frequency, illustrated in FIG. 25B as 2504);

900 MHZ/2 = 450 MHZ (i.e., second sub-harmonic, illustrated in FIG. 25C as 2506);

900 MHZ/3 = 300 MHZ (i.e., third sub-harmonic, illustrated in FIG. 25D as 2508);

900 MHZ/4 = 225 MHZ (i.e., fourth sub-harmonic, illustrated in FIG. 25E as 2510);

900 MHZ/5 = 180 MHZ (i.e. fifth sub-harmonic, illustrated in FIG. 25F as 2512); and

900 MHZ/6 = 150 MHZ (i.e., sixth sub-harmonic, illustrated in FIG. 25G as 2514).

The steps described above can be performed for the case of ($F_C \pm F_{IF}$) in a similar fashion. The results can be compared to the results obtained from the case of ($F_C - F_{IF}$) to determine which provides better result for an application.

In an embodiment, the invention down-converts an EM signal to a relatively standard IF in the range of, for example, 100KHZ to 200 MHZ. In another embodiment, referred to herein as a small off-set implementation, the invention down-converts an EM signal to a

relatively low frequency of, for example, less than 100 KHZ. In another embodiment, referred to herein as a large off-set implementation, the invention down-converts an EM signal to a relatively higher IF signal, such as, for example, above 200 MHZ.

The various off-set implementations provide selectivity for different applications. Generally, lower data rate applications can operate at lower intermediate frequencies. But higher intermediate frequencies can allow more information to be supported for a given modulation technique.

In accordance with the invention, a designer picks an optimum information bandwidth for an application and an optimum intermediate frequency to support the baseband signal. The intermediate frequency should be high enough to support the bandwidth of the modulating baseband signal F_{MB}.

Generally, as the aliasing rate approaches a harmonic or sub-harmonic frequency of the EM signal, the frequency of the down-converted IF signal decreases. Similarly, as the aliasing rate moves away from a harmonic or sub-harmonic frequency of the EM signal, the IF increases.

Aliased frequencies occur above and below every harmonic of the aliasing frequency. In order to avoid mapping other aliasing frequencies in the band of the aliasing frequency (IF) of interest, the IF of interest is preferably not near one half the aliasing rate.

As described in example implementations below, an aliasing module, including a universal frequency translator (UFT) module built in accordance with the invention, provides a wide range of flexibility in frequency selection and can thus be implemented in a wide range of applications. Conventional systems cannot easily offer, or do not allow, this level of flexibility in frequency selection.

1.1.2 Structural Description

FIG. 16 illustrates a block diagram of an under-sampling system 1602 according to an embodiment of the invention. The under-sampling system 1602 is an example embodiment of the generic aliasing system 1302 in FIG. 13. The under-sampling system 1602 includes an under-sampling module 1606. The under-sampling module 1606 receives the EM signal 1304 and an under-sampling signal 1604, which includes under-sampling pulses having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time, occurring at a frequency equal to the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The under-sampling signal 1604 is an example embodiment of the aliasing signal 1310. The under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the EM signal 1304 at the aliasing rate F_{AR} of the under-sampling signal 1604. The under-sampling system 1602 outputs a down-converted signal 1308A.

Preferably, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the EM signal 1304 to down-convert it to the intermediate signal F_{IF} in the manner shown in the operational flowchart 1407 of FIG. l4B. But it should be understood that the scope and spirit of the invention includes other structural embodiments for performing the steps of the flowchart 1407. The specifics of the other structural embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein. In an embodiment, the aliasing rate F_{AR} of the under-sampling signal 1604 is chosen in the manner discussed in Section II.1.1.1 so that the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the EM carrier signal 1304 generating the intermediate frequency F_{IF}.

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described with reference to the flowchart 1407 and to the timing diagrams in FIGS. 15A-D. In step 1408, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the AM signal 616 (FIG. 15A). In step 1410, the

under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 1502 (FIG. 15B). In step 1412, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 1502, or a multiple thereof, to down-convert the AM carrier signal 616 to the intermediate signal 1506 (FIG. 15D).

Example implementations of the under-sampling module 1606 are provided in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.2 Example Embodiments

Various embodiments related to the method(s) and structure(s) described above are presented in this section (and its subsections). These embodiments are described herein for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to these embodiments. Alternate embodiments (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the embodiments described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. The invention is intended and adapted to include such alternate embodiments.

The method for down-converting the EM signal 1304 to the intermediate signal F_{IF}, illustrated in the flowchart 1407 of FIG. 14B, can be implemented with any type of EM signal, including unmodulated EM carrier signals and modulated carrier signals including, but not limited to, AM, FM, PM, etc., or any combination thereof. Operation of the flowchart 1407 of FIG. 14B is described below for AM, FM and PM carrier signals. The exemplary descriptions below are intended to facilitate an understanding of the present invention. The present invention is not limited to or by the exemplary embodiments below.

1.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Amplitude Modulation

1.2.1.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 1407 in FIG. 14B is described below for the analog AM carrier signal 516, illustrated in FIG. 5C, and for the digital AM carrier signal 616, illustrated in FIG. 6C.

1.2.1.1.1 Analog AM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the analog AM carrier signal 516 in FIG. 5C to an analog AM intermediate signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1407 in FIG. 14B. The analog AM carrier signal 516 is re-illustrated in FIG. 19A for convenience. For this example, the analog AM carrier signal 516 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 19B, an analog AM carrier signal 1904 illustrates a portion of the analog AM carrier signal 516 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1408, which includes receiving the EM signal. This is represented by the analog AM carrier signal 516 in FIG. 19A.

Step 1410 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 19C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 1906 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 19B. The under-sampling signal 1906 includes a train of pulses 1907 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 1907 repeat at the aliasing rate, or pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is

substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. For this example, the aliasing rate is approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1412 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to the intermediate signal F_{IF}. Step 1412 is illustrated in FIG. 19B by under-sample points 1905.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the AM carrier signal 516, the under-sample points 1905 "walk through" the analog AM carrier signal 516. In this example, the under-sample points 1905 "walk through" the analog AM carrier signal 516 at approximately a one megahertz rate. In other words, the under-sample points 1905 occur at different locations on subsequent cycles of the AM carrier signal 516. As a result, the under-sample points 1905 capture varying amplitudes of the analog AM signal 516. For example, under-sample point1905A has a larger amplitude than under sample point 1905B.

In FIG. 19D, the under-sample points 1905 correlate to voltage points 1908. In an embodiment, the voltage points 1908 form an analog AM intermediate signal 1910. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 1908 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as discussed below.

In FIG. 19E, an AM intermediate signal 1912 represents the AM intermediate signal 1910, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 19E illustrates the AM intermediate signal 1912 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The AM intermediate signal 1912 is substantially similar to the AM carrier signal 516, except that the AM intermediate signal 1912 is at

the 1 MHZ intermediate frequency. The AM intermediate signal 1912 can be demodulated through any conventional AM demodulation technique.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the AM intermediate signal 1910 in FIG. 19D and the AM intermediate signal 1912 in FIG. 19E illustrate that the AM carrier signal 516 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.1.1.2 Digital AM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the digital AM carrier signal 616 m FIG. 6C to a digital AM intermediate signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1407 in FIG. l4B. The digital AM carrier signal 616 is re-illustrated in FIG. 18A for convenience. For this example, the digital AM carrier signal 616 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. l8B, an AM carrier signal 1804 illustrates a portion of the AM signal 616, from time t0 to t1, on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1408, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the AM signal 616 in FIG. l8A.

Step 1410 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. l8C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 1806 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. l8B. The under-sampling signal 1806 includes a train of pulses 1807 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 1807 repeat at the aliasing rate, or pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of

the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. For this example, the aliasing rate is approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1412 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to the intermediate signal F_{IF}. Step 1412 is illustrated in FIG. 18B by under-sample points 1805.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the AM carrier signal 616, the under-sample points 1805 walk through the AM carrier signal 616. In other words, the under-sample points 1805 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the AM signal 616. As a result, the under-sample points 1805 capture various amplitudes of the AM signal 616. In this example, the under-sample points 1805 walk through the AM carrier signal 616 at approximately a 1 MHZ rate. For example, under-sample point 1805A has a larger amplitude than under-sample point 1805B.

In FIG. 18D, the under-sample points 1805 correlate to voltage points 1808. In an embodiment, the voltage points 1805 form an AM intermediate signal 1810. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 1808 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as discussed below.

In FIG. 18E, an AM intermediate signal 1812 represents the AM intermediate signal 1810, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 18E illustrates the AM intermediate signal 1812 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The AM intermediate signal 1812 is substantially similar to the AM carrier signal 616, except that the AM intermediate signal 1812 is at the 1 MHZ intermediate frequency. The AM intermediate signal 1812 can be demodulated through any conventional AM demodulation

technique.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the AM intermediate signal 1810 in FIG. 18D and the AM intermediate signal 1812 in FIG. 18E illustrate that the AM carrier signal 616 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.1.2 Structural Description

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for the analog AM carrier signal 516, with reference to the flowchart 1407 and to the timing diagrams of FIGS. 19A-E. In step 1408, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the AM carrier signal 516 (FIG. 19A). In step 1410, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 1906 (FIG. 19C). In step 1412, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the AM carrier signal 516 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 1906 to down-convert it to the AM intermediate signal 1912 (FIG. 19E).

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for the digital AM carrier signal 616, with reference to the flowchart 1407 and to the timing diagrams of FIGS. 18A-E. In step 1408, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the AM carrier signal 616 (FIG. 18A). In step 1410, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 1806 (FIG. 18C). In step 1412, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 1806 to down-convert it to the AM intermediate signal 1812 (FIG. 18E).

Example implementations of the under-sampling module 1606 are provided in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.2.2 Second Example Embodiment: Frequency Modulation

1.2.2.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 1407 in FIG. 14B is described below for the analog FM carrier signal 716, illustrated in FIG. 7C, and for the digital FM carrier signal 816, illustrated in FIG. 8C.

1.2.2.1.1 Analog FM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the analog FM carrier signal 716 to an analog FM intermediate signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1407 in FIG. 14B. The analog FM carrier signal 716 is re-illustrated in FIG. 20A for convenience. For this example, the analog FM carrier signal 716 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 20B, an FM carrier signal 2004 illustrates a portion of the analog FM carrier signal 716, from time t1 to t3, on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1408, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented in FIG. 20A by the FM carrier signal 716.

Step 1410 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 20C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 2006 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 20B. The under-sampling signal 2006 includes a train of pulses 2007 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 2007 repeat at the aliasing rate or pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. For this example, where the FM carrier

signal 716 is centered around 901 MHZ, the aliasing rate is approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1412 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to the intermediate signal F_{IF}. Step 1412 is illustrated in FIG. 20B by under-sample points 2005.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the FM carrier signal 716, the under-sample points 2005 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the under-sampled signal 716. In other words, the under-sample points 2005 walk through the signal 716. As a result, the under-sample points 2005 capture various amplitudes of the FM carrier signal 716.

In FIG. 20D, the under-sample points 2005 correlate to voltage points 2008. In an embodiment, the voltage points 2005 form an analog FM intermediate signal 2010. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 2008 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as discussed below.

In FIG. 20E, an FM intermediate signal 2012 illustrates the FM intermediate signal 2010, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 20E illustrates the FM intermediate signal 2012 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The FM intermediate signal 2012 is substantially similar to the FM carrier signal 716, except that the FM intermediate signal 2012 is at the 1 MHZ intermediate frequency. The FM intermediate signal 2012 can be demodulated through any conventional FM demodulation technique.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate frequency

down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the FM intermediate signal 2010 in FIG. 20D and the FM intermediate signal 2012 in FIG. 20E illustrate that the FM carrier signal 716 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.2.1.2 Digital FM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the digital FM carrier signal 816 to a digital FM intermediate signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1407 in FIG. l4B. The digital FM carrier signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 2lA for convenience. For this example, the digital FM carrier signal 816 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 21B, an FM carrier signal 2104 illustrates a portion of the FM carrier signal 816, from time t1 to t3, on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1408, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented in FIG. 21A, by the FM carrier signal 816.

Step 1410 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 21C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 2106 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 21B. The under-sampling signal 2106 includes a train of pulses 2107 having negligible apertures that tend toward zero time in duration. The pulses 2107 repeat at the aliasing rate, or pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequencyF_{DIFF}. In this example, where the FM carrier signal 816 is centered around 901 MHZ, the aliasing rate is selected as approximately 450 MHZ, which is a sub-harmonic of 900 MHZ, which is off-set by 1 MHZ from the center frequency of the FM carrier signal

816.

Step 1412 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to an intermediate signal F_{IF}. Step 1412 is illustrated in FIG. 21B by under-sample points 2105.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the FM carrier signal 816, the under-sample points 2105 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the FM carrier signal 816. In other words, the under-sample points 2105 walk through the signal 816. As a result, the under-sample points 2105 capture various amplitudes of the signal 816.

In FIG. 21D, the under-sample points 2105 correlate to voltage points 2108. In an embodiment, the voltage points 2108 form a digital FM intermediate signal 2110. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 2108 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as described below.

In FIG. 21E, an FM intermediate signal 2112 represents the FM intermediate signal 2110, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 21E illustrates the FM intermediate signal 2112 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The FM intermediate signal 2112 is substantially similar to the FM carrier signal 816, except that the FM intermediate signal 2112 is at the 1 MHZ intermediate frequency. The FM intermediate signal 2112 can be demodulated through any conventional FM demodulation technique.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion m accordance with the invention. For example, the

FM intermediate signal 2110 in FIG. 21D and the FM intermediate signal 2112 in FIG. 21E illustrate that the FM carrier signal 816 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.2.2 Structural Description

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for the analog FM carrier signal 716, with reference to the flowchart 1407 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 20A-E. In step 1408, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the FM carrier signal 716 (FIG. 20A). In step 1410, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 2006 (FIG. 20C). In step 1412, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the FM carrier signal 716 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 2006 to down-convert the FM carrier signal 716 to the FM intermediate signal 2012 (FIG. 20E).

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for the digital FM carrier signal 816, with reference to the flowchart 1407 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 21A-E. In step 1408, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the FM carrier signal 816 (FIG. 21A). In step 1410, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 2106 (FIG. 21C). In step 1412, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the FM carrier signal 816 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 2106 to down-convert the FM carrier signal 816 to the FM intermediate signal 2112 (FIG. 21E).

Example implementations of the under-sampling module 1606 are provided in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.2.3 Third Example Embodiment: Phase Modulation

1.2.3.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 1407 in FIG. 14B is described below for the analog PM carrier signal 916, illustrated in FIG. 9C, and for the digital PM carrier signal 1016, illustrated in FIG. 10C.

1.2.3.1.1 Analog PM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the analog PM carrier signal 916 to an analog PM intermediate signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1407 in FIG. 14B. The analog PM carrier signal 916 is re-illustrated in FIG. 23A for convenience. For this example, the analog PM carrier signal 916 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 23B, a PM carrier signal 2304 illustrates a portion of the analog PM carrier signal 916, from time t1 to t3, on an expanded time scale.

The process of down-converting the PM carrier signal 916 to a PM intermediate signal begins at step 1408, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented in FIG. 23A, by the analog PM carrier signal 916.

Step 1410 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 23C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 2306 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 23B. The under-sampling signal 2306 includes a train of pulses 2307 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 2307 repeat at the aliasing rate, or pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate FAR is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. In this example, the aliasing rate is

approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1412 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to the intermediate signal F_{IF}. Step 1412 is illustrated in FIG. 23B by under-sample points 2305.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the PM carrier signal 916, the under-sample points 2305 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the PM carrier signal 916. As a result, the under-sample points capture various amplitudes of the PM carrier signal 916.

In FIG. 23D, voltage points 2308 correlate to the under-sample points 2305. In an embodiment, the voltage points 2308 form an analog PM intermediate signal 2310. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 2308 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as described below.

In FIG. 23E, an analog PM intermediate signal 2312 illustrates the analog PM intermediate signal 2310, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 23E illustrates the PM intermediate signal 2312 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The analog PM intermediate signal 2312 is substantially similar to the analog PM carrier signal 916, except that the analog PM intermediate signal 2312 is at the 1 MHZ intermediate frequency. The analog PM intermediate signal 2312 can be demodulated through any conventional PM demodulation technique.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the analog PM intermediate signal 2310 in FIG. 23D and the analog PM intermediate signal 2312 in FIG. 23E illustrate that the analog PM

carrier signal 2316 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.3.1.2 Digital PM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the digital PM carrier signal 1016 to a digital PM intermediate signal IS now described with reference to the flowchart 1407 in FIG. 14B. The digital PM carrier signal 1016 is re--illustrated in FIG. 22A for convenience. For this example, the digital PM carrier signal 1016 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 22B, a PM carrier signal 2204 illustrates a portion of the digital PM carrier signal 1016, from time t1 to t3, on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1408, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented in FIG. 22A by the digital PM carrier signal 1016.

Step 1408 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rateF_{AR}. FIG. 22C illustrates example under-sampling signal 2206 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 22B. The under-sampling signal 2206 includes a train of pulses 2207 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 2207 repeat at the aliasing rate, or a pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. In this example, the aliasing rate is approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1412 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to an intermediate signalF_{IF}. Step 1412 is illustrated in FIG. 22B by under-sample points 2205.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the PM carrier signal 1016, the under-sample points 2205 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the PM carrier signal 1016.

In FIG. 22D, voltage points 2208 correlate to the under-sample points 2205. In an embodiment, the voltage points 2208 form a digital analog PM intermediate signal 2210. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 2208 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as described below.

In FIG. 22E, a digital PM intermediate signal 2212 represents the digital PM intermediate signal 2210 on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 22E illustrates the PM intermediate signal 2212 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The digital PM intermediate signal 2212 is substantially similar to the digital PM carrier signal 1016, except that the digital PM intermediate signal 2212 is at the 1 MHZ intermediate frequency. The digital PM carrier signal 2212 can be demodulated through any conventional PM demodulation technique.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the digital PM intermediate signal 2210 in FIG. 22D and the digital PM intermediate signal 2212 in FIG. 22E illustrate that the digital PM carrier signal 1016 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.3.2 Structural Description

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for the analog PM carrier signal 916, with reference to the flowchart 1407 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 23A-E. In step 1408, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the PM carrier signal 916 (FIG. 23A). In step 1410, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 2306 (FIG. 23C). In step 1412, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the PM carrier signal 916 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 2306 to down-convert the PM carrier signal 916 to the PM intermediate signal 2312 (FIG. 23E).

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for the digital PM carrier signal 1016, with reference to the flowchart 1407 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 22A-E. In step 1408, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the PM carrier signal 1016 (FIG. 22A). In step 1410, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 2206 (FIG. 22C). In step 1412, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the PM carrier signal 1016 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 2206 to down-convert the PM carrier signal 1016 to the PM intermediate signal 2212 (FIG. 22E).

Example implementations of the under-sampling module 1606 are provided in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.2.4 Other Embodiments

The embodiments described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These embodiments are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate embodiments, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate embodiments fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention. Example

implementations of the under-sampling module 1606 are provided in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.3 Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the method(s), structure(s), and/or embodiments described above are presented in Sections 4 and 5 below. The implementations are presented for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described therein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

2. Directly Down-Converting an EM Signal to a Baseband Signal (Direct-to-Data)

In an embodiment, the invention directly down-converts an EM signal to a baseband signal, by under-sampling the EM signal. This embodiment is referred to herein as direct-to-data down-conversion and is illustrated in FIG. 45B as 4510.

This embodiment can be implemented with modulated and unmodulated EM signals. This embodiment is described herein using the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} in FIG. 1, as an example. In the example, the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} is directly down-converted to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention is applicable to down-convert any EM signal,

including but not limited to, modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signals.

The following sections describe example methods for directly down-converting the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. Exemplary structural embodiments for implementing the methods are also described. It should be understood that the invention is not limited to the particular embodiments described below. Equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the following will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., are within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

The following sections include a high level discussion, example embodiments, and implementation examples.

2.1 High Level Description

This section (including its subsections) provides a high-level description of directly down-converting the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}, according to the invention. In particular, an operational process of directly down-converting the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB} is described at a high-level. Also, a structural implementation for implementing this process is described at a high-level. The structural implementation is described herein for illustrative purposes, and is not limiting. In particular, the process described in this section can be achieved using any number of structural implementations, one of which is described in this section. The details of such structural implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein.

2.1.1 Operational Description

FIG. 14C depicts a flowchart 1413 that illustrates an exemplary method for directly down-converting an EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. The exemplary method illustrated in the flowchart 1413 is an embodiment of the flowchart 1401 in FIG. 14A.

Any and all combinations of modulation techniques are valid for this invention. For ease of discussion, the digital AM carrier signal 616 is used to illustrate a high level operational description of the invention. Subsequent sections provide detailed descriptions for AM and PM example embodiments. FM presents special considerations that are dealt with separately in Section II.3, below. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any type of EM signal, including any form of modulated carrier signal and unmodulated carrier signals.

The method illustrated in the flowchart 1413 is now described at a high level using the digital AM carrier signal 616, from FIG. 6C. The digital AM carrier signal 616 is re-illustrated in FIG. 33A for convenience.

The process of the flowchart 1413 begins at step 1414, which includes receiving an EM signal. Step 1414 is represented by the digital AM carrier signal 616 in FIG. 33A.

Step 1416 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 33B illustrates an example under-sampling signal 3302 which includes a train of pulses 3303 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 3303 repeat at the aliasing rate or pulse repetition rate. The aliasing rate is determined in accordance with EQ. (2), reproduced below for convenience.

$$F_C = n \cdot F_{AR} \pm F_{IF} \qquad \text{EQ. (2)}$$

When directly down-converting an EM signal to baseband (i.e., zero IF), EQ. (2) becomes:

$$F_C = n \cdot F_{AR} \qquad \text{EQ. (8)}$$

Thus, to directly down-convert the AM signal 616 to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the AM signal 616 or to a harmonic or sub-harmonic thereof. Although the aliasing rate is too low to permit reconstruction of higher frequency components of the AM signal 616 (i.e., the carrier frequency), it is high enough to permit substantial reconstruction of the lower frequency modulating baseband signal 310.

Step 1418 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert it to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. FIG. 33C illustrates a stair step demodulated baseband signal 3304, which is generated by the direct down-conversion process. The demodulated baseband signal 3304 is similar to the digital modulating baseband signal 310 in FIG. 3.

FIG. 33D depicts a filtered demodulated baseband signal 3306, which can be generated from the stair step demodulated baseband signal 3304. The invention can thus generate a filtered output signal, a partially filtered output signal, or a relatively unfiltered stair step output signal. The choice between filtered, partially filtered and non-filtered output signals is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

2.1.2 Structural Description

FIG. 16 illustrates the block diagram of the under-sampling system 1602 according to an embodiment of the invention. The under-sampling system 1602 is an example embodiment of the genetic aliasing system 1302 in FIG.13.

In a direct to data embodiment, the frequency of the under-sampling signal 1604 is substantially equal to a harmonic of the EM signal 1304 or, more typically, a sub-harmonic thereof Preferably, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the EM signal 1304 to directly down-convert it to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}, in the manner shown in the operational flowchart 1413. But it should be understood that the scope and spirit of the invention includes other structural embodiments for performing the steps of the flowchart 1413. The specifics of the other structural embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

The operation of the aliasing system 1602 is now described for the digital AM carrier signal 616, with reference to the flowchart 1413 and to the timing diagrams in FIGS. 33A-D. In step 1414, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the AM carrier signal 616 (FIG. 33A). In step 1416, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 3302 (FIG. 33B).

In step 1418, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 3302 to directly down-convert the AM carrier signal 616 to the demodulated baseband signal 3304 in FIG. 33C or the filtered demodulated baseband signal 3306 in FIG. 33D.

Example implementations of the under-sampling module 1606

are provided in Sections 4 and 5 below.

2.2 Example Embodiments

Various embodiments related to the method(s) and structure(s) described above are presented in this section (and its subsections). These embodiments are described herein for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to these embodiments. Alternate embodiments (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the embodiments described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. The invention is intended and adapted to include such alternate embodiments.

The method for down-converting the EM signal 1304 to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}, illustrated in the flowchart 1413 of FIG. 14C, can be implemented with any type EM signal, including modulated carrier signals, including but not limited to, AM, PM, etc., or any combination thereof. Operation of the flowchart 1413 of FIG. 14C is described below for AM and PM carrier signals. The exemplary descriptions below are intended to facilitate an understanding of the present invention. The present invention is not limited to or by the exemplary embodiments below.

2.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Amplitude Modulation

2.2.1.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 1413 in FIG. 14C is described below for the analog AM carrier signal 516, illustrated in FIG. 5C and for the digital AM carrier signal 616, illustrated in FIG. 6C.

2.2.1.1.1 Analog AM Carrier Signal

A process for directly down-converting the analog AM carrier signal 516 to a demodulated baseband signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1413 in FIG. 14C. The analog AM carrier signal 516 is re-illustrated in 35A for convenience. For this example, the analog AM carrier signal 516 oscillates at approximately 900 MHZ. In FIG. 35B, an analog AM carrier signal 3504 illustrates a portion of the analog AM carrier signal 516 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1414, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the analog AM carrier signal 516.

Step 1416 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 35C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 3506 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 35B. The under-sampling signal 3506 includes a train of pulses 3507 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 3507 repeat at the aliasing rate or pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when directly down-converting to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the under-sampled signal. In this example, the aliasing rate is approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1418 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert it to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. Step 1418 is illustrated in FIG. 35B by under-sample points 3505.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the signal 516, essentially no IF is produced. The only substantial aliased component is the baseband signal.

In FIG. 35D, voltage points 3508 correlate to the under-sample points 3505. In an embodiment, the voltage points 3508 form a demodulated baseband signal 3510. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 3508 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as described below.

In FIG. 35E, a demodulated baseband signal 3512 represents the demodulated baseband signal 3510, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 35E illustrates the demodulated baseband signal 3512 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The demodulated baseband signal 3512 is substantially similar to the modulating baseband signal 210. The demodulated baseband signal 3512 can be processed using any signal processing technique(s) without further down- conversion or demodulation.

The aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal is preferably controlled to optimize the demodulated baseband signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

In the example above, the under-sample points 3505 occur at positive locations of the AM carrier signal 516. Alternatively, the under-sample points 3505 can occur at other locations including negative points of the analog AM carrier signal 516. When the under-sample points 3505 occur at negative locations of the AM carrier signal 516, the resultant demodulated baseband signal is inverted relative to the modulating baseband signal 210.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate direct to data down--conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the demodulated baseband signal 3510 in FIG. 35D and the demodulated baseband signal 3512 in FIG. 35E illustrate that the AM carrier signal 516 was successfully down-converted to the demodulated baseband signal 3510 by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

2.2.1.1.2 Digital AM Carrier Signal

A process for directly down-converting the digital AM carrier signal 616 to a demodulated baseband signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1413 in FIG. 14C. The digital AM carrier signal 616 is re-illustrated in FIG. 36A for convenience. For this example, the digital AM carrier signal 616 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 36B, a digital AM carrier signal 3604 illustrates a portion of the digital AM carrier signal 616 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1414, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the digital AM carrier signal 616.

Step 1416 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 36C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 3606 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 36B. The under-sampling signal 3606 includes a train of pulses 3607 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 3607 repeat at the aliasing rate or pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when directly down-converting to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the under-sampled signal. In this example, the aliasing rate is approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1418 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert it to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. Step 1418 is illustrated in FIG. 36B by under-sample points 3605. Because the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the AM carrier signal 616, or to a harmonic or sub-harmonic thereof, essentially no IF is produced. The only substantial aliased component is the baseband signal.

In FIG. 36D, voltage points 3608 correlate to the under-sample points 3605. In an embodiment, the voltage points 3608 form a demodulated baseband signal 3610. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 3608 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as described below.

In FIG. 36E, a demodulated baseband signal 3612 represents the demodulated baseband signal 3610, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 36E illustrates the demodulated baseband signal 3612 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The demodulated baseband signal 3612 is substantially similar to the digital modulating baseband signal 310. The demodulated analog baseband signal 3612 can be processed using any signal processing technique(s) without further down-conversion or demodulation.

The aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal is preferably controlled to optimize the demodulated baseband signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

In the example above, the under-sample points 3605 occur at positive locations of signal portion 3604. Alternatively, the under-sample points 3605 can occur at other locations including

negative locations of the signal portion 3604. When the under-sample points 3605 occur at negative points, the resultant demodulated baseband signal IS inverted with respect to the modulating baseband signal 310.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the demodulated baseband signal 3610 in FIG. 36D and the demodulated baseband signal 3612 in FIG. 36E illustrate that the digital AM carrier signal 616 was successfully down-converted to the demodulated baseband signal 3610 by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

2.2.1.2 Structural Description

The operation of the under-sampling module 1606 is now described for the analog AM carrier signal 516, with reference to the flowchart 1413 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 35A-E. In step 1414, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the analog AM carrier signal 516 (FIG. 35A). In step 1416, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 3506 (FIG. 35C). In step 1418, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the analog AM carrier signal 516 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 3506 to directly to down-convert the AM carrier signal 516 to the demodulated analog baseband signal 3510 in FIG. 35D or to the filtered demodulated analog baseband signal 3512 in FIG. 35E.

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for the digital AM carrier signal 616, with reference to the flowchart 1413 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 36A-E. In step 1414, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the digital AM carrier signal 616 (FIG. 36A). In step 1416, the under-sampling module 1606 receives

the under-sampling signal 3606 (FIG. 36C). In step 1418, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the digital AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 3606 to down-convert the digital AM carrier signal 616 to the demodulated digital baseband signal 3610 in FIG. 36D or to the filtered demodulated digital baseband signal 3612 in FIG. 36E.

Example implementations of the under-sampling module 1606 are provided in Sections 4 and 5 below.

2.2.2 Second Example Embodiment: Phase Modulation

2.2.2.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 1413 in FIG. 14C is described below for the analog PM carrier signal 916, illustrated in FIG. 9C, and for the digital PM carrier signal 1016, illustrated in FIG. 10C.

2.2.2.1.1 Analog PM Carrier Signal

A process for directly down-converting the analog PM carrier signal 916 to a demodulated baseband signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1413 in FIG. 14C. The analog PM carrier signal 916 is re-illustrated in 37A for convenience. For this example, the analog PM carrier signal 916 oscillates at approximately 900 MHZ. In FIG. 37B, an analog PM carrier signal 3704 illustrates a portion of the analog PM carrier signal 916 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1414, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the analog PM signal 916.

Step 1416 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 37C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 3706 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 37B. The under-sampling signal 3706 includes a train of pulses 3707 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 3707 repeat at the aliasing rate or pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as previously described.

Generally, when directly down-converting to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the under-sampled signal. In this example, the aliasing rate is approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1418 includes under-sampling the analog PM carrier signal 916 at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert it to a demodulated baseband signal. Step 1418 is illustrated in FIG. 37B by under-sample points 3705.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the signal 916, or substantially equal to a harmonic or sub-harmonic thereof, essentially no IF is produced. The only substantial aliased component is the baseband signal.

In FIG. 37D, voltage points 3708 correlate to the under-sample points 3705. In an embodiment, the voltage points 3708 form a demodulated baseband signal 3710. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 3708 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as described below.

In FIG. 37E, a demodulated baseband signal 3712 represents the demodulated baseband signal 3710, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 37E illustrates the demodulated baseband signal 3712 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be

filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The demodulated baseband signal 3712 is substantially similar to the analog modulating baseband signal 210. The demodulated baseband signal 3712 can be processed without further down-conversion or demodulation.

The aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal is preferably controlled to optimize the demodulated baseband signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

In the example above, the under-sample points 3705 occur at positive locations of the analog PM carrier signal 916. Alternatively, the under-sample points 3705 can occur at other locations include negative points of the analog PM carrier signal 916. When the under-sample points 3705 occur at negative locations of the analog PM carrier signal 916, the resultant demodulated baseband signal is inverted relative to the modulating baseband signal 210.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate direct to data down--conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the demodulated baseband signal 3710 in FIG. 37D and the demodulated baseband signal 3712 in FIG. 37E illustrate that the analog PM carrier signal 916 was successfully down-converted to the demodulated baseband signal 3710 by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

2.2.2.1.2 Digital PM Carrier Signal

A process for directly down-converting the digital PM carrier signal 1016 to a demodulated baseband signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1413 in FIG. 14C. The digital PM carrier signal 1016 is re-illustrated in 38A for convenience. For this example,

the digital PM carrier signal 1016 oscillates at approximately 900 MHZ. In FIG. 38B, a digital PM carrier signal 3804 illustrates a portion of the digital PM carrier signal 1016 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1414, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the digital PM signal 1016.

Step 1416 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rateF_{AR}. FIG. 38C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 3806 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 38B. The under-sampling signal 3806 includes a train of pulses 3807 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 3807 repeat at the aliasing rate or pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as described above.

Generally, when directly down-converting to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-hannonic of the under-sampled signal. In this example, the aliasing rate is approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1418 includes under-sampling the digital PM carrier signal 1016 at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert it to a demodulated baseband signal. This is illustrated in FIG. 38B by under-sample points 3705.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the signal 1016, essentially no IF is produced. The only substantial aliased component is the baseband signal.

In FIG. 38D, voltage points 3808 correlate to the under-sample points 3805. In an embodiment, the voltage points 3808 form a demodulated baseband signal 3810. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 3808 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as described below.

In FIG. 38E, a demodulated baseband signal 3812 represents the demodulated baseband signal 3810, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 38E illustrates the demodulated baseband signal 3812 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The demodulated baseband signal 3812 is substantially similar to the digital modulating baseband signal 310. The demodulated baseband signal 3812 can be processed without further down-conversion or demodulation.

The aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal is preferably controlled to optimize the demodulated baseband signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

In the example above, the under-sample points 3805 occur at positive locations of the digital PM carrier signal 1016. Alternatively, the under-sample points 3805 can occur at other locations include negative points of the digital PM carrier signal 1016. When the under-sample points 3805 occur at negative locations of the digital PM carrier signal 1016, the resultant demodulated baseband signal is inverted relative to the modulating baseband signal 310.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the demodulated baseband signal 3810 in FIG. 38D and the demodulated baseband signal 3812 in FIG. 38E illustrate that the digital PM carrier signal 1016 was successfully down-converted to the demodulated baseband signal 3810 by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

2.2.2.2 Structural Description

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for the analog PM carrier signal 916, with reference to the flowchart 1413 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 37A-E. In step 1414, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the analog PM carrier signal 916 (FIG. 37 A). In step 1416, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 3706 (FIG. 37C). In step 1418, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the analog PM carrier signal 916 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 3706 to down-convert the PM carrier signal 916 to the demodulated analog baseband signal 3710 in FIG. 37D or to the filtered demodulated analog baseband signal 3712 in FIG. 37E.

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for the digital PM carrier signal 1016, with reference to the flowchart 1413 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 38A-E. In step 1414, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the digital PM carrier signal 1016 (FIG. 38A). In step 1416, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 3806 (FIG. 38C). In step 1418, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the digital PM carrier signal 1016 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 3806 to down-convert the digital PM carrier signa1 1016 to the demodulated digital baseband signal 3810 in FIG. 38D or to the filtered demodulated digital baseband signal 3812 in FIG. 38E.

2.2.3 Other Embodiments

The embodiments described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These embodiments are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate embodiments, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate embodiments

fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

2.3 Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the method(s), structure(s), and/or embodiments described above are presented in Sections 4 and 5 below. These implementations are presented for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described therein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

3. Modulation Conversion

In an embodiment, the invention down-converts an FM carrier signal $F_{FMC}$to a non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$, by under-sampling the FM carrier signal F_{FMC}. This embodiment is illustrated in FIG. 45B as 4512.

In an example embodiment, the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} is down--converted to a phase modulated (PM) signal F_{PM}. In another example embodiment, the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} is down-converted to an amplitude modulated (AM) signal F_{AM}. The invention is not limited to these embodiments. The down-converted signal can be demodulated with any conventional demodulation technique to obtain a demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}.

The invention can be implemented with any type of FM signal. Exemplary embodiments are provided below for down-converting a frequency shift keying (FSK) signal to a non-FSK signal. FSK is a

sub-set of FM, wherein an FM signal shifts or switches between two or more frequencies. FSK is typically used for digital modulating baseband signals, such as the digital modulating baseband signal 310 in FIG. 3. For example, in FIG. 8, the digital FM signal 816 is an FSK signal that shifts between an upper frequency and a lower frequency, corresponding to amplitude shifts in the digital modulating baseband signal 310. The FSK signal 816 is used in example embodiments below.

In a first example embodiment, the FSK signal 816 is under-sampled at an aliasing rate that is based on a mid-point between the upper and lower frequencies of the FSK signal 816. When the aliasing rate is based on the midpoint, the FSK signal 816 is down-converted to a phase shift keying (PSK) signal. PSK is a sub-set of phase modulation, wherein a PM signal shifts or switches between two or more phases. PSK is typically used for digital modulating baseband signals. For example, in FIG. 10, the digital PM signal 1016 is a PSK signal that shifts between two phases. The PSK signal 1016 can be demodulated by any conventional PSK demodulation technique(s).

In a second example embodiment, the FSK signal 816 is under-sampled at an aliasing rate that is based upon either the upper frequency or the lower frequency of the FSK signal 816. When the aliasing rate is based upon the upper frequency or the lower frequency of the FSK signal 816, the FSK signal 816 is down-converted to an amplitude shift keying (ASK) signal. ASK is a sub-set of amplitude modulation, wherein an AM signal shifts or switches between two or more amplitudes. ASK is typically used for digital modulating baseband signals. For example, in FIG. 6, the digital AM signal 616 is an ASK signal that shifts between the first amplitude and the second amplitude. The ASK signal 616 can be demodulated by any conventional ASK demodulation technique(s).

The following sections describe methods for under-sampling an

FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to down-convert it to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$. Exemplary structural embodiments for implementing the methods are also described. It should be understood that the invention is not limited to the particular embodiments described below. Equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the following will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., are within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

The following sections include a high level discussion, example embodiments, and implementation examples.

3.1 High Level Description

This section (including its subsections) provides a high-level description of under-sampling the FM carrier signal F_{FM} to down-convert it to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$, according to the invention. In particular, an operational process for down-converting the FM carrier signal F_{FM} to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$ is described at a high-level. Also, a structural implementation for implementing this process is described at a high-level. The structural implementation is described herein for illustrative purposes, and is not limiting. In particular, the process described in this section can be achieved using any number of structural implementations, one of which is described in this section. The details of such structural implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein.

3.1.1 Operational Description

FIG. l4D depicts a flowchart 1419 that illustrates an exemplary method for down-converting the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$. The exemplary method illustrated in the flowchart 1419 is an embodiment of the flowchart 1401 in FIG. 14A.

Any and all forms of frequency modulation techniques are valid for this invention. For ease of discussion, the digital FM carrier (FSK) signal 816 is used to illustrate a high level operational description of the invention. Subsequent sections provide detailed flowcharts and descriptions for the FSK signal 816. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any type of FM signal.

The method illustrated in the flowchart 1419 is described below at a high level for down-converting the FSK signal 816 in FIG. 8C to a PSK signal. The FSK signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 39A for convenience.

The process of the flowchart 1419 begins at step 1420, which includes receiving an FM signal. This is represented by the FSK signal 816. The FSK signal 816 shifts between an upper frequency 3910 and a lower frequency 3912. In an exemplary embodiment, the upper frequency 3910 is approximately 901 MHZ and the lower frequency 3912 is approximately 899 MHZ.

Step 1422 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 39B illustrates an example under-sampling signal 3902 which includes a train of pulses 3903 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 3903 repeat at the aliasing rate or pulse repetition rate.

When down-converting an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to a non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a frequency contained within the FM signal, or substantially equal to a harmonic or

sub-harmonic thereof. In this example overview embodiment, where the FSK signal 816 is to be down-converted to a PSK signal, the aliasing rate is based on a mid-point between the upper frequency 3910 and the lower frequency 3912. For this example, the mid-point is approximately 900 MHZ. In another embodiment described below, where the FSK signal 816 is to be down-converted to an ASK signal, the aliasing rate is based on either the upper frequency 3910 or the lower frequency 3912, not the mid-point.

Step 1424 includes under-sampling the FM signal F_{FMC} at the aliasing rate to down-convert the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$. Step 1424 is illustrated in FIG. 39C, which illustrates a stair step PSK signal 3904, which is generated by the modulation conversion process.

When the upper frequency 3910 is under-sampled, the PSK signal 3904 has a frequency of approximately 1 MHZ and is used as a phase reference. When the lower frequency 3912 is under-sampled, the PSK signal 3904 has a frequency of 1 MHZ and is phase shifted 180 degrees from the phase reference.

FIG. 39D depicts a PSK signal 3906, which is a filtered version of the PSK signal 3904. The invention can thus generate a filtered output signal, a partially filtered output signal, or a relatively unfiltered stair step output signal.

The choice between filtered, partially filtered and non-filtered output signals is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

Detailed exemplary embodiments for down-converting an FSK signal to a PSK signal and for down-converting an FSK signal to an ASK

signal are provided below.

3.1.2 Structural Description

FIG. 16 illustrates the block diagram of the under-sampling system 1602 according to an embodiment of the invention. The under-sampling system 1602 includes the under-sampling module 1606. The under-sampling system 1602 is an example embodiment of the generic aliasing system 1302 in FIG.13.

In a modulation conversion embodiment, the EM signal 1304 is an FM carrier signal and the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the FM carrier signal at a frequency that is substantially equal to a harmonic of a frequency within the FM signal or, more typically, substantially equal to a sub-harmonic of a frequency within the FM signal. Preferably, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to down-convert it to a non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$ in the manner shown in the operational flowchart 1419. But it should be understood that the scope and spirit of the invention includes other structural embodiments for performing the steps of the flowchart 1419. The specifics of the other structural embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 shall now be described with reference to the flowchart 1419 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 39A-39D. In step 1420, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the FSK signal 816. In step 1422, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 3902. In step 1424, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the FSK signal 816 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 3902 to down-convert the FSK signal 816 to the PSK signal 3904 or 3906.

Example implementations of the under-sampling module 1606 are provided in Section 4 below.

3.2 Example Embodiments

Various embodiments related to the method(s) and structure(s) described above are presented in this section (and its subsections). These embodiments are described herein for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to these embodiments. Alternate embodiments (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the embodiments described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. The invention is intended and adapted to include such alternate embodiments.

The method for down-converting an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to a non-FM signal, $F_{(NON-FM)}$, illustrated in the flowchart 1419 of FIG.14D, can be implemented with any type of FM carrier signal including, but not limited to, FSK signals. The flowchart 1419 is described in detail below for down-converting an FSK signal to a PSK signal and for down-converting a PSK signal to an ASK signal. The exemplary descriptions below are intended to facilitate an understanding of the present invention. The present invention is not limited to or by the exemplary embodiments below.

3.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Down-Converting an FM Signal to a PM Signal

3.2.1.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 1419 in FIG. 14D is now described for down-converting the FSK signal 816 illustrated in FIG. 8C to a PSK signal. The FSK signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 40A for convenience.

The FSK signal 816 shifts between a first frequency 4006 and a second frequency 4008. In the exemplary embodiment, the first frequency 4006 is lower than the second frequency 4008. In an alternative embodiment, the first frequency 4006 is higher than the second frequency 4008. For this example, the first frequency 4006 is approximately 899 MHZ and the second frequency 4008 is approximately 901 MHZ.

FIG. 40B illustrates an FSK signal portion 4004 that represents a portion of the FSK signal 816 on an expanded time scale.

The process of down-converting the FSK signal 816 to a PSK signal begins at step 1420, which includes receiving an FM signal. This is represented by the FSK signal 816.

Step 1422 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 40C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 4007 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 40B. The under-sampling signal 4007 includes a train of pulses 4009 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 4009 repeat at the aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as described above. Generally, when down-converting an FM signal to a non-FM signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of a frequency contained within the FM signal.

In this example, where an FSK signal is being down-converted to a PSK signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic of the mid-point between the frequencies 4006 and 4008 or, more typically, substantially equal to a sub-harmonic of the mid-point between the frequencies 4006 and 4008. In this example, where the first frequency

4006 is 899 MHZ and second frequency 4008 is 901 MHZ, the mid-point is approximately 900 MHZ. Suitable aliasing rates include 1.8 GHZ, 900 MHZ, 450 MHZ, etc. In this example, the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 4008 is approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1424 includes under-sampling the FM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert it to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$. Step 1424 is illustrated in FIG. 40B by under-sample points 4005. The under-sample points 4005 occur at the aliasing rate of the pulses 4009.

In FIG. 40D, voltage points 4010 correlate to the under-sample points 4005. In an embodiment, the voltage points 4010 form a PSK signal 4012. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 4010 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as described below.

When the first frequency 4006 is under-sampled, the PSK signal 4012 has a frequency of approximately 1 MHZ and is used as a phase reference. When the second frequency 4008 is under-sampled, the PSK signal 4012 has a frequency of 1 MHZ and is phase shifted 180 degrees from the phase reference.

In FIG. 40E, a PSK signal 4014 illustrates the PSK signal 4012, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 40E illustrates the PSK signal 4012 as a filtered output signal 4014, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications. The PSK signal 4014 can be demodulated through any conventional phase demodulation technique.

The aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

In the example above, the under-sample points 4005 occur at

positive locations of the FSK signal 816. Alternatively, the under-sample points 4005 can occur at other locations including negative points of the FSK signal 816. When the under-sample points 4005 occur at negative locations of the FSK signal 816, the resultant PSK signal is inverted relative to the PSK signal 4014.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate modulation conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the PSK signal 4014 in FIG. 40E illustrates that the FSK signal 816 was successfully down-converted to the PSK signal 4012 and 4014 by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

3.2.1.2 Structural Description

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for down-converting the FSK signal 816 to a PSK signal, with reference to the flowchart 1419 and to the timing diagrams of FIGS. 40A-E. In step 1420, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the FSK signal 816 (FIG. 40A). In step 1422, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 4007 (FIG. 40C). In step 1424, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the FSK signal 816 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 4007 to down-convert the FSK signal 816 to the PSK signal 4012 in FIG. 40D or the PSK signal 4014 in FIG. 40E.

3.2.2. Second Example Embodiment: Down-Converting an FM Signal to an AM Signal

3.2.2.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of FIG. 14D is now described

for down-converting the FSK signal 816, illustrated in FIG. 8C, to an ASK signal. The FSK signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 41A for convenience.

The FSK signal 816 shifts between a first frequency 4106 and a second frequency 4108. In the exemplary embodiment, the first frequency 4106 is lower than the second frequency 4108. In an alternative embodiment, the first frequency 4106 is higher than the second frequency 4108. For this example, the first frequency 4106 is approximately 899 MHZ and the second frequency 4108 is approximately 901 MHZ.

FIG. 41B illustrates an FSK signal portion 4104 that represents a portion of the FSK signal 816 on an expanded time scale.

The process of down-converting the FSK signal 816 to an ASK signal begins at step 1420, which includes receiving an FM signal. This is represented by the FSK signal 816.

Step 1422 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 41C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 4107 illustrated on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 42B. The under-sampling signal 4107 includes a train of pulses 4109 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 4109 repeat at the aliasing rate, or pulse repetition rate. The aliasing rate is determined or selected as described above.

Generally, when down-converting an FM signal to a non-FM signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic of a frequency within the FM signal or, more typically, to a sub-harmonic of a frequency within the FM signal. When an FSK signal 816 is being down-converted to an ASK signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic of the first frequency 4106 or the second frequency 4108 or, more typically, substantially equal to a sub- harmonic of the first frequency 4106 or the second frequency 4108. In this example, where the first frequency 4106

is 899 MHZ and the second frequency 4108 is 901 MHZ, the aliasing rate can be substantially equal to a harmonic or sub-harmonic of 899 MHZ or 901 MHZ. In this example the aliasing rate is approximately 449.5 MHZ, which is a sub-harmonic of the first frequency 4106.

Step 1424 includes under-sampling the FM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert it to a non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$. Step 1424 is illustrated in FIG. 41B by under-sample points 4105. The under-sample points 4105 occur at the aliasing rate of the pulses 4109. When the first frequency 4106 is under-sampled, the aliasing pulses 4109 and the under-sample points 4105 occur at the same location of subsequent cycles of the FSK signal 816. This generates a relatively constant output level. But when the second frequency 4108 is under-sampled, the aliasing pulses 4109 and the under-sample points 4005 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the FSK signal 816. This generates an oscillating pattern at approximately (901 MHZ - 899 MHZ) = 2 MHZ.

In FIG. 41D, voltage points 4110 correlate to the under-sample points 4105. In an embodiment, the voltage points 4110 form an ASK signal 4112. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 4110 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as described below.

In FIG. 41E, an ASK signal 4114 illustrates the ASK signal 4112, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 41E illustrates the ASK signal 4114 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications. The ASK signal 4114 can be demodulated through any conventional amplitude demodulation technique.

When down-converting from FM to AM, the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal is preferably controlled to optimize the

demodulated baseband signal for amplitude output and/or polarity, as desired.

In an alternative embodiment, the aliasing rate is based on the second frequency and the resultant ASK signal is reversed relative to the ASK signal 4114.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate modulation conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the ASK signal 4114 in FIG. 41E illustrates that the FSK carrier signal 816 was successfully down-converted to the ASK signal 4114 by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

3.2.2.2 Structural Description

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for down-converting the FSK signal 816 to an ASK signal, with reference to the flowchart 1419 and to the timing diagrams of FIGS. 41A-E. In step 1420, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the FSK signal 816 (FIG. 41A). In step 1422, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 4107 (FIG. 41C). In step 1424, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the FSK signal 816 at the aliasing of the under-sampling signal 4107 to down-convert the FSK signal 816 to the ASK signal 4112 of FIG. 41D or the ASK signal 4114 in FIG. 41E.

3.2.3 Other Example Embodiments

The embodiments described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These embodiments are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate embodiments, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant

art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate embodiments fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

3.3 Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the method(s), structure(s), and/or embodiments described above are presented in Sections 4 and 5 below. These implementations are presented for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described therein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

4. Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the method(s), structure(s), and/or embodiments described in the Sub-Sections above are presented in this section (and its subsections). These implementations are presented herein for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described herein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

FIG. 13 illustrates a generic aliasing system 1302, including an aliasing module 1306. FIG. 16 illustrates an under-sampling system

1602, which includes an under-sampling module 1606. The under-sampling module 1606 receives an under-sampling signal 1604 having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. The under-sampling signal 1604 includes a train of pulses having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses repeat at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The under-sampling system 1602 is an example implementation of the generic aliasing system 1303. The under-sampling system 1602 outputs a down-converted signal 1308A.

FIG. 26A illustrates an exemplary sample and hold system 2602, which is an exemplary implementation of the under-sampling system 1602. The sample and hold system 2602 is described below.

FIG. 26B illustrates an exemplary inverted sample and hold system 2606, which is an alternative example implementation of the under-sampling system 1602. The inverted sample and hold system 2606 is described below.

4.1 The Under-Sampling System as a Sample and Hold System

FIG. 26A is a block diagram of a the sample and hold system 2602, which is an example embodiment of the under-sampling module 1606 in FIG. 16, which is an example embodiment of the generic aliasing module 1306 in FIG. 13.

The sample and hold system 2602 includes a sample and hold module 2604, which receives the EM signal 1304 and the under-sampling signal 1604. The sample and hold module 2604 under-samples the EM signal at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 1604, as described in the sections above with respect to the flowcharts 1401 in FIG. 14A, 1407 in FIG. 14B, 1413 in FIG. 14C and 1419 in FIG. 14D. The under-sampling system 1602 outputs a down-converted signal 1308A.

FIG. 27 illustrates an under-sampling system 2701 as a sample and hold system, which is an example implementation of the under-sampling system 2602. The under-sampling system 2701 includes a switch module 2702 and a holding module 2706. The under-sampling system 2701 is described below.

FIG. 24A illustrates an under-sampling system 2401 as a break before make under-sampling system, which is an alternative implementation of the under-sampling system 2602. The break before make under-sampling system 2401 is described below.

4.4.1 The Sample and Hold System as a Switch Module and a Holding Module

FIG. 27 illustrates an exemplary embodiment of the sample and hold module 2604 from FIG. 26A. In the exemplary embodiment, the sample and hold module 2604 includes a switch module 2702, and a holding module 2706.

Preferably, the switch module 2702 and the holding module 2706 under-sample the EM signal 1304 to down-convert it in any of the manners shown in the operation flowcharts 1401, 1407, 1413 and 1419. For example, the sample and hold module 2604 can receive and under-sample any of the modulated carrier signal signals described above, including, but not limited to, the analog AM signal 516, the digital AM signal 616, the analog FM signal 716, the digital FM signal 816, the analog PM signal 916, the digital PM signal 1016, etc., and any combinations thereof.

The switch module 2702 and the holding module 2706 down-convert the EM signal 1304 to an intermediate signal, to a demodulated baseband or to a different modulation scheme, depending upon the aliasing rate.

For example, operation of the switch module 2702 and the holding module 2706 are now described for down-converting the EM signal 1304 to an intermediate signal, with reference to the flowchart 1407 and the example timing diagrams in FIG. 79A-F.

In step 1408, the switch module 2702 receives the EM signal 1304 (FIG. 79A). In step 1410, the switch module 2702 receives the under-sampling signal 1604 (FIG. 79C). In step 1412, the switch module 2702 and the holding module 2706 cooperate to under-sample the EM signal 1304 and down-convert it to an intermediate signal. More specifically, during step 1412, the switch module 2702 closes during each under-sampling pulse to couple the EM signal 1304 to the holding module 2706. In an embodiment, the switch module 2702 closes on rising edges of the pulses. In an alternative embodiment, the switch module 2702 closes on falling edges of the pulses. When the EM signal 1304 is coupled to the holding module 2706, the amplitude of the EM signal 1304 is captured by the holding module 2706. The holding module 2706 is designed to capture and hold the amplitude of the EM signal 1304 within the short time frame of each negligible aperture pulse. FIG. 79B illustrates the EM signal 1304 after under-sampling.

The holding module 2706 substantially holds or maintains each under- sampled amplitude until a subsequent under-sample. (FIG.79D). The holding module 2706 outputs the under-sampled amplitudes as the down-converted signal 1308A. The holding module 2706 can output the down-converted signal 1308A as an unfiltered signal, such as a stair step signal (FIG. 79E), as a filtered down-converted signal (FIG. 79F) or as a partially filtered down-converted signal.

4.1.2 The Sample and Hold System as Break-Before-Make Module

FIG. 24A illustrates a break-before-make under-sampling system 2401, which is an alternative implementation of the under-sampling system 2602.

Preferably, the break-before-make under-sampling system 2401 under- samples the EM signal 1304 to down-convert it in any of the manners shown in the operation flowcharts 1401, 1407, 1413 and 1419. For example, the sample and hold module 2604 can receive and under-sample any of the unmodulated or modulated carrier signal signals described above, including, but not limited to, the analog AM signal 516, the digital AM signal 616, the analog FM signal 716, the digital FM signal 816, the analog PM signal 916, the digital PM signal 1016, etc., and combinations thereof.

The break-before-make under-sampling system 2401 down-converts the EM signal 1304 to an intermediate signal, to a demodulated baseband or to a different modulation scheme, depending upon the aliasing rate.

FIG. 24A includes a break-before-make switch 2402. The break-before-make switch 2402 includes a normally open switch 2404 and a normally closed switch 2406. The normally open switch 2404 is controlled by the under-sampling signal 1604, as previously described. The normally closed switch 2406 is controlled by an isolation signal 2412. In an embodiment, the isolation signal 2412 is generated from the under-sampling signal 1604. Alternatively, the under-sampling signal 1604 is generated from the isolation signal 2412. Alternatively, the isolation signal 2412 is generated independently from the under-sampling signal 1604. The break-before-make module 2402 substantially isolates a sample and hold input 2408 from a sample and hold output 2410.

FIG. 24B illustrates an example timing diagram of the under-sampling signal 1604 that controls the normally open switch

2404. FIG. 24C illustrates an example timing diagram of the isolation signal 2412 that controls the normally closed switch 2406. Operation of the break-before-make module 2402 is described with reference to the example timing diagrams in FIGS. 24B and 24C.

Prior to time t0, the normally open switch 2404 and the normally closed switch 2406 are at their normal states.

At time t0, the isolation signal 2412 in FIG. 24C opens the normally closed switch 2406. Then, just after time to, the normally open switch 2404 and the normally closed switch 2406 are open and the input 2408 is isolated from the output 2410.

At time t1, the under-sampling signal 1604 in FIG. 24B briefly closes the normally open switch 2404. This couples the EM signal 1304 to the holding module 2416.

Prior to t2, the under-sampling signal 1604 in FIG. 24B opens the normally open switch 2404. This de-couples the EM signal 1304 from the holding module 2416.

At time t2, the isolation signal 2412 in FIG. 24C closes the normally closed switch 2406. This couples the holding module 2416 to the output 2410.

The break-before-make under-sampling system 2401 includes a holding module 2416, which can be similar to the holding module 2706 in FIG. 27. The break-before-make under-sampling system 2401 down-converts the EM signal 1304 in a manner similar to that described with reference to the under-sampling system 2702 in FIG. 27.

4.1.3 Example Implementations of the Switch Module

The switch module 2702 in FIG. 27 and the switch modules 2404 and 2406 in FIG. 24A can be any type of switch device that preferably has a relatively low impedance when closed and a relatively high

impedance when open. The switch modules 2702, 2404 and 2406 can be implemented with normally open or normally closed switches. The switch device need not be an ideal switch device. FIG. 28B illustrates the switch modules 2702, 2404 and 2406 as, for example, a switch module 2810.

The switch device 2810 (e.g., switch modules 2702, 2404 and 2406) can be implemented with any type of suitable switch device, including, but not limited to mechanical switch devices and electrical switch devices, optical switch devices, etc., and combinations thereof. Such devices include, but are not limited to transistor switch devices, diode switch devices, relay switch devices, optical switch devices, micro-machine switch devices, etc..

In an embodiment, the switch module 2810 can be implemented as a transistor, such as, for example, a field effect transistor (FET), a bi-polar transistor, or any other suitable circuit switching device.

In FIG. 28A, the switch module 2810 is illustrated as a FET 2802. The FET 2802 can be any type of FET, including, but not limited to, a MOSFET, a JFET, a GaAsFET, etc .. The FET 2802 includes a gate 2804, a source 2806 and a drain 2808. The gate 2804 receives the under-sampling signal 1604 to control the switching action between the source 2806 and the drain 2808. Generally, the source 2806 and the drain 2808 are interchangeable.

It should be understood that the illustration of the switch module 2810 as a FET 2802 in FIG. 28A is for example purposes only. Any device having switching capabilities could be used to implement the switch module 2810 (e.g., switch modules 2702, 2404 and 2406), as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

In FIG. 28C, the switch module 2810 is illustrated as a diode switch 2812, which operates as a two lead device when the

under-sampling signal 1604 is coupled to the output 2813.

In FIG. 28D, the switch module 2810 is illustrated as a diode switch 2814, which operates as a two lead device when the under-sampling signal 1604 is coupled to the output 2815.

4.1.4 Example Implementations of the Holding Module

The holding modules 2706 and 2416 preferably captures and holds the amplitude of the original, unaffected, EM signal 1304 within the short time frame of each negligible aperture under-sampling signal pulse.

In an exemplary embodiment, holding modules 2706 and 2416 are implemented as a reactive holding module 2901 in FIG. 29A, although the invention is not limited to this embodiment. A reactive holding module is a holding module that employs one or more reactive electrical components to preferably quickly charge to the amplitude of the EM signal 1304. Reactive electrical components include, but are not limited to, capacitors and inductors.

In an embodiment, the holding modules 2706 and 2416 include one or more capacitive holding elements, illustrated in FIG. 29B as a capacitive holding module 2902. In FIG. 29C, the capacitive holding module 2902 is illustrated as one or more capacitors illustrated generally as capacitor(s) 2904. Recall that the preferred goal of the holding modules 2706 and 2416 is to quickly charge to the amplitude of the EM signal 1304. In accordance with principles of capacitors, as the negligible aperture of the under-sampling pulses tends to zero time in duration, the capacitive value of the capacitor 2904 can tend towards zero Farads. Example values for the capacitor 2904 can range from tens of pico Farads to fractions of pico Farads. A terminal 2906 serves as an output of the sample and hold module 2604. The capacitive holding

module 2902 provides the under-samples at the terminal 2906, where they can be measured as a voltage. FIG. 29F illustrates the capacitive holding module 2902 as including a series capacitor 2912, which can be utilized in an inverted sample and hold system as described below.

In an alternative embodiment, the holding modules 2706 and 2416 include one or more inductive holding elements, illustrated in FTG. 29D as an inductive holding module 2908.

In an alternative embodiment, the holding modules 2706 and 2416 include a combination of one or more capacitive holding elements and one or more inductive holding elements, illustrated in FIG. 29E as a capacitive/inductive holding module 2910.

FIG. 29G illustrates an integrated under-sampling system that can be implemented to down-convert the EM signal 1304 as illustrated in, and described with reference to, FIGS. 79A-F.

4.1.5 Optional Under-Sampling Signal Module

FIG. 30 illustrates an under-sampling system 3001, which IS an example embodiment of the under-sampling system 1602. The under-sampling system 3001 includes an optional under-sampling signal module 3002 that can perform any of a variety of functions or combinations of functions, including, but not limited to, generating the under-sampling signal 1604.

In an embodiment, the optional under-sampling signal module 3002 includes an aperture generator, an example of which is illustrated in FIG. 29J as an aperture generator 2920. The aperture generator 2920 generates negligible aperture pulses 2926 from an input signal 2924. The input signal 2924 can be any type of periodic signal, including, but not limited to, a sinusoid, a square wave, a saw-tooth wave, etc. Systems for generating the input signal 2924 are described below.

The width or aperture of the pulses 2926 is determined by delay through the branch 2922 of the aperture generator 2920. Generally, as the desired pulse width decreases, the tolerance requirements of the aperture generator 2920 increase. In other words, to generate negligible aperture pulses for a given input EM frequency, the components utilized in the example aperture generator 2920 require greater reaction times, which are typically obtained with more expensive elements, such as gallium arsenide (GaAs), etc.

The example logic and implementation shown in the aperture generator 2920 are provided for illustrative purposes only, and are not limiting. The actual logic employed can take many forms. The example aperture generator 2920 includes an optional inverter 2928, which is shown for polarity consistency with other examples provided herein. An example implementation of the aperture generator 2920 is illustrated in FIG. 29K.

Additional examples of aperture generation logic is provided in FIGS. 29H and 291. FIG. 29H illustrates a rising edge pulse generator 2940, which generates pulses 2926 on rising edges of the input signal 2924. FIG. 291 illustrates a falling edge pulse generator 2950, which generates pulses 2926 on falling edges of the input signal 2924.

In an embodiment, the input signal 2924 is generated externally of the under-sampling signal module 3002, as illustrated in FIG. 30. Alternatively, the input signal 2924 is generated internally by the under-sampling signal module 3002. The input signal 2924 can be generated by an oscillator, as illustrated in FIG. 29L by an oscillator 2930. The oscillator 2930 can be internal to the under-sampling signal module 3002 or external to the under-sampling signal module 3002. The oscillator 2930 can be external to the under-sampling system 3001.

The type of down-conversion performed by the under-sampling system 3001 depends upon the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal

1604, which is determined by the frequency of the pulses 2926. The frequency of the pulses 2926 is determined by the frequency of the input signal 2924. For example, when the frequency of the input signal 2924 is substantially equal to a harmonic or a sub-harmonic of the EM signal 1304, the EM signal 1304 is directly down-converted to baseband (e.g. when the EM signal is an AM signal or a PM signal), or converted from FM to a non-FM signal. When the frequency of the input signal 2924 is substantially equal to a harmonic or a sub-harmonic of a difference frequency, the EM signal 1304 IS down-converted to an intermediate signal.

The optional under-sampling signal module 3002 can be implemented in hardware, software, firmware, or any combination thereof.

4.2 The Under-Sampling System as an Inverted Sample and Hold

FIG. 26B illustrates an exemplary inverted sample and hold system 2606, which is an alternative example implementation of the under-sampling system 1602.

FIG. 42 illustrates a inverted sample and hold system 4201, which is an example implementation of the inverted sample and hold system 2606 in FIG. 26B. The sample and hold system 4201 includes a sample and hold module 4202, which includes a switch module 4204 and a holding module 4206. The switch module 4204 can be implemented as described above with reference to FIGS. 28A-D.

The holding module 4206 can be implemented as described above with reference to FIGS. 29A-F, for the holding modules 2706 and 2416. In the illustrated embodiment, the holding module 4206 includes one or more capacitors 4208. The capacitor(s) 4208 are selected to pass higher

frequency components of the EM signal 1304 through to a terminal 4210, regardless of the state of the switch module 4204. The capacitor 4202 stores charge from the EM signal 1304 during aliasing pulses of the under-sampling signal 1604 and the signal at the terminal 4210 is thereafter off-set by an amount related to the charge stored in the capacitor 4206.

Operation of the inverted sample and hold system 4201 is illustrated in FIGS. 34A-F. FIG. 34A illustrates an example EM signal 1304. FIG. 34B illustrates the EM signal 1304 after under-sampling. FIG. 34C illustrates the under-sampling signal 1606, which includes a train of aliasing pulses having negligible apertures.

FIG. 34D illustrates an example down-converted signal 1308A. FIG. 34E illustrates the down-converted signal 1308A on a compressed time scale. Since the holding module 4206 is series element, the higher frequencies (e.g., RF) of the EM signal 1304 can be seen on the down-converted signal. This can be filtered as illustrated in FIG. 34F.

The inverted sample and hold system 4201 can be used to down--convert any type of EM signal, including modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signals, to IF signals and to demodulated baseband signals.

4.3 Other Implementations

The implementations described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These implementations are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate implementations, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

5. Optional Optimizations of Under-Sampling at an Aliasing Rate

The methods and systems described in sections above can be optionally optimized with one or more of the optimization methods or systems described below.

5.1 Doubling the Aliasing Rate (FAR) of the Under-Sampling Signal

In an embodiment, the optional under-sampling signal module 3002 in FIG. 30 includes a pulse generator module that generates aliasing pulses at a multiple of the frequency of the oscillating source, such as twice the frequency of the oscillating source. The input signal 2926 may be any suitable oscillating source.

FIG. 31A illustrates an example circuit 3102 that generates a doubler output signal 3104 (FIG. 31A and C) that may be used as an under-sampling signal 1604. The example circuit 3102 generates pulses on rising and falling edges of the input oscillating signal 3106 of FIG. 31B. Input oscillating signal 3106 is one embodiment of optional input signal 2926. The circuit 3102 can be implemented as a pulse generator and aliasing rate (FAR) doubler, providing the under-sampling signal 1604 to under-sampling module 1606 in FIG. 30.

The aliasing rate is twice the frequency of the input oscillating signal F_{OSC} 3106, as shown by EQ. (9) below.

$$F_{AR} = 2 \cdot F_{osc} \qquad \text{EQ. (9)}$$

The aperture width of the aliasing pulses is determined by the delay through a first inverter 3108 of FIG. 31A. As the delay is increased, the aperture is increased. A second inverter 3112 is shown to maintain polarity consistency with examples described elsewhere. In an alternate embodiment inverter 3112 is omitted. Preferably, the pulses have negligible aperture widths that tend toward zero time. The doubler output signal 3104 may be further conditioned as appropriate to drive a switch module with negligible aperture pulses. The circuit 3102 may be implemented with integrated circuitry, discretely, with equivalent logic circuitry, or with any valid fabrication technology.

5.2 Differential Implementations

The invention can be implemented in a variety of differential configurations. Differential configurations are useful for reducing common mode noise. This can be very useful in receiver systems where common mode interference can be caused by intentional or unintentional radiators such as cellular phones, CB radios, electrical appliances etc. Differential configurations are also useful in reducing any common mode noise due to charge injection of the switch in the switch module or due to the design and layout of the system in which the invention is used. Any spurious signal that is induced in equal magnitude and equal phase in both input leads of the invention will be substantially reduced or eliminated. Some differential configurations, including some of the configurations below, are also useful for increasing the voltage and/or for increasing the power of the down-converted signal 1308A. While an example of a differential under-sampling module is shown below, the example is shown for the purpose of illustration, not limitation. Alternate embodiments (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc.) of the embodiment described herein will be apparent to

those skilled in the relevant art based on the teachings contained herein. The invention is intended and adapted to include such alternate embodiments.

FIG. 44A illustrates an example differential system 4402 that can be included in the under-sampling module 1606. The differential system 4202 includes an inverted under-sampling design similar to that described with reference to FIG. 42. The differential system 4402 includes inputs 4404 and 4406 and outputs 4408 and 4410. The differential system 4402 includes a first inverted sample and hold module 4412, which includes a holding module 4414 and a switch module 4416. The differential system 4402 also includes a second inverted sample and hold module 4418, which includes a holding module 4420 and the switch module 4416, which it shares in common with sample and hold module 4412.

One or both of the inputs 4404 and 4406 are coupled to an EM signal source. For example, the inputs can be coupled to an EM signal source, wherein the input voltages at the inputs 4404 and 4406 are substantially equal in amplitude but 180 degrees out of phase with one another. Alternatively, where dual inputs are unavailable, one of the inputs 4404 and 4406 can be coupled to ground.

In operation, when the switch module 4416 is closed, the holding modules 4414 and 4420 are in series and, provided they have similar capacitive values, they charge to equal amplitudes but opposite polarities. When the switch module 4416 is open, the voltage at the output 4408 is relative to the input 4404, and the voltage at the output 4410 is relative to the voltage at the input 4406.

Portions of the voltages at the outputs 4408 and 4410 include voltage resulting from charge stored in the holding modules 4414 and 4420, respectively, when the switch module 4416 was closed. The portions of the voltages at the outputs 4408 and 4410 resulting from the

stored charge are generally equal in amplitude to one another but 180 degrees out of phase.

Portions of the voltages at the outputs 4408 and 4410 also include ripple voltage or noise resulting from the switching action of the switch module 4416. But because the switch module is positioned between the two outputs, the noise introduced by the switch module appears at the outputs 4408 and 4410 as substantially equal and in-phase with one another. As a result, the ripple voltage can be substantially filtered out by inverting the voltage at one of the outputs 4408 or 4410 and adding it to the other remaining output. Additionally, any noise that is impressed with substantially equal amplitude and equal phase onto the input terminals 4404 and 4406 by any other noise sources will tend to be canceled in the same way.

The differential system 4402 is effective when used with a differential front end (inputs) and a differential back end (outputs). It can also be utilized in the following configurations, for example:

a) A single-input front end and a differential back end; and

b) A differential front end and single-output back end.

Examples of these system are provided below.

5.2.1 Differential Input-to-Differential Output

FIG. 44B illustrates the differential system 4402 wherein the inputs 4404 and 4406 are coupled to equal and opposite EM signal sources, illustrated here as dipole antennas 4424 and 4426. In this embodiment, when one of the outputs 4408 or 4410 is inverted and added to the other output, the common mode noise due to the switching module 4416 and other common mode noise present at the input terminals 4404 and 4406 tend to substantially cancel out.

5.2.2 Single Input-to-Differential Output

FIG. 44C illustrates the differential system 4402 wherein the input 4404 is coupled to an EM signal source such as a monopole antenna 4428 and the input 4406 is coupled to ground.

FIG. 44E illustrates an example single input to differential output receiver/down-converter system 4436. The system 4436 includes the differential system 4402 wherein the input 4406 is coupled to ground. The input 4404 is coupled to an EM signal source 4438.

The outputs 4408 and 4410 are coupled to a differential circuit 4444 such as a filter, which preferably inverts one of the outputs 4408 or 4410 and adds it to the other output 4408 or 4410. This substantially cancels common mode noise generated by the switch module 4416. The differential circuit 4444 preferably filters the higher frequency components of the EM signal 1304 that pass through the holding modules 4414 and 4420. The resultant filtered signal is output as the down-converted signal 1308A.

5.2.3 Differential Input-to-Single Output

FIG. 44D illustrates the differential system 4402 wherein the inputs 4404 and 4406 are coupled to equal and opposite EM signal sources illustrated here as dipole antennas 4430 and 4432. The output is taken from terminal 4408.

5.3 Smoothing the Down-Converted Signal

The down-converted signal 1308A may be smoothed by filtering as desired. The differential circuit 4444 implemented as a filter in FIG

44E illustrates but one example. Filtering may be accomplished in any of the described embodiments by hardware, firmware and software implementation as is well known by those skilled in the arts.

5.4 Load Impedance and Input/Output Buffering

Some of the characteristics of the down-converted signal 1308A depend upon characteristics of a load placed on the down-converted signal 1308A. For example, in an embodiment, when the down-converted signal 1308A is coupled to a high impedance load, the charge that is applied to a holding module such as holding module 2706 in FIG 27 or 2416 in FIG. 24A during a pulse generally remains held by the holding module until the next pulse. This results in a substantially stair-step-like representation of the down-converted signal 1308A as illustrated in FIG. 15C, for example. A high impedance load enables the under-sampling system 1606 to accurately represent the voltage of the original unaffected input signal.

The down-converted signal 1308A can be buffered with a high impedance amplifier, if desired.

Alternatively, or in addition to buffering the down-converted signal 1308A, the input EM signal may be buffered or amplified by a low noise amplifier.

5.5 Modifying the Under-Sampling Signal Utilizing Feedback

FIG. 30 shows an embodiment of a system 3001 which uses down-converted signal 1308A as feedback 3006 to control various characteristics of the under-sampling module 1606 to modify the down-converted signal 1308A.

Generally, the amplitude of the down-converted signal 1308A varies as a function of the frequency and phase differences between the EM signal 1304 and the under-sampling signal 1604. In an embodiment, the down-converted signal 1308A is used as the feedback 3006 to control the frequency and phase relationship between the EM signal 1304 and the under-sampling signal 1604. This can be accomplished using the example block diagram shown in FIG 32A. The example circuit illustrated in FIG. 32A can be included in the under-sampling signal module 3002. Alternate implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention. In this embodiment a state-machine is used for clarity, and is not limiting.

In the example of FIG. 32A, a state machine 3204 reads an analog to digital converter, *AID* 3202, and controls a digital to analog converter (DAC) 3206. In an embodiment, the state machine 3204 includes 2 memory locations, *Previous* and *Current,* to store and recall the results of reading *AID* 3202. In an embodiment, the state machine 3204 utilizes at least one memory flag.

DAC 3206 controls an input to a voltage controlled oscillator, VCO 3208. VCO 3208 controls a frequency input of a pulse generator 3210, which, in an embodiment, is substantially similar to the pulse generator shown in FIG. 29J. The pulse generator 3210 generates the under-sampling signal 1604.

In an embodiment, the state machine 3204 operates in accordance with the state machine flowchart 3220 in FIG. 32B. The result of this operation is to modify the frequency and phase relationship between the under-sampling signal 1604 and the EM signall304, to substantially maintain the amplitude of the down-converted signal 1308A at an optimum level.

The amplitude of the down-converted signal 1308A can be made to vary with the amplitude of the under-sampling signal 1604. In an embodiment where Switch Module 2702 is a FET as shown in FIG 28A, wherein the gate 2804 receives the under-sampling signal 1604, the amplitude of the under-sampling signal 1604 can determine the "on" resistance of the FET, which affects the amplitude of down-converted signal 1308A. Under-sampling signal module 3002, as shown in FIG. 32C, can be an analog circuit that enables an automatic gain control function. Alternate implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

III. Down-Converting by Transferring Energy

The energy transfer embodiments of the invention provide enhanced signal to noise ratios and sensitivity to very small signals, as well as permitting the down-converted signal to drive lower impedance loads unassisted. The energy transfer aspects of the invention are represented generally by 4506 in FIGS. 45A and 45B. Fundamental descriptions of how this is accomplished is presented step by step beginning with a comparison with an under-sampling system.

0.1 Energy Transfer Compared to Under-Sampling

Section II above disclosed methods and systems for down-converting an EM signal by under-sampling. The under-sampling systems utilize a sample and hold system controlled by an under-sampling signal. The under-sampling signal includes a train of pulses having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The negligible aperture pulses minimize the amount of energy

transferred from the EM signal. This protects the under-sampled EM signal from distortion or destruction. The negligible aperture pulses also make the sample and hold system a high impedance system. An advantage of under-sampling is that the high impedance input allows accurate voltage reproduction of the under-sampled EM signal. The methods and systems disclosed in Section II are thus useful for many situations including, but not limited to, monitoring EM signals without distorting or destroying them.

Because the under-sampling systems disclosed in Section II transfer only negligible amounts of energy, they are not suitable for all situations. For example, in radio communications, received radio frequency (RF) signals are typically very weak and must be amplified in order to distinguish them over noise. The negligible amounts of energy transferred by the under-sampling systems disclosed in Section II may not be sufficient to distinguish received RF signals over noise.

In accordance with an aspect of the invention, methods and systems are disclosed below for down-converting EM signals by transferring non-negligible amounts of energy from the EM signals. The resultant down-converted signals have sufficient energy to allow the down-converted signals to be distinguishable from noise. The resultant down-converted signals also have sufficient energy to drive lower impedance circuits without buffering.

Down-converting by transferring energy is introduced below in an incremental fashion to distinguish it from under-sampling. The introduction begins with further descriptions of under-sampling.

0.1.1 Review of Under-Sampling

FIG. 78A illustrates an exemplary under-sampling system 7802 for down-converting an input EM signal 7804. The under-sampling

system 7802 includes a switching module 7806 and a holding module shown as a holding capacitance 7808. An under-sampling signal 7810 controls the switch module 7806. The under-sampling signal 7810 includes a train of pulses having negligible pulse widths that tend toward zero time. An example of a negligible pulse width or duration can be in the range of 1-10 psec for under-sampling a 900 MHZ signal. Any other suitable negligible pulse duration can be used as well, where accurate reproduction of the original unaffected input signal voltage is desired without substantially affecting the original input signal voltage.

In an under-sampling environment, the holding capacitance 7808 preferably has a small capacitance value. This allows the holding capacitance 7808 to substantially charge to the voltage of the input EM signal 7804 during the negligible apertures of the under-sampling signal pulses. For example, in an embodiment, the holding capacitance 7808 has a value in the range of 1pF. Other suitable capacitance values can be used to achieve substantially the voltage of the original unaffected input signal. Various capacitances can be employed for certain effects, which are described below. The under-sampling system is coupled to a load 7812. In FIG. 78B, the load 7812 of FIG. 78A is illustrated as a high impedance load 7818. A high impedance load is one that is relatively insignificant to an output drive impedance of the system for a given output frequency. The high impedance load 7818 allows the holding capacitance 7808 to substantially maintain the charge accumulated during the under-sampling pulses.

FIGS. 79A-F illustrate example timing diagrams for the under-sampling system 7802. FIG. 79A illustrates an example input EM signal 7804.

FIG. 79C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 7810, including pulses 7904 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration.

FIG. 79B illustrates the negligible effects to the input EM signal 7804 when under-sampled, as measured at a terminal 7814 of the under-sampling system 7802. In FIG. 79B, negligible distortions 7902 correlate with the pulses of the under-sampling signal 7810. In this embodiment, the negligible distortions 7902 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the input EM signal 7804. As a result, the input EM signal will be down-converted. The negligible distortions 7902 represent negligible amounts of energy, in the form of charge that is transferred to the holding capacitance 7808.

When the load 7812 is a high impedance load, the holding capacitance 7808 does not significantly discharge between pulses 7904. As a result, charge that is transferred to the holding capacitance 7808 during a pulse 7904 tends to "hold" the voltage value sampled constant at the terminal 7816 until the next pulse 7904. When voltage of the input EM signal 7804 changes between pulses 7904, the holding capacitance 7808 substantially attains the new voltage and the resultant voltage at the terminal 7816 forms a stair step pattern, as illustrated in FIG. 79D.

FIG. 79E illustrates the stair step voltage of FIG. 79D on a compressed time scale. The stair step voltage illustrated in FIG. 79E can be filtered to produce the signal illustrated in FIG. 79F. The signals illustrated in FIGS. 79D, E, and F have substantially all of the baseband characteristics of the input EM signal 7804 in FIG. 79A, except that the signals illustrated in FIGS. 79D, E, and F have been successfully down-converted.

Note that the voltage level of the down-converted signals illustrated in FIGS. 79E and 79F are substantially close to the voltage level of the input EM signal 7804. The under-sampling system 7802 thus down-converts the input EM signal 7804 with reasonable voltage reproduction, without substantially affecting the input EM signal 7804. But also note that the power available at the output is relatively

negligible (e.g.:V^2/R; ~ 5mV and 1 MOhm), given the input EM signal 7804 would typically have a driving impedance, in an RF environment, of 50 Ohms (e.g.: V^2/R; ~ 5mV and 50 Ohms).

0.1.1.1 Effects of Lowering the Impedance of the Load

Effects of lowering the impedance of the load 7812 are now described. FIGS. 80A-E illustrate example timing diagrams for the under-sampling system 7802 when the load 7812 is a relatively low impedance load, one that is significant relative to the output drive impedance of the system for a given output frequency.

FIG. 80A illustrates an example input EM signal 7804, which IS substantially similar to that illustrated in FIG. 79A.

FIG. 80C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 7810, including pulses 8004 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The example under-sampling signal 7810 illustrated in FIG. 80C is substantially similar to that illustrated in FIGS. 79C.

FIG.80B illustrates the negligible effects to the input EM signal 7804 when under-sampled, as measured at a terminal 7814 of the under-sampling system 7802. In FIG. 80B, negligible distortions 8002 correlate with the pulses 8004 of the under-sampling signal 7810 in FIG. 80C. In this example, the negligible distortions 8002 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the input EM signal 7804. As a result, the input EM signal 7804 will be down-converted. The negligible distortions 8002 represent negligible amounts of energy, in the form of charge that is transferred to the holding capacitance 7808.

When the load 7812 is a low impedance load, the holding capacitance 7808 is significantly discharged by the load between pulses

8004 (FIG. 80C). As a result, the holding capacitance 7808 cannot reasonably attain or "hold" the voltage of the original EM input signal 7804, as was seen in the case of FIG. 79D. Instead, the charge appears as the output illustrated in FIG. 80D.

FIG. 80E illustrates the output from FIG. 80D on a compressed time scale. The output in FIG. 80E can be filtered to produce the signal illustrated in FIG. 80F. The down-converted signal illustrated in FIG. 80F is substantially similar to the down-converted signal illustrated in FIG. 79F, except that the signal illustrated in FIG. 80F is substantially smaller in magnitude than the amplitude of the down-converted signal illustrated in FIG. 79F. This is because the low impedance of the load 7812 prevents the holding capacitance 7808 from reasonably attaining or "holding" the voltage of the original EM input signal 7804. As a result, the down-converted signal illustrated in FIG. 80F cannot provide optimal voltage reproduction, and has relatively negligible power available at the output (e.g.: V^2/R; ~ 200□V and 2KOhms), given the input EM signal 7804 would typically have a driving impedance, in an RF environment, of 50 Ohms (e.g.: V^2/R; ~ 5mV and 50 Ohms).

0.1.1.2 Effects of Increasing the Value of the Holding Capacitance

Effects of increasing the value of the holding capacitance 7808, while having to drive a low impedance load 7812, is now described. FIGS. 81 A-F illustrate example timing diagrams for the under-sampling system 7802 when the holding capacitance 7808 has a larger value, in the range of l8pF for example.

FIG. 81 A illustrates an example input EM signal 7804, which IS substantially similar to that illustrated in FIGS. 79A and 80A.

FIG. 81 C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 7810,

including pulses 8104 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The example under-sampling signal 7810 illustrated in FIG. 81C is substantially similar to that illustrated in FIGS. 79C and 80C.

FIG .81B illustrates the negligible effects to the input EM signal 7804 when under-sampled, as measured at a terminal 7814 of the under-sampling system 7802. In FIG. 81B, negligible distortions 8102 correlate with the pulses 8104 of the under-sampling signal 7810 in FIG. 81C. Upon close inspection, the negligible distortions 8102 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the input EM signal 7804. As a result, the input EM signal 7804 will be down-converted. The negligible distortions 8102 represent negligible amounts of energy, in the form of charge that is transferred to the holding capacitance 7808.

FIG. 81D illustrates the voltage measured at the terminal 7816, which is a result of the holding capacitance 7808 attempting to attain and "hold" the original input EM signal voltage, but failing to do so, during the negligible apertures of the pulses 8104 illustrated in FIG. 81 C.

Recall that when the load 7812 is a low impedance load, the holding capacitance 7808 is significantly discharged by the load between pulses 8104 (FIG. 81C), this again is seen in FIGS. 81D and E. As a result, the holding capacitance 7808 cannot reasonably attain or "hold" the voltage of the original EM input signal 7804, as was seen in the case of FIG. 79D. Instead, the charge appears as the output illustrated in FIG. 81D.

FIG. 81E illustrates the down-converted signal 8106 on a compressed time scale. Note that the amplitude of the down-converted signal 8106 is significantly less than the amplitude of the down-converted signal illustrated in FIGS. 80D and 80E. This is due to the higher capacitive value of the holding capacitance 7808. Generally,

as the capacitive value increases, it requires more charge to increase the voltage for a given aperture. Because of the negligible aperture of the pulses 8104 in FIG. 81 C, there is insufficient time to transfer significant amounts of energy or charge from the input EM signal 7804 to the holding capacitance 7808. As a result, the amplitudes attained by the holding capacitance 7808 are significantly less than the amplitudes of the down-converted signal illustrated in FIGS. 80D and 80E.

In FIGS. 80E and 80F, the output signal, non-filtered or filtered, cannot provide optimal voltage reproduction, and has relatively negligible power available at the output (e.g.: V^2/R; ~ 150□V and 2KOhms), given the input EM signal 7804 would typically have a driving impedance, in an RF environment, of 50 Ohms (e.g.: V^2/R; ~ 5mV and 50 Ohms).

In summary, under-sampling systems, such as the under-sampling system 7802 illustrated in FIG. 78, are well suited for down-converting EM signals with relatively accurate voltage reproduction. Also, they have a negligible affect on the original input EM signal. As illustrated above, however, the under-sampling systems, such as the under-sampling system 7802 illustrated in FIG. 78, are not well suited for transferring energy or for driving lower impedance loads.

0.1.2 Introduction to Energy Transfer

In an embodiment, the present invention transfers energy from an EM signal by utilizing an energy transfer signal instead of an under-sampling signal. Unlike under-sampling signals that have negligible aperture pulses, the energy transfer signal includes a train of pulses having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero. This provides more time to transfer energy from an EM input signal. One direct benefit is that the input impedance of the system is reduced so that

practical impedance matching circuits can be implemented to further improve energy transfer and thus overall efficiency. The non-negligible transferred energy significantly improves the signal to noise ratio and sensitivity to very small signals, as well as permitting the down-converted signal to drive lower impedance loads unassisted. Signals that especially benefit include low power ones typified by RF signals. One benefit of a non-negligible aperture is that phase noise within the energy transfer signal does not have as drastic of an effect on the down-converted output signal as under-sampling signal phase noise or conventional sampling signal phase noise does on their respective outputs.

FIG. 82A illustrates an exemplary energy transfer system 8202 for down-converting an input EM signal 8204. The energy transfer system 8202 includes a switching module 8206 and a storage module illustrated as a storage capacitance 8208. The terms storage module and storage capacitance, as used herein, are distinguishable from the terms holding module and holding capacitance, respectively. Holding modules and holding capacitances, as used above, identify systems that store negligible amounts of energy from an under-sampled input EM signal with the intent of "holding" a voltage value. Storage modules and storage capacitances, on the other hand, refer to systems that store non-negligible amounts of energy from an input EM signal.

The energy transfer system 8202 receives an energy transfer signal 8210, which controls the switch module 8206. The energy transfer signal 8210 includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible pulse widths that tend away from zero time in duration. The non-negligible pulse widths can be any non-negligible amount. For example, the non-negligible pulse widths can be $Y2$ of a period of the input EM signal. Alternatively, the non-negligible pulse widths can be any other fraction of a period of the input EM signal, or a multiple of a

period plus a fraction. In an example embodiment, the input EM signal is approximately 900 MHZ and the non-negligible pulse width is approximately 550 pico seconds. Any other suitable non-negligible pulse duration can be used.

In an energy transfer environment, the storage module, illustrated in FIG. 82 as a storage capacitance 8208, preferably has the capacity to handle the power being transferred, and to allow it to accept a non-negligible amount of power during a non-negligible aperture period. This allows the storage capacitance 8208 to store energy transferred from the input EM signal 8204, without substantial concern for accurately reproducing the original, unaffected voltage level of the input EM signal 8204. For example, in an embodiment, the storage capacitance 8208 has a value in the range of 18pF. Other suitable capacitance values and storage modules can be used.

One benefit of the energy transfer system 8202 is that, even when the input EM signal 8204 is a very small signal, the energy transfer system 8202 transfers enough energy from the input EM signal 8204 that the input EM signal can be efficiently down-converted.

The energy transfer system 8202 is coupled to a load 8212. Recall from the overview of under-sampling that loads can be classified as high impedance loads or low impedance loads. A high impedance load is one that is relatively insignificant to an output drive impedance of the system for a given output frequency. A low impedance load is one that is relatively significant. Another benefit of the energy transfer system 8202 is that the non-negligible amounts of transferred energy permit the energy transfer system 8202 to effectively drive loads that would otherwise be classified as low impedance loads in under-sampling systems and conventional sampling systems. In other words, the non-negligible amounts of transferred energy ensure that, even for lower impedance loads, the storage capacitance 8208 accepts and maintains

sufficient energy or charge to drive the load 8202. This is illustrated below in the timing diagrams of FIGS. 83A-F.

FIGS. 83A-F illustrate example timing diagrams for the energy transfer system 8202 in FIG. 82. FIG. 83A illustrates an example input EM signal 8302.

FIG. 83C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 8304, including energy transfer pulses 8306 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration.

FIG.83B illustrates the effects to the input EM signal 8302, as measured at a terminal 8214 in FIG. 82A, when non-negligible amounts of energy are transfer from it. In FIG. 83B, non-negligible distortions 8308 correlate with the energy transfer pulses 8306 in FIG. 83C. In this example, the non-negligible distortions 8308 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the input EM signal 8302. The non-negligible distortions 8308 represent non-negligible amounts of transferred energy, in the form of charge that is transferred to the storage capacitance 8208 in FTG. 82.

FIG. 83D illustrates a down-converted signal 8310 that is formed by energy transferred from the input EM signal 8302.

FIG. 83E illustrates the down-converted signal 8310 on a compressed time scale. The down-converted signal 8310 can be filtered to produce the down-converted signal 8312 illustrated in FIG. 83F. The down-converted signal 8312 is similar to the down-converted signal illustrated in FIG. 79F, except that the down-converted signal 8312 has substantially more power (e.g.: V^2/R; approximately (~) 2mV and 2 K Ohms) than the down-converted signal illustrated in FIG. 79F (e.g.: V^2/R; ~ 5mV and 1M Ohm). As a result, the down-converted signals 8310 and 8312 can efficiently drive lower impedance loads, given the input EM signal 8204 would typically have a driving impedance, in an RF environment, of 50 Ohms (V^2/R; ~ 5mV and 50 Ohms).

The energy transfer aspects of the invention are represented generally by 4506 in FIGS. 45A and 45B.

1. ***Down-Converting an EM Signal to an IF EM Signal by Transferring Energy from the EM Signal at an Aliasing Rate***

In an embodiment, the invention down-converts an EM signal to an IF signal by transferring energy from the EM signal at an aliasing rate. This embodiment is illustrated by 4514 in FIG. 45B.

This embodiment can be implemented with any type of EM signal, including, but not limited to, modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signals. This embodiment is described herein using the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} in FIG. 1 as an example. In the example, the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} is down-converted to an intermediate frequency (IF) signal F_{IF}. The intermediate frequency signal F_{IF} can be demodulated to a baseband signal F_{DMB} using conventional demodulation techniques. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any EM signal, including, but not limited to, modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signals.

The following sections describe methods for down-converting an EM signal to an IF signal F_{IF} by transferring energy from the EM signal at an aliasing rate. Exemplary structural embodiments for implementing the methods are also described. It should be understood that the invention is not limited to the particular embodiments described below. Equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the following will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., are within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

The following sections include a high level discussion, example

embodiments, and implementation examples.

1.1 High Level Description

This section (including its subsections) provides a high-level description of down-converting an EM signal to an IF signal F_{IF} by transferring energy, according to the invention. In particular, an operational process of down-converting the modulated canier signal F_{MC} to the IF modulated canier signal F_{IF}, by transferring energy, is described at a high-level. Also, a structural implementation for implementing this process is described at a high-level. This structural implementation is described herein for illustrative purposes, and is not limiting. In particular, the process described in this section can be achieved using any number of structural implementations, one of which is described in this section. The details of such structural implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein.

1.1.1 Operational Description

FIG. 46B depicts a flowchart 4607 that illustrates an exemplary method for down-converting an EM signal to an intermediate signal F_{IP}, by transferring energy from the EM signal at an aliasing rate. The exemplary method illustrated in the flowchart 4607 is an embodiment of the flowchart 460 in FIG. 46A.

Any and all combinations of modulation techniques are valid for this invention. For ease of discussion, the digital AM carrier signal 616 is used to illustrate a high level operational description of the invention. Subsequent sections provide detailed flowcharts and descriptions for AM, FM and PM example embodiments. Upon reading the disclosure

and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any type of EM signal, including any form of modulated carrier signal and unmodulated carrier signals.

The method illustrated in the flowchart 4607 is now described at a high level using the digital AM carrier signal 616 of FIG. 6C. Subsequent sections provide detailed flowcharts and descriptions for AM, FM and PM example embodiments. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any type of EM signal, including any form of modulated carrier signal and unmodulated carrier signals.

The process begins at step 4608, which includes receiving an EM signal. Step 4608 is illustrated by the digital AM carrier signal 616. The digital AM carrier signal 616 of FIG. 6C is re-illustrated in FIG. 47 A for convenience. FIG. 47E illustrates a portion of the digital AM carrier signal 616 on an expanded time scale.

Step 4610 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate FAR. FIG. 47B illustrates an example energy transfer signal 4702. The energy transfer signal 4702 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 4704 having non-negligible apertures 4701 that tend away from zero time duration. Generally, the apertures 4701 can be any time duration other than the period of the EM signal. For example, the apertures 4701 can be greater or less than a period of the EM signal. Thus, the apertures 4701 can be approximately 1/10, ¼ , ½ , 3/4, etc., or any other fraction of the period of the EM signal. Alternatively, the apertures 4701 can be approximately equal to one or more periods of the EM signal plus 1/10, ¼ , ½ , 3/4, etc., or any other fraction of a period of the EM signal. The apertures 4701 can be optimized based on one or more of a variety of criteria, as described in sections below.

The energy transfer pulses 4704 repeat at the aliasing rate. A suitable aliasing rate can be determined or selected as described below. Generally, when down-converting an EM signal to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a difference frequency, which is described below, or substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency.

Step 4612 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to the intermediate signal F_{IP}. FIG. 47C illustrates transferred energy 4706, which is transferred from the EM signal during the energy transfer pulses 4704. Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate occurs at an off-set of the frequency of the AM signal 616, the pulses 4704 "walk through" the AM signal 616 at the off-set frequency. By "walking through" the AM signal 616, the transferred energy 4706 forms an AM intermediate signal 4706 that is similar to the AM carrier signal 616, except that the AM intermediate signal has a lower frequency than the AM carrier signal 616. The AM carrier signal 616 can be down-converted to any frequency below the AM carrier signal 616 by adjusting the aliasing rate FAR, as described below.

FIG. 47D depicts the AM intermediate signal 4706 as a filtered output signal 4708. In an alternative embodiment, the invention outputs a stair step, or non-filtered output signal. The choice between filtered, partially filtered and non-filtered output signals is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The intermediate frequency of the down-converted signal F_{IP}, which, in this example, is the intermediate signal 4706 and 4708, can be determined from EQ. (2), which is reproduced below for convenience.

$$F_C = n \bullet F_{AR} \pm F_{IF} \qquad \text{EQ. (2)}$$

A suitable aliasing rate F_{AR} can be determined in a variety of ways. An example method for determining the aliasing rate F_{AR}, is provided below. After reading the description herein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand how to determine appropriate aliasing rates for EM signals, including ones in addition to the modulated carrier signals specifically illustrated herein.

In FIG. 48, a flowchart 4801 illustrates an example process for determining an aliasing rate F_{AR}. But a designer may choose, or an application may dictate, that the values be determined in an order that is different than the illustrated order. The process begins at step 4802, which includes determining, or selecting, the frequency of the EM signal. The frequency of the AM carrier signal 616 can be, for example, 901 MHZ.

Step 4804 includes determining, or selecting, the intermediate frequency. This is the frequency to which the EM signal will be down-converted. The intermediate frequency can be determined, or selected, to match a frequency requirement of a down-stream demodulator. The intermediate frequency can be, for example, 1 MHZ.

Step 4806 includes determining the aliasing rate or rates that will down-convert the EM signal to the IF specified in step 4804.

EQ. (2) can be rewritten as EQ. (3):

$$n \bullet F_{AR} = F_C \pm F_{IF} \qquad \text{EQ. (3)}$$

Which can be rewritten as EQ. (4):

$$n = \frac{F_C \pm F_{IF}}{F_{AR}} \qquad \text{EQ. (4)}$$

Or as EQ. (5):

$$F_{AR} = \frac{F_C \pm F_{IF}}{n} \qquad \text{EQ. (5)}$$

(F_C F_{IF}) can be defined as a difference value F_{DIFF}, as illustrated in EQ. (6):

$$(F_C \pm F_{IF}) = F_{DIFF} \qquad \text{EQ. (6)}$$

EQ. (4) can be rewritten as EQ. (7):

$$n = \frac{F_{DIFF}}{F_{AR}} \qquad \text{EQ. (7)}$$

From EQ. (7), it can be seen that, for a given n and a constant F_{AR}, F_{DIFF} is constant. For the case of $F_{DIFF} = F_C - F_{IF}$, and for a constant F_{DIFF}, as F_C increases, F_{IF} necessarily increases. For the case of $F_{DIFF} = F_C + F_{IF}$, and for a constant F_{DIFF}, as F_C increases, F_{IF} necessarily decreases. In the latter case of $F_{DIFF} = F_C + F_{IF}$, any phase or frequency changes on F_C correspond to reversed or inverted phase or frequency changes on F_{IF}. This is mentioned to teach the reader that if $F_{DIFF} = F_C + F_{IF}$ is used, the above effect will occur to the phase and frequency response of the modulated intermediate signal F_{IF}.

EQs. (2) through (7) can be solved for any valid n. A suitable n can be determined for any given difference frequency F_{DIFF} and for any desired aliasing rate $F_{AR(Desired)}$. EQs. (2) through (7) can be utilized to identify a specific harmonic closest to a desired aliasing rate $F_{AR(Desired)}$ that will generate the desired intermediate signal F_{IF}.

An example is now provided for determining a suitable n for a given difference frequency F_{DIFF} and for a desired aliasing rate $F_{AR(Desired)}$. For ease of illustration, only the case of $(F_C + F_{IF})$ is illustrated in the example below.

$$n = \frac{F_C - F_{IF}}{F_{AR(Desired)}} = \frac{F_{DIFF}}{F_{AR(Desired)}}$$

The desired aliasing rate $F_{AR(Desired)}$ can be, for example, 140 MHZ. Using the previous examples, where the carrier frequency is 901 MHZ and the IF is 1 MHZ, an initial value of n is determined as:

$$n = \frac{901\ \text{MHZ} - 1\ \text{MHZ}}{140\ \text{MHZ}} = \frac{900}{140} = 6.4$$

The initial value 6.4 can be rounded up or down to the valid nearest n, which was defined above as including (0.5, 1, 2, 3, ...). In this example,

6.4 is rounded down to 6.0, which is inserted into EQ. (5) for the case of $(F_C - F_{IF}) = F_{DIFF}$:

$$F_{AR} = \frac{F_C - F_{IF}}{n}$$

$$F_{AR} = \frac{901\ MHZ - 1\ MHZ}{6} = \frac{900\ MHZ}{6} = 150\ MHZ$$

In other words, transferring energy from a 901 MHZ EM carrier signal at 150 MHZ generates an intermediate signal at 1 MHZ. When the EM carrier signal is a modulated carrier signal, the intermediate signal will also substantially include the modulation. The modulated intermediate signal can be demodulated through any conventional demodulation technique.

Alternatively, instead of starting from a desired aliasing rate, a list of suitable aliasing rates can be determined from the modified form of EQ. (5), by solving for various values of n. Example solutions are listed below.

$$F_{AR} = \frac{(F_C - F_{IF})}{n} = \frac{F_{DIFF}}{n} = \frac{901\ MHZ - 1\ MHZ}{n} = \frac{900\ MHZ}{n}$$

Solving for n = 0.5, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6:

900MHZ/0.5 = 1.8 GHZ (i.e., second harmonic);
900MHZ/l = 900 MHZ (i.e., fundamental frequency);
900MHZ/2 = 450 MHZ (i.e., second sub-harmonic);
900MHZ/3 = 300 MHZ (i.e., third sub-harmonic);
900MHZ/4 = 225 MHZ (i.e., fourth sub-harmonic);
900 MHZ/5 = 180 MHZ(i.e., fifth sub-harmonic); and
900 MHZ/6 = 150 MHZ(i.e., sixth sub-harmonic).

The steps described above can be performed for the case of (F_C + F_{IF}) in a similar fashion. The results can be compared to the results obtained from the case of (F_C - F_{IF}) to determine which provides better result for an application.

In an embodiment, the invention down-converts an EM signal to a relatively standard IF in the range of, for example, 100KHZ to 200 MHZ. In another embodiment, referred to herein as a small off-set implementation, the invention down-converts an EM signal to a relatively low frequency of, for example, less than 100 KHZ. In another embodiment, referred to herein as a large off-set implementation, the invention down-converts an EM signal to a relatively higher IF signal, such as, for example, above 200 MHZ.

The various off-set implementations provide selectivity for different applications. Generally, lower data rate applications can operate at lower intermediate frequencies. But higher intermediate frequencies can allow more information to be supported for a given modulation technique.

In accordance with the invention, a designer picks an optimum information bandwidth for an application and an optimum intermediate frequency to support the baseband signal. The intermediate frequency should be high enough to support the bandwidth of the modulating baseband signal F_{MB}.

Generally, as the aliasing rate approaches a harmonic or sub-harmonic frequency of the EM signal, the frequency of the down-converted IF signal decreases. Similarly, as the aliasing rate moves away from a harmonic or sub-harmonic frequency of the EM signal, the IF increases.

Aliased frequencies occur above and below every harmonic of the aliasing frequency. In order to avoid mapping other aliasing frequencies in the band of the aliasing frequency (IF) of interest, the IF of interest should not be near one half the aliasing rate.

As described in example implementations below, an aliasing module, including a universal frequency translator (UFT) module built in accordance with the invention provides a wide range of flexibility in frequency selection and can thus be implemented in a wide range of applications. Conventional systems cannot easily offer, or do not allow, this level of flexibility in frequency selection.

1.1.2 Structural Description

FIG. 63 illustrates a block diagram of an energy transfer system 6302 according to an embodiment of the invention. The energy transfer system 6302 is an example embodiment of the generic aliasing system 1302 in FIG. 13. The energy transfer system 6302 includes an energy transfer module 6304. The energy transfer module 6304 receives the EM signal 1304 and an energy transfer signal 6306, which includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration, occurring at a frequency equal to the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The energy transfer signal 6306 is an example embodiment of the aliasing signal 1310 in FIG. 13. The energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the EM signal 1304 at the aliasing rate F_{AR} of the energy transfer signal 6306.

Preferably, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the EM signal 1304 to down-convert it to the intermediate signal F_{IP} in the manner shown in the operational flowchart 4607 of FIG. 46B. But it should be understood that the scope and spirit of the invention includes other structural embodiments for performing the steps of the

flowchart 4607. The specifics of the other structural embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

The operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described in detail with reference to the flowchart 4607 and to the timing diagrams illustrated in FIGS. 47A-E. In step 4608, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the AM carrier signal 616. In step 4610, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 4702. In step 4612, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate to down-convert the AM carrier signal 616 to the intermediate signal 4706 or 4708.

Example implementations of the energy transfer system 6302 are provided in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.2 Example Embodiments

Various embodiments related to the method(s) and structure (s) described above are presented in this section (and its subsections). These embodiments are described herein for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to these embodiments. Alternate embodiments (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the embodiments described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. The invention is intended and adapted to include such alternate embodiments.

The method for down-converting the EM signal 1304 by transferring energy can be implemented with any type of EM signal, including modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signals. For example, the method of the flowchart 4601 can be implemented to down-convert AM signals, FM signals, PM signals, etc., or any

combination thereof. Operation of the flowchart 4601 of FIG. 46A is described below for down-converting AM, FM and PM. The down-conversion descriptions include down-converting to intermediate signals, directly down-converting to demodulated baseband signals, and down-converting FM signals to non-FM signals. The exemplary descriptions below are intended to facilitate an understanding of the present invention. The present invention is not limited to or by the exemplary embodiments below.

1.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Amplitude Modulation

1.2.1.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 4607 in FIG. 46B is described below for the analog AM carrier signal 516, illustrated in FIG. 5C, and for the digital AM carrier signal 616, illustrated in FIG. 6C.

1.2.1.1.1 Analog AM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the analog AM carrier signal 516 in FIG. 5C to an analog AM intermediate signal is now described for the flowchart 4607 in FIG. 46B. The analog AM carrier signal 516 is re-illustrated in FIG. 50A for convenience. For this example, the analog AM carrier signal 516 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 50B, an analog AM carrier signal 5004 illustrates a portion of the analog AM carrier signal 516 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4608, which includes receiving the EM signal. This is represented by the analog AM carrier signal 516.

Step 4610 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 50C illustrates an example energy transfer signal 5006 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 50B. The energy transfer signal 5006 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5007 having non-negligible apertures 5009 that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5007 repeat at the aliasing rate F_{AR}, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a hannonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}.

Step 4612 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to an intermediate signal F_{IF}. In FIG. 50D, an affected analog AM carrier signal 5008 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the analog AM carrier signal 516 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected analog AM carrier signal 5008 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 50B and 50C.

FIG 50E illustrates a down-converted AM intermediate signal 5012, which is generated by the down-conversion process. The AM intermediate signal 5012 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The down-converted signal 5012 includes portions 5010A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5007 in FIG. 50C, and portions 5010B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5007. Portions 5010A represent energy transferred from the AM analog signal 516 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5010A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5007. Portions 5010B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 5010B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5007.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the analog

AM carrier signal 516, the energy transfer pulses 5007 "walk through" the analog AM carrier signal 516 at the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. In other words, the energy transfer pulses 5007 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the AM carrier signal 516. As a result, the energy transfer pulses 5007 capture varying amounts of energy from the analog AM carrier signal 516, as illustrated by portions 5010A, which provides the AM intermediate signal 5012 with an oscillating frequency F_{IF}.

In FIG. 50F, an AM intermediate signal 5014 illustrates the AM intermediate signal 5012 on a compressed time scale. In FIG. 50G, an AM intermediate signal 5016 represents a filtered version of the AM intermediate signal 5014. The AM intermediate signal 5016 is substantially similar to the AM carrier signal 516, except that the AM intermediate signal 5016 is at the intermediate frequency. The AM intermediate signal 5016 can be demodulated through any conventional demodulation technique.

The present invention can output the unfiltered AM intermediate signal 5014, the filtered AM intermediate signal 5016, a partially filtered AM intermediate signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The signals referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the AM intermediate signals 5014 in FIG. 50F and 5016 in FIG. 50G illustrate that the AM carrier signal 516 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.1.1.2 Digital AM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the digital AM carrier signal 616

to a digital AM intermediate signal is now described for the flowchart 4607 in FIG. 46B. The digital AM carrier signal 616 is re-illustrated in FIG. 51A for convenience. For this example, the digital AM carrier signal 616 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 51B, a digital AM carrier signal 5104 illustrates a portion of the digital AM carrier signal 616 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4608, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the digital AM carrier signal 616.

Step 4610 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 51C illustrates an example energy transfer signal 5106 on substantially the same time scale as FIG. 5lB. The energy transfer signal 5106 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5107 having non-negligible apertures 5109 that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5107 repeat at the aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}.

Step 4612 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to the intermediate signal F_{IF}. In FIG. 51D, an affected digital AM carrier signal 5108 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the digital AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected digital AM carrier signal 5108 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 51B and 51C.

FIG 51E illustrates a down-converted AM intermediate signal 5112, which is generated by the down-conversion process. The AM intermediate signal 5112 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The down-converted signal 5112 includes portions 5110A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5107 in FIG. 51C, and

portions 5110B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5107. Portions 5110A represent energy transferred from the digital AM carrier signal 616 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5110A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5107. Portions 5110B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 51 l0B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5107.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the frequency of the digital AM carrier signal 616, the energy transfer pulses 5107 "walk through" the digital AM signal 616 at the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. In other words, the energy transfer pulse 5107 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the digital AM carrier signal 616. As a result, the energy transfer pulses 5107 capture varying amounts of energy from the digital AM carrier signal 616, as illustrated by portions 5110, which provides the AM intermediate signal 5112 with an oscillating frequency F_{IF}.

In FIG. 51 F, a digital AM intermediate signal 5114 illustrates the AM intermediate signal 5112 on a compressed time scale. In FIG. 5lG, an AM intermediate signal 5116 represents a filtered version of the AM intermediate signal 5114. The AM intermediate signal 5116 is substantially similar to the AM carrier signal 616, except that the AM intermediate signal 5116 is at the intermediate frequency. The AM intermediate signal 5116 can be demodulated through any conventional demodulation technique.

The present invention can output the unfiltered AM intermediate signal 5114, the filtered AM intermediate signal 5116, a partially filtered AM intermediate signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The signals referred to herein illustrate frequency

down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the AM intermediate signals 5114 in FIG. 5lF and 5116 in FIG. 51G illustrate that the AM carrier signal 616 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.1.2 Structural Description

The operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the analog AM carrier signal 516, with reference to the flowchart 4607 and to the timing diagrams in FIGS. 50A-G. In step 4608, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the analog AM carrier signal 516. In step 4610, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 5006. In step 4612, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the analog AM carrier signal 516 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5006, to down-convert the analog AM carrier signal 516 to the AM intermediate signal 5012.

The operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the digital AM carrier signal 616, with reference to the flowchart 1401 and the timing diagrams in FIGS. 51A-G. In step 4608, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the digital AM carrier signal 616. In step 4610, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 5106. In step 4612, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the digital AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5106, to down-convert the digital AM carrier signal 616 to the AM intermediate signal 5112.

Example embodiments of the energy transfer module 6304 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.2.2 Second Example Embodiment: Frequency

Modulation

1.2.2.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 4607 in FIG. 46B is described below for the analog FM carrier signal 716, illustrated in FIG. 7C, and for the digital FM carrier signal 816, illustrated in FIG. 8C.

1.2.2.1.1 Analog FM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the analog FM carrier signal 716 III FIG. 7C to an FM intermediate signal is now described for the flowchart 4607 in FIG. 46B. The analog FM carrier signal 716 is re-illustrated in FIG. 52A for convenience. For this example, the analog FM carrier signal 716 oscillates around approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 52B, an analog FM carrier signal 5204 illustrates a portion of the analog FM carrier signal 716 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4608, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the analog FM carrier signal 716.

Step 4610 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 52C illustrates an example energy transfer signal 5206 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 52B. The energy transfer signal 5206 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5207 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5207 repeat at the aliasing rate F_{AR}, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}.

Step 4612 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the

aliasing rate to down-conveli the EM signal to an intermediate signal F_{IF}. In FIG. 52D, an affected analog FM carrier signal 5208 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the analog FM carrier signal 716 at the aliasing rate FAR. The affected analog FM carrier signal 5208 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 52B and 52C.

FIG 52E illustrates a down-converted FM intermediate signal 5212, which is generated by the down-conversion process. The FM intermediate signal 5212 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The down-converted signal 5212 includes portions 5210A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5207 in FIG. 52C, and portions 5210B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5207. Portions 5210A represent energy transferred from the analog FM carrier signal 716 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5210A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5207. Portions 5210B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 5210B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5207.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the frequency of the analog FM carrier signal 716, the energy transfer pulses 5207 "walk through" the analog FM carrier signal 716 at the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. In other words, the energy transfer pulse 5207 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the analog FM carrier signal 716. As a result, the energy transfer pulses 5207 capture varying amounts of energy from the analog FM carrier signal 716, as illustrated by portions 5210, which provides the FM intermediate signal 5212 with an oscillating frequency F_{IF}.

In FIG. 52F, an analog FM intermediate signal 5214 illustrates the FM intermediate signal 5212 on a compressed time scale. In FIG. 52G, an FM intermediate signal 5216 represents a filtered version of the FM

intermediate signal 5214. The FM intermediate signal 5216 is substantially similar to the analog FM carrier signal 716, except that the FM intermediate signal 5216 is at the intermediate frequency. The FM intermediate signal 5216 can be demodulated through any conventional demodulation technique.

The present invention can output the unfiltered FM intermediate signal 5214, the filtered FM intermediate signal 5216, a partially filtered FM intermediate signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The signals referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the FM intermediate signals 5214 in FIG. 52F and 5216 in FIG. 52G illustrate that the FM carrier signal 716 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.2.1.2 Digital PM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the digital FM carrier signal 816 in FIG. 8C is now described for the flowchart 4607 in FIG. 46B. The digital FM carrier signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 53A for convenience. For this example, the digital FM carrier signal 816 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 53B, a digital FM carrier signal 5304 illustrates a portion of the digital FM carrier signal 816 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4608, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the digital FM carrier signal 816.

Step 4610 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 53C illustrates an example energy transfer signal

5306 on substantially the same time scale as FIG. 53B. The energy transfer signal 5306 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5307 having non-negligible apertures 5309 that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5307 repeat at the aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}.

Step 4612 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to the an intermediate signal F_{IF}. In FIG. 53D, an affected digital FM carrier signal 5308 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the digital FM carrier signal 816 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected digital FM carrier signal 5308 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 53B and 53C.

FIG 53E illustrates a down-converted FM intermediate signal 5312, which is generated by the down-conversion process. The down-converted signal 5312 includes portions 5310A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5307 in FIG. 53C, and portions 5310B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5307. Down-converted signal 5312 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

Portions 5310A represent energy transferred from the digital FM carrier signal 816 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5310A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5307.

Portions 5310B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 5310B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5307.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the frequency of the digital FM carrier signal 816, the energy transfer pulses

5307 "walk through" the digital FM carrier signal 816 at the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. In other words, the energy transfer pulse 5307 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the digital FM carrier signal 816. As a result, the energy transfer pulses 5307 capture varying amounts of energy from the digital FM carrier signal 816, as illustrated by portions 5310, which provides the FM intermediate signal 5312 with an oscillating frequency F_{IF}.

In FIG. 53F, a digital FM intermediate signal 5314 illustrates the FM intermediate signal 5312 on a compressed time scale. In FIG. 53G, an FM intermediate signal 5316 represents a filtered version of the FM intermediate signal 5314. The FM intermediate signal 5316 is substantially similar to the digital FM carrier signal 816, except that the FM intermediate signal 5316 is at the intermediate frequency. The FM intermediate signal 5316 can be demodulated through any conventional demodulation technique.

The present invention can output the unfiltered FM intermediate signal 5314, the filtered FM intermediate signal 5316, a partially filtered FM intermediate signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The signals referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the FM intermediate signals 5314 in FIG. 53F and 5316 in FIG. 53G illustrate that the FM carrier signal 816 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.2.2 Structural Description

The operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now

described for the analog FM carrier signal 716, with reference to the flowchart 4607 and the timing diagrams in FIGS. 52A-G. In step 4608, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the analog FM carrier signal 716. In step 4610, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 5206. In step 4612, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the analog FM carrier signal 716 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5206, to down-convert the analog FM carrier signal 716 to the FM intermediate signal 5212.

The operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the digital FM carrier signal 816, with reference to the flowchart 4607 and the timing diagrams in FIGS. 53A-G. In step 4608, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the digital FM carrier signal 816. In step 4610, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 5306. In step 4612, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the digital FM carrier signal 816 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5306, to down-convert the digital FM carrier signal 816 to the FM intermediate signal 5212.

Example embodiments of the energy transfer module 6304 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.2.3 Third Example Embodiment: Phase Modulation

1.2.3.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 4607 in FIG. 46B is described below for the analog PM carrier signal 916, illustrated in FIG. 9C, and for the digital PM carrier signal 1016, illustrated in FIG. 10C.

1.2.3.1.1 Analog PM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the analog PM carrier signal 916 in FIG. 9C to an analog PM intermediate signal is now described for the flowchart 4607 in FIG. 46B. The analog PM carrier signal 916 is re-illustrated in FIG. 54A for convenience. For this example, the analog PM carrier signal 916 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 54B, an analog PM carrier signal 5404 illustrates a portion of the analog PM carrier signal 916 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4608, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the analog PM carrier signal 916.

Step 4610 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 54C illustrates an example energy transfer signal 5406 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 54B. The energy transfer signal 5406 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5407 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5407 repeat at the aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}.

Step 4612 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to the IF signal F_{IF}. In FIG. 54D, an affected analog PM carrier signal 5408 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the analog PM carrier signal 916 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected analog PM carrier signal 5408 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 54B and 54C.

FIG 54E illustrates a down-converted PM intermediate signal 5412, which is generated by the down-conversion process. The down-converted PM intermediate signal 5412 includes portions 5410A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5407 in FIG. 54C, and

portions 5410B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5407. Down-converted signal 5412 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

Portions 5410A represent energy transferred from the analog PM carrier signal 916 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5410A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5407.

Portions 5410B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 5410B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5407.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the frequency of the analog PM carrier signal 716, the energy transfer pulses 5407 "walk through" the analog PM carrier signal 916 at the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. In other words, the energy transfer pulse 5407 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the analog PM carrier signal 916. As a result, the energy transfer pulses 5407 capture varying amounts of energy from the analog PM carrier signal 916, as illustrated by portions 5410, which provides the PM intermediate signal 5412 with an oscillating frequency F_{IF}.

In FIG. 54F, an analog PM intermediate signal 5414 illustrates the PM intermediate signal 5412 on a compressed time scale. In FIG. 54G, an PM intermediate signal 5416 represents a filtered version of the PM intermediate signal 5414. The PM intermediate signal 5416 is substantially similar to the analog PM carrier signal 916, except that the PM intermediate signal 5416 is at the intermediate frequency. The PM intermediate signal 5416 can be demodulated through any conventional demodulation technique.

The present invention can output the unfiltered PM intermediate signal 5414, the filtered PM intermediate signal 5416, a partially filtered

PM intermediate signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The signals referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the PM intermediate signals 5414 in FIG. 54F and 5416 in FIG. 54G illustrate that the PM carrier signal 916 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.3.1.2 Digital PM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the digital PM carrier signal 1016 in FIG. 10C to a digital PM signal is now described for the flowchart 3607 in FIG. 46B. The digital PM carrier signal 1016 is re-illustrated in FIG. 55A for convenience. For this example, the digital PM carrier signal 1016 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 55B, a digital PM carrier signal 5504 illustrates a portion of the digital PM carrier signal 1016 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4608, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the digital PM carrier signal 1016.

Step 4610 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 55C illustrates an example energy transfer signal 5506 on substantially the same time scale as FIG. 55B. The energy transfer signal 5506 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5507 having non-negligible apertures 5509 that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5507 repeat at an aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic

of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}.

Step 4612 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to an intermediate signal F_{IF}. In FIG. 55D, an affected digital PM carrier signal 5508 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the digital PM carrier signal 1016 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected digital PM carrier signal 5508 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 55B and 55C.

FIG 55E illustrates a down-converted PM intermediate signal 5512, which is generated by the down-conversion process. The down-converted PM intermediate signal 5512 includes portions 5510A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5507 in FIG. 55C, and portions 5510B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5507. Down-converted signal 5512 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

Portions 5510A represent energy transferred from the digital PM carrier signal 1016 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5510A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5507.

Portions 5510B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 5510B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5507.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the frequency of the digital PM carrier signal 716, the energy transfer pulses 5507 "walk through" the digital PM carrier signal 1016 at the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. In other words, the energy transfer pulse 5507 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the digital PM carrier signal 1016. As a result, the energy transfer pulses 5507 capture varying amounts of energy from the digital PM carrier signal 1016, as illustrated by portions 5510, which provides the PM intermediate signal 5512 with

an oscillating frequency F_{IF}.

In FIG. 55F, a digital PM intermediate signal 5514 illustrates the PM intermediate signal 5512 on a compressed time scale. In FIG. 55G, an PM intermediate signal 5516 represents a filtered version of the PM intermediate signal 5514. The PM intermediate signal 5516 is substantially similar to the digital PM carrier signal 1016, except that the PM intermediate signal 5516 is at the intermediate frequency. The PM intermediate signal 5516 can be demodulated through any conventional demodulation technique.

The present invention can output the unfiltered PM intermediate signal 5514, the filtered PM intermediate signal 5516, a partially filtered PM intermediate signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The signals referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the PM intermediate signals 5514 in FIG. 55F and 5516 in FIG. 55G illustrate that the PM carrier signal 1016 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.3.2 Structural Description

Operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the analog PM carrier signal 916, with reference to the flowchart 4607 and the timing diagrams in FIGS. 54A-G. In step 4608, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the analog PM carrier signal 916. In step 4610, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 5406. In step 4612, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the analog PM carrier signal 916 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5406, to down-convert the analog PM carrier signal 916 to the PM intermediate signal 5412.

Operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the digital PM carrier signal 1016, with reference to the flowchart 1401 and the timing diagrams in FIGS. 55A-G. In step 4608, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the digital PM carrier signal 1016. In step 4610, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 5506. In step 4612, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the digital PM carrier signal 1016 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5506, to down-convert the digital PM carrier signal 1016 to the PM intermediate signal 5512.

Example embodiments of the energy transfer module 6304 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.2.4 Other Embodiments

The embodiments described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These embodiments are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate embodiments, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate embodiments fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention. Example implementations of the energy transfer module 6304 are disclosed in

Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.3 Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the methods), structure(s), and/or embodiments described above are presented in Sections 4 and 5 below. These implementations are presented for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described therein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

2. *Directly Down-Converting an EM Signal to an Demodulated Baseband Signal by Transferring Energy from the EM Signal*

In an embodiment, the invention directly down-converts an EM signal to a baseband signal, by transferring energy from the EM signal. This embodiment is referred to herein as direct-to-data down-conversion and is illustrated by 4516 in FIG. 45B.

This embodiment can be implemented with modulated and unmodulated EM signals. This embodiment is described herein using the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} in FIG. 1, as an example. In the example, the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} is directly down-converted to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB} Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any EM signal, including but not limited to, modulated carrier signals and unmodulated

carrier signals.

The following sections describe methods for directly down-converting the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB} . Exemplary structural embodiments for implementing the methods are also described. It should be understood that the invention is not limited to the particular embodiments described below. Equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the following will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., are within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

The following sections include a high level discussion, example embodiments, and implementation examples.

2.1 High Level Description

This section (including its subsections) provides a high-level description of transferring energy from the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to directly down-convert the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}, according to the invention. In particular, an operational process of directly down-converting the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB} is described at a high-level. Also, a structural implementation for implementing this process is described at a high-level. The structural implementation is described herein for illustrative purposes, and is not limiting. In particular, the process described in this section can be achieved using any number of structural implementations, one of which is described in this section. The details of such structural implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein.

2.1.1 Operational Description

FIG. 46C depicts a flowchart 4613 that illustrates an exemplary method for transferring energy from the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to directly downconvert the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. The exemplary method illustrated in the flowchart 4613 IS an embodiment of the flowchart 4601 in FIG. 46A.

Any and all combinations of modulation techniques are valid for this invention. For ease of discussion, the digital AM carrier signal 616 is used to illustrate a high level operational description of the invention. Subsequent sections provide detailed flowcharts and descriptions for AM and PM example embodiments. FM presents special considerations that are dealt with separately in Section III.3. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any type of EM signal, including any form of modulated carrier signal and unmodulated carrier signals.

The high-level process illustrated in the flowchart 4613 is now described at a high level using the digital AM carrier signal 616, from FIG. 6C. The digital AM carrier signal 616 is re-illustrated in FIG. 56A for convenience.

The process of the flowchart 4613 begins at step 4614, which includes receiving an EM signal. Step 4613 is represented by the digital AM carrier signal 616.

Step 4616 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 56B illustrates an example energy transfer signal 5602, which includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5604 having apertures 5606 that are optimized for energy transfer. The optimized apertures 5606 are non-negligible and tend away from zero.

The non-negligible apertures 5606 can be any width other than the period of the EM signal, or a multiple thereof. For example, the non-negligible apertures 5606 can be less than the period of the signal 616 such as, 1/8, ¼, ½, 3/4, etc., of the period of the signal 616. Alternatively, the non-negligible apertures 5606 can be greater than the period of the signal 616. The width and amplitude of the apertures 5606 can be optimized based on one or more of a variety of criteria, as described in sections below.

The energy transfer pulses 5604 repeat at the aliasing rate or pulse repetition rate. The aliasing rate is determined in accordance with EQ. (2), reproduced below for convenience.

$$F_C = n \bullet F_{AR} \pm F_{IF} \qquad \text{EQ. (2)}$$

When directly down-converting an EM signal to baseband (i.e., zero IF), EQ. (2) becomes:

$$F_C = n \bullet F_{AR} \qquad \text{EQ. (8)}$$

Thus, to directly down-convert the AM signal 616 to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the AM signal 616 or to a harmonic or sub-harmonic thereof. Although the aliasing rate is too low to permit reconstruction of higher frequency components of the AM signal 616 (i.e., the carrier frequency), it is high enough to permit substantial reconstruction of the lower frequency modulating baseband signal 310.

Step 4618 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert the EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. FIG. 56C illustrates a demodulated baseband signal 5610 that is generated by the direct down-conversion process. The demodulated baseband signal 5610 is similar to the digital modulating baseband signal 310 in FIG. 3.

FIG. 56D depicts a filtered demodulated baseband signal 5612, which can be generated from the demodulated baseband signal 5610. The invention can thus generate a filtered output signal, a partially filtered output signal, or a relatively unfiltered output signal. The choice between filtered, partially filtered and non-filtered output signals is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

2.1.2 Structural Description

In an embodiment, the energy transfer system 6302 transfers energy from any type of EM signal, including modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signal, to directly down-convert the EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal. Preferably, the energy transfer system 6302 transfers energy from the EM signal 1304 to down-convert it to demodulated baseband signal in the manner shown in the operational flowchart 4613. However, it should be understood that the scope and spirit of the invention includes other structural embodiments for performing the steps of the flowchart 4613. The specifics of the other structural embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

Operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described in at a high level for the digital AM carrier signal 616, with reference to the flowchart 4613 and the timing diagrams illustrated in FIGS. 56A-D. In step 4614, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the digital AM

carrier signal 616. In step 4616, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 5602. In step 4618, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the digital AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert it to the demodulated baseband signal 5610.

Example implementations of the energy transfer module 6302 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

2.2 Example Embodiments

Various embodiments related to the method(s) and structure(s) described above are presented in this section (and its subsections). These embodiments are described herein for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to these embodiments. Alternate embodiments (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the embodiments described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. The invention is intended and adapted to include such alternate embodiments.

The method for down-converting the EM signal to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}, illustrated in the flowchart 4613 of FIG. 46C, can be implemented with various types of modulated carrier signals including, but not limited to, AM, PM, etc., or any combination thereof. The flowchart 4613 of FIG. 46C is described below for AM and PM. The exemplary descriptions below are intended to facilitate an understanding of the present invention. The present invention is not limited to or by the exemplary embodiments below.

2.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Amplitude Modulation

2.2.1.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 4613 in FIG. 46C is described below for the analog AM carrier signal 516, illustrated in FIG. 5C, and for the digital AM carrier signal 616, illustrated in FIG. 6C.

2.2.1.1.1 Analog AM Carrier Signal

A process for directly down-converting the analog AM carrier signal 516 in FIG. 5C to a demodulated baseband signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 4613 in FIG. 46C. The analog AM carrier signal 516 is re-illustrated in 57A for convenience. For this example, the analog AM carrier signal 516 oscillates at approximately 900 MHZ. In FIG. 57B, an analog AM carrier signal portion 5704 illustrates a portion of the analog AM carrier signal 516 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4614, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the analog AM carrier signa1516.

Step 4616 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. In FIG. 57C, an example energy transfer signal 5706 is illustrated on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 57B. The energy transfer signal 5706 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5707 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5707 repeat at the aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting an EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the EM signal.

Step 4618 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert the EM signal to the demodulated

baseband signal F_{DMB}. In FIG. 57D, an affected analog AM carrier signal 5708 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the analog AM carrier signa1516 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected analog AM carrier signa15708 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 57B and 57C.

FIG. 57E illustrates a demodulated baseband signal 5712, which IS generated by the down-conversion process. Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the signal 516, essentially no IF is produced. The only substantial aliased component is the baseband signal. The demodulated baseband signal 5712 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The demodulated baseband signal 5712 includes portions 5710A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5707 in FIG. 57C, and portions 5710B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5707. Portions 5710A represent energy transferred from the analog AM carrier signal 516 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5710A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5707. Portions 5710B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 5710B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5707.

In FIG. 57F, a demodulated baseband signal 5716 represents a filtered version of the demodulated baseband signal 5712, on a compressed time scale. The demodulated baseband signal 5716 is substantially similar to the modulating baseband signal 210 and can be further processed using any signal processing technique(s) without further down-conversion or demodulation.

The present invention can output the unfiltered demodulated baseband signal 5712, the filtered demodulated baseband signal 5716, a partially filtered demodulated baseband signal, a stair step output signal,

etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the demodulated baseband signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate direct down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the demodulated baseband signals 5712 in FIG. 57E and 5716 in FIG. 57F illustrate that the analog AM carrier signal 516 was directly down-converted to a demodulated baseband signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

2.2.1.1.2 Digital AM Carrier Signal

A process for directly down-converting the digital AM carrier signal 616 in FIG. 6C to a demodulated baseband signal is now described for the flowchart 4613 in FIG. 46C. The digital AM carrier signal 616 is re-illustrated in 58A for convenience. For this example, the digital AM carrier signal 616 oscillates at approximately 900 MHZ. In FIG. 58B, a digital AM carrier signal portion 5804 illustrates a portion of the digital AM carrier signal 616 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4614, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the digital AM carrier signal 616.

Step 4616 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. In FIG. 58C, an example energy transfer signal 5806 is illustrated on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 58B. The energy transfer signal 5806 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5807 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5807 repeat at the aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when

directly down-converting an EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the EM signal.

Step 4618 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert the EM signal to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. In FIG. 58D, an affected digital AM carrier signal 5808 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the digital AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected digital AM carrier signal 5808 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 58B and 58C.

FIG. 58E illustrates a demodulated baseband signal 5812, which is generated by the down-conversion process. Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the signal 616, essentially no IF is produced. The only substantial aliased component is the baseband signal. The demodulated baseband signal 5812 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The demodulated baseband signal 5812 includes portions 5810A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5807 in FIG. 58e, and portions 5810B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5807. Portions 5810A represent energy transferred from the digital AM carrier signal 616 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5810A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5807. Portions 5810B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 5810B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5807.

In FIG. 58F, a demodulated baseband signal 5816 represents a filtered version of the demodulated baseband signal 5812, on a compressed time scale. The demodulated baseband signal 5816 is substantially similar to the modulating baseband signal 310 and can be

further processed using any signal processing technique(s) without further down-conversion or demodulation.

The present invention can output the unfiltered demodulated baseband signal 5812, the filtered demodulated baseband signal 5816, a partially filtered demodulated baseband signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate direct down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the demodulated baseband signals 5812 in FIG. 58E and 5816 in FIG. 58F illustrate that the digital AM carrier signal 616 was directly down-converted to a demodulated baseband signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

2.2.1.2 Structural Description

In an embodiment, the energy transfer module 6304 preferably transfers energy from the EM signal to directly down-convert it to a demodulated baseband signal in the manner shown in the operational flowchart 4613. But it should be understood that the scope and spirit of the invention includes other structural embodiments for performing the steps of the flowchart 1413. The specifics of the other structural embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

Operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the digital AM carrier signal 516, with reference to the flowchart 4613 and the timing diagrams in FIGS. 57A-F. In step 4612, the energy

transfer module 6404 receives the analog AM carrier signal 516. In step 4614, the energy transfer module 6404 receives the energy transfer signal 5706. In step 4618, the energy transfer module 6404 transfers energy from the analog AM carrier signal 516 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5706, to directly down-convert the digital AM carrier signal 516 to the demodulated baseband signals 5712 or 5716.

The operation of the energy transfer system 6402 is now described for the digital AM carrier signal 616, with reference to the flowchart 4613 and the timing diagrams in FIGS. 58A-F. In step 4614, the energy transfer module 6404 receives the digital AM carrier signal 616. In step 4616, the energy transfer module 6404 receives the energy transfer signal 5806. In step 4618, the energy transfer module 6404 transfers energy from the digital AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5806, to directly down-convert the digital AM carrier signal 616 to the demodulated baseband signals 5812 or 5816.

Example implementations of the energy transfer module 6302 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

2.2.2 Second Example Embodiment: Phase Modulation

2.2.2.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of flowchart 4613 in FIG. 46C is described below for the analog PM carrier signal 916, illustrated in FIG. 9C and for the digital PM carrier signal 1016, illustrated in FIG. 10C.

2.2.2.1.1 Analog PM Carrier Signal

A process for directly down-converting the analog PM carrier signal 916 to a demodulated baseband signal is now described for the flowchart 4613 in FIG. 46C. The analog PM carrier signal 916 is re-illustrated in 59A for convenience. For this example, the analog PM carrier signal 916 oscillates at approximately 900 MHZ. In FIG. 59B, an analog PM carrier signal portion 5904 illustrates a portion of the analog PM carrier signal 916 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4614, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the analog PM carrier signal 916.

Step 4616 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. In FIG. 59C, an example energy transfer signal 5906 is illustrated on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 59B. The energy transfer signal 5906 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5907 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5907 repeat at the aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when directly down-converting an EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the EM signal.

Step 4618 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert the EM signal to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. In FIG. 59D, an affected analog PM carrier signal 5908 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the analog PM carrier signal 916 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected analog PM carrier signal 5908 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 59B and 59C.

FIG. 59E illustrates a demodulated baseband signal 5912, which IS generated by the down-conversion process. Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the signal 516,

essentially no IF is produced. The only substantial aliased component is the baseband signal. The demodulated baseband signal 5912 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The demodulated baseband signal 5912 includes portions 5910A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5907 in FIG. 59C, and portions 5910B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5907. Portions 5910A represent energy transferred from the analog PM carrier signal 916 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5910A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5907. Portions 591 OB represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 5910B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5907.

In FIG. 59F, a demodulated baseband signal 5916 represents a filtered version of the demodulated baseband signal 5912, on a compressed time scale. The demodulated baseband signal 5916 is substantially similar to the modulating baseband signal 210 and can be further processed using any signal processing technique(s) without further down-conversion or demodulation.

The present invention can output the unfiltered demodulated baseband 5912, the filtered demodulated baseband signal 5916, a partially filtered demodulated baseband signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate direct down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the demodulated baseband signals 5912 in FIG. 59E and 5916 in FIG. 59F illustrate that

the analog PM carrier signal 916 was successfully down-converted to a demodulated baseband signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

2.2.2.1.2 Digital PM Carrier Signal

A process for directly down-converting the digital PM carrier signal 1016 in FIG. 6C to a demodulated baseband signal is now described for the flowchart 4613 in FIG. 46C. The digital PM carrier signal 1016 is re-illustrated in 60A for convenience. For this example, the digital PM carrier signal 1016 oscillates at approximately 900 MHZ. In FIG. 60B, a digital PM carrier signal portion 6004 illustrates a portion of the digital PM carrier signal 1016 on an expanded time scale. The process begins at step 4614, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the digital PM carrier signal 1016.

Step 4616 includes receiving an energy transfer signal F_{AR}. In FIG. 60C, an example energy transfer signal 6006 is illustrated on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 60B. The energy transfer signal 6006 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 6007 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 6007 repeat at the aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when directly down-converting an EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the EM signal.

Step 4618 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert the EM signal to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. In FIG. 60D, an affected digital PM carrier signal 6008 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the digital PM carrier signal 1016 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected digital PM

carrier signal 6008 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 60B and 60C.

FIG. 60E illustrates a demodulated baseband signal 6012, which IS generated by the down-conversion process. Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the signal 1016, essentially no IF is produced. The only substantial aliased component is the baseband signal. The demodulated baseband signal 6012 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The demodulated baseband signal 6012 includes portions 6010A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 6007 in FIG. 60C, and portions 6010B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 6007. Portions 6010A represent energy transferred from the digital PM carrier signal 1016 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 6010A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 6007. Portions 601 OB represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 6010B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 6007.

In FIG. 60F, a demodulated baseband signal 6016 represents a filtered version of the demodulated baseband signal 6012, on a compressed time scale. The demodulated baseband signal 6016 is substantially similar to the modulating baseband signal 310 and can be further processed using any signal processing technique(s) without further down-conversion or demodulation.

The present invention can output the unfiltered demodulated baseband signal 6012, the filtered demodulated baseband signal 6016, a partially filtered demodulated baseband signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate direct down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the demodulated baseband signals 6012 in FIG. 60E and 6016 in FIG. 60F illustrate that the digital PM carrier signal 1016 was successfully down-converted to a demodulated baseband signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

2.2.2.2 Structural Description

In an embodiment, the energy transfer system 6302 preferably transfers energy from an EM signal to directly down-convert it to a demodulated baseband signal in the manner shown in the operational flowchart 4613. But it should be understood that the scope and spirit of the invention includes other structural embodiments for performing the steps of the flowchart 1413. The specifics of the other structural embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s)

based on the discussion contained herein.

Operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the analog PM carrier signal 916, with reference to the flowchart 4613 and the timing diagrams in FIGS. 59A-F. In step 4614, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the analog PM carrier signal 916. In step 4616, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 5906. In step 4618, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the analog PM carrier signal 916 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5906, to directly down-convert the analog PM carrier signal 916 to the demodulated baseband signals 5912 or 5916.

Operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the digital PM carrier signal 1016, with reference to the flowchart 4613 and to the timing diagrams in FIGS. 60A-F. In step 4614, the energy transfer module 6404 receives the digital PM carrier signal 1016. In step 4616, the energy transfer module 6404 receives the energy transfer signal 6006. In step 4618, the energy transfer module 6404 transfers energy from the digital PM carrier signal 1016 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6006, to directly down-convert the digital PM carrier signal 1016 to the demodulated baseband signal 6012 or 6016.

Example implementations of the energy transfer module 6302 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

2.2.3 Other Embodiments

The embodiments described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These embodiments are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate embodiments, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate embodiments fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention. Example

implementations of the energy transfer module 6302 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

2.3 Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the method(s), structure(s), and/or embodiments described above are presented in Sections 4 and 5 below. These implementations are presented for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described therein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

3. Modulation Conversion

In an embodiment, the invention down-converts an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to a non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$, by transferring energy from the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} at an aliasing rate. This embodiment is illustrated in FIG. 45B as 4518.

In an example embodiment, the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} is down-converted to a phase modulated (PM) signal F_{PM}. In another example embodiment, the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} is down-converted to an amplitude modulated (AM) signal F_{AM}. The down-converted signal can be demodulated with any conventional demodulation technique to obtain a demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}.

The invention can be implemented with any type of FM signal. Exemplary embodiments are provided below for down-converting a

frequency shift keying (FSK) signal to a non-FSK signal. FSK is a sub-set of FM, wherein an FM signal shifts or switches between two or more frequencies. FSK is typically used for digital modulating baseband signals, such as the digital modulating baseband signal 310 in FIG. 3. For example, in FIG. 8, the digital FM signal 816 is an FSK signal that shifts between an upper frequency and a lower frequency, corresponding to amplitude shifts in the digital modulating baseband signal 310. The FSK signal 816 is used in example embodiments below.

In a first example embodiment, energy is transferred from the FSK signal 816 at an aliasing rate that is based on a mid-point between the upper and lower frequencies of the FSK signal 816. When the aliasing rate is based on the mid-point, the FSK signal 816 is down-converted to a phase shift keying (PSK) signal. PSK is a sub-set of phase modulation, wherein a PM signal shifts or switches between two or more phases. PSK is typically used for digital modulating baseband signals. For example, in FIG. 10, the digital PM signal 1016 is a PSK signal that shifts between two phases. The PSK signal 1016 can be demodulated by any conventional PSK demodulation technique(s).

In a second example embodiment, energy is transferred from the FSK signal 816 at an aliasing rate that is based upon either the upper frequency or the lower frequency of the FSK signal 816. When the aliasing rate is based upon the upper frequency or the lower frequency of the FSK signal 816, the FSK signal 816 is down-converted to an amplitude shift keying (ASK) signal. ASK is a sub-set of amplitude modulation, wherein an AM signal shifts or switches between two or more amplitudes. ASK is typically used for digital modulating baseband signals. For example, in FIG. 6, the digital AM signal 616 is an ASK signal that shifts between the first amplitude and the second amplitude. The ASK signal 616 can be demodulated by any conventional ASK demodulation technique(s).

The following sections describe methods for transferring energy from an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to down-convert it to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$. Exemplary structural embodiments for implementing the methods are also described. It should be understood that the invention is not limited to the particular embodiments described below. Equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the following will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., are within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

The following sections include a high level discussion, example embodiments, and implementation examples.

3.1 High Level Description

This section (including its subsections) provides a high-level description of transferring energy from the FM carrier signal F_{FM} to down-convert it to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$, according to the invention. In particular, an operational process for down-converting the FM carrier signal F_{FM} to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$ is described at a high-level. Also, a structural implementation for implementing this process is described at a high-level. The structural implementation is described herein for illustrative purposes, and is not limiting. In particular, the process described in this section can be achieved using any number of structural implementations, one of which is described in this section. The details of such structural implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein.

3.1.1 Operational Description

FIG. 46D depicts a flowchart 4619 that illustrates an exemplary method for down-converting the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$. The exemplary method illustrated in the flowchart 4619 is an embodiment of the flowchart 4601 in FIG. 46A.

Any and all forms of frequency modulation techniques are valid for this invention. For ease of discussion, the digital FM carrier (FSK) signal 816 is used to illustrate a high level operational description of the invention. Subsequent sections provide detailed flowcharts and descriptions for the FSK signal 816. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any type of FM signal.

The method illustrated in the flowchart 4619 is described below at a high level for down-converting the FSK signal 816 in FIG. 8C to a PSK signal. The FSK signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 84A for convenience.

The process of the flowchart 4619 begins at step 4620, which includes receiving an FM signal. This is represented by the FSK signal 816. The FSK signal 816 shifts between a first frequency 8410 and a second frequency 8412. The first frequency 8410 can be higher or lower than the second frequency 8412. In an exemplary embodiment, the first frequency 8410 is approximately 899 MHZ and the second frequency 8412 is approximately 901 MHZ.

Step 4622 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 84B illustrates an example energy transfer signal 8402 which includes a train of energy transfer pulses 8403 having non-negligible apertures 8405 that tend away from zero time in duration.

The energy transfer pulses 8403 repeat at the aliasing rate F_{AR}, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to a non-FM signal

$F_{(NON-FM)}$, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of a frequency within the FM signal. In this example overview embodiment, where the FSK signal 816 is to be down-converted to a PSK signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the mid-point between the first frequency 8410 and the second frequency 8412. For the present example, the mid-point is approximately 900 MHZ.

Step 4624 includes transferring energy from the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} at the aliasing rate to down-convert the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$. FIG. 84C illustrates a PSK signal 8404, which is generated by the modulation conversion process.

When the second frequency 8412 IS under-sampled, the PSK signal 8404 has a frequency of approximately 1 MHZ and is used as a phase reference. When the first frequency 8410 is under-sampled, the PSK signal 8404 has a frequency of 1 MHZ and is phase shifted 180 degrees from the phase reference.

FIG. 84D depicts a PSK signal 8406, which is a filtered version of the PSK signal 8404. The invention can thus generate a filtered output signal, a partially filtered output signal, or a relatively unfiltered stair step output signal. The choice between filtered, partially filtered and non-filtered output signals is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

Detailed exemplary embodiments for down-converting an FSK signal to a PSK signal and for down-converting an FSK signal to an ASK signal are provided below.

3.1.2 Structural Description

FIG. 63 illustrates the energy transfer system 6302 according to an embodiment of the invention. The energy transfer system 6302 includes the energy transfer module 6304. The energy transfer system 6302 is an example embodiment of the generic aliasing system 1302 in FIG. 13.

In a modulation conversion embodiment, the EM signal 1304 is an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} and the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from FM carrier signal at a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of a frequency within the FM frequency band. Preferably, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to down-convert it to a non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$ in the manner shown in the operational flowchart 4619. But it should be understood that the scope and spirit of the invention includes other structural embodiments for performing the steps of the flowchart 4619. The specifics of the other structural embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

The operation of the energy transfer system 6302 shall now be described with reference to the flowchart 4619 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 84A-84D. In step 4620, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the FSK signal 816. In step 4622, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 8402. In step 4624, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the FSK signal 816 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 8402 to down-convert the FSK signal 816 to the PSK signal 8404 or 8406.

Example implementations of the energy transfer module 6302 are provided in Section 4 below.

3.2 Example Embodiments

Various embodiments related to the method(s) and structure(s)

described above are presented in this section (and its subsections). These embodiments are described herein for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to these embodiments. Alternate embodiments (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the embodiments described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. The invention is intended and adapted to include such alternate embodiments.

The method for down-converting an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to a nonFM signal, $F_{(NON-FM)}$, illustrated in the flowchart 4619 of FIG.46D, can be implemented with any type of FM carrier signal including, but not limited to, FSK signals. The flowchart 4619 is described in detail below for down-converting an FSK signal to a PSK signal and for down-converting a PSK signal to an ASK signal. The exemplary descriptions below are intended to facilitate an understanding of the present invention. The present invention is not limited to or by the exemplary embodiments below.

3.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Down-Converting an FM Signal to a PM Signal

3.2.1.1 Operational Description

A process for down-converting the FSK signal 816 in FIG. 8C to a PSK signal is now described for the flowchart 4619 in FIG. 46D.

The FSK signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 61A for convenience. The FSK signal 816 shifts between a first frequency 6106 and a second frequency 6108. In the exemplary embodiment, the first frequency 6106 is lower than the second frequency 6108. In an alternative embodiment, the first frequency 6106 is higher than the second frequency 6108. For this example, the first frequency 6106 is approximately 899 MHZ and

the second frequency 6108 is approximately 901 MHZ.

FIG. 61B illustrates an FSK signal portion 6104 that represents a portion of the FSK signal 816 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4620, which includes receiving an FM signal. This is represented by the FSK signal 816.

Step 4622 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 61C illustrates an example energy transfer signal 6107 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 61B. The energy transfer signal 6107 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 6109 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 6109 repeat at the aliasing rate F_{AR}, which is determined or selected as described above. Generally, when down- converting an FM signal to a non-FM signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of a frequency within the FM signal.

In this example, where an FSK signal is being down-converted to a PSK signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic, of the mid-point between the frequencies 6106 and 6108. In this example, where the first frequency 6106 is 899 MHZ and second frequency 6108 is 901 MHZ, the mid-point is approximately 900 MHZ. Suitable aliasing rates thus include 1.8 GHZ, 900 MHZ, 450 MHZ, etc.

Step 4624 includes transferring energy from the FM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert it to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$. In FIG. 61D, an affected FSK signal 6118 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the FSK signal 816 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected FSK signal 6118 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 61B and 61C.

FIG. 61E illustrates a PSK signal 6112, which is generated by the modulation conversion process. PSK signal 6112 is illustrated with an

arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The PSK signal 6112 includes portions 6110A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 6107 in FIG. 61C. The PSK signal 6112 also includes portions 6110B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 6109. Portions 6110A represent energy transferred from the FSK 816 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 6110A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 6109. Portions 6110B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 6110B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 6107.

In FIG. 61F, a PSK signal 6114 represents a filtered version of the PSK signal 6112, on a compressed time scale. The present invention can output the unfiltered demodulated baseband signal 6112, the filtered demodulated baseband signal 6114, a partially filtered demodulated baseband signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention. The PSK signals 6112 and 6114 can be demodulated with a conventional demodulation technique(s)..

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate modulation conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the PSK signals 6112 in FIG. 61E and 6114 in FIG. 61F illustrate that the FSK signal 816 was successfully down-converted to a PSK signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

3.2.1.2 Structural Description

The operation of the energy transfer system 1602 is now described for down-converting the FSK signal 816 to a PSK signal, with reference to the flowchart 4619 and to the timing diagrams of FIGS. 61A-E. In step 4620, the energy transfer module 1606 receives the FSK signal 816 (FIG. 61A). In step 4622, the energy transfer module 1606 receives the energy transfer signal 6107 (FIG. 61C). In step 4624, the energy transfer module 1606 transfers energy from the FSK signal 816 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6107 to down-convert the FSK signal 816 to the PSK signal 6112 in FIG. 61E or the PSK signal 6114 in FIG. 61F.

3.2.2. Second Example Embodiment: Down-Converting an FM Signal to an AM Signal

3.2.2.1 Operational Description

A process for down-converting the FSK signal 816 in FIG. 8C to an ASK signal is now described for the flowchart 4619 in FIG. 46D.

The FSK signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 62A for convenience. The FSK signal 816 shifts between a first frequency 6206 and a second frequency 6208. In the exemplary embodiment, the first frequency 6206 is lower than the second frequency 6208. In an alternative embodiment, the first frequency 6206 is higher than the second frequency 6208. For this example, the first frequency 6206 is approximately 899 MHZ and the second frequency 6208 is approximately 901 MHZ.

FIG. 62B illustrates an FSK signal portion 6204 that represents a portion of the FSK signal 816 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4620, which includes receiving an FM signal. This is represented by the FSK signal 816.

Step 4622 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an

aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 62C illustrates an example energy transfer signal 6207 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 62B. The energy transfer signal 6207 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 6209 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 6209 repeat at the aliasing rate F_{AR}, which is determined or selected as described above. Generally, when down- converting an FM signal to a non-FM signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of a frequency within the FM signal.

In this example, where an FSK signal is being down-converted to an ASK signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic, of either the first frequency 6206 or the second frequency 6208. In this example, where the first frequency 6206 is 899 MHZ and the second frequency 6208 is 901 MHZ, the aliasing rate can be substantially equal to a harmonic or sub-harmonic of 899 MHZ or 901 MHZ.

Step 4624 includes transferring energy from the FM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert it to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$. In FIG. 62D, an affected FSK signal 6218 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the FSK signal 816 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected FSK signal 6218 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 62B and 62C.

FIG. 62E illustrates an ASK signal 6212, which is generated by the modulation conversion process. ASK signal 6212 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The ASK signal 6212 includes portions 6210A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 6209 in FIG. 62C. The ASK signal 6212 also includes portions 6210B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 6209. Portions 6210A represent energy transferred from the FSK

816 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. Portions 6210A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 6207. Portions 6210B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 6210B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 6207.

In FIG. 62F, an ASK signal 6214 represents a filtered version of the ASK signal 6212, on a compressed time scale. The present invention can output the unfiltered demodulated baseband signal 6212, the filtered demodulated baseband signal 6214, a partially filtered demodulated baseband signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention. The ASK signals 6212 and 6214 can be demodulated with a conventional demodulation technique(s).

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and/or polarity, as desired.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate modulation conversion III accordance with the invention. For example, the ASK signals 6212 in FIG. 62E and 6214 in FIG. 62F illustrate that the FSK signal 816 was successfully down-converted to an ASK signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

3.2.2.2 Structural Description

The operation of the energy transfer system 1602 is now described for down-converting the FSK signal 816 to an ASK signal, with reference to the flowchart 4619 and to the timing diagrams of FIGS. 62A-F. In step 4620, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the FSK signal 816 (FIG. 62A). In step 4622, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 6207 (FIG. 62C). In step 4624, the

energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the FSK signal 818 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6207 to down-convert the FSK signal 816 to the ASK signal 6212 in FIG. 62E or the ASK signal 6214 in FIG. 62F.

3.2.3 Other Example Embodiments

The embodiments described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These embodiments are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate embodiments, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate embodiments fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

Example implementations of the energy transfer module 6302 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

3.3 Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the method(s), structure(s), and/or embodiments described above are presented in Sections 4 and 5 below. These implementations are presented for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described therein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

4. Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the method(s), structure(s), and/or embodiments described above are presented in this section (and its subsections). These implementations are presented herein for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described herein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

FIG. 63 illustrates an energy transfer system 6302, which is an exemplary embodiment of the generic aliasing system 1302 in FIG. 13. The energy transfer system 6302 includes an energy transfer module 6304, which receives the EM signal 1304 and an energy transfer signal 6306. The energy transfer signal 6306 includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses repeat at an aliasing rate F_{AR}.

The energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the EM signal 1304 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6306, as described in the sections above with respect to the flowcharts 4601 in FIG. 46A, 4607 in FIG. 46B, 4613 in FIG. 46C and 4619 in FIG. 46D. The energy transfer module 6304 outputs a down-converted signal 1308B, which includes non-negligible amounts of energy transferred from the EM signal 1304.

FIG. 64A illustrates an exemplary gated transfer system 6402, which is an example of the energy transfer system 6302. The gated transfer system 6402 includes a gated transfer module 6404, which is described below.

FIG. 64B illustrates an exemplary inverted gated transfer system

6406, which is an alternative example of the energy transfer system 6302. The inverted gated transfer system 6406 includes an inverted gated transfer module 6408, which is described below.

4.1 The Energy Transfer System as a Gated Transfer System

FIG. 64A illustrates the exemplary gated transfer system 6402, which is an exemplary implementation of the energy transfer system 6302. The gated transfer system 6402 includes the gated transfer module 6404, which receives the EM signal 1304 and the energy transfer signal 6306. The energy transfer signal 6306 includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses repeat at an aliasing rate F_{AR}.

The gated transfer module 6404 transfers energy from the EM signal 1304 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6306, as described in the sections above with respect to the flowcharts 4601 in FIG. 46A, 4607 in FIG. 46B, 4613 in FIG. 46C and 4619 in FIG. 46D. The gated transfer module 6404 outputs the down-converted signal 1308B, which includes non-negligible amounts of energy transferred from the EM signal 1304.

4.1.1 The Gated Transfer System as a Switch Module and a Storage Module

FIG. 65 illustrates an example embodiment of the gated transfer module 6404 as including a switch module 6502 and a storage module 6506. Preferably, the switch module 6502 and the storage module 6506 transfer energy from the EM signal 1304 to down-convert it in any of the manners shown in the operational flowcharts 4601 in FIG. 46A, 4607 in FIG. 46B, 4613 in FIG. 46C and 4619 in FIG. 46D.

For example, operation of the switch module 6502 and the storage module 6506 is now described for down-converting the EM signal 1304 to an intermediate signal, with reference to the flowchart 4607 and the example timing diagrams in FIG. 83A-F.

In step 4608, the switch module 6502 receives the EM signal 1304 (FIG. 83A). In step 4610, the switch module 6502 receives the energy transfer signal 6306 (FIG. 83C). In step 4612, the switch module 6502 and the storage module 6506 cooperate to transfer energy from the EM signal 1304 and down-convert it to an intermediate signal. More specifically, during step 4612, the switch module 6502 closes during each energy transfer pulse to couple the EM signal 1304 to the storage module 6506. In an embodiment, the switch module 6502 closes on rising edges of the energy transfer pulses. In an alternative embodiment, the switch module 6502 closes on falling edges of the energy transfer pulses. While the EM signal 1304 is coupled to the storage module 6506, non-negligible amounts of energy are transferred from the EM signal 1304 to the storage module 6506. FIG. 83B illustrates the EM signal 1304 after the energy is transferred from it. FIG. 83D illustrates the transferred energy stored in the storage module 6506. The storage module 6506 outputs the transferred energy as the down-converted signal 1308B. The storage module 6506 can output the down-converted signal 1308B as an unfiltered signal such as signal shown in FIG. 83E, or as a filtered down-converted signal (FIG. 83F).

4.1.2 The Gated Transfer System as Break-Before Make Module

FIG. 67A illustrates an example embodiment of the gated transfer module 6404 as including a break-before-make module 6702 and a storage module 6716. Preferably, the break before make module 6702

and the storage module 6716 transfer energy from the EM signal 1304 to down-convert it in any of the manners shown in the operational flowcharts 4601 in FIG. 46A, 4607 in FIG. 46B, 4613 in FIG. 46C and 4619 in FIG. 46D.

In FIG. 67A, the break-before-make module 6702 includes a includes a normally open switch 6704 and a normally closed switch 6706. The normally open switch 6704 is controlled by the energy transfer signal 6306. The normally closed switch 6706 is controlled by an isolation signal 6712. In an embodiment, the isolation signal 6712 is generated from the energy transfer signal 6306. Alternatively, the energy transfer signal 6306 is generated from the isolation signal 6712. Alternatively, the isolation signal 6712 is generated independently from the energy transfer signal 6306. The break-before-make module 6702 substantially isolates an input 6708 from an output 6710.

FIG. 67B illustrates an example timing diagram of the energy transfer signal 6306, which controls the normally open switch 6704. FIG. 67C illustrates an example timing diagram of the isolation signal 6712, which controls the normally closed switch 6706. Operation of the break-before-make module 6702 is now described with reference to the example timing diagrams in FIGS. 67B and 67C.

Prior to time t0, the normally open switch 6704 and the normally closed switch 6706 are at their normal states.

At time t0, the isolation signal 6712 in FIG. 67C opens the normally closed switch 6706. Thus, just after time t0, the normally open switch 6704 and the normally closed switch 6706 are open and the input 6708 is isolated from the output 6710.

At time t1, the energy transfer signal 6306 in FIG. 67B closes the normally open switch 6704 for the non-negligible duration of a pulse. This couples the EM signal 1304 to the storage module 6716.

Prior to t2, the energy transfer signal 6306 in FIG. 67B opens the

normally open switch 6704. This de-couples the EM signal 1304 from the storage module 6716.

At time t2, the isolation signal 6712 in FIG. 67C closes the normally closed switch 6706. This couples the storage module 6716 to the output 6710.

The storage module 6716, is similar to the storage module 6506 FIG. 65. The break-before-make gated transfer system 6701 down-converts the EM signal 1304 in a manner similar to that described with reference to the gated transfer system 6501 in FIG. 65.

4.1.3 Example Implementations of the Switch Module

The switch module 6502 in FIG. 65 and the switch modules 6704 and 6706 in FIG. 67A can be any type of switch device that preferably has a relatively low impedance when closed and a relatively high impedance when open. The switch modules 6502, 6704 and 6706 can be implemented with normally open or normally closed switches. The switch modules need not be ideal switch modules.

FIG. 66B illustrates the switch modules 6502, 6704 and 6706 as a switch module 6610. Switch module 6610 can be implemented in either normally open or normally closed architecture. The switch module 6610 (e.g., switch modules 6502, 6704 and 6706) can be implemented with any type of suitable switch device, including, but not limited, to mechanical switch devices and electrical switch devices, optical switch devices, etc., and combinations thereof. Such devices include, but are not limited to transistor switch devices, diode switch devices, relay switch devices, optical switch devices, micro-machine switch devices, etc., or combinations thereof.

In an embodiment, the switch module 6610 can be implemented as a transistor, such as, for example, a field effect transistor (FET), a

bi-polar transistor, or any other suitable circuit switching device.

In FIG. 66A, the switch module 6610 is illustrated as a FET 6602. The FET 6602 can be any type of FET, including, but not limited to, a MOSFET, a JFET, a GaAsFET, etc .. The FET 6602 includes a gate 6604, a source 6606 and a drain 6608. The gate 6604 receives the energy transfer signal 6306 to control the switching action between the source 6606 and the drain 6608. In an embodiment, the source 6606 and the drain 6608 are interchangeable.

It should be understood that the illustration of the switch module 6610 as a FET 6602 in FIG. 66A is for example purposes only. Any device having switching capabilities could be used to implement the switch module 6610 (i.e., switch modules 6502, 6704 and 6706), as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art (s) based on the discussion contained herein.

In FIG. 66C, the switch module 6610 is illustrated as a diode switch 6612, which operates as a two lead device when the energy transfer signal 6306 is coupled to the output 6613.

In FIG. 66D, the switch module 6610 is illustrated as a diode switch 6614, which operates as a two lead device when the energy transfer signal 6306 is coupled to the output 6615.

4.1.4 Example Implementations of the Storage Module

The storage modules 6506 and 6716 store non-negligible amounts of energy from the EM signal 1304. In an exemplary embodiment, the storage modules 6506 and 6716 are implemented as a reactive storage module 6801 in FIG. 68A, although the invention is not limited to this embodiment. A reactive storage module is a storage module that employs one or more reactive electrical components to store energy transferred from the EM signal 1304. Reactive electrical components

include, but are not limited to, capacitors and inductors.

In an embodiment, the storage modules 6506 and 6716 include one or more capacitive storage elements, illustrated in FIG. 68B as a capacitive storage module 6802. In FIG. 68C, the capacitive storage module 6802 is illustrated as one or more capacitors illustrated generally as capacitor(s) 6804.

The goal of the storage modules 6506 and 6716 is to store non-negligible amounts of energy transferred from the EM signal 1304. Amplitude reproduction of the original, unaffected EM input signal is not necessarily important. In an energy transfer environment, the storage module preferably has the capacity to handle the power being transferred, and to allow it to accept a non-negligible amount of power during a non-negligible aperture period.

A terminal 6806 serves as an output of the capacitive storage module 6802. The capacitive storage module 6802 provides the stored energy at the terminal 6806. FIG. 68F illustrates the capacitive storage module 6802 as including a series capacitor 6812, which can be utilized in an inverted gated transfer system described below.

In an alternative embodiment, the storage modules 6506 and 6716 include one or more inductive storage elements, illustrated in FIG. 68D as an inductive storage module 6808.

In an alternative embodiment, the storage modules 6506 and 6716 include a combination of one or more capacitive storage elements and one or more inductive storage elements, illustrated in FIG. 68E as a capacitive/inductive storage module 6810.

FIG. 68G illustrates an integrated gated transfer system 6818 that can be implemented to down-convert the EM signal 1304 as illustrated in, and described with reference to, FIGS. 83A-F.

4.1.5 Optional Energy Transfer Signal Module

FIG. 69 illustrates an energy transfer system 6901, which is an example embodiment of the energy transfer system 6302. The energy transfer system 6901 includes an optional energy transfer signal module 6902, which can perform any of a variety of functions or combinations of functions including, but not limited to, generating the energy transfer signal 6306.

In an embodiment, the optional energy transfer signal module 6902 includes an aperture generator, an example of which is illustrated in FIG. 68J as an aperture generator 6820. The aperture generator 6820 generates non-negligible aperture pulses 6826 from an input signal 6824. The input signal 6824 can be any type of periodic signal, including, but not limited to, a sinusoid, a square wave, a saw-tooth wave, etc. Systems for generating the input signal 6824 are described below.

The width or aperture of the pulses 6826 is determined by delay through the branch 6822 of the aperture generator 6820. Generally, as the desired pulse width increases, the difficulty in meeting the requirements of the aperture generator 6820 decrease. hl other words, to generate non-negligible aperture pulses for a given EM input frequency, the components utilized in the example aperture generator 6820 do not require as fast reaction times as those that are required in an under-sampling system operating with the same EM input frequency.

The example logic and implementation shown in the aperture generator 6820 are provided for illustrative purposes only, and are not limiting. The actual logic employed can take many forms. The example aperture generator 6820 includes an optional inverter 6828, which is shown for polarity consistency with other examples provided herein.

An example implementation of the aperture generator 6820 is illustrated in FIG. 68K. Additional examples of aperture generation logic are provided in FIGS. 68B and 681. FIG. 68B illustrates a rising edge

pulse generator 6840, which generates pulses 6826 on rising edges of the input signal 6824. FIG. 681 illustrates a falling edge pulse generator 6850, which generates pulses 6826 on falling edges of the input signal 6824.

In an embodiment, the input signal 6824 is generated externally of the energy transfer signal module 6902, as illustrated in FIG. 69. Alternatively, the input signal 6924 is generated internally by the energy transfer signal module 6902. The input signal 6824 can be generated by an oscillator, as illustrated in FIG. 68L by an oscillator 6830. The oscillator 6830 can be internal to the energy transfer signal module 6902 or external to the energy transfer signal module 6902. The oscillator 6830 can be external to the energy transfer system 6901. The output of the oscillator 6830 may be any periodic waveform.

The type of down-conversion performed by the energy transfer system 6901 depends upon the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6306, which is determined by the frequency of the pulses 6826. The frequency of the pulses 6826 is determined by the frequency of the input signal 6824. For example, when the frequency of the input signal 6824 is substantially equal to a harmonic or a sub-harmonic of the EM signal 1304, the EM signal 1304 is directly down-converted to baseband (e.g. when the EM signal is an AM signal or a PM signal), or converted from FM to a non-FM signal. When the frequency of the input signal 6824 is substantially equal to a harmonic or a sub-harmonic of a difference frequency, the EM signal 1304 is down-converted to an intermediate signal.

The optional energy transfer signal module 6902 can be implemented in hardware, software, firmware, or any combination thereof.

4.2 The Energy Transfer System as an Inverted Gated

Transfer System

FIG. 64B illustrates an exemplary inverted gated transfer system 6406, which is an exemplary implementation of the energy transfer system 6302. The inverted gated transfer system 6406 includes an inverted gated transfer module 6408, which receives the EM signal 1304 and the energy transfer signal 6306. The energy transfer signal 6306 includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses repeat at an aliasing rate F_{AR}. The inverted gated transfer module 6408 transfers energy from the EM signal 1304 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6306, as described in the sections above with respect to the flowcharts 4601 in FIG. 46A, 4607 in FIG. 46B, 4613 in FIG. 46C and 4619 in FIG. 46D. The inverted gated transfer module 6408 outputs the down-converted signal 1308B, which includes non-negligible amounts of energy transferred from the EM signal 1304.

4.2.1 The Inverted Gated Transfer System as a Switch Module and a Storage Module

FIG. 74 illustrates an example embodiment of the inverted gated transfer module 6408 as including a switch module 7404 and a storage module 7406. Preferably, the switch module 7404 and the storage module 7406 transfer energy from the EM signal 1304 to down-convert it in any of the manners shown in the operational flowcharts 4601 in FIG. 46A, 4607 in FIG. 46B, 4613 in FIG. 46C and 4619 in FIG. 46D.

The switch module 7404 can be implemented as described above with reference to FIGS. 66A-D. The storage module 7406 can be implemented as described above with reference to FIGS. 68A-F.

In the illustrated embodiment, the storage module 7206 includes

one or more capacitors 7408. The capacitor(s) 7408 are selected to pass higher frequency components of the EM signal 1304 through to a terminal 7410, regardless of the state of the switch module 7404. The capacitor 7408 stores non-negligible amounts of energy from the EM signal 1304. Thereafter, the signal at the terminal 7410 is off-set by an amount related to the energy stored in the capacitor 7408.

Operation of the inverted gated transfer system 7401 is illustrated in FIGS. 75A-F. FIG. 75A illustrates the EM signal 1304. FIG. 75B illustrates the EM signal 1304 after transferring energy from it. FIG. 75C illustrates the energy transfer signal 6306, which includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible apertures.

FIG. 75D illustrates an example down-converted signal 1308B. FIG. 75E illustrates the down-converted signal 1308B on a compressed time scale. Since the storage module 7406 is a series element, the higher frequencies (e.g., RF) of the EM signal 1304 can be seen on the down-converted signal. This can be filtered as illustrated in FIG. 75F.

The inverted gated transfer system 7401 can be used to down-convert any type of EM signal, including modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signals.

4.3 Rail to Rail Operation for Improved Dynamic Range

4.3.1 Introduction

FIG. 110A illustrates aliasing module 11000 that down-converts EM signal 11002 to down-converted signal 11012 using aliasing signal 11014 (sometimes called an energy transfer signal). Aliasing module 11000 is an example of energy transfer module 6304 in FIG. 63. Aliasing module 11000 includes UFT module 11004 and storage module 11008. As shown in FIG. 110A, UFT module 11004 is implemented as a n-channel FET 11006, and storage module 11008 is implemented as a

capacitor 11010, although the invention is not limited to this embodiment.

FET 11006 receives the EM signal 11002 and aliasing signal 11014. In one embodiment, aliasing signal 11014 includes a train of pulses having non-negligible apertures that repeat at an aliasing rate. The aliasing rate may be harmonic or sub-harmonic of the EM signal 11002. FET 11006 samples EM signal 11002 at the aliasing rate of aliasing signal 11014 to generate down-converted signal 11012. In one embodiment, aliasing signal 11014 controls the gate of FET 11006 so that FET 11006 conducts (or turns on) when the FET gate-to-source voltage (V_{GS}) exceeds a threshold voltage (V_T). When the FET 11006 conducts, a channel is created from source to drain of FET 11006 so that charge is transferred from the EM signal 11002 to the capacitor 11010. More specifically, the FET 11006 conductance (1/R) vs V_{GS} is a continuous function that reaches an acceptable level at V_T, as illustrated in FIG. 110B. The charge stored by capacitor 11010 during successive samples forms down-converted signal 11012.

As stated above, n-channel FET 11006 conducts when V_{GS} exceeds the threshold voltage V_T. As shown in FIG. 110A, the gate voltage of FET 11006 is determined by aliasing signal 11014, and the source voltage is determined by the input EM signal 11002. Aliasing signal 11014 is preferably a plurality of pulses whose amplitude is predictable and set by a system designer. However, the EM signal 11002 is typically received over a communications medium by a coupling device (such as antenna). Therefore, the amplitude of EM signal 11102 may be variable and dependent on a number of factors including the strength of the transmitted signal, and the attenuation of the communications medium. Thus, the source voltage on FET 11006 is not entirely predictable and will affect V_{GS} and the conductance of FET 11006, accordingly.

For example, FIG. 111A illustrates EM signal 11102, which is an example of EM signal 11002 that appears on the source of FET 11006. EM signal 11102 has a section 11104 with a relatively high amplitude as shown. FIG. 111B illustrates the aliasing signal 11106 as an example of aliasing signal 11014 that controls the gate of FET 11006. FIG. 111C illustrates V_{GS} 11108, which is the difference between the gate and source voltages shown in FIGS. 111B and 111A, respectively. FET 11006 has an inherent threshold voltage V_T 11112 shown in FIG. 111 C, above which FET 11006 conducts. It is preferred that $V_{GS} > V_T$ during each pulse of aliasing signal 11106, so that FET 11006 conducts and charge is transferred from the EM signal 11102 to the capacitor 11010 during each pulse of aliasing signal 11106. As shown in FIG. 111C, the high amplitude section 11104 of EM signal 11102 causes a V_{GS} pulse 11110 that does exceed the V_T 11112, and therefore FET 11006 will not fully conduct as is desired. Therefore, the resulting sample of EM signal 11102 may be degraded, which potentially negatively affects the down-converted signal 11012.

As stated earlier, the conductance of FET 11006 vs V_{GS} is mathematically continuous and is not a hard cutoff. In other words, FET 11006 will marginally conduct when controlled by pulse 11110, even though pulse 11110 is below V_T 11112. However, the insertion loss of FET 11006 will be increased when compared with a V_{GS} pulse 11111, which is greater than V_T 11112. The performance reduction caused by a large amplitude input signal is often referred to as clipping or compression. Clipping causes distortion in the down-converted signal 11012, which adversely affects the faithful down conversion of input EM signal 11102. Dynamic range is a figure of merit associated with the range of input signals that can be faithfully down-converted without introducing distortion in the down-converted signal. The higher the dynamic range of a down-conversion circuit, the larger the input signals

that can down-converted without introducing distortion in the down-converted signal.

4.3.2 Complementary UFT Structure for Improved Dynamic Range

FIG. 112 illustrates aliasing module 11200, according to an embodiment of the invention, that down-converts EM signal 11208 to generate down-converted signal 11214 using aliasing signal 11220. Aliasing module 11200 is able to down-convert input signals over a larger amplitude range as compared to aliasing module 11000, and therefore aliasing module 11200 has an improved dynamic range when compared with aliasing module 11000. The dynamic range improvement occurs because aliasing module 11200 includes two UFT modules that are implemented with complementary FET devices. In other words, one FET is n-channel, and the other FET is p-channel, so that at least one FET is always conducting during an aliasing signal pulse, assuming the input signal does not exceed the power supply constraints. Aliasing module 11200 includes: delay 11202; UFT modules 11206, 11216; nodes 11210, 11212; and inverter 11222. Inverter 11222 is tied to voltage supplies V_+ 11232 and V_- 11234. UFT module 11206 comprises n-channel FET 11204, and UFT module 11216 comprises p-channel FET 11218.

As stated, aliasing module 11200 operates two complementary FETs to extend the dynamic range and reduce any distortion effects. This requires that two complementary aliasing signals 11224, 11226 be generated from aliasing signal 11220 to control the sampling by FETs 11218, 11204, respectively. To do so, inverter 11222 receives and inverts aliasing signal 11220 to generate aliasing signal 11224 that controls p-channel FET 11218. Delay 11202 delays aliasing signal

11220 to generate aliasing signal 11226, where the amount of time delay is approximately equivalent to that associated with inverter 11222. As such, aliasing signals 11224 and 11226 are approximately complementary in amplitude.

Node 11210 receives EM signal 11208, and couples EM signals 11227, 11228 to the sources of n-channel FET 11204 and p-channel FET 11218, respectively, where EM signals 11227, 11228 are substantially replicas of EM signal 11208. N-channel FET 11204 samples EM signal 11227 as controlled by aliasing signal 11226, and produces samples 11236 at the drain of FET 11204. Likewise, p-channel FET 11218 samples EM signal 11228 as controlled by aliasing signal 11224, and produces samples 11238 at the drain of PET 11218. Node 11212 combines the resulting charge samples into charge samples 11240, which are stored by capacitor 11230. The charge stored by capacitor 11230 during successive samples forms down-converted signal 11214. Aliasing module 11200 offers improved dynamic range over aliasing module 11000 because n-channel FET 11204 and p-channel FET 11214 are complementary devices. Therefore, if one device is cutoff because of a large input EM signal 11208, the other device will conduct and sample the input signal, as long as the input signal is between the power supply voltages V_+ 11232 and V_- 11234. This is often referred to as rail-to-rail operation as will be understood by those skilled in the arts.

For example, FIG. 113A illustrates EM signal 11302 which is an example of EM signals 11227, 11228 that are coupled to the sources of n-channel FET 11204 and p-channel FET 11218, respectively. As shown, EM signal 11302 has a section 11304 with a relatively high amplitude including pulses 11303, 11305. FIG. 113B illustrates the aliasing signal 11306 as an example of aliasing signal 11226 that controls the gate of n-channel FET 11204. Likewise for the p-channel FET, FIG. 113D illustrates the aliasing signal 11314 as an example of

aliasing signal 11224 that controls the gate of p-channel FET 11218. Aliasing signal 11314 is the amplitude complement of aliasing signal 11306.

FIG. 113C illustrates V_{GS} 11308, which is the difference between the gate and source voltages on n-channel FET 11204 that are depicted in FIGS. 113B and 113A, respectively. FIG. 113C also illustrates the inherent threshold voltage V_T 11309 for FET 11204, above which FET 11204 conducts. Likewise for the p-channel FET, FIG. 113E illustrates V_{GS} 11316, which is the difference between the gate and source voltages for p-channel FET 11218 that are depicted in FIGS. 113D and 113A, respectively. FIG. 113E also illustrates the inherent threshold voltage V_T 11317 for FET 11218, below which FET 11218 conducts.

As stated, n-channel FET 11204 conducts when V_{GS} 11308 exceeds V_T 11309, and p-channel FET 11218 conducts when V_{GS} 11316 drops below V_T 11317. As illustrated by FIG. 113C, n-channel FET 11204 conducts over the range of EM signal 11302 depicted in FIG. 113A, except for the EM signal pulse 11305 that results in a corresponding V_{GS} pulse 11310 (FIG. 113C) that does not exceed V_T 11309. However, p-channel FET 11218 does conduct because the same EM signal pulse 11305 causes a V_{GS} pulse 11320 (FIG. 113E) that drops well below that of V_T 11317 for the p-channel FET. Therefore, the sample of the EM signal 11302 is properly taken by p-channel FET 11218, and no distortion is introduced in down-converted signal 11214. Similarly, EM signal pulse 11303 results in V_{GS} pulse 11322 (FIG. 113E) that is inadequate for the p-channel FET 11218 to fully conduct. However, n-channel FET 11204 does fully conduct because the same EM signal pulse 11303 results in a V_{GS} 11311 (FIG. 113C) that greatly exceeds V_T 11309.

As illustrated above, aliasing module 11200 offers an

improvement in dynamic range over aliasing module 11000 because of the complimentary FET structure. Any input signal that is within the power supply voltages V_+ 11232 and V_- 11234 will cause either FET 11204 or FET 11218 to conduct, or cause both FETs to conduct, as is demonstrated by FIGS. 113A-113E. This occurs because any input signal that produces a V_{GS} that cuts-off the n-channe1 FET 11204 will push the p-channel FET 11218 into conduction. Likewise, any input signal that cuts-off the p-channe1 FET 11218 will push the n-channe1 FET 11204 into conduction, and therefore prevent any distortion of the down-converted output signal.

4.3.3 Biased Configurations

FIG. 114 illustrates aliasing module 11400, which is an alternate embodiment of aliasing module 11200. Aliasing module 11400 includes positive voltage supply (V_+) 11402, resistors 11404, 11406, and the elements in aliasing module 11200. V_+ 11402 and resistors 11404, 11406 produce a positive DC voltage at node 11405. This allows node 11405 to drive a coupled circuit that requires a positive voltage supply, and enables unipolar supply operation of aliasing module 11400. The positive supply voltage also has the effect of raising the DC level of the input EM signal 11208. As such, any input signal that is within the power supply voltages V_+ 11402 and ground will cause either FET 11204 or FET 11218 to conduct, or cause both FETs to conduct, as will be understood by those skilled in the arts based on the discussion herein.

FIG. 115 illustrates aliasing module 11500, which is an alternate biased configuration of aliasing module 11200. Aliasing module 11500 includes positive voltage supply 11502, negative voltage supply 11508, resistors 11504, 11506, and the elements in aliasing module 11200. The use of both a positive and negative voltage supply allows for node 11505

to be biased anywhere between V_+ 11502 and V_- 11508. This allows node 11505 to drive a coupled circuit that requires either a positive or negative supply voltage. Furthermore, any input signal that is within the power supply voltages V_+ 11502 and V_- 11508 will cause either FET 11204 or FET 11218 to conduct, or cause both FETs to conduct, as will be understood by those skilled in the arts based on the discussion herein.

4.3.4 Simulation Examples

As stated, an aliasing module with a complementary FET structure offers improved dynamic range when compared with a single (or unipolar) FET configuration. This is further illustrated by comparing the signal waveforms associated aliasing module 11602 (of FIG. 116) which has a complementary FET structure, with that of aliasing module 11702 (of FIG.117) which has a single (or unipolar) FET structure.

Aliasing module 11602 (FIG. 116) down-converts EM signal 11608 using aliasing signal 11612 to generate down-converted signal 11610. Aliasing module 11602 has a complementary FET structure and includes n-channel FET 11604, p-channel FET 11606, inverter 11614, and aliasing signal generator 11608. Aliasing module 11602 is biased by supply circuit 11616 as is shown. Aliasing module 11702 (FIG. 117) down-converts EM signal 11704 using aliasing signal 11708 to generate down-converted signal 11706. Aliasing module 11702 is a single FET structure comprising n-channel FET 11712 and aliasing signal generator 11714, and is biased using voltage supply circuit 11710.

FIGS. 118-120 are signal waveforms that correspond to aliasing module 11602, and FIGS. 121-123 are signal waveforms that correspond to aliasing module 11702. FIGS. 118, 121 are down-converted signals 11610, 11706, respectively. FIGS. 119, 122 are the sampled EM signal 11608, 11704, respectively. FIGS. 120, 123 are the aliasing signals

11612, 11708, respectively. Aliasing signal 11612 is identical to aliasing signal 11708 in order that a proper comparison between modules 11602 and 11702 can be made.

EM signals 11608, 11704 are relatively large input signals that approach the power supply voltages of ± 1.65 volts, as is shown in FIGS. 119, 122, respectively. In FIG. 119, sections 11902 and 11904 of signal 11608 depict energy transfer from EM signal 11608 to down-converted signal 11610 during by aliasing module 11602. More specifically, section 11902 depicts energy transfer near the -1.65v supply, and section 11904 depicts energy transfer near the +1.65v supply. The symmetrical quality of the energy transfer near the voltage supply rails indicates that at least one of complementary FETs 11604, 11606 are appropriately sampling the EM signal during each of the aliasing pulses 11612. This results in a down-converted signal 11610 that has minimal high frequency noise, and is centered between -1.0v and 1.0v (i.e. has negligible DC voltage component).

Similarly in FIG. 122, sections 12202 and 12204 illustrate the energy transfer from EM signal 11704 to down-converted signal 11706 by aliasing module 11702 (single FET configuration). More specifically, section 12202 depicts energy transfer near the -1.65v supply, and section 12204 depicts energy transfer near the +1.65v supply. By comparing sections 12202, 12204 with sections 11902, 11904 of FIG. 119, it is clear that the energy transfer in sections 12202, 12204 is not as symmetrical near the power supply rails as that of sections 11902, 11904. This is evidence that the EM signal 11704 is partially pinching off single FET 11712 over part of the signal 11704 trace. This results in a down-converted signal 11706 that has more high frequency noise when compared to down-converted signal 11610, and has a substantial negative DC voltage component.

In summary, down-converted signal 11706 reflects distortion

introduced by a relatively large EM signal that is pinching-off the single FET 11712 in aliasing module 11702. Down-converted signal 11610 that is produced by aliasing module 11602 is relatively distortion free. This occurs because the complementary FET configuration in aliasing module 11602 is able to handle input signals with large amplitudes without introducing distortion in the down-converted signal 11610. Therefore, the complementary FET configuration in the aliasing module 11602 offers improved dynamic range when compared with the single FET configuration of the aliasing module 11702.

4.4 Optimized Switch Structures

4.4.1 Splitter in CMOS

FIG. 124A illustrates an embodiment of a splitter circuit 12400 implemented in CMOS. This embodiment is provided for illustrative purposes, and is not limiting. In an embodiment, splitter circuit 12400 is used to split a local oscillator (LO) signal into two oscillating signals that are approximately 90° out of phase. The first oscillating signal is called the I-channel oscillating signal. The second oscillating signal is called the Q-channel oscillating signal. The Q-channel oscillating signal lags the phase of the I-channel oscillating signal by approximately 90°. Splitter circuit 12400 includes a first I-channel inverter 12402, a second I-channel inverter 12404, a third I-channel inverter 12406, a first Q-channel inverter 12408, a second Q-channel inverter 12410, an I-channel flip-flop 12412, and a Q-channel flip-flop 12414.

FIGS. 124F-J are example waveforms used to illustrate signal relationships of splitter circuit 12400. The waveforms shown in FIGS. 124F-J reflect ideal delay times through splitter circuit 12400 components. LO signal 12416 is shown in FIG. 124F. First, second, and

third I-channel inverters 12402, 12404, and 12406 invert LO signal 12416 three times, outputting inverted LO signal 12418, as shown in FIG. 124G. First and second Q-channel inverters 12408 and 12410 invert LO signal 12416 twice, outputting non-inverted LO signal 12420, as shown in FIG. 124H. The delay through first, second, and third I-channel inverters 12402, 12404, and 12406 is substantially equal to that through first and second Q-channel inverters 12408 and 12410, so that inverted LO signal 12418 and non-inverted LO signal 12420 are approximately 180° out of phase. The operating characteristics of the inverters may be tailored to achieve the proper delay amounts, as would be understood by persons skilled in the relevant art(s).

I-channel flip-flop 12412 inputs inverted LO signal 12418. Q-channel flip-flop 12414 inputs non-inverted LO signal 12420. In the current embodiment, I-channel flip-flop 12412 and Q-channel flip-flop 12414 are edge-triggered flip-flops. When either flip-flop receives a rising edge on its input, the flip-flop output changes state. Hence, I-channel flip-flop 12412 and Q-channel flip-flop 12414 each output signals that are approximately half of the input signal frequency. Additionally, as would be recognized by persons skilled in the relevant art(s), because the inputs to I-channel flip-flop 12412 and Q-channel flip-flop 12414 are approximately 180° out of phase, their resulting outputs are signals that are approximately 90° out of phase. I-channel flip-flop 12412 outputs I-channel oscillating signal 12422, as shown in FIG. 1241. Q-channel flip-flop 12414 outputs Q-channel oscillating signal 12424, as shown in FIG. 124J. Q-channel oscillating signal 12424 lags the phase of I-channel oscillating signal 12422 by 90°, also as shown in a comparison of FIGS. 1241 and 124J.

FIG. 124B illustrates a more detailed circuit embodiment of the splitter circuit 12400 of FIG. 124. The circuit blocks of FIG. 124B that are similar to those of FIG. 124A are indicated by corresponding

reference numbers. FIGS. 124C-D show example output waveforms relating to the splitter circuit 12400 of FIG. 124B. FIG. 124C shows I-channel oscillating signal 12422. FIG. 124D shows Q-channel oscillating signal 12424. As is indicated by a comparison of FIGS. 124C and 124D, the waveform of Q-channel oscillating signal 12424 of FIG. l24D lags the waveform of I-channel oscillating signal 12422 of FIG. l24C by approximately 90°.

It should be understood that the illustration of the splitter circuit 12400 in FIGS. 124A and l24B is for example purposes only. Splitter circuit 12400 may be comprised of an assortment of logic and semiconductor devices of a variety of types, as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

4.4.2 I/Q Circuit

FIG. 124E illustrates an example embodiment of a complete I/Q circuit 12426 in CMOS. I/Q circuit 12426 includes a splitter circuit 12400 as described in detail above. Further description regarding I/Q circuit implementations are provided herein, including the applications referenced above.

4.5 Example I and Q Implementations

4.5.1 Switches of Different Sizes

In an embodiment, the switch modules discussed herein can be implemented as a series of switches operating in parallel as a single switch. The series of switches can be transistors, such as, for example, field effect transistors (FET), bi-polar transistors, or any other suitable

circuit switching devices. The series of switches can be comprised of one type of switching device, or a combination of different switching devices.

For example, FIG. 125 illustrates a switch module 12500. In FIG. 125, the switch module is illustrated as a series of FETs 12502a-n. The FETs l2502a-n can be any type of FET, including, but not limited to, a MOSFET, a JFET, a GaAsFET, etc. Each of FETs 12502a-n includes a gate 12504a-n, a source 12506a-n, and a drain 12508a-n, similarly to that of FET 2802 of FIG. 28A. The series of FETs 12502a-n operate in parallel. Gates 12504a-n are coupled together, sources 12506a-n are coupled together, and drains 12508a-n are coupled together. Each of gates 12504a-n receives the control signal 1604, 8210 to control the switching action between corresponding sources 12506a-n and drains 12508a-n. Generally, the corresponding sources 12506a-n and drains 12508a-n of each of FETs 12502a-n are interchangeable. There is no numerical limit to the number of FETs. Any limitation would depend on the particular application, and the "a-n" designation is not meant to suggest a limit in any way.

In an embodiment, FETs 12502a-n have similar characteristics. In another embodiment, one or more of FETs l2502a-n have different characteristics than the other FETs. For example, FETs 12502a-n may be of different sizes. In CMOS, generally, the larger size a switch is (meaning the larger the area under the gate between the source and drain regions), the longer it takes for the switch to turn on. The longer turn on time is due in part to a higher gate to channel capacitance that exists in larger switches. Smaller CMOS switches turn on in less time, but have a higher channel resistance. Larger CMOS switches have lower channel resistance relative to smaller CMOS switches. Different turn on characteristics for different size switches provides flexibility in designing an overall switch module structure. By combining smaller

switches with larger switches, the channel conductance of the overall switch structure can be tailored to satisfy given requirements.

In an embodiment, FETs 12502a-n are CMOS switches of different relative sizes. For example, FET 12502a may be a switch with a smaller size relative to FETs 12502b-n. FET 12502b may be a switch with a larger size relative to FET 12502a, but smaller size relative to FETs 12502c-n. The sizes of FETs 12502c-n also may be varied relative to each other. For instance, progressively larger switch sizes may be used. By varying the sizes of FETs 12502a-n relative to each other, the turn on characteristic curve of the switch module can be correspondingly varied. For instance, the turn on characteristic of the switch module can be tailored such that it more closely approaches that of an ideal switch. Alternately, the switch module could be tailored to produce a shaped conductive curve.

By configuring FETs 12502a-n such that one or more of them are of a relatively smaller size, their faster turn on characteristic can improve the overall switch module turn on characteristic curve. Because smaller switches have a lower gate to channel capacitance, they can turn on more rapidly than larger switches.

By configuring FETs 12502a-n such that one or more of them are of a relatively larger size, their lower channel resistance also can improve the overall switch module turn on characteristics. Because larger switches have a lower channel resistance, they can provide the overall switch structure with a lower channel resistance, even when combined with smaller switches. This improves the overall switch structure's ability to drive a wider range of loads. Accordingly, the ability to tailor switch sizes relative to each other in the overall switch structure allows for overall switch structure operation to more nearly approach ideal, or to achieve application specific requirements, or to balance trade-offs to achieve specific goals, as will be understood by

persons skilled in the relevant arts(s) from the teachings herein.

It should be understood that the illustration of the switch module as a series of FETs l2502a-n in FIG. 125 is for example purposes only. Any device having switching capabilities could be used to implement the switch module (e.g., switch modules 2802, 2702, 2404 and 2406), as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

4.5.2 Reducing Overall Switch Area

Circuit performance also can be improved by reducing overall switch area. As discussed above, smaller switches (i.e., smaller area under the gate between the source and drain regions) have a lower gate to channel capacitance relative to larger switches. The lower gate to channel capacitance allows for lower circuit sensitivity to noise spikes. FIG. 126A illustrates an embodiment of a switch module, with a large overall switch area. The switch module of FIG. 126A includes twenty FETs 12602-12640. As shown, FETs 12602-12640 are the same size ("Wd" and "lng" parameters are equal). Input source 12646 produces the input EM signal. Pulse generator 12648 produces the energy transfer signal for FETs 12602-12640. Capacitor C1 is the storage element for the input signal being sampled by FETs 12602-12640. FIGS. 126B-126Q illustrate example waveforms related to the switch module of FIG. 126A. FIG. 126B shows a received 1.01 GHz EM signal to be sampled and down-converted to a 10 MHZ intermediate frequency signal. FIG. 126C shows an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate of 200 MHZ, which is applied to the gate of each of the twenty FETs 12602-12640. The energy transfer signal includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses repeat at the aliasing rate.

FIG. 126D illustrates the affected received EM signal, showing effects of transferring energy at the aliasing rate, at point 12642 of FIG. 126A. FIG. 126E illustrates a down-converted signal at point 12644 of FIG. 126A, which is generated by the down-conversion process.

FIG. 126F illustrates the frequency spectrum of the received 1.01 GHz EM signal. FIG. 126G illustrates the frequency spectrum of the received energy transfer signal. FIG. 126H illustrates the frequency spectrum of the affected received EM signal at point 12642 of FIG. 126A. FIG. 1261 illustrates the frequency spectrum of the down-converted signal at point 12644 of FIG. 126A.

FIGS. 126J-126M respectively further illustrate the frequency spectrums of the received 1.01 GHz EM signal, the received energy transfer signal, the affected received EM signal at point 12642 of FIG. 126A, and the down-converted signal at point 12644 of FIG. 126A, focusing on a narrower frequency range centered on 1.00 GHz. As shown in FIG. 126L, a noise spike exists at approximately 1.0 GHz on the affected received EM signal at point 12642 of FIG. 126A. This noise spike may be radiated by the circuit, causing interference at 1.0 GHz to nearby receivers.

FIGS. 126N-126Q respectively illustrate the frequency spectrums of the received 1.01 GHz EM signal, the received energy transfer signal, the affected received EM signal at point 12642 of FIG. l26A, and the down-converted signal at point 12644 of FIG. 126A, focusing on a narrow frequency range centered near 10.0 MHZ. In particular, FIG. 126Q shows that an approximately 5 mV signal was down-converted at approximately 10 MHZ.

FIG 127A illustrates an alternative embodiment of the switch module, this time with fourteen FETs 12702-12728 shown, rather than twenty FETs 12602-12640 as shown in FIG. 126A. Additionally, the FETs are of various sizes (some "Wd" and "lng" parameters are different between FETs).

FIGS. 127B-127Q, which are example waveforms related to the switch module of FIG. 127A, correspond to the similarly designated figures of FIGS. 126B-126Q. As FIG. 127L shows, a lower level noise spike exists at 1.0 GHz than at the same frequency of FIG. 126L. This correlates to lower levels of circuit radiation. Additionally, as FIG. 127Q shows, the lower level noise spike at 1.0 GHz was achieved with no loss in conversion efficiency. This is represented in FIG. 127Q by the approximately 5 mV signal down-converted at approximately 10 MHZ.

This voltage is substantially equal to the level down-converted by the circuit of FTG. 126A. In effect, by decreasing the number of switches, which decreases overall switch area, and by reducing switch area on a switch-by-switch basis, circuit parasitic capacitance can be reduced, as would be understood by persons skilled in the relevant art(s) from the teachings herein. In particular this may reduce overall gate to channel capacitance, leading to lower amplitude noise spikes and reduced unwanted circuit radiation.

It should be understood that the illustration of the switches above as FETs in FIGs. 126A-126Q and 127 A-127Q is for example purposes only. Any device having switching capabilities could be used to implement the switch module, as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

4.5.3 Charge Injection Cancellation

In embodiments wherein the switch modules discussed herein are comprised of a series of switches in parallel, in some instances it may be desirable to minimize the effects of charge injection. Minimizing charge injection is generally desirable in order to reduce the unwanted circuit radiation resulting therefrom. In an embodiment, unwanted charge injection effects can be reduced through the use of complementary n-channel MOSFETs and p-channel MOSFETs. N-channel MOSFETs and p-channel MOSFETs both suffer from charge injection. However, because signals of opposite polarity are applied to their respective gates to turn the switches on and off, the resulting charge injection is of opposite polarity. Resultingly, n-channel MOSFETs and p-channel MOSFETs may be paired to cancel their corresponding charge injection. Hence, in an embodiment, the switch module may be comprised of

n-channel MOSFETs and p-channel MOSFETS, wherein the members of each are sized to minimize the undesired effects of charge injection.

FIG 129A illustrates an alternative embodiment of the switch module, this time with fourteen n-channel FETs 12902-12928 and twelve p-channel FETs 12930-12952 shown, rather than twenty FETs 12602-12640 as shown in FIG. 126A. The n-channel and p-channel FETs are arranged in a complementary configuration. Additionally, the FETs are of various sizes (some "Wd" and "lng" parameters are different between FETs).

FIGS. 129B-129Q, which are example waveforms related to the switch module of FIG. 129A, correspond to the similarly designated figures of FIGS. 126B-126Q. As FIG. 129L shows, a lower level noise spike exists at 1.0 GHz than at the same frequency of FIG. 126L. This correlates to lower levels of circuit radiation. Additionally, as FIG. 129Q shows, the lower level noise spike at 1.0 GHz was achieved with no loss in conversion efficiency. This is represented in FIG. 129Q by the approximately 5 mV signal down-converted at approximately 10 MHZ. This voltage is substantially equal to the level down-converted by the circuit of FIG. 126A. In effect, by arranging the switches in a complementary configuration, which assists in reducing charge injection, and by tailoring switch area on a switch-by-switch basis, the effects of charge injection can be reduced, as would be understood by persons skilled in the relevant art(s) from the teachings herein. In particular this leads to lower amplitude noise spikes and reduced unwanted circuit radiation.

It should be understood that the use of FETs in FIGSs. 129A-129Q in the above description is for example purposes only. From the teachings herein, it would be apparent to persons of skill in the relevant art(s) to manage charge injection in various transistor

technologies using transistor pairs.

4.5.4 Overlapped Capacitance

The processes involved in fabricating semiconductor circuits, such as MOSFETs, have limitations. In some instances, these process limitations may lead to circuits that do not function as ideally as desired. For instance, a non-ideally fabricated MOSFET may suffer from parasitic capacitances, which in some cases may cause the surrounding circuit to radiate noise. By fabricating circuits with structure layouts as close to ideal as possible, problems of non-ideal circuit operation can be minimized.

FIG. l28A illustrates a cross-section of an example n-channel enhancement-mode MOSFET 12800, with ideally shaped n+ regions. MOSFET 12800 includes a gate 12802, a channel region 12804, a source contact 12806, a source region 12808, a drain contact 12810, a drain region 12812, and an insulator 12814. Source region 12808 and drain region 12812 are separated by p-type material of channel region 12804. Source region 12808 and drain region 12812 are shown to be n+ material. The n+ material is typically implanted in the p-type material of channel region 12804 by an ion implantation/diffusion process. Ion implantation/diffusion processes are well known by persons skilled in the relevant art(s). Insulator 12814 insulates gate 12802 which bridges over the p-type material. Insulator 12814 generally comprises a metal-oxide insulator. The channel current between source region 12808 and drain region 12812 for MOSFET 12800 is controlled by a voltage at gate 12802.

Operation of MOSFET 12800 shall now be described. When a positive voltage is applied to gate 12802, electrons in the p-type material of channel region 12804 are attracted to the surface below insulator

12814, forming a connecting near-surface region of n-type material between the source and the drain, called a channel. The larger or more positive the voltage between the gate contact 12806 and source region 12808, the lower the resistance across the region between.

In FIG. 128A, source region 12808 and drain region 12812 are illustrated as having n+ regions that were formed into idealized rectangular regions by the ion implantation process. FIG. 128B illustrates a cross-section of an example n-channel enhancement-mode MOSFET 12816 with non-ideally shaped n+ regions. Source region 12820 and drain region 12822 are illustrated as being formed into irregularly shaped regions by the ion implantation process. Due to uncertainties in the ion implantation/diffusion process, in practical applications, source region 12820 and drain region 12822 do not form rectangular regions as shown in FIG. 128A. FIG. 128B shows source region 12820 and drain region 12822 forming exemplary irregular regions. Due to these process uncertainties, the n+ regions of source region 12820 and drain region 12822 also may diffuse further than desired into the p-type region of channel region 12818, extending underneath gate 12802 The extension of the source region 12820 and drain region 12822 underneath gate 12802 is shown as source overlap 12824 and drain overlap 12826. Source overlap 12824 and drain overlap 12826 are further illustrated in FIG. 128C. FIG. 128C illustrates a top-level view of an example layout configuration for MOSFET 12816. Source overlap 12824 and drain overlap 12826 may lead to unwanted parasitic capacitances between source region 12820 and gate 12802, and between drain region 12822 and gate 12802. These unwanted parasitic capacitances may interfere with circuit function. For instance, the resulting parasitic capacitances may produce noise spikes that are radiated by the circuit, causing unwanted electromagnetic interference.

As shown in FIG. 128C, an example MOSFET 12816 may include a gate pad 12828. Gate 12802 may include a gate extension 12830, and a gate pad extension 12832. Gate extension 12830 is an unused portion of gate 12802 required due to metal implantation process tolerance limitations. Gate pad extension 12832 is a portion of gate 12802 used to couple gate 12802 to gate pad 12828. The contact required for gate pad 12828 requires gate pad extension 12832 to be of non-zero length to separate the resulting contact from the area between source region 12820 and drain region 12822. This prevents gate 12802 from shorting to the channel between source region 12820 and drain region 12822 (insulator 12814 of FIG. 128B is very thin in this region). Unwanted parasitic capacitances may form between gate extension 12830 and the substrate (FET 12816 is fabricated on a substrate), and between gate pad extension 12832 and the substrate. By reducing the respective areas of gate extension 12830 and gate pad extension 12832, the parasitic capacitances resulting therefrom can be reduced. Accordingly, embodiments address the issues of uncertainty in the ion implantation/diffusion process. It will be obvious to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) how to decrease the areas of gate extension 12830 and gate pad extension 12832 in order to reduce the resulting parasitic capacitances.

It should be understood that the illustration of the n-channe1 enhancement-mode MOSFET is for example purposes only. The present invention is applicable to depletion mode MOSFETs, and other transistor types, as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

4.6 Other Implementations

The implementations described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These implementations are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate implementations, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

5. Optional Optimizations of Energy Transfer at an Aliasing Rate

The methods and systems described in sections above can be optimized with one or more of the optimization methods or systems described below.

5.1 Doubling the Aliasing Rate (FAR) of the Energy Transfer Signal

In an embodiment, the optional energy transfer signal module 6902 in FIG. 69 includes a pulse generator module that generates aliasing pulses at twice the frequency of the oscillating source. The input signal 6828 may be any suitable oscillating source.

FIG. 71A illustrates a circuit 7102 that generates a doubler output signal 7104 (FIG. 71C) that may be used as an energy transfer signal 6306. The circuit 7102 generates pulses on both rising and falling edges of the input oscillating signal 7106 of FIG. 71B. The circuit 7102 can be implemented as a pulse generator and aliasing rate (F_{AR}) doubler. The doubler output signal 7104 can be used as the energy transfer signal 6306.

In the example of FIG. 71A, the aliasing rate is twice the

frequency of the input oscillating signal F_{OSC} 7106, as shown by EQ. (9) below.

$$F_{AR} = 2 * F_{osc} \qquad \text{EQ. (9)}$$

The aperture width of the aliasing pulses is determined by the delay through a first inverter 7108 of FIG. 71A. As the delay is increased, the aperture is increased. A second inverter 7112 is shown to maintain polarity consistency with examples described elsewhere. In an alternate embodiment inverter 7112 is omitted. Preferably, the pulses have non-negligible aperture widths that tend away from zero time. The doubler output signal 7104 may be further conditioned as appropriate to drive the switch module with non negligible aperture pulses. The circuit 7102 may be implemented with integrated circuitry, discretely, with equivalent logic circuitry, or with any valid fabrication technology.

5.2 Differential Implementations

The invention can be implemented in a variety of differential configurations. Differential configurations are useful for reducing common mode noise. This can be very useful in receiver systems where common mode interference can be caused by intentional or unintentional radiators such as cellular phones, CB radios, electrical appliances etc.. Differential configurations are also useful in reducing any common mode noise due to charge injection of the switch in the switch module or due to the design and layout of the system in which the invention is used. Any spurious signal that is induced in equal magnitude and equal phase in both input leads of the invention will be

substantially reduced or eliminated. Some differential configurations, including some of the configurations below, are also useful for increasing the voltage and/or for increasing the power of the down-converted signal 1308B.

Differential systems are most effective when used with a differential front end (inputs) and a differential back end (outputs). They can also be utilized in the following configurations, for example:

a) A single-input front end and a differential back end; and

b) A differential front end and a single-output back end.

Examples of these system are provided below, with a first example illustrating a specific method by which energy is transferred from the input to the output differentially.

While an example of a differential energy transfer module is shown below, the example is shown for the purpose of illustration, not limitation. Alternate embodiments (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations etc.) of the embodiment described herein will be apparent to those skilled in the relevant art based on the teachings contained herein. The invention is intended and adapted to include such alternate embodiments.

5.2.1 An Example Illustrating Energy Transfer Differentially

FIG.76A illustrates a differential system 7602 that can be included in the energy transfer module 6304. The differential system 7602 includes an inverted gated transfer design similar to that described with reference to FIG. 74. The differential system 7602 includes inputs 7604 and 7606 and outputs 7608 and 7610. The differential system 7602 includes a first inverted gated transfer module 7612, which includes a

storage module 7614 and a switch module 7616. The differential system 7602 also includes a second inverted gated transfer module 7618, which includes a storage module 7620 and a switch module 7616, which it shares in common with inverted gated transfer module 7612.

One or both of the inputs 7604 and 7606 are coupled to an EM signal source. For example, the inputs can be coupled to an EM signal source, wherein the input voltages at the inputs 7604 and 7606 are substantially equal in amplitude but 180 degrees out of phase with one another. Alternatively, where dual inputs are unavailable, one of the inputs 7604 and 7606 can be coupled to ground.

In operation, when the switch module 7616 is closed, the storage modules 7614 and 7620 are in series and, provided they have similar capacitive values, accumulate charge of equal magnitude but opposite polarities. When the switch module 7616 is open, the voltage at the output 7608 is relative to the input 7604, and the voltage at the output 7610 is relative to the voltage at the input 7606.

Portions of the signals at the outputs 7608 and 7610 include signals resulting from energy stored in the storage modules 7614 and 7620, respectively, when the switch module 7616 was closed. The portions of the signals at the outputs 7608 and 7610 resulting from the stored charge are generally equal in amplitude to one another but 180 degrees out of phase.

Portions of the signals at the outputs 7608 and 7610 also include ripple voltage or noise resulting from the switching action of the switch module 7616. But because the switch module is positioned between the two outputs 7608 and 7610, the noise introduced by the switch module appears at the outputs as substantially equal and in-phase with one another. As a result, the ripple voltage can be substantially canceled out by inverting the signal at one of the outputs 7608 or 7610 and adding it to

the other remaining output. Additionally, any noise that is impressed with equal amplitude and equal phase onto the input terminals 7604 and 7606 by any other noise sources will tend to be canceled in the same way.

5.2.1.1 Differential Input-to-Differential Output

FIG. 76B illustrates the differential system 7602 wherein the inputs 7604 and 7606 are coupled to equal and opposite EM signal sources, illustrated here as dipole antennas 7624 and 7626. In this embodiment, when one of the outputs 7608 or 7610 is inverted and added to the other output, the common mode noise due to the switching module 7616 and other common mode noise present at the input terminals 7604 and 7606 tend to substantially cancel out.

5.2.1.2 Single Input-to-Differential Output

FIG. 76C illustrates the differential system 7602 wherein the input 7604 is coupled to an EM signal source such as a monopole antenna 7628 and the input 7606 is coupled to ground. In this configuration, the voltages at the outputs 7608 and 7610 are approximately one half the value of the voltages at the outputs in the implementation illustrated in FIG. 76B, given all other parameters are equal.

FIG. 76E illustrates an example single input to differential output receiver/down-converter system 7636. The system 7636 includes the differential system 7602 wherein the input 7606 is coupled to ground as in FIG. 76C. The input 7604 is coupled to an EM signal source 7638 through an optional input impedance match 7642. The EM signal source

impedance can be matched with an impedance match system 7642 as described in section 5 below.

The outputs 7608 and 7610 are coupled to a differential circuit 7644 such as a filter, which preferably inverts one of the outputs 7608 or 7610 and adds it to the other output 7608 or 7610. This substantially cancels common mode noise generated by the switch module 7616. The differential circuit 7644 preferably filters the higher frequency components of the EM signal 1304 that pass through the storage modules 7614 and 7620. The resultant filtered signal is output as the down-converted signal 1308B.

5.2.1.3 Differential Input-to-Single Output

FIG. 76D illustrates the differential input to single output system 7629 wherein the inputs 7604 and 7606 of the differential system 7602 are coupled to equal and opposite EM signal dipole antennas 7630 and 7632. In system 7629, the common mode noise voltages are not canceled as in systems shown above. The output is coupled from terminal 7608 to a load 7648.

5.2.2 Specific Alternative Embodiments

In specific alternative embodiments, the present invention IS implemented using a plurality of gated transfer modules controlled by a common energy transfer signal with a storage module coupled between the outputs of the plurality of gated transfer modules. For example, FIG. 99 illustrates a differential system 9902 that includes first and second gated transfer modules 9904 and 9906, and a storage module 9908

coupled between. Operation of the differential system 9902 will be apparent to one skilled in the relevant art(s), based on the description herein.

As with the first implementation described above in section 5.5.1 and its sub-sections, the gated transfer differential system 9902 can be implemented with a single input, differential inputs, a single output, differential outputs, and combinations thereof. For example, FIG. 100 illustrates an example single input-to-differential output system 10002.

Where common-mode rejection is desired to protect the input from various common-mode effects, and where common mode rejection to protect the output is not necessary, a differential input-to-single output implementation can be utilized. FIG. 102 illustrates an example differential to-single ended system 10202, where a balance/unbalance (balun) circuit 10204 is utilized to generate the differential input. Other input configurations are contemplated. A first output 10206 is coupled to a load l0208. A second output 10210 is coupled to ground point 10212.

Typically, in a balanced-to-unbalanced system, where a single output is taken from a differential system without the use of a balun, (i.e., where one of the output signals is grounded), a loss of about 6 db is observed. In the configuration of FIG. 102, however, the ground point 10212 simply serves as a DC voltage reference for the circuit. The system 10202 transfers charge from the input in the same manner as if it were full differential, with its conversion efficiency generally affected only by the parasitics of the circuit components used, such as the Rds(on) on FET switches if used in the switch module. In other words, the charge transfer still continues in the same manner of a single ended implementation, providing the necessary single-ended ground to the input circuitry when the aperture is active, yet configured to allow the

input to be differential for specific common-mode rejection capability and/or interface between a differential input and a single ended output system.

5.2.3 Specific Examples of Optimizations and Configurations for Inverted and Non-Inverted Differential Designs

Gated transfer systems and inverted gated transfer systems can be implemented with any of the various optimizations and configurations disclosed through the specification, such as, for example, impedance matching, tanks and resonant structures, bypass networks, etc. For example, the differential system 10002 in FIG. 100, which utilizes gated transfer modules with an input impedance matching system 10004 and a tank circuit 10006, which share a common capacitor. Similarly, differential system 10102 in FIG. 101, utilizes an inverted gated transfer module with an input impedance matching system 10104 and a tank circuit 10106, which share a common capacitor.

5.3 Smoothing the Down-Converted Signal

The down-converted signal 1308B may be smoothed by filtering as desired. The differential circuit 7644 implemented as a filter in FIG 76E illustrates but one example. This may be accomplished in any of the described embodiments by hardware, firmware and software implementation as is well known by those skilled in the arts.

5.4 Impedance Matching

The energy transfer module has input and output impedances generally defined by (1) the duty cycle of the switch module, and (2) the impedance of the storage module, at the frequencies of interest (e.g. at the EM input, and intermediate/baseband frequencies).

Starting with an aperture width of approximately ½ the period of the EM signal being down-converted as a preferred embodiment, this aperture width (e.g. the "closed time") can be decreased. As the aperture width is decreased, the characteristic impedance at the input and the output of the energy transfer module increases. Alternatively, as the aperture width increases from ½ the period of the EM signal being down-converted, the impedance of the energy transfer module decreases.

One of the steps in determining the characteristic input impedance of the energy transfer module could be to measure its value. In an embodiment, the energy transfer module's characteristic input impedance is 300 ohms. An impedance matching circuit can be utilized to efficiently couple an input EM signal that has a source impedance of, for example, 50 ohms, with the energy transfer module's impedance of, for example, 300 ohms. Matching these impedances can be accomplished in various manners, including providing the necessary impedance directly or the use of an impedance match circuit as described below.

Referring to FIG. 70, a specific embodiment using an RF signal as an input, assuming that the impedance 7012 is a relatively low impedance of approximately 50 Ohms, for example, and the input impedance 7016 is approximately 300 Ohms, an initial configuration for the input impedance match module 7006 can include an inductor 7306 and a capacitor 7308, configured as shown in FIG. 73. The

configuration of the inductor 7306 and the capacitor 7308 is a possible configuration when going from a low impedance to a high impedance. Inductor 7306 and the capacitor 7308 constitute an L match, the calculation of the values which is well known to those skilled in the relevant arts.

The output characteristic impedance can be impedance matched to take into consideration the desired output frequencies. One of the steps 1ll determining the characteristic output impedance of the energy transfer module could be to measure its value. Balancing the very low impedance of the storage module at the input EM frequency, the storage module should have an impedance at the desired output frequencies that is preferably greater than or equal to the load that is intended to be driven (for example, in an embodiment, storage module impedance at a desired lMHz output frequency is 2K ohm and the desired load to be driven is 50 ohms). An additional benefit of impedance matching is that filtering of unwanted signals can also be accomplished with the same components.

In an embodiment, the energy transfer module's characteristic output impedance is 2K ohms. An impedance matching circuit can be utilized to efficiently couple the down-converted signal with an output impedance of, for example, 2K ohms, to a load of, for example, 50 ohms. Matching these impedances can be accomplished in various manners, including providing the necessary load impedance directly or the use of an impedance match circuit as described below.

When matching from a high impedance to a low impedance, a capacitor 7314 and an inductor 7316 can be configured as shown in FIG. 73. The capacitor 7314 and the inductor 7316 constitute an L match, the calculation of the component values being well known to those skilled in the relevant arts.

The configuration of the input impedance match module 7006 and

the output impedance match module 7008 are considered to be initial starting points for impedance matching, in accordance with the present invention. In some situations, the initial designs may be suitable without further optimization. In other situations, the initial designs can be optimized in accordance with other various design criteria and considerations.

As other optional optimizing structures and/or components are utilized, their affect on the characteristic impedance of the energy transfer module should be taken into account in the match along with their own original criteria.

5.5 Tanks and Resonant Structures

Resonant tank and other resonant structures can be used to further optimize the energy transfer characteristics of the invention. For example, resonant structures, resonant about the input frequency, can be used to store energy from the input signal when the switch is open, a period during which one may conclude that the architecture would otherwise be limited in its maximum possible efficiency. Resonant tank and other resonant structures can include, but are not limited to, surface acoustic wave (SAW) filters, dielectric resonators, diplexers, capacitors, inductors, etc.

An example embodiment is shown in FIG. 94A. Two additional embodiments are shown in FIG. 88 and FIG. 97. Alternate implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention. These implementations take advantage of properties of series and parallel (tank) resonant circuits.

FIG. 94A illustrates parallel tank circuits in a differential implementation. A first parallel resonant or tank circuit consists of a capacitor 9438 and an inductor 9420 (tank1). A second tank circuit consists of a capacitor 9434 and an inductor 9436 (tank2).

As is apparent to one skilled in the relevant art(s), parallel tank circuits provide:

low impedance to frequencies below resonance;
low impedance to frequencies above resonance; and
high impedance to frequencies at and near resonance.

In the illustrated example of FIG. 94A, the first and second tank circuits resonate at approximately 920Mhz. At and near resonance, the impedance of these circuits is relatively high. Therefore, in the circuit configuration shown in FIG 94A, both tank circuits appear as relatively high impedance to the input frequency of 950Mhz, while simultaneously appearing as relatively low impedance to frequencies in the desired output range of 50Mhz.

An energy transfer signal 9442 controls a switch 9414. When the energy transfer signal 9442 controls the switch 9414 to open and close, high frequency signal components are not allowed to pass through tank1 or tank2. However, the lower signal components (50Mhz in this embodiment) generated by the system are allowed to pass through tank1 and tank2 with little attenuation. The effect of tank1 and tank2 is to further separate the input and output signals from the same node thereby producing a more stable input and output impedance. Capacitors 9418 and 9440 act to store the 50Mhz output signal energy between energy transfer pulses.

Further energy transfer optimization is provided by placing an inductor 9410 in series with a storage capacitor 9412 as shown. In the

illustrated example, the series resonant frequency of this circuit arrangement is approximately 1 GHz. This circuit increases the energy transfer characteristic of the system. The ratio of the impedance of inductor 9410 and the impedance of the storage capacitor 9412 is preferably kept relatively small so that the majority of the energy available will be transferred to storage capacitor 9412 during operation. Exemplary output signals A and B are illustrated in FIGS. 94B and 94C, respectively.

In FIG. 94A, circuit components 9404 and 9406 form an input impedance match. Circuit components 9432 and 9430 form an output impedance match into a 50 ohm resistor 9428. Circuit components 9422 and 9424 form a second output impedance match into a 50 ohm resistor 9426. Capacitors 9408 and 9412 act as storage capacitors for the embodiment. Voltage source 9446 and resistor 9402 generate a 950Mhz signal with a 50ohm output impedance, which are used as the input to the circuit. Circuit element 9416 includes a l50Mhz oscillator and a pulse generator, which are used to generate the energy transfer signal 9442.

FIG. 88 illustrates a shunt tank circuit 8810 in a single-ended to-single-ended system 8812. Similarly, FIG. 97 illustrates a shunt tank circuit 9710 in a system 9712. The tank circuits 8810 and 9710 lower driving source impedance, which improves transient response. The tank circuits 8810 and 9710 are able store the energy from the input signal and provide a low driving source impedance to transfer that energy throughout the aperture of the closed switch. The transient nature of the switch aperture can be viewed as having a response that, in addition to including the input frequency, has large component frequencies above the input frequency, (i.e. higher frequencies than the input frequency are also able to effectively pass through the aperture). Resonant circuits or

structures, for example resonant tanks 8810 or 9710, can take advantage of this by being able to transfer energy throughout the switch's transient frequency response (i.e. the capacitor in the resonant tank appears as a low driving source impedance during the transient period of the aperture).

The example tank and resonant structures described above are for illustrative purposes and are not limiting. Alternate configurations can be utilized. The various resonant tanks and structures discussed can be combined or utilized independently as is now apparent.

5.6 Charge and Power Transfer Concepts

Concepts of charge transfer are now described with reference to FIGS. 109A-F. FIG. 109A illustrates a circuit 10902, including a switch S and a capacitor 10906 having a capacitance C. The switch S is controlled by a control signal 10908, which includes pulses 19010 having apertures T.

In FIG. 109B, Equation 10 illustrates that the charge q on a capacitor having a capacitance C, such as the capacitor 10906, is proportional to the voltage V across the capacitor, where:

q = Charge in Coulombs
C = Capacitance in Farads
V = Voltage in Volts
A = Input Signal Amplitude

Where the voltage V is represented by Equation 11, Equation 10 can be rewritten as Equation 12. The change in charge Δq over time t is illustrated as in Equation 13 as $\Delta q(t)$, which can be rewritten as Equation

14. Using the sum-to-product trigonometric identity of Equation 15, Equation 14 can be rewritten as Equation 16, which can be rewritten as equation 17.

Note that the sin term in Equation 11 is a function of the aperture T only. Thus, $\Delta q(t)$ is at a maximum when T is equal to an odd multiple of π (i.e., $\pi, 3\pi, 5\pi, ...$). Therefore, the capacitor 10906 experiences the greatest change in charge when the aperture T has a value of π or a time interval representative of 180 degrees of the input sinusoid. Conversely, when T is equal to $2\pi, 4\pi, 6n, ...$, minimal charge is transferred.

Equations 18, 19, and 20 solve for q(t) by integrating Equation 10, allowing the charge on the capacitor 10906 with respect to time to be graphed on the same axis as the input sinusoid sin(t), as illustrated in the graph of FIG. 109C. As the aperture T decreases in value or tends toward an impulse, the phase between the charge on the capacitor C or q(t) and sin(t) tend toward zero. This is illustrated in the graph of FIG. 109D, which indicates that the maximum impulse charge transfer occurs near the input voltage maxima. As this graph indicates, considerably less charge is transferred as the value of T decreases.

Power/charge relationships are illustrated in Equations 21-26 of FIG. 109E, where it is shown that power is proportional to charge, and transferred charge is inversely proportional to insertion loss.

Concepts of insertion loss are illustrated in FIG. 109F. Generally, the noise figure of a lossy passive device is numerically equal to the device insertion loss. Alternatively, the noise figure for any device cannot be less that its insertion loss. Insertion loss can be expressed by Equation 27 or 28.

From the above discussion, it is observed that as the aperture T increases, more charge is transferred from the input to the capacitor 10906, which increases power transfer from the input to the output. It has been observed that it is not necessary to accurately reproduce the input voltage at the output because relative modulated amplitude and phase information is retained in the transferred power.

5.7 Optimizing and Adjusting the Non-Negligible Aperture Width/Duration

5.7.1 Varying Input and Output Impedances

In an embodiment of the invention, the energy transfer signal 6306 of FIG.63 is used to vary the input impedance seen by the EM Signal 1304 and to vary the output impedance driving a load. An example of this embodiment is described below using the gated transfer module 6404 shown in FIG. 68G, and in FIG. 82A. The method described below is not limited to the gated transfer module 6404, as it can be applied to all of the embodiments of energy transfer module 6304.

In FIG. 82A, when switch 8206 is closed, the impedance looking into circuit 8202 is substantially the impedance of storage module illustrated as the storage capacitance 8208, in parallel with the impedance of the load 8212. When the switch 8206 is open, the impedance at point 8214 approaches infinity. It follows that the average impedance at point 8214 can be varied from the impedance of the

storage module illustrated as the storage capacitance 8208, in parallel with the load 8212, to the highest obtainable impedance when switch 8206 is open, by varying the ratio of the time that switch 8206 is open to the time switch 8206 is closed. Since the switch 8206 is controlled by the energy transfer signal 8210, the impedance at point 8214 can be varied by controlling the aperture width of the energy transfer signal, in conjunction with the aliasing rate.

An example method of altering the energy transfer signal 6306 of FIG. 63 is now described with reference to FIG. 71A, where the circuit 7102 receives the input oscillating signal 7106 and outputs a pulse train shown as doubler output signal 7104. The circuit 7102 can be used to generate the energy transfer signal 6306. Example waveforms of 7104 are shown on FIG. 71C.

It can be shown that by varying the delay of the signal propagated by the inverter 7108, the width of the pulses in the doubler output signal 7104 can be varied. Increasing the delay of the signal propagated by inverter 7108, increases the width of the pulses. The signal propagated by inverter 7108 can be delayed by introducing a R/C low pass network in the output of inverter 7108. Other means of altering the delay of the signal propagated by inverter 7108 will be well known to those skilled in the art.

5.7.2 Real Time Aperture Control

In an embodiment, the aperture width/duration is adjusted in real time. For example, referring to the timing diagrams in FIGS. 98B-F, a clock signal 9814 (FIG. 98B) is utilized to generate an energy transfer signal 9816 (FIG. 98F), which includes energy transfer pluses 9818, having variable apertures 9820. In an embodiment, the clock signal 9814 is inverted as illustrated by inverted clock signal 9822 (FIG. 98D). The clock signal 9814 is also delayed, as illustrated by delayed clock signal 9824

(FIG. 98E). The inverted clock signal 9814 and the delayed clock signal 9824 are then ANDed together, generating an energy transfer signal 9816, which is active - energy transfer pulses 9818 - when the delayed clock signal 9824 and the inverted clock signal 9822 are both active. The amount of delay imparted to the delayed clock signal 9824 substantially determines the width or duration of the apertures 9820. By varying the delay in real time, the apertures are adjusted in real time.

In an alternative implementation, the inverted clock signal 9822 is delayed relative to the original clock signal 9814, and then ANDed with the original clock signal 9814. Alternatively, the original clock signal 9814 is delayed then inverted, and the result ANDed with the original clock signal 9814.

FIG. 98A illustrates an exemplary real time aperture control system 9802 that can be utilized to adjust apertures in real time. The example real time aperture control system 9802 includes an RC circuit 9804, which includes a voltage variable capacitor 9812 and a resistor 9826. The real time aperture control system 9802 also includes an inverter 9806 and an AND gate 9808. The AND gate 9808 optionally includes an enable input 9810 for enabling/disabling the AND gate 9808. The RC circuit 9804. The real time aperture control system 9802 optionally includes an amplifier 9828.

Operation of the real time aperture control circuit is described with reference to the timing diagrams of FIGS. 98B-F. The real time control system 9802 receives the input clock signal 9814, which is provided to both the inverter 9806 and to the RC circuit 9804. The inverter 9806 outputs the inverted clock signal 9822 and presents it to the AND gate 9808. The RC circuit 9804 delays the clock signal 9814 and outputs the delayed clock signal 9824. The delay is determined primarily by the capacitance of the voltage variable capacitor 9812. Generally, as the capacitance decreases, the delay decreases.

The delayed clock signal 9824 is optionally amplified by the optional amplifier 9828, before being presented to the AND gate 9808. Amplification is desired, for example, where the RC constant of the RC circuit 9804 attenuates the signal below the threshold of the AND gate 9808.

The AND gate 9808 ANDs the delayed clock signal 9824, the inverted clock signal 9822, and the optional Enable signal 9810, to generate the energy transfer signal 9816. The apertures 9820 are adjusted in real time by varying the voltage to the voltage variable capacitor 9812.

In an embodiment, the apertures 9820 are controlled to optimize power transfer. For example, in an embodiment, the apertures 9820 are controlled to maximize power transfer. Alternatively, the apertures 9820 are controlled for variable gain control (e.g. automatic gain control-AGC). In this embodiment, power transfer is reduced by reducing the apertures 9820.

As can now be readily seen from this disclosure, many of the aperture circuits presented, and others, can be modified in the manner described above (e.g. circuits in FIGS. 68 H-K). Modification or selection of the aperture can be done at the design level to remain a fixed value in the circuit, or in an alternative embodiment, may be dynamically adjusted to compensate for, or address, various design goals such as receiving RF signals with enhanced efficiency that are in distinctively different bands of operation, e.g. RF signals at 900MHz and 1.8GHz.

5.8 Adding a Bypass Network

In an embodiment of the invention, a bypass network is added to improve the efficiency of the energy transfer module. Such a bypass

network can be viewed as a means of synthetic aperture widening. Components for a bypass network are selected so that the bypass network appears substantially lower impedance to transients of the switch module (i.e., frequencies greater than the received EM signal) and appears as a moderate to high impedance to the input EM signal (e.g., greater that 100 Ohms at the RF frequency).

The time that the input signal is now connected to the opposite side of the switch module is lengthened due to the shaping caused by this network, which in simple realizations may be a capacitor or series resonant inductor-capacitor. A network that is series resonant above the input frequency would be a typical implementation. This shaping improves the conversion efficiency of an input signal that would otherwise, if one considered the aperture of the energy transfer signal only, be relatively low in frequency to be optimal.

For example, referring to FIG. 95 a bypass network 9502 (shown in this instance as capacitor 9512), is shown bypassing switch module 9504. In this embodiment the bypass network increases the efficiency of the energy transfer module when, for example, less than optimal aperture widths were chosen for a given input frequency on the energy transfer signal 9506. The bypass network 9502 could be of different configurations than shown in FIG 95. Such an alternate is illustrated in FIG.90. Similarly, FIG. 96 illustrates another example bypass network 9602, including a capacitor 9604.

The following discussion will demonstrate the effects of a minimized aperture and the benefit provided by a bypassing network. Beginning with an initial circuit having a 550ps aperture in FIG. 103, its output is seen to be 2.8mVpp applied to a 50 ohm load in FIG. 107A. Changing the aperture to 270ps as shown in FIG. 104 results in a diminished output of 2.5Vpp applied to a 50 ohm load as shown in FIG. 107B. To compensate for this loss, a bypass network may be added, a

specific implementation is provided in FIG. 105. The result of this addition is that 3.2Vpp can now be applied to the 50 ohm load as shown in FIG. 108A. The circuit with the bypass network in FIG. 105 also had three values adjusted in the surrounding circuit to compensate for the impedance changes introduced by the bypass network and narrowed aperture. FIG. 106 verifies that those changes added to the circuit, but without the bypass network, did not themselves bring about the increased efficiency demonstrated by the embodiment in FIG. 105 with the bypass network. FIG. 108B shows the result of using the circuit in FIG. 106 in which only 1.88Vpp was able to be applied to a 50 ohm load.

5.9 Modifying the Energy Transfer Signal Utilizing Feedback

FIG. 69 shows an embodiment of a system 6901 which uses down-converted Signal 1308B as feedback 6906 to control various characteristics of the energy transfer module 6304 to modify the down-converted signal 1308B.

Generally, the amplitude of the down-converted signal 1308B varies as a function of the frequency and phase differences between the EM signal 1304 and the energy transfer signal 6306. In an embodiment, the down-converted signal 1308B is used as the feedback 6906 to control the frequency and phase relationship between the EM signal 1304 and the energy transfer signal 6306. This can be accomplished using the example logic in FIG 85A. The example circuit in FIG. 85A can be included in the energy transfer signal module 6902. Alternate implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention. In this embodiment a state-machine is used as an example.

In the example of FIG. 85A, a state machine 8504 reads an analog to digital converter, A/D 8502, and controls a digital to analog converter, DAC 8506. In an embodiment, the state machine 8504 includes 2 memory locations, *Previous* and *Current,* to store and recall the results of reading A/D 8502. In an embodiment, the state machine 8504 utilizes at least one memory flag.

The DAC 8506 controls an input to a voltage controlled oscillator, VCO 8508. VCO 8508 controls a frequency input of a pulse generator 8510, which, in an embodiment, is substantially similar to the pulse generator shown in FIG. 68J. The pulse generator 8510 generates energy transfer signal 6306.

In an embodiment, the state machine 8504 operates in accordance with a state machine flowchart 8519 in FIG. 85B. The result of this operation is to modify the frequency and phase relationship between the energy transfer signal 6306 and the EM signal 1304, to substantially maintain the amplitude of the down-converted signal 1308B at an optimum level.

The amplitude of the down-converted signal 1308B can be made to vary with the amplitude of the energy transfer signal 6306. In an embodiment where the switch module 6502 is a FET as shown in FIG 66A, wherein the gate 6604 receives the energy transfer signal 6306, the amplitude of the energy transfer signal 6306 can determine the "on" resistance of the FET, which affects the amplitude of the down-converted signal 1308B. The energy transfer signal module 6902, as shown in FIG. 85C, can be an analog circuit that enables an automatic gain control function. Alternate implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

5.10 Other Implementations

The implementations described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These implementations are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate implementations, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

6. Example Energy Transfer Downconverters

Example implementations are described below for illustrative purposes. The invention is not limited to these examples.

FIG. 86 is a schematic diagram of an exemplary circuit to down convert a 915 MHz signal to a 5 MHz signal using a 101.1 MHz clock.

FIG. 87 shows example simulation waveforms for the circuit of figure 86. Waveform 8602 is the input to the circuit showing the distortions caused by the switch closure. Waveform 8604 is the unfiltered output at the storage unit. Waveform 8606 is the impedance matched output of the downconverter on a different time scale.

FIG. 88 is a schematic diagram of an exemplary circuit to downconvert a 915 MHz signal to a 5 MHz signal using a 101.1 MHz clock. The circuit has additional tank circuitry to improve conversion efficiency.

FIG. 89 shows example simulation waveforms for the circuit of figure 88. Waveform 8802 is the input to the circuit showing the distortions caused by the switch closure. Waveform 8804 is the unfiltered output at the storage unit. Waveform 8806 is the output of the downconverter after the impedance match circuit.

FIG. 90 is a schematic diagram of an exemplary circuit to

downconvert a 915 MHz signal to a 5 MHz signal using a 101.1 MHz clock. The circuit has switch bypass circuitry to improve conversion efficiency.

FIG. 91 shows example simulation waveforms for the circuit of figure 90. Waveform 9002 is the input to the circuit showing the distortions caused by the switch closure. Waveform 9004 is the unfiltered output at the storage unit. Waveform 9006 is the output of the downconverter after the impedance match circuit.

FIG. 92 shows a schematic of the example circuit in FIG. 86 connected to an FSK source that alternates between 913 and 917 MHz, at a baud rate of 500 Kbaud. FIG. 93 shows the original FSK waveform 9202 and the downconverted waveform9204 at the output of the load impedance match circuit.

IV. Mathematical Description of the Present Invention

As described and illustrated in the preceding sections and sub-sections, embodiments of the present invention down-convert an electromagnetic signal by repeatedly transferring energy from portions of the electromagnetic signal. This section describes the operation of the present invention mathematically using matched filter theory, sampling theory, and frequency domain techniques. The concepts and principles of these theories are used to describe the present invention's waveform processing and would be known to persons skilled in the relevant arts.

As will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant arts based on the teachings contained herein, the description of the present invention contained herein is a unique and specific application of matched filter theory, sampling theory, and frequency domain techniques. It is not taught or suggested in the present literature. Therefore, a new transform has been developed, based on matched filter theory, sampling theory, and

frequency domain techniques, to describe the present invention. This new transform is referred to as the UFT transform, and it is described in Section 8, below.

It is noted that the following describes embodiments of the invention, and it is provided for illustrative purposes. The invention is not limited to the descriptions and embodiments described below. It is also noted that characterizations such as "optimal," "sub-optimal," "maximum," "minimum," "ideal," "non-ideal," and the like, contained herein, denote relative relationships.

1. Overview of the Invention

Embodiments of the present invention down-convert an electromagnetic signal by repeatedly performing a matched filtering or correlating operation on a received carrier signal. Embodiments of the invention operate on or near approximate half cycles (e.g., ½, 1 ½ , 2 ½, etc.) of the received signal. The results of each matched filtering/correlating process are accumulated, for example using a capacitive storage device, and used to form a down-converted version of the electromagnetic signal. In accordance with embodiments of the invention, the matched filtering/correlating process can be performed at a sub-harmonic or fundamental rate.

Operating on an electromagnetic signal with a matched filtering/correlating process or processor produces enhanced (and in some cases the best possible) signal-to-noise ration (SNR) for the processed waveform. A matched filtering/correlating process also preserves the energy of the electromagnetic signal and transfers it through the processor.

Since it is not always practical to design a matched filtering/correlating processor with passive networks, the sub-sections

that follow also describe how to implement the present invention using a finite time integrating operation and an RC processing operation. These embodiments of the present invention are very practical and can be implemented using existing technologies, for example but not limited to CMOS technology.

1.1 High Level Description of a Matched Filtering/Correlating Characterization/Embodiment of the Invention

In order to understand how embodiments of the present invention operate, it is useful to keep in mind the fact that such embodiments do not operate by trying to emulate an ideal impulse sampler. Rather, the present invention operates by accumulating the energy of a carrier signal and using the accumulated energy to produce the same or substantially the same result that would be obtained by an ideal impulse sampler, if such a device could be built. Stated more simply, embodiments of the present invention recursively determine a voltage or current value for approximate half cycles (e.g., ½ , 1 ½ , 2 ½ , etc.) of a carrier signal, typically at a sub-harmonic rate, and use the determined voltage or current values to form a down-converted version of an electromagnetic signal. The quality of the down-converted electromagnetic signal is a function of how efficiently the various embodiments of the present invention are able to accumulate the energy of the approximate half cycles of the carrier signal.

Ideally, some embodiments of the present invention accumulate all of the available energy contained in each approximate half cycle of the carrier signal operated upon. This embodiment is generally referred to herein as a matched filtering/correlating process or processor. As described in detail below, a matched filtering/correlating processor is

able to transfer substantially all of the energy contained in a half cycle of the carrier signal through the processor for use in determining, for example, a peak or an average voltage value of the carrier signal. This embodiment of the present invention produces enhanced (and in some cases the best possible) signal-to-noise ration (SNR), as described in the sub-sections below.

FIG. 148 illustrates an example method 14800 for down-converting an electromagnetic signal using a matched filtering/correlating operation. Method 14800 starts at step 14810.

In step 14810, a matched filtering/correlating operation is performed on a portion of a carrier signal. For example, a match filtering/correlating operation can be performed on a 900 MHz RF signal, which typically comprises a 900 MHz sinusoid having noise signals and information signals superimposed on it. Many different types of signals can be operated upon in step 14810, however, and the invention is not limited to operating on a 900 MHz RF signal. In embodiments, Method 14800 operates on approximate half cycles of the carrier signal.

In an embodiment of the invention, step 14810 comprises the step of convolving an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal with a representation of itself in order to efficiently acquire the energy of the approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. As described elsewhere herein, other embodiments use other means for efficiently acquiring the energy of the approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. The matched filtering/correlating operation can be performed on any approximate half cycle of the carrier signal (although the invention is not limited to this), as described in detail in the subsections below.

In step 14820, the result of the matched filtering/correlating operation in step 14810 is accumulated, preferably in an energy storage device. In an embodiment of the present invention, a capacitive storage

devise is used to store a portion of the energy of an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal.

Steps 14810 and 14820 are repeated for additional half cycles of the carrier signal. In an embodiment of the present invention, steps 14810 and 14820 are normally performed at a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal, for example at a third sub-harmonic rate. In another embodiment, steps 14810 and 14820 are repeated at an off-set of a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal.

In step 14830, a down-converted signal is output. In embodiments, the results of steps 14810 and 14820 are passed on to a reconstruction filter or an interpolation filter.

FIG. 149 illustrates an example gated matched filtering/correlating system 14900, which can be used to implement method 14800. Ideally, in an embodiment, an impulse response of matched filtering/corre1ating system 14900 is identical to the modulated carrier signal, $S_i(t)$, to be processed. As can be seen in FIG. 149, system 14900 comprises a multiplying module 14902, a switching module 14904, and an integrating module 14906.

System 14900 can be thought of as a convolution processor. System 14900 multiplies the modulated carrier signal, $S_i(t)$, by a representation of itself, $S_i(t-\tau)$, using multiplication model 14902. The output of multiplication module 14902 is then gated by switching module 14904 to integrating module 14906. As can be seen in FIG. 149, switching module 14904 is controlled by a windowing function, $u(t) - u(t-T_A)$. The length of the windowing function aperture is T_A, which is in an embodiment equal to an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. Switching module 14904 in an embodiment ensures that approximate half cycles of the carrier signal are normally operated upon at a sub-harmonic rate. In an embodiment shown in FIG. 72, preprocessing is used to select a portion of the carrier signal to be operated upon in

accordance with the present invention. In an embodiment of system 14900, the received carrier signal is operated on at an off-set of a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal. Integration module 14906 integrates the gated output of multiplication module 14902 and passes on its result, S_0 (t). This embodiment of the present invention is described in more detail in subsequent sub-sections.

As will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant arts given the discussion herein, the present invention is not a traditional realization of a matched filter/correlator.

1.2 High Level Description of a Finite Time Integrating Characterization/Embodiment of the Invention

As described herein, in some embodiments, a matched filter/correlator embodiment according to the present invention provides maximum energy transfer and maximum SNR. A matched filter/correlator embodiment, however, might not always provide an optimum solution for all applications. For example, a matched filter/correlator embodiment might be too expensive or too complicated to implement for some applications. In such instances, other embodiments according to the present invention may provide acceptable results at a substantially lower cost, using less complex circuitry. The invention is directed to those embodiments as well.

As described herein in subsequent sub-sections, a gated matched filter/correlator processor can be approximated by a processor whose impulse response is a step function having a duration substantially equal to the time interval defined for the waveform, typically a half cycle of the electromagnetic signal, and an integrator. Such an approximation of a gated matched filter/correlator is generally referred to as a finite time integrator. A finite time integrator in accordance with an embodiment of

the present invention can be implemented with, for example, a switching device controlled by a train of pulses having apertures substantially equal to the time interval defined for the waveform. The energy transfer and SNR of a finite time integrator implemented in accordance with an embodiment of the present invention is nearly that of a gated matched filter/correlator, but without having to tailor the matched filter/correlator for a particular type of electromagnetic signal. As described in sub-section 6, a finite time integrator embodiment according to the present invention can provide a SNR result that differs from the result of matched filter/correlator embodiment by only 0.91dB.

FIG. 150 illustrates an example method 15000 for down-converting an electromagnetic signal using a matched filtering/correlating operation. Method 15000 starts at step 15010.

In step 15010, a matched filtering/correlating operation is performed on a portion of a carrier signal. For example, a match filtering/correlating operation can be performed on a 900 MHz RF signal, which typically comprises a 900 MHz sinusoid having noise signals and information signals superimposed on it. Many different types of signals can be operated upon in step 15010, however, and the invention is not limited to operating on a 900 MHz RF signal. In embodiments, Method 15000 operates on approximate half cycles of the carrier signal.

In an embodiment of the invention, step 15010 comprises the step of convolving an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal with a representation of itself in order to efficiently acquire the energy of the approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. As described elsewhere herein, other embodiments use other means for efficiently acquiring the energy of the approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. The matched filtering/correlating operation can be performed on any approximate half cycle of the carrier signal (although the invention is not limited to

this), as described in detail in the subsections below.

In step 15020, the result of the matched filtering/correlating operation in step 15010 is accumulated, preferably in an energy storage device. In an embodiment of the present invention, a capacitive storage devise is used to store a portion of the energy of an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal.

Steps 15010 and 15020 are repeated for additional half cycles of the carrier signal. In one embodiment of the present invention, steps 15010 and 15020 are performed at a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal. In another embodiment, steps 15010 and 15020 are repeated at an off-set of a subharmonic rate of the carrier signal.

In step 15030, a down-converted signal is output. In embodiments, the results of steps 15010 and 15020 are passed on to a reconstruction filter or an interpolation filter.

FIG. 151 illustrates an example finite time integrating system 15100, which can be used to implement method 15000. Finite time integrating system 15100 has an impulse response that is approximately rectangular, as further described in sub-section 4. As can be seen in FIG. 151, system 15100 comprises a switching module 15102 and an integrating module 15104.

Switching module 15102 is controlled by a wind owing function, $u(t) - u(t-T_A)$. The length of the windowing function aperture is T_A, which is equal to an approximate half cycle of the received carrier signal, $S_i(t)$,. Switching module 15102 ensures that approximate half cycles of the carrier signal can be operated upon at a sub-harmonic rate. In an embodiment of system 15100, the received carrier signal is operated on at an off-set of a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal.

Integration module 15104 integrates the output of switching module 15102 and passes on its result, $S_0(t)$. This embodiment of the present invention is described in more detail in sub-section 4 below.

1.3 High Level Description of an RC Processing Characterization/Embodiment of the Invention

The prior sub-section describes how a gated matched filter/correlator can be approximated with a finite time integrator. This sub-section describes how the integrator portion of the finite time integrator can be approximated with a resistor/capacitor (RC) processor. This embodiment of the present invention is generally referred to herein as an RC processor, and it can be very inexpensive to implement. Additionally, the RC processor embodiment according to the present invention can be implemented using only passive circuit devices, and it can be implemented, for example, using existing CMOS technology. This RC processor embodiment, shown in FIG. 153, utilizes a very low cost integrator or capacitor as a memory across the aperture or switching module. If the capacitor is suitably chosen for this embodiment, the performance of the RC processor approaches that of the matched filter/correlator embodiments described herein.

FIG. 152 illustrates an example method 15200 for down-converting an electromagnetic signal using a matched filtering/correlating operation. Method 15200 starts at step 15210.

In step 15210, a matched filtering/correlating operation is performed on a portion of a carrier signal. For example, a match filtering/correlating operation can be performed on a 900 MHz RF signal, which typically comprises a 900 MHz sinusoid having noise signals and information signals superimposed on it. Many different types of signals can be operated upon in step 15210, however, and the invention is not limited to operating on a 900 MHz RF signal. In embodiments, Method 15200 operates on approximate half cycles of the carrier signal.

In an embodiment of the invention, step 15210 comprises the step of convolving an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal with a representation of itself in order to efficiently acquire the energy of the approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. As described elsewhere herein, other embodiments use other means for efficiently acquiring the energy of the approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. The matched filtering/correlating operation can be performed on any approximate half cycle of the carrier signal (although the invention is not limited to this), as described in detail in the subsections below.

In step 15220, the result of the matched filtering/correlating operation in step 15210 is accumulated, preferably in an energy storage device. In an embodiment of the present invention, a capacitive storage devise is used to store a portion of the energy of an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal.

Steps 15210 and 15220 are repeated for additional half cycles of the carrier signal. In an embodiment of the present invention, steps 15210 and 15220 are normally performed at a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal, for example at a third sub-harmonic rate. In another embodiment, steps 15210 and 15220 are repeated at an off-set of a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal.

In step 15230, a down-converted signal is output. In embodiments, the results of steps 15210 and 15220 are passed on to a reconstruction filter or an interpolation filter.

FIG. 153 illustrates an example RC processing system 15300, which can be used to implement method 15200. As can be seen in FIG. 153, system 15300 comprises a source resistance 15302, a switching module 15304, and a capacitance 15306. Source resistance 15302 is a lumped sum resistance.

Switching module 15304 is controlled by a windowing function, $u(t) - u(t-T_A)$. The length of the windowing function aperture is T_A,

which is equal to an approximate half cycle of the received carrier signal, $S_i(t)$. Switching module 15304 ensures that approximate half cycles of the carrier signal are normally processed at a sub-harmonic rate. In an embodiment of system 15300, the received carrier signal is processed on at an off-set of a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal.

Capacitor 15306 integrates the output of switching module 15304 and accumulates the energy of the processed portions of the received carrier signal. RC processor 15300 also passes on its result, $S_0(t)$, to subsequent circuitry for further processing. This embodiment of the present invention is described in more detail in subsequent sub-sections.

It is noted that the implementations of the invention presented above are provided for illustrative purposes. Other implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the art based on the herein teachings, and the invention is directed to such implementations.

2. Representation of a Power Signal as a Sum of Energy Signals

This sub-section describes how a power signal can be represented as a sum of energy signals. The detailed mathematical descriptions in the sub-sections below use both Fourier transform analysis and Fourier series analysis to describe embodiments of the present invention. Fourier transform analysis typically is used to describe energy signals while Fourier series analysis is used to describe power signals. In a strict mathematical sense, Fourier transforms do not exist for power signals. It is occasionally mathematically convenient, however, to analyze certain repeating or periodic power signals using Fourier transform analysis.

Both Fourier series analysis and Fourier transform analysis can be used to describe periodic waveforms with pulse like structure. For example, consider the ideal impulse sampling train in EQ. (10).

$$x(t) = \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - mT_s) \qquad \text{EQ. (10)}$$

Suppose that this sampling train is convolved (in the time domain) with a particular waveform s(t), which is of finite duration T_A. Hence s(t) is an energy waveform. Then:

$$s(t) * x(t) = \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - mT_s) * s(t) \qquad \text{EQ.(11)}$$

$$= \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} s(t - mT_s) \qquad \text{EQ. (12)}$$

The above equation is a well known form of the sampler equation for arbitrary pulse shapes which may be of finite time duration rather than impulse-like. The sampler equation possesses a Fourier transform on a term-by-term basis because each separate is an energy waveform.

Applying the convolution theorem and a term-by-term Fourier transform yields:

$$\Im\{s(t) * x(t)\} \triangleq \Im\left\{\sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty}\right\} \delta(t - mT_s) s(f)$$

$$= \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} T_s^{-1} \delta\left(f - {}^{m}\!/_{T_s}\right) S\left({}^{n}\!/_{T_s}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (13)}$$

where $f_s = T_s^{-1}$. In this manner the Fourier transform may be derived for a train of pulses of arbitrary time domain definition provided that each pulse is of finite time duration and each pulse in the train is identical to the next. If the pulses are not deterministic then techniques viable for stochastic signal analysis may he required. It is therefore possible to represent the periodic signal, which is a power signal, by an infinite linear sum of finite duration energy signals. If the power signal is of infinite time duration, an infinite number of energy waveforms are required to create the desired representation.

FIG. 154 illustrates a pulse train 15402. Each pulse of pulse deterministic train 15402, for example pulse 15404, is an energy signal.

FIG. 155 illustrates one heuristic method based on superposition for combining pulses to form pulse deterministic train 15402.

The method of FIG. 155 shows how a power signal can be obtained from a linear piece-wise continuous sum of energy signals.

2.1 De-Composition of a Sine Wave into an Energy Signal Representation

The heuristic discussion presented in the previous section can be applied to the piecewise linear reconstruction of a sine wave function or carrier. FIG. 156 illustrates a simple way to view such a construction.

Using the previously developed equations, the waveform y(t) can be represented by:

$$\sin(\omega_c t + \phi)\Big|_{t=0}^{\infty} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \sin(\omega_c t + \phi)\left[u(t) - u\left(t - \frac{T_s}{2}\right)\right] * \delta\left(t - k\frac{T_s}{2}\right) + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \sin(\omega_c t + \phi)\left[u\left(t - \frac{T_s}{2}\right) - u\left(t - \frac{3T_s}{2}\right)\right] * \delta\left(t - k\frac{T_s}{2}\right)$$

EQ. (14)

and y(t) can be rewritten as:

$$y(t) = \sum_{k=0}^{m_{sine}} \left[u\left(t - \frac{(T_s}{2}\right) - u\left(t - \frac{(T_s}{2} - \frac{T_c}{2}\right) \right] \cdot \sin\left(\omega_c\left(t - \frac{(T_s}{2}\right) + \phi\right)$$
$$+ \sum_{k=1}^{m_{sine}} [u(t - kT_s) - u(t - kT_s)] \cdot \sin\left(\omega_c\left(t - kT_s - \frac{T_c}{2}\right)\right) \sin(\omega_c(t - kT_s) + \phi)$$

EQ. (15)

In general, T_S is usually integrally related to T_C. That is, the sampling interval T_S divided by T_C usually results in an integer, which further reduces the above equation. The unit step functions are employed to carve out the portion of a sine function applicable for positive pulses and negative pulse, respectively. The point is a power signal may be viewed as an infinite linear sum of energy signals.

2.2 Decomposition of Sine Waveforms

FIG. 157 illustrates how portions of a carrier signal or sine waveform are selected for processing according to embodiments of the present invention. Embodiments of the present invention operate recursively, at a sub-harmonic rate, on a carrier signal (i.e., sine wave waveform). FIG. 157 shows the case where there is synchronism in phase and frequency between the clock of the present invention and the carrier signal. This sub-section, as well as the previous sub-sections, illustrates the fact that each half-sine segment of a carrier signal can be viewed as an energy signal, and may be partitioned from the carrier or power signal by a gating process.

3. Matched Filtering/Correlating Characterization/Embodiment

3.1 Time Domain Description

Embodiments of the present invention are interpreted as a specific implementation of a matched filter and a restricted Fourier sine or cosine transform. The matched filter of such embodiments is not a traditional realization of a matched filter designed to extract information at the data bandwidth. Rather, the correlation properties of the filter of the embodiments exploit specific attributes of bandpass waveforms to efficiently down convert signals from RF. A controlled aperture specifically designed to the bandpass waveform is used. In addition, the matched filter operation of embodiments of the present invention is applied recursively to the bandpass signal at a rate sub-harmonically related to the carrier frequency. Each matched filtered result or correlation of embodiments of the present invention is retained and accumulated to provide an initial condition for subsequent recursions of the correlator. This accumulation is approximated as a zero order data hold filter.

An attribute of bandpass waveforms is that they inherently possess time domain structure, which can be compared to sampling processes. For example, FIG. 158 illustrates a double sideband large carrier AM waveform 15802, with a dashed reference 15804 and black sample dots 15806. Each half sine above or below the dashed reference 15804 can represent a finite duration pulse that possesses information impressed on the carrier by the modulation process.

Sampled systems attempt to extract information in the envelope, at the black sample dots 15806, if possible. The sample times illustrated by the black sample dots 15806 are shown here at optimum sampling times.

Difficulties arise when the bandpass waveform is at RF. Then sampling is difficult because of sample rate, sample aperture, and

aperture uncertainty. When the traditional sampler acquires, the aperture and aperture uncertainty must be minimized such that the number associated with the acquired waveform value possesses great accuracy at a particular instant in time with minimum variance. Sample rate can be reduced by sampling sub-harmonically. However, precisely controlling a minimized aperture makes the process very difficult, if not impossible, at RF.

In FIG. 158, the area under a half-sine cycle 15808 is illustrated with hatched marks. In accordance with embodiments of the present invention, instead of obtaining a sample of a single waveform voltage value, energy in the hatched area is acquired. By acquiring energy in the hatched area, the effects of aperture uncertainty can he minimized. Moreover, the waveform itself possesses the sampling information between the half sine zero crossings. This is true because the total energy of the hatched area is proportional to the peak of the modulated half sine peak. This is illustrated by EQ. (16), below. All that remains is to extract that latent information. IN embodiments, the underlying theory for optimal extractions of the energy is in fact matched filter theory.

$$E_A = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_i(t)^2 dt = 2A^2 \int_0^{T_0/2} \left(\sin(2\pi ft)\right)^2 dt = \frac{A^2 T_0}{2} \qquad \text{EQ. (16)}$$

Historically, an optimization figure of merit is signal-to-noise ration (SNR) at the system output. FIG. 159 illustrates a block diagram of an example optimum processor system 15902, which considers additive white Gaussian noise (AWGN). The general theory described herein can be extended to systems operating in the presence of colored noise as well.

Although an RF carrier with modulated information is typically a power signal, the analysis which follows considers the power signal to be a piece-wise construct of sequential energy signals where each energy

waveform is a half sine pulse (single aperture) or multiple sine pulses (see sub-section 2 above). Hence, theorems related to finite time observations, Fourier transforms, etc., may be applied throughout.

Analysis begins with the assumption that a filtering process can improve SNR. No other assumptions are necessary except that the system is casual and linear. The analysis determines the optimum processor for SNR enhancement and maximum energy transfer.

The output of the system is given by the convolution integral illustrated in EQ. (17):

$$S_o(t) = \int_0^\infty h(\tau) S_i(t-\tau)\,d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (17)}$$

where $h(\tau)$ is the unknown impulse response of the optimum processor.

The output noise variance is found from EQ. (18):

$$\sigma_o^2 = N_o \int_0^\infty h^2(\tau)\,d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (18)}$$

The signal to noise ratio at time to is given by EQ. (19):

$$\frac{S_o^2(t_o)}{\sigma_o^2} = \frac{\left[\int_0^\infty h(\tau) S_i(t_o-\tau)\,d\tau\right]^2}{N_o \int_0^\infty h^2(\tau)\,d\tau} \qquad \text{EQ. (19)}$$

The Schwarz inequality theorem may be used to maximize the above ratio by recognizing, in EQ. (20), that:

$$\frac{S_o^2(t_o)}{\sigma_o^2} \le \frac{\int_0^\infty h^2(\tau)\int_0^\infty S_i^2(t_o-\tau)\,d\tau}{N_o \int_0^\infty h^2(\tau)\,d\tau} \qquad \text{EQ. (20)}$$

The maximum SNR occurs for the case of equality in EQ. 20, which yields EQ. (21):

$$\left|\frac{S_0^2(t_0)}{\sigma_0^2}\right|\max = \frac{1}{N_0}\int_0^\infty S_i^2(t_0 - \tau)d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (21)}$$

In general therefore:

$$h(\tau) = kS_i(t_0 - \tau)u(\tau) \qquad \text{EQ. (22)}$$

where $u(\tau)$ is added as a statement of causality and k is an arbitrary gain constant. Since, in general, the original waveform $S_i(t)$, can be considered as an energy signal (single half sine for the present case), it is important to add the consideration of t_0, a specific observation time. That is, an impulse response for an optimum processor may not be optimal for all time. This is due to the fact that an impulse response for realizable systems operating on energy signals will typically die out over time. Hence, the signal at t_0 is said to possess the maximum SNR.

This can be verified by maximizing EQ. (21) in general.

$$\left(\frac{d}{dt}\right)\frac{S_0^2(t)}{\sigma_0^2} = 0 \qquad \text{EQ. (23)}$$

It is of some interest to rewrite EQ. (21) by a change of variable, substituting

$t = t_0 - \tau$ This yields:

$$k\int_0^\infty S_i^2(t_0 - \tau)d\tau = k\int_{-\infty}^{t_0} S_i^2(t)dt \qquad \text{EQ. (24)}$$

This is the energy of the waveform up to time t_0. After t_0, the energy falls off again due to the finite impulse response nature of the processor. EQ. (24) is of great importance because it reveals an often useful form of a matched filter known as a correlator. That is, the matched filter may be implemented by multiplying the subject waveform by itself over the time interval defined for the waveform, and then integrated. In this realization the maximum output occurs when the waveform and its optimal processor aperture are exactly overlapped for $t_0 = T_a$. It should also be evident from the matched filter equivalency stated in EQ. (24) that the maximum SNR solution also preserves the maximum energy transfer of the desired waveform through the processor. This may be proven using the Parseval and/or Rayliegh energy theorems. EQ. (24) relates directly to Parseval's theorem.

3.2 Frequency Domain Description

The previous sub-section derived an optimal processor from the time domain point-of-view according to embodiments of the invention. Alternately, Fourier transforms may be applied to obtain a frequency domain representation for h(t). This result is shown below.

$$H(f) = kS_i^*(f)e^{-i2\pi f t_0} \qquad \text{EQ. (25)}$$

Letting $j\omega = j2Bf$ and $t_0 = T_a$, we can write the following EQ. (26) for FIGS.

$$H(j\omega) = \frac{2}{T_A} e^{-j\omega T_A/2} \frac{\sin(\omega T_A/2)}{\omega T_A/2} \qquad \text{EQ. (20)}$$

160 and 161.

The frequency domain representation in FIG. 160 represents the response of an optimum processor according to embodiments. FIG. 161 illustrates responses of processors that use parameters different than T_A. For $t_0 \ll T_A$, the frequency domain response possesses too wide a bandwidth which captures too little of the main lobe of desired energy with respect to out of band noise power. Conversely, when $t_0 \ll T_A$, the energy transfer from the signal's main lobe is very inefficient. Therefore, proper selection of T_A is key for implementation efficiency.

Another simple but useful observation is gleaned from EQ. (24) and Rayleigh's Energy Theorem for Fourier transforms:

$$E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |S_i(t)|^2 dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |H(f)|^2 df \qquad \text{EQ. (27)}$$

EQ. (27) verifies that the transform of the optimal filter of various embodiments should substantially match the transform of the specific pulse, which is being processed, for efficient energy transfer.

4. Finite Time Integrating Characterization/Embodiment

It is not always practical to design the matched filter with passive networks. Sometimes the waveform correlation of $S_i(t)$ is also cumbersome to generate exactly. However, a single apeliure realization of embodiments of the present invention is practical, even in CMOS, with certain concessions.

Consider FIGS. 162 and 163, which illustrate an optimum single aperture realization of embodiments of the present invention using sub harmonic sampling (3rd harmonic) and a processor 16310 according to such embodiments. Ideally over the aperture of interest, T_A, a half sine impulse response or waveform is used to operate on the original gated $S_i(t)$. Suppose for ease of implementation, however, that a rectangular impulse response is used, as illustrated in FIGS. 164A and 164B. The Fourier transform of this processor still overlaps the Fourier transform for the original pulse $S_i(t)$ with exactly the same nulls, as shown in FIG. 164C. Although the Fourier correlation is not perfect, it is still quite good. Furthermore, it can be implemented using a simple switch that lets the half sine through in order to charge a capacitor, which acquires the total energy of the half sine at $t_0 \cong T_A$.

Applying EQ. (26) for both the matched filter and non-matched filter embodiments yields:

$$E_{MF} = \int_0^{T_A} S_i^2(t)\, dt = \frac{A^2 T_A}{2} \qquad \textit{Optimal Matched Filter Embodiment Result; and}$$

$$E_{MFI} = \left(\int_0^{T_A} A \cdot S(t) \right)^2 dt = \left(\frac{2T_A A}{\pi} \right)^2 \qquad \textit{Finite Time Integrator Embodiment Result}$$

It turns out in practice that realizable apertures are not perfectly rectangular and do possess a finite rise and fall time. In particular, they become triangular or nearly sinusoidal for very high frequency implementations. Thus, the finite time integrating processor result tends toward the matched filtering/correlating processor result when the aperture becomes sine-like, if the processor possesses constant impedance across the aperture duration. Even though the matched

filter/correlator response produces a lower output value at T_A, it yields a higher SNR by a factor of 0.9dB, as further illustrated below in sub-section 6.

5. RC Processing Characterization/Embodiment

Sometimes a precise matched filter is difficult to construct, particularly if the pulse shape is complex. Often, such complexities are avoided in favor of suitable approximations, which preserve the essential features. The single aperture realization of embodiments of the present invention is usually implemented conceptually as a first order approximation to a matched filter where the pulse shape being matched is a half-sine pulse. As shown in above, in embodiments, the matched filter is applied recursively to a carrier waveform. The time varying matched filter output correlation contains information modulated onto the carrier. If many such matched filter correlation samples are extracted, the original information modulated onto the carrier is recovered.

A baseband filter, matched or otherwise, may be applied to the recovered information to optimally process the signal at baseband. The present invention should not be confused with this optimal baseband processing. Rather embodiments of the present invention are applied on a time microscopic basis on the order of the time scale of a carrier cycle.

FIG. 165 illustrates a basic circuit 16502 that can be used to describe an example RC processor according to embodiments of the present invention. Circuit 16502 comprises a switch 16504. The switch 16504 is closed on a T_A basis in order to sample $V_i(t)$. In the analysis that follows, the transfer function and impulse response are derived for circuit 16502.

The switch 16504 functions as a sampler, which possesses multiplier attributes. Heviside's operator is used to model the switch

function. The operator is multiplied in the impulse response, thus rendering it essential to the matched filtering/correlating process.

In the analysis that follows, only one aperture event is considered. That is, the impulse response of the circuit is considered to be isolated aperture-to-aperture, except for the initial value inherited from the previous aperture.

For circuit 16502, shown in Figure 165:

$$V_0(t) = \frac{1}{C}\int i(t)\ dt \qquad \text{EQ. (28)}$$

$$i(t) = \frac{V_i(t)[u(t) - u(t - T_A)] - V_0(t)}{R} \qquad \text{EQ. (29)}$$

$$V_0(t) = \int \frac{V_i(t)[u(t) - (t - T_A)] - V_0(t)}{RC}\ dt \qquad \text{EQ. (30)}$$

$$V_0(t) + \int \frac{V_0(t)}{RC}\ dt = \int \frac{V_i(t)[u(t) - u(t - T_A)]}{RC}\ dt \qquad \text{EQ. (31)}$$

EQ. (31) represents the integro-differential equation for circuit 16502. The right hand side of EQ. (31) represents the correlation between the input waveform $V_i(t)$ and a rectangular window over the period T_A.

The Laplace transform of EQ. (31) is:

initial condition initial condition

$$V_0(s)\left(1 + \frac{1}{sRC}\right) + \frac{V_0(0)}{sRC} = V_i(s)\left(\frac{1 - e^{-sT_A}}{s^2RC}\right) + \frac{V_i(0)}{sRC} \qquad \text{EQ. (32)}$$

Consider that the initial condition equal to zero, then:

$$H(s)=\frac{V_0(s)}{V_i(s)}=RC^{-1}\cdot\left(\frac{1-e^{-sT_A}}{s}\right)\cdot\left(\frac{1}{s+(RC)^{-1}}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (33)}$$

$$\therefore h(t)=\left(\frac{e^{\frac{-t}{RC}}}{RC}\right)[u(t)-u(t-T_A)] \qquad \text{EQ. (34)}$$

Suppose that $V_i(t)=A\sin\left(2\pi\frac{f_A}{2}t+\phi\right)$, as illustrated in FIG. 166,

where $f_A = T_A^{-1}$ and $\emptyset$ is an arbitrary phase shift. (FIG. 166 also shows h(t).) Note in FIG. 166 that h(t) is not ideally a sine pulse. However, the cross correlation of h(t) and $V_i(t)$ can still be quite good if RC is properly selected. This is the optimization, which is required in order to approximate a matched filter result (namely SNR optimization given h(t) and $V_i(t)$).

$$V_0(t)=V_i(t)*h(t)=A\sin(\pi f_A t)*h(t)\ ;0\le t\le T_A \qquad \text{EQ. (35)}$$

$$V_0(t)=\int_0^{\infty}\sin(\pi f_A(t-\tau))\frac{e^{\frac{-\tau}{RC}}}{RC}\,d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (36)}$$

By a change of variables;

$$V_0(t)=\int_{-\infty}^{t}A\sin(\pi f_A\tau+\phi)\cdot\frac{e^{\frac{-(t-\tau)}{RC}}}{RC}\,[u(t-\tau)-u(t-\tau-T_A)]d\tau$$

where $f_A \triangleq 2f = T_A^{-1}$ EQ. (37)

$$\therefore V_0(t)=\frac{A}{1+(\pi f_A RC)^2}(-\pi f_A t+\phi)+\sin(\pi f_A t+\phi)-Ae^{-t/RC}\left(\sin\phi-\frac{(\pi f_A RC)^2}{1+(\pi f_A RC)^2}\sin\phi-\frac{\pi f_A RC}{1+(\pi f_A RC)^2}\cos\phi\right)$$
$0\le t\le T_A$

$$V_0(t)=\left[\frac{1}{1+(RC\pi f_A)^2}\right]\left(\sin(\pi f_A t)-\pi f_A RC\cdot\cos(\pi f_A t)+\pi f_A RC\cdot e^{-t/RC}\right)0\le t\le T_A$$
, $\phi=0$

Notice that the differential equation solution provides for carrier phase skew, ϕ. It is not necessary to calculate the convolution beyond T_A since the gating function restricts the impulse response length.

FIG. 167 illustrates the response $V_0(t)$. The output peaks just before T_A because the example RC processor is not a perfect matched filtering/correlating processor, but rather an approximation. FIG. 168 illustrates that the maximum of the function occurs at $t \cong .75T_A$, for a $\beta = 2.6$, which can be verified by evaluating:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} V_0(t) = 0 \qquad \text{EQ. (38)}$$

Solving the differential equation for $V_0(t)$ permits an optimization of $\beta = (RC)^{-1}$ for maximization of V_0.

FIG. 169 illustrates a spread of values for beta. In embodiments, the peak β occurs at approximately $\beta = 2.6$. FIG. 169 illustrates a family of output responses for processors according to embodiments of the present invention having different beta values. In embodiments, the definition used for optimality to obtain $\beta = 2.6$ is the highest value of signal obtained at the cutoff instant, T_A. Other criteria can be applied, particularly for multiple pulse accumulation and SNR consideration.

In embodiments, one might be tempted to increase β and cutoff earlier (i.e., arbitrarily reduce T_A). However, this does not necessarily always lead to enhanced SNR, and it reduces charge transfer in the process. It can also create impedance matching concerns, and possibly make it necessary to have a high-speed buffer. That is, reducing T_A and C is shown below to decrease SNR. Nevertheless, some gain might be achieved by reducing T_A to .75 for $\beta = 2.6$, if maximum voltage is the goal.

In embodiments, in order to maximize SNR, consider the following. The power in white noise can be found from:

$$\sigma^2 = N_0 \int_0^{\infty} h^2(\lambda) d\lambda \qquad \text{EQ. (39)}$$

$$\sigma^2 = N_0 \int_0^{\infty} \left(\frac{e^{-2\lambda/RC}}{RC} \right) (u(t) - u(\lambda - T_A))\, d\lambda \qquad \text{EQ. (40)}$$

$$\sigma^2 = \frac{\beta N_0 \left(1 - e^{-2\beta N_0 T_A}\right)}{2} \quad @ T_\lambda \qquad \text{EQ. (41)}$$

$$\beta = (RC)^{-1}$$

Notice that σ^2 is a function of RC.

The signal power is calculated from:

$$(V_0(t))^2 = \left(\frac{1}{1 + (\beta^{-1}\pi f_A)^2} \right)^2 \left(\sin(\pi f_A t) - \beta^{-1}\pi f_A \cdot \cos(\pi f_A t) + \beta^{-1}\pi f_A e^{-\beta t} \right)^2$$

EQ. (42)

Hence, the SNR at T_A is given by:

$$\frac{(V_0(t))^2}{\sigma^2}\bigg|_{t=T_1} = \frac{2}{\beta N_0 (1 - e^{-2\beta N_0 T_1})} \left(\frac{1}{1 + (\beta^{-1}\pi f_A)^2} \right)^2 (\beta^{-1}\pi f_A + \beta^{-1}\pi f_A e^{-\beta T_1})^2 \qquad \text{EQ. (43)}$$

Maximizing the SNR requires solving:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \beta} \left(\frac{V_0(t)^2}{\sigma^2} \right) = 0 \qquad \text{EQ. (44)}$$

Solving the SNR_{max} numerically yields β values that are ever decreasing but with a diminishing rate of return.

As can be seen in FIG. 170, in embodiments, $\beta = 2.6$ for the maximum voltage response, which corresponds to a normalized SNR relative to an ideal matched filter of 0.431. However, in embodiments, selecting a β of $1/10$ the β, which optimizes voltage, produces a

superior normalized SNR of 0.805 (about 80.5% efficiency) This is a gain in SNR performance of about 2.7dB.

In certain embodiments, it turns out that for an ideal matched filter the optimum sampling point corresponding to correlator peak is precisely T_A.

However, in embodiments, for the RC processor, the peak output of occurs at approximately 0.75 T_A for large β (i.e., $\beta = 2.6$). That is because the impulse response is not perfectly matched to the carrier signal. However, as β is reduced significantly, the RC processor response approaches the efficiency of the finite time integrating processor response in terms of SNR performance. As β is lowered, the optimal SNR point occurs closer to T_A, which simplifies design greatly. Embodiments of the present invention provides excellent energy accumulation over T_A for low β, particularly which simplicity is valued.

5.1 Charge Transfer and Correlation

The basic equation for charge transfer is:

$$\frac{dq}{dt} = C\frac{dv}{dt}, \text{ (assuming C constant over time)} \qquad \text{EQ. (45)}$$

$$q = CV$$

Similarly the energy u stored by a capacitor can be found from:

$$u = \int_0^q \frac{q_x}{C}\, dq_x = \frac{q^2}{2C} \qquad \text{EQ. (46)}$$

From EQs. (45) and (46):

$$u = \frac{Cv^2}{2} \qquad \text{EQ. (47)}$$

Thus, the charge stored by a capacitor is proportional to the voltage across the capacitor, and the energy stored by the capacitor is proportional to the square of the charge or the voltage. Hence, by transferring charge, voltage and energy are also transferred. If little charge is transferred, little energy is transferred, and a proportionally small voltage results unless C is lowered.

The law of conversation of charge is an extension of the law of the conservation of energy. EQ. (45) illustrates that if a finite amount of charge must be transferred in an infinitesimally short amount of time then the voltage, and hence voltage squared, tends toward infinity. The situation becomes even more troubling when resistance is added to the equation. Furthermore,

$$V_c = \frac{1}{C}\int_0^{T_A} i dt \qquad \text{EQ. (48)}$$

This implies an infinite amount of current must be supplied to create the infinite voltage if T_A is infinitesimally small. Clearly, such a situation is impractical, especially for a device without gain.

In most radio systems, the antenna produces a small amount of power available for the first conversion, even with amplification from an LNA. Hence, if a finite voltage and current restriction do apply to the front end of a radio then a conversion device, which is an impulse sampler, must by definition possess infinite gain. This would not be practical for a switch. What is usually approximated in practice is a fast sample time, charging a small capacitor, then holding the value acquired by a hold amplifier, which preserves the voltage from sample to sample.

The analysis that follows shows that given a finite amount of time for energy transfer through a conversion device, the impulse response of the ideal processor, which transfers energy to a capacitor when the input

voltage source is a sinusoidal carrier and possesses a finite source impedance, is represented by embodiments of the present invention. If a significant amount of energy can be transferred in the sampling process then the tolerance on the charging capacitor can be reduced, and the requirement for a hold amplifier is significantly reduced or even eliminated.

In embodiments, the maximum amount of energy available over a half sine pulse can be found from:

$$u = \int_0^{T_A} S_i^2(t)dt = \frac{A^2 T_A}{2} \qquad \text{EQ. (49)}$$

This points to a correlation processor or matched filter processor. If energy is of interest then a useful processor, which transfers all of the half sine energy, is revealed in EQ. (48), where T_A is an aperture equivalent to the half sine pulse. In embodiments, EQ. (49) provides the clue to an optimal processor.

Consider the following equation sequence.

$$\int_0^{\infty} h(\tau)S_i(t-\tau)d\tau \Rightarrow \int_0^{T_A} kS_i^2(T_A-\tau)d\tau \Rightarrow \int_{-0}^{T_A} S_i^2(t)dt$$

EQ. (50)

Where $h(\vartheta) = S_i(t-\tau)$ and $t = T_{A-}\vartheta$.

This is the matched filter equation with the far most right hand side revealing a correlator implementation, which is obtained by a change of variables as indicated. The matched filter proof for $h(\tau) = S_i(T_A - \tau)$ is provided in sub-section 8.4 below. Note that the correlator form of the matched filter is exactly a statement of the desired signal energy. Therefore a matched filter/correlator accomplishes acquisition of all the energy available across a finite duration aperture. Such a matched

filter/correlator can be implemented as shown in FIG. 171.

In embodiments, when optimally configured, the example matched filter/correlator of FIG. 171 operates in synchronism with the half sine pulse $S_i(t)$ over the aperture T_A. Phase skewing and phase roll will occur for clock frequencies, which are imprecise. Such imprecision can be compensated for by a carrier recovery loop, such as a Costas Loop. A Costas Loop can develop the control for the acquisition clock, which also serves as a sub-harmonic carrier. However, phase skew and non-conherency does not invalidate the optimal form of the processor provided that the frequency or phase errors are small, relative to $T^{-1}A$. Non-coherent and differentially coherent processors may extract energy from both I and Q with a complex correlation operation followed by a rectifier or phase calculator. It has been shown that phase skew does not alter the optimum SNR processor formulation. The energy which is not transferred to I is transferred to Q and vice versa when phase skew exists. This is an example processor for a finite duration sample window with finite gain sampling function, where energy or charge is the desired output.

A matched filter/correlator embodiment according to the present invention might be too expensive and complicated to build for some applications. In such cases, however, other processes and processors according to embodiments of the invention can be used. The approximation to the matched filter/correlator embodiment shown in FIG. 172 is just one embodiment that can be used in such instances. The finite time integrator embodiment of FIG. 172 requires only a switch and an integrator. Sub-section 6 below shows that this embodiment of the present invention has only a 0.9ldB difference in SNR compared to the matched filter/correlator embodiment.

Another very low cost and easy to build embodiment of the present invention is the RC processor. This embodiment, shown in FIG. 173,

utilizes a very low cost integrator or capacitor as a memory across the aperture. If C is suitable chosen for this embodiment, its performance approaches that of the matched filter/correlator embodiment, shown in FIG. 171. Notice the inclusion of the source impedance, R, along with the switch and capacitor. This simple embodiment nevertheless can approximate the optimum energy transfer of the matched filter/correlator embodiment if properly designed.

When maximum charge is transferred, the voltage across the capacitor 17304 in PIG. 173 is maximized over the aperture period for a specific RC combination.

Using EQs. (45) and (48) yields:

$$q = C \cdot \frac{1}{C} \int_0^{T_A} i_c dt \qquad \text{EQ. (51)}$$

If it is accepted that an infinite amplitude impulse with zero time duration is not available or practical, due to physical parameters of capacitors like ESR, inductance and breakdown voltages, as well as currents, then EQ. (51) reveals the following important considerations for embodiments of the invention:

- The transferred charge, q, is influenced by the amount of time available for transferring the charge;
- The transferred charge, q, is proportional to the current available for charging the energy storage device; and
- Maximization of charge, q, is a function of i_c, C, and T_A.

Therefore, it can be shown that for embodiments:

$$q_{max} = Cv_{max} = C\left[\frac{1}{C}\int_0^{T_A} i_c dt\right]_{max} \qquad \text{(EQ. 52)}$$

The impulse response for the RC processing network was found in subsection 5.2 below to be;

$$h(t) = \frac{e^{\frac{-\tau}{RC}}}{RC}[u(\tau) - u(\tau - T_A)] \qquad \text{EQ. (53)}$$

Suppose that T_A is constrained to be less than or equal to ½ cycle of the carrier period. Then, for a synchronous forcing function, the voltage across a capacitor is given by EQ. (54).

$$V_0(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{t} \sin(\pi f_A \tau) \cdot \frac{e^{\frac{-(t-\tau)}{RC}}}{RC}\, d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (54)}$$

Maximizing the charge, q, requires maximizing EQ. (37) with respect to t and β.

$$\frac{\partial^2 V_0(t)}{\partial t\, \partial \beta} = 0 \qquad \text{EQ. (55)}$$

It is easier, however, to set R = 1, T_A = 1, A = 1, $f_A = T_A^{-1}$ and then calculate $q = cV_0$ from the previous equations by recognizing that $q = \frac{\beta^{-1}}{R} V_0 = cV_0$, which produces a normalized response.

FIG. 174 illustrates that increasing C is preferred in embodiments of the invention. It can be seen in FIG. 174 that as C increases (i.e., as ∃ decreases) the charge transfer also increases. This is what is to be expected based on the optimum SNR solution. Hence, for embodiments of the present invention, an optimal SNR design results in optimal charge transfer. As C is increased, bandwidth considerations should he taken

into account.

In embodiments, EQ. (49) establishes T_A as the entire half sine for an optimal processor. However, in embodiments, optimizing jointly for t and β reveals that the RC processor response creates an output across the energy storage capacitor that peaks for $t_{max} \cong .75T_A$, and $\beta_{max} \cong 2.6$, when the forcing function to the network is a half sine pulse.

In embodiments, if the capacitor of the RC processor embodiment is replaced by an ideal integrator then $t_{max} \rightarrow T_A$.

$$\beta T_A \simeq 1.95 \qquad \text{EQ. (56)}$$

where $\beta = (RC)^{-1}$

For example, for a 2.45 GHz signal and a source impedance of 50Ω, EQ. (56) above suggests the use of a capacitor of ≅2pf. This is the value of capacitor for the aperture selected, which permits the optimum voltage peak for a single pulse accumulation. For practical realization of the present invention, the capacitance calculated by EQ. (56) is a minimum capacitance. SNR is not considered optimized at $\beta T_A \simeq 1.95$. As shown earlier, a smaller β yields better SNR and better charge transfer. In embodiments, as discussed below, it turns out that charge can also be optimized if multiple apertures are used for collecting the charge.

In embodiments, for the ideal matched filter/correlator approximation, βT_A is constant and equivalent for both consideration of optimum SNR and optimum charge transfer, and charge is accumulated over many apertures for most practical designs. Consider the following example, $\beta = .25$, and $T_A = 1$.

Thus $\beta T_A = .25$. At 2.45 GHz, with R=50Ω, C can be calculated from:

$$C \geq \frac{T_A}{R(25)} \cong 16.3pf \qquad \text{EQ. (57)}$$

The charge accumulates over several apertures, and SNR is simultaneously optimized melding the best of two features of the present invention. Checking CV for $\beta\, T_A \simeq 1.95$ vs. $\beta\, T_A = .25$ confirms that charge is optimized for the latter.

5.2 Load Resistor Consideration

The general forms of the differential equation and transfer function, described above, for embodiments of the present invention are the same as for a case involving a load resistor, R_L, applied across capacitor, C. FIG. 175A illustrates an example RC processor embodiment 17502 of the present invention having a load resistance 17504 across a capacitance 17506.

Consider RC processing embodiment 17502 (without initial conditions).

EQ. (33) becomes:

$$H(s) = \frac{1 - e^{-sT_A}}{s}\left(\frac{1}{sCR + k}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (58)}$$

$$k = \left(R/R_L + 1\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (59)}$$

$$h(t) = \left(\frac{e^{-\frac{t \cdot k}{RC}}}{RC}\right)\left[u(t) - (t - T_A)\right] \qquad \text{EQ. (60)}$$

It should be clear that R_L 17504, and therefore k, accelerate the

exponential decay cycle.

$$V_0(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{t} \sin(\pi f_s \tau) \cdot \frac{e^{-\frac{k(t-\tau)}{RC}}}{RC} \, d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (61)}$$

$$V_0(t) = \left(\frac{1}{k^2 + (\pi f_A)^2}\right)\left[k \cdot \sin(\pi f_A t) - \pi f_A RC \cdot \cos(\pi f_A t) + RCe^{-\frac{kt}{RC}}\right] \quad 0 \le t \le T_A$$

EQ.(62)

This result is valid only over the acquisition aperture. After the switch is opened, the final voltage that occurred at the sampling instance $t \cong T_A$ becomes an initial condition for a discharge cycle across R_L17504. The discharge cycle possesses the following response:

$$V_D = \frac{V_A \cdot e^{-\frac{t}{R_L C}}}{R_L C} u(t - T_A) \quad \textit{(single event discharge)}$$

EQ. (63)

V_A is defined as $V_0(t \cong T_A)$. Of course, if the capacitor 17506 does not completely discharge, there is an initial condition present for the next acquisition cycle.

FIG. 175B illustrates an example implementation of the invention, modeled as a switch S, a capacitor C_S, and a load resistance R. FIG. 175D illustrates example energy transfer pulses, having apertures A, for controlling the switch S. FIG. 175C illustrates an example charge/discharge timing diagram for the capacitorC_S, where the capacitor C_S charges during the apertures A, and discharge between the apertures A.

Equations 63.1 through 63.15 derive a relationship between the capacitance of the capacitor $C_S(C_S(R))$, the resistance of the resistor R, the duration of the aperture A (aperture width), and the frequency of the energy transfer pulses (freq LO). Equation 63.11 illustrates that optimum

energy transfer occurs when x = 0.841. Based on the disclosure herein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will realize that values other that 0.841 can be utilized.

$$\phi = \frac{1}{C}\int i(t)\partial t + Ri(t) \qquad \text{EQ. (63.1)}$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\phi = \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left[\frac{1}{C}\int i(t)\partial t + Ri(t)\right] \qquad \text{EQ. (63.2)}$$

$$\phi = \frac{i(t)}{C_s} + \frac{R\partial i(t)}{\partial t} \qquad \text{EQ. (63.3)}$$

$$\phi = \frac{1}{C_s} + R \cdot s \qquad \text{EQ. (63.4)}$$

$$s = \frac{-1}{C_s \cdot R}, \text{ by definition: } i_{out}(t) = \frac{V_{C_s}init}{R} \qquad \text{EQ. (63.5)}$$

$$i(t) = \left(\frac{V_{C_s}init}{R}\right) \cdot e^{\left(\frac{-t}{C_s \cdot R}\right)} \qquad \text{EQ. (63.6)}$$

$$V_{out}(t) = R \cdot i(t) = V_{C_s}init \cdot e\left(\frac{-t}{C_s \cdot R}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (63.7)}$$

Maximum power transfer occurs when:

$$Power\_Final = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \cdot Peak\_Power \qquad \text{EQ. (63.8)}$$

$$Power\_Peak = \frac{\left(V_{C_s}\,peak\right)^2}{R} \qquad \text{EQ. (63.9)}$$

$$Power\_Final = \frac{\left(x \cdot V_{C_s}\,peak\right)^2}{R} \qquad \text{EQ. (63.10)}$$

$$\frac{\left(x \cdot V_{C_s}\,peak\right)^2}{R} = \frac{\left(V_{C_s}\,peak\right)^2}{R} \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \text{ yields } x = 0.841 \qquad \text{EQ. (63.11)}$$

Let $V_{Cs}init = 1$, then $V_{out}(t) = 0.841$ when

$$t = \frac{1}{freqLO} - Aperture\_Width\,. \qquad \text{EQ. (63.12)}$$

$$0.841 = 1 \cdot e^{\left(\frac{\frac{1}{freqLO} - Aperture\_Width}{C_s \cdot R}\right)} \qquad \text{EQ. (63.13)}$$

$$\ln(0.841) = \left(\frac{\frac{1}{freqLO} - Aperture\_Width}{C_s \cdot R}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (63.14)}$$

$$C_s(R) = \left(\frac{\frac{1}{freqLO} - Aperture\_Width}{-\ln(0.841) \cdot R}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (63.15)}$$

6. Signal-To-Noise Ratio Comparison of the Various Embodiments

The prior sub-sections described the basic SNR definition and the SNR of an optimal matched filter/correlator processor according to embodiments of the present invention. This sub-section section describes the SNR of additional processor embodiments of the present invention and compares their SNR with the SNR of a optimal matched filter/correlator embodiment. The description in this sub-section is based on calculations relating to single apertures and not accumulations of multiple aperture averages. Since SNR is a relative metric, this method is useful for comparing different embodiments of the present invention.

EQ. (65), which can be obtained from EQ. (64), represents the output SNR for a single aperture embodiment assuming a constant envelope sine wave input. The results could modify according to the auto-correlation function of the input process, however, over a single carrier half cycle, this relationship is exact.

$$SNR_{opt} \triangleq \frac{1}{N_0}\int_0^{\infty} S_i^2(t_0 - \tau)\, d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (64)}$$

$$SNR_{opt} \triangleq \frac{T_A A^2}{2N_0} \quad \text{(single aperture case)} \qquad \text{EQ. (65)}$$

The description that follows illustrates the SNR for three processor embodiments of the present invention for a given input waveform. These embodiments are:

- An Example Optimal Matched Filter/Correlator Processor Embodiment;
- An Example Finite Time Integrator processor Embodiment; and
- An Example RC Processor Embodiment

The relative value of the SNR of these three embodiments is accurate for

purposes of comparing the embodiments. The absolute SNR may be adjusted according to the statistic and modulation of the input process and its complex envelope.

Consider an example finite time integrator processor, such as the one illustrated in FIG. 164B. The impulse response of the finite time integrator processor is given by EQ. (66):

$$h(t) = k, \ 0 \le t \le T_s \qquad \text{EQ. (66)}$$

Where k is defined as an arbitrary constant.

The output of the finite time integrator processor, $y(t)$ is found from the input, $x(t)$ using:

$$y(t) = \int_{t-T_s}^{t} x(u)\, du \qquad \text{EQ. (67)}$$

A change of variables yields EQ. (68):

$$y(t-\tau) = \int_{t-\tau-T_s}^{t-\tau} x(v)\, dv \qquad \text{EQ. (68)}$$

The output auto correlation then becomes that shown in EQ. (69):

$$R_y(\tau) = \int_{t-T_s}^{t} du \int_{t-\tau-T_s}^{t-\tau} R_x(u-v)\, dv \qquad \text{EQ. (69)}$$

which leads to:

$$R_x(u-v) = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_x(\omega)\, e^{j\omega(u-v)} d\omega \qquad \text{EQ. (70)}$$

This Fourier transform may be substituted into the expression for $R_y(\tau)$, in EQ. (71), which becomes:

$$R_y(\tau) = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_x(\omega)d\omega \int_{-T_A}^{0} e^{j\omega u} du \int_{\tau-T_A}^{\tau} e^{-j\omega v} dv \qquad \text{EQ. (71)}$$

$$R_y(\tau) = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_x(\omega)\left[\frac{e^{j\omega}\left(1-e^{-j\omega T_A}\right)}{j\omega}\right]\left[\frac{e^{-j\omega(\tau-\tau)}\left(1-e^{-j\omega T_A}\right)}{j\omega}\right] d\omega$$

EQ. (72)

$$\therefore S_y(\omega) = S_x(\omega)\frac{\sin^2 \omega T_A/2}{(\omega/2)^2} \qquad \text{EQ. (73)}$$

$S_y(\omega)$ is the power spectral density at the output of the example finite time integrator, whose integration aperture is T_A and whose input power spectrum is defined by $S_y(\omega)$. For the case of wide band noise:

$$S_{yn}(\omega) = \frac{N_0}{2\pi}\frac{\sin^2 \omega T_A/2}{(\omega/2)^2} \qquad \text{EQ. (74)}$$

The total noise power across the band can be found from EQ. (75):

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_{yn}(\omega)d\omega = \frac{N_0}{2\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\frac{\sin^2(\omega T_A/2)}{(\omega/2)^2}\, d\omega = T_A N_0 \qquad \text{EQ. (75)}$$

This result can be verified by EQ. (76):

$$\overline{\overline{Y^2}} = N_0\int_0^{\infty} h^2(\tau)\, d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (76)}$$

This signal power over a single aperture is obtained by EQ. (77):

$$y(t)^2 = \left(2A\int_0^{T_A/2}\sin(\omega t)dt\right)^2 \qquad \text{EQ. (77)}$$

Choosing A=1, the finite time integrator output SNR becomes:

$$SNR_{ISI} = \frac{4T_A}{\pi^2 N_0} \qquad \text{EQ. (78)}$$

An example RC filter can also be used to model an embodiment of the present invention. This mean squared output of a linear system may be found

from EQ. (79):

$$\overline{Y^2} = \int_0^\infty d\tau_1 \int_0^\infty R_x(\tau_A - \tau_1)h(\tau_1)h(\tau_2)\, d\tau_2 \qquad \text{EQ. (79)}$$

For the case of input AWGN:

$$R_w(\tau) = N_0\delta(\tau) \qquad \text{EQ. (80)}$$

$$\overline{Y^2} = N_0 \int_0^\infty d\tau_1 \int_0^\infty \delta(\tau_2 - \tau_1)h(\tau_1)h(\tau_2)\, d\tau_2 \qquad \text{EQ. (81)}$$

$$\overline{Y_n^2} = N_0 \int_0^\infty h^2(\tau)\, d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (82)}$$

This leads to the result in EQ. (83):

$$H(s) = \frac{1/RC}{s + 1/RC} * \left(\frac{1 - e^{-sT_A}}{s}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (83)}$$

R is the resistor associated with processor source, and C is the energy storage capacitor.

Therefore;

$$h(t) = \frac{1}{RC} e^{-t/RC}\,\left(u(t) - u(t - T_A)\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (84)}$$

And finally:

$$\overline{Y_n^2} = \frac{N_0}{2RC}\left(1 - e^{-\left(2N_0 T/RC\right)}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (85)}$$

The detailed derivation for the signal voltage at the output to the RC filter is provided in sub-section 5 above. The use of the β parameter is also described in sub-section 5. Hence, the $\mathrm{SNR_{RC}}$ is given by:

$$SNR_{RC} = \frac{2(V_0(t_s))^2}{\beta N_0} \quad T_A = 1, \quad A = 1 \qquad \text{EQ. (86)}$$

Illustrative SNR performance values of the three example processor embodiments of the present invention are summarized in the table below:

Example Matched Filter	Performance Relative to the Performance of an Optimal Matched Filter Embodiment
$SNR_{MF} = \frac{T_A}{2N_0}$	0dB
Example Integrator Approximate	
$SNR_{INT} = \frac{4T_A}{\pi^2 N_0}$	-.91dB
Example RC Approximate (3 example cases for reference)	
$SNR_{RC} = \frac{V_0(t)^2 \cdot 2}{\beta N_0} \cong \frac{.2142}{N_0}$	-3.7dB, at $T_A = 1$, $\beta = 2.6$
$SNR_{RC} \cong \frac{.377}{N_0}$	-1.2dB, at $T_A = .75$, $\beta = 2.6$
$SNR_{RC} \cong \frac{.405}{N_0}$	-.91dB at $T_A = 1$, $\beta \leq .25$

Notice that as the capacitor becomes larger, the RC processor behaves like a finite time integrator and approximates its performance. As described above in sub-section 5, with a β of 0.25, a carrier signal of 2450 MHz, and R = 50Ω, the value for *C* becomes C≥16.3*pf.*

FIG. 176 illustrates the output voltage waveforms for all three processor embodiments. (Note that two curves are shown for the RC correlator processor, ∃=2.6 and ∃=0.25). FIG. 177 A illustrates the relative SNR's over the aperture.

6.2 Carrier Offset and Phase Skew Characteristics of Embodiments of the Present Invention

FIG. 177B illustrates some basic matched filter waveforms that are common to some communications applications. The first waveform 17750 is a baseband rect function. Since this waveform is symmetric it is easy to visualize the time reversed waveform corresponding to the ideal matched filter impulse response, $h(t)$, which is also a rect function:

$$h(t) * S_i(t-\tau) \int_{t_0}^{t_1} S_i(t-\tau) h(t)\,dt \qquad \text{EQ. (86.1)}$$

The second waveform 17760 illustrates the same rect function envelope at passband (RF) and it's matched filter impulse response. Notice the sine function phase reversal corresponding to the required time axis flip. FIG. 177C shows a waveform 17770. Waveform 17770 is a single half sine pulse whose time reversed representation is identical. This last impulse response would be optimal but as pointed out earlier may be difficult to implement exactly. Fortunately, an exact replica is not required.

FIG. 177D illustrates some exemplary approaches for a complex matched filter/correlator processor applied to a variety of waveforms. As shown in FIG. 177D, approaches 17780 and 17785 are classical ways to producing a complex matched filter/correlator processor. FIG. 177E shows approach 17790. Approach 17790 shows one embodiment of a complex matched filter/correlator processor implemented with the UFT as the processor. The only difference in the UFT approach 17790 is the duration of the pulse envelope. The fact that the gating pulse is small compared to other applications for a correlator is of little consequence to the complex baseband processor. When there is no phase skew then all of the correlated energy is transferred to the I output. When there is a phase skew then a portion of the aliased down converted energy is transferred to the I output and the remainder to the Q. All of the correlated energy is still available, in its optimally filtered form, for final processing in the BB processor.

The fact that a non-coherent processor is used or a differentially coherent BB processor used in lieu of a coherent Costas Loop in no way diminishes the contribution of the UFT correlator effect obtained by selecting the optimal aperture T_A based on matched filter theory.

Consider FIG. 177E which illustrates an aperture with a phase shifted sine function. In addition, a derivation is provided which indicates that the aperture with phase skew, as referenced to the half sine function, can be represented by the fundamental correlator kernel multiplied by a constant. This provides insight into the interesting SNR properties of the UFT which are based on matched filter principles over the aperture regardless of phase skew ϕ.

Moreover, Section IV, part 5.1 above illustrates that a complex UFT downconverter which utilizes a bandpass filter actually resembles the optimal matched filter/correlator kernel in complex form with the in phase result scaled by cosϕ and the quadrature phase component scaled by sinϕ. This process preserves all the energy of the downconverter signal envelope (minus system loses) with a part of the energy in I and the remainder in Q.

7. Multiple Aperture Embodiments of the Present Invention

The above sub-sections describe single aperture embodiments of the present invention. That is, the above sub-sections describe the acquisition of single half sine waves according to embodiments of the invention. Other embodiments of the present invention are also possible, however, and the present invention can be extended to other waveform partitions that capture multiple half sine waves. For example, capturing two half sine waves provides twice the energy compared to capturing only a single half sine. Capturing n half sines provides n times the energy, et cetera, until sub harmonic sampling is no longer applicable. The invention is directed to other embodiments as well. Of course, the matched filter waveform requires a different correlating aperture for each new n. This aspect of the present invention is illustrated in FIGS. 178A and 178B.

In the example of FIG. 178B, the sample aperture window is twice as long as the examples in the previous sub-sections. The matched filter impulse response in FIG. 178B is bipolar to accommodate a full sine cycle. The embodiment of this example can be implemented, for example, with a rectangular bipolar function (Haar's Wavelet) gating device.

Fourier transforming the components for the example processor yields the results shown in FIG. 179 and EQ. (87).

$$S(f) \cong \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{Af_s T_A}{2}\left[\frac{\sin(\pi(nf_s - Nf_s)T_A)}{(\pi(nf_s - Nf_s)T_A)} + \frac{\sin(\pi nf_s + Nf_s)T_A)}{(\pi(nf_s + Nf_s)T_A)}\right]\delta(f - nf_s)$$

EQ. (87)

The transform of the periodic, sampled, signal is first given a Fourier series representation (since the Fourier transform of a power signal does not exist in strict mathematical sense) and each term in the series is transformed sequentially to produce the result illustrated. Notice that outside of the desired main lobe aperture response that certain harmonics are nulled by the (sinx)/x response. Even those harmonics, which are not completely nulled, are reduced by the side lobe attenuation. Some sub-harmonics and super-harmonics are eliminated or attenuated by the frequency domain nulls and side lobes of the bipolar matched filter/correlator processor, which is a remarkable result.

Theoretically, arbitrary impulse responses may be constructed in the manner above, particularly if weighting is applied across the aperture or if multiple apertures are utilized to create a specific Fourier response. FIR filters and convolvers may be constructed by extending the aperture and utilizing the appropriate weighting factors. Likewise, disjoint or staggered apertures may be constructed to provide a particular desired impulse response. These apertures can be rearranged and tuned 'on the fly'.

FIG. 180 (I/Q Bipolar Aperture for 2.4 - 2.5 GHz 3rd Harmonic Down Converter Application) and FIG. 181 (Down Converted I/Q Waveforms-Slight Carrier Offset) illustrate the results from an actual circuit design and simulation targeting the 2.4 - 2.5 GHz ISM band and implementing a bipolar weighted aperture. FIG. 180 illustrates actual gating pulses, which form the apertures for I-, I+, Q-, and Q+. FIG. 181 illustrates the baseband I and Q outputs corresponding to the down converter. In embodiments, the sequence I-, I+, Q-, and Q+ apertures are repeated every three carrier cycles, nominally. Hence, out of six sine

carrier segments, four are captured. Conversion losses well below 10dB are possible with this embodiment of the present invention.

8. Mathematical Transform Describing Embodiments of the Present Invention

8.1 Overview

The operation of the present invention represents a new signal-processing paradigm. Embodiments of the invention can be shown to be related to particular Fourier sine and cosine transforms. Hence, the new term UFT transform is utilized to refer to the process. As already stated, in embodiments of the present invention can be viewed as a matched filter or correlator operation, which in embodiments is normally applied recursively to the carrier signal at a sub-harmonic rate. A system equation may be written to describe this operation, assuming a rectangular sample aperture and integrators as operators, as shown in FIG. 182 and EQ. (88). The process integrates across an acquisition aperture then stores that value, or a significant portion thereof, to be accumulated with the next aperture. Hence, energy from the input is acquired during T_A and held for $T_S - T_A$ until the next acquisition.

$$D_n \triangleq \sum_{n=1}^{k} \int_{nT_S}^{nT_S+T_A} \left(u\left(t-nT_S\right)-u\left(t-\left(nT_S+T_A\right)\right)\right)\cdot A_n \sin\left(\omega t+\phi_{(n-\ell)}\right)dt$$
$$-\alpha \sum_{n=1}^{k} \int_{(n-\ell)T_S}^{(n-\ell)T_S+T_A} \left(u\left(t-(n-\ell)T_S\right)-u\left(t-\left(n-(1-\ell)\right)T_S+T_A\right)\right)\cdot A_{(n-\ell)} S_i\left(\omega t+\phi_{(n-\ell)}\right)dt$$

EQ. (88)

where:

T_A is the aperture duration;

T_S is the sub-harmonic sample period;

k is the total number of collected apertures;

ℓ is the sample memory depth;

$\forall$ is the UFT leakage coefficient;

A_n is the amplitude weighting on the nth aperture due to modulation, noise, etc.; and

$\vee_n$ is the phase domain shift of nth aperture due to modulation, noise, carrier offset, etc.

D_n represents the UFT transform applicable to embodiments of the invention. The first term defines integration over a rectangular segment of the carrier signal of T_A time duration. k pulses are summed to form a memory of the recursively applied kernel. The second term in the equation provides for the fact that practical implementations possess finite memory. Hence, embodiments of the present invention are permitted to leak after a fashion by selecting α and ℓ. This phenomena is reflected in the time variant differential equation, EQ. (31), derived in sub-section 5. In embodiments, for a perfect zero order data hold function, $\alpha = 0$.

8.2 The Kernel for Embodiments of the Invention

The UFT kernel applicable to embodiments of the invention is given by EQ. (89):

$$D_1 = \int_0^{T_A} (u(t) - u(t - T_A)) \cdot A \sin(\omega t + \phi) dt \qquad \text{EQ. (89)}$$

EQ. 89 accounts for the integration over a single aperture of the carrier signal with arbitrary phase, ϕ, and amplitude, A. Although A and ϕ are

shown as constants in this equation, they actually may vary over many (often hundreds or thousands) of carrier cycles. Actually, $\phi(t)$ and $A(t)$ may contain the modulated information of interest at baseband. Nevertheless, over the duration of a pulse, they may be considered as constant.

8.3 Waveform Information Extraction

Ever since Nyquist developed general theories concerning waveform sampling and information extraction, researchers and developers have pursued optimum sampling techniques and technologies. In recent years, many radio architectures have embraced these technologies as a means to an end for ever more 'digital like' radios. Sub sampling, IF sampling, syncopated sampling, etc., are all techniques employed for operating on the carrier to extract the information of interest. All of these techniques share a common theory and common technology theme, i.e., Nyquist's theory and ideal impulse samplers. Clearly, Nyquist's theory is truly ideal, from a theoretical perspective, while ideal impulse samplers are pursued but never achieved.

Consider the method of developing an impulse sample using functions with shrinking apertures, as illustrated in FIG. 183. The method illustrated in FIG. 183 utilizes a pulse shape, for example a normalized Gaussian, a modified sine, or some other suitable type, and permits the pulse width to shrink as the peak amplitude grows. As the pulse width shrinks, the area of the pulse becomes unity. These pulse generation methods are formulated

using distribution mathematics techniques. Typically, such formulations require the assumption that causality is violated as is illustrated by the precursors in FIG. 183. Hence, such pulses are not practical because they are non-causal. In addition, since impulse samplers are implemented to store the sample value at an instantaneous waveform point, they typically utilize a sample and hold approach, which typically implies the charging of a capacitor. As would be known to persons skilled in the relevant arts given the discussion herein, parasitics can present significant charging concerns for such pulses because of the relationships represented by EQ. (90) and EQ. (91).

$$\frac{dq}{dt} = C\frac{dv}{dt} \text{ (Charge Differential)} \qquad \text{EQ. (90)}$$

$$u = \int_0^q \frac{q_x}{c} = dq_x = \frac{q^2}{2c} = \frac{Cv^2}{2} \text{ (Energy)} \qquad \text{EQ. (91)}$$

As would be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant arts given the discussion herein, an arbitrary capacitance, c, cannot be charged in an infinitesimally short time period without an infinite amount of energy. Even approximations to an ideal impulse therefore can place unrealistic demands on analog sample acquisition interface circuits in terms of parasitic capacitance vs. pulse width, amplitude, power source, etc. Therefore, a trade-off is typically made concerning some portion of the mix.

The job of a sample and hold circuit is to approximate an ideal impulse sampler followed by a memory. There are limitations in practice, however. A hold capacitor of significant value must be selected in order to store the sample without droop between samples. This requires a healthy charging current and a buffer, which isolates the capacitor in between samples, not to mention a capacitor, which is not 'leaky,' and a buffer

without input leakage currents. In general, ideal impulse samplers are very difficult to approximate when they must operate on RF waveforms, particularly if IC implementations and low power consumption are required.

The ideal sample extraction process is mathematically represented in EQ. (92) by the sifting function.

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t)\delta\left(t - T_A/2\right)\,dt = x\left(\frac{T_A}{2}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (92)}$$

where: $\frac{T_A}{2}$ ≙ Sample Time; $x(t)$ ≙ Sampled Function; and $\delta(t)$ ≙ Impulse

Sample Function.

Suppose now that:

$$x(t) = A\sin(t+\phi) \qquad \text{EQ. (93)}$$

then:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} A\sin(t+\phi)\delta\left(t - T_A/2\right)dt = A\sin\left(T_A/2 + \phi\right)$$

$$= A\cos(\phi)\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\sin(t)\delta\left(t - T_A/2\right)dt + A\sin(\phi)\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\cos(t)\delta\left(t - T_A/2\right)\,dt$$

EQ. (94)

$$= A\cos(\phi)\sin\left(T_A/2\right) = A\cos(\phi)\,T_A = \pi \qquad \text{EQ. (95)}$$

This represents the sample value acquired by an impulse sampler operating on a carrier signal with arbitrary phase shift ϕ. EQ. (95) illustrates that the equivalence of representing the output of the sampler operating on a signal, $X(t)$ without phase shift, ϕ, weighted by $\cos\phi$, and the original sampled $X(t)$ which does have a phase shift. The additional requirement is that a time aperture of T_A corresponds to π radians.

Next, consider the UFT kernel:

$$D_1 \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (u(t) - u(t - T_A))\sin(t + \phi)dt \qquad \text{EQ. (96)}$$

Using trigonometric identities yields:

$$D_2 \triangleq A\cos(\phi)\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (u(t) - u(t - T_A))\sin(t)dt \qquad \text{EQ. (97)}$$

Now the kernel does not possess a phase term, and it is clear that the aperture straddles the sine half cycle depicted in FIG. 184. In EQ. (97), $\cos\phi$ is a weighting factor on the result, which originally illustrated the non-ideal alignment of the present invention clock and carrier signal. Trigonometric identities provide a means of realigning the present invention clock and carrier signal while accounting for the output result due to phase skew.

Consider the ideal aperture of embodiments of the invention shown in FIG. 185. Notice that the ideal aperture is illustrated as possessing two equal ½ aperture components. Hence the UFT kernel for embodiments of the invention can be rewritten as:

$$D_1 \triangleq A\cos(\phi)\left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\left(u(t)-u\left(T_s/2\right)\right)\sin(t)dt+\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\left(u\left(t-T_s/2\right)-u(t-T_s)\right)\sin(t)dt\right]$$

EQ. (98)

It should also be apparent to those skilled in the relevant arts given the discussion herein that the first integral is equivalent to the second, so that;

$$D_1 = 2A\cos(\phi)\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\left(u(t)-u\left(t-T_s/2\right)\right)\sin(t)dt$$

EQ. (99)

As illustrated in FIG. 186, a property relating unit step functions and delta functions is useful. In FIG. 186, a step function is created by integrating a delta function. Therefore;

$$D_1 = 2A\cos(\phi)\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\left[\int_{-\infty}^{t}\delta(t')\,dt' - \int_{-\infty}^{t}\delta\left(t' - T_A/2\right)dt'\right]\sin(t)\,dt$$

EQ. (100)

Using the principle of integration by parts yields EQ. (101).

$$\begin{aligned} D_1 &= 2A\cos(\phi)\int_{-\infty}^{t}\cos(t')\,\delta(t')\,dt' + 2A\cos(\phi)\int_{-\infty}^{t}\cos(t')\,\delta\left(t' - T_A/2\right)dt \\ &= 2A\cos\phi\int_{-\infty}^{t}\sin(t')\delta\left(t - T_A/2\right)dt' \\ &= 2A\cos(\phi), \text{ for } T_A = \pi \end{aligned}$$

EQ. (101)

This is a remarkable result because it reveals the equivalence of the output of embodiments of the present invention with the result presented earlier for the arbitrarily phased ideal impulse sampler, derived by time sifting. That is, in embodiments, the UFT transform calculates the numerical result obtained by an ideal sampler. It accomplishes this by averaging over a specially constructed aperture. Hence, the impulse sampler value expected at $T_A/2$ implicitly derived by the UFT transform operating over an interval, T_A. This leads to the following very important implications for embodiments of the invention:

- The UFT transform is very easy to construct with existing circuitry hardware, and it produces the results of an ideal impulse sampler, indirectly, without requiring an impulse sampler.
- Various processor embodiments of the present invention reduce the variance of the expected ideal sample, over that

obtained by impulse sampling, due to the averaging process over the aperture.

8.4 Proof Statement for UFT Complex Downconverter Embodiment of the Present Invention

The following analysis utilizes concepts of the convolution property for the sampling waveform and properties of the Fourier transform to analyze the complex clock waveform for the UFT as well as the down conversion correlation process. FIG. 187 illustrates this process.

In addition *r(t)* is considered filtered, by a bandpass filter. In one exemplary embodiment, sub-optimal correlators approximate the UFT. This analysis illustrates that some performance is regained when the front-end bandpass filter is used, such that the derived correlator kernel resembles the optimal form obtained from matched filter theory. Furthermore, the analysis illustrates that the arbitrary phase shift of a carrier on which the UFT operates, does not alter the optimality of the correlator structure which can always be modeled as a constant times the optimal kernel. This is due to the fact that UFT is by definition matched to a pulse shape resembling the carrier half cycle which permits phase skew to be viewed as carrier offset rather than pulse shape distortion.

Using the pulse techniques described above, describing pulse trains, the clock signal for UFT may be written as equation 18802 of FIG. 188.

$P_c(t)\underline{\Delta}$ A basic pulse shape of the clock (gating waveform),in our case defined to have specific correlation properties matched to the half sine of the carrier waveform.

$T_S\underline{\Delta}$ Time between recursively applied gating waveforms.

$T_A\underline{\Delta}$ Width of gating waveform

In FIG. 188, $C_1(t)$ in equation 18804 and $C_Q(t)$ in equation 18806 are considered to be complex clocks shifted in phase by $T_A/2$. The received carrier is related to T_A by $f_c \approx (2T_A)^{-1}$.

Although the approximation is used, ideal carrier tracking for coherent demodulation will yield an equal sign after lock. However, this is not required to attain the excellent benefit from UFT processing. Other sections herein provide embodiments that develop expressions for C_1 and C_Q from Fourier series analysis to illustrate the components of the gating waveforms at the Carrier frequency which are harmonically related to T_S.

By the methods described above, the Fourier transform of the clock is found from:

$$C_I(f) = \Im\left\{\sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty}\delta(t-mT_s)\right\}P_c(f) \qquad \text{EQ. (102)}$$

$$C_I(f) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty}\frac{T_\Delta}{T_s}\frac{\sin(n\pi f_s T_\Delta)}{n\pi f_s T_\Delta}\cdot\delta(f-nf_s) \qquad \text{EQ. (103)}$$

C_Q possesses the same magnitude response of course but is delayed or shifted in phase and therefore may be written as:

$$C_Q(f) = C_I(f)e^{-j\pi f T_\Delta} \qquad \text{EQ. (104)}$$

When T_A corresponds to a half sine width then the above phase shift related to a $\frac{\pi}{2}$ radians phase skew for C_Q relative to C_1.

In one exemplary embodiment, consider then the complex UFT processor operating on a shifted carrier for a single recursion only,

$$S_0(t) = \int_0^{T_A} r(t)C_I(t)dt + \int_{T_A-T_A/2}^{3T_A/2} r(t)C_Q(t)dt \qquad \text{EQ. (105.1)}$$

$$S_0(t) = \int_0^{T_A} (A\sin(\omega t + \phi) + n(t))C_I(t)dt + \int_{T_A-T_A/2}^{3T_A/2} (A\sin(\omega t + \phi) + n(t))C_Q(t)dt \qquad \text{EQ. (105.2)}$$

This analysis assumes that *r(t),* the input carrier plus noise, is band limited by a filter. In this case therefore the delta function comb evident in the transform of C_1 and C_Q are ignored except for the components at the carrier. Embodiments in other sections break C_1 and C_Q into a Fourier series. In this series, only the harmonic of interest would be retained when the input waveform *r(t)* is bandpass limited because all other cross correlations tend to zero. Hence,

$$S_0(t) \cong K\int_0^{T_A} (A\sin(\omega t + \phi) + n(t))\sin(\omega t)dt + K\int_{T_A-T_A/2}^{3T_A/2} (A\sin(\omega t + \phi) + n(t))\cos(\omega t)dt \qquad \text{EQ. (105.3)}$$

$$S_0(t) \cong K\int_0^{T_A} (A\sin(\omega t)\cos\phi + \cos(\omega t)\sin\phi + n(t))\sin(\omega t)dt + K\int_{T_A-T_A/2}^{3T_A/2} (A\sin(\omega t)\cos\phi + \cos(\omega t)\sin\phi + n(t))\cos(\omega t)dt \qquad \text{EQ. (105.4)}$$

The clock waveforms have been replaced by the single sine and

cosine components from the Fourier transform and Fourier series, which produce the desired result due to the fact that a front-end filter filters all other spectral components. This produces a myriad of cross correlations for the complex UFT processor. *K* is included as a scaling factor evident in the transform.

$$S_0(t) = KA\cos\phi \overbrace{\int_0^{T_A} (\sin(\omega t))^2 dt}^{optimal\ correlator} +$$

$$K\int_0^{T_A} n(t)\sin\omega t dt + KA\sin\phi \int_{T_A/2}^{3T_A/2} \overbrace{(\cos(\omega t))^2}^{optimal\ correlator} dt + K\int_{T_A/2}^{3T_A/2} n(t)\cos\omega t dt$$

EQ. (106.1)

$$\therefore S_0(t) = \left(\frac{KA\pi}{2}\cos\phi + \tilde{n}_I\right) I\ \text{component} \qquad \text{EQ. (106.2)}$$

$$+\left(\frac{KA\pi}{2}\sin\phi + \tilde{n}_Q\right) Q\ \text{component} \qquad \text{EQ. (106.2.1)}$$

$$\text{where } K = \left(\frac{T_A}{T_s}\frac{\sin\left(n\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}\right)}{\left(n\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}\right)}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (106.3)}$$

A and ϕ are the original components of the complex modulation envelope (amplitude and phase) for the carrier and are assumed to vary imperceptibly over the duration for T_A. What is very interesting to note is that the above equations are exactly the optimum form for the complex correlator whose pulse shape is a half sine with components weighted by cosine for I, and sine for Q. Furthermore, when an input bandpass filter is considered as a part of the system then the approximate kernels used

throughout various analyses based on the gating function become replaced by the ideal matched filter analogy. Hence, the approximation in CMOS using rectangular gating functions, which are known to cause only a 0.91 dB hit in performance if C is selected correctly, probably can be considered pessimistic if the receiver front end is filtered.

8.5 Acquisition and Hold Processor Embodiment

As illustrated in FIG. 189, embodiments of the present invention can be approximately modeled as a particular case of a sampling system. In the example model in FIG. 189, both an acquisition phase and a hold phase for each T_S cycle is shown, where:

$r(t)\triangleq$	Input Waveform RF Modulated Carrier Plus Noise
$C_A(t)\triangleq$	Present Invention Aperture Waveform Pulse Train
$\delta_H(t)\triangleq$	Holding Phase Impulse Train
$h_A(t)\triangleq$	Integrator Impulse Response of the present Invention
$h_H(t)\triangleq$	Z0DH Portion of Present Invention Impulse Response

The embodiment in FIG. 189 consists of a gating device followed by a finite time integrator, then an ideal sampler, and finally a holding filter, which accumulates and stores the energy from the acquisition phase. This is called an acquisition and hold processor. The acquisition phase of the operation is described by:

$$X(t) = C_T(t)r(t) * h_A(t) \qquad \text{EQ. (107)}$$

$$X(t) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \left(u(t - kT_s) - u(t - (kT_s + T_A))A_k(\sin(\omega_c t + \phi_k)) * h_A(t)\right)$$

EQ. (108)

The ultimate output includes the hold phase of the operation and is written as:

$$S_0(t) = (X(t)\delta_H(t)) * h_H(t) \qquad \text{EQ. (109)}$$

$$S_0(t) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} (X(t)\delta_H(t - k(T_s))) * u(t - (kT_s + T_A)) - u(t - (k+1)T_s)$$

EQ. (110)

$$T = T_s - T_A \qquad \text{EQ. (111)}$$

This embodiment considers the aperture operation as implemented with an ideal integrator and the hold operation as implemented with the ideal integrator. As shown elsewhere herein, this can be approximated by energy storage in a capacitor under certain circumstances.

The acquisition portion of the operation possesses a Fourier transform given by:

$$X_s(\omega) = \Im\{X_0(t)\} = \overbrace{\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2\pi T_s} \overbrace{\delta(\omega - k\omega_s)}^{\text{Harmonic Sifter}}}^{} \overbrace{\left(\frac{T_A}{2} e^{j\omega T_A/2} \frac{\sin(\omega T_A/2)}{\omega T_A/2}\right)}^{\text{Finite Time Integrator}} \underbrace{S_s(\omega)_C}_{\text{Original Information Spectrum Changed by C(z)}}$$

$S_s(\omega) = \Im\{r(t)\}$ (Modulated Information Spectrum)

$S_0(\omega)$ can be found in a similar manner.

$$\Im\{S_0(t)\} = \overbrace{\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2\pi T_s} \overbrace{\delta(\omega - k\omega_s)}^{\text{Harmonic Sifter}}}^{} \overbrace{\left(\frac{T}{2} e^{j\omega T_s/2} \frac{\sin(\omega T/2)}{\omega T/2}\right)}^{\text{ZOH Response}} X(\omega)$$

$T = T_s - T_A$

The example of FIG. 190 illustrates the various components of the above transform superimposed on the same graph, for a down conversion case, where T_A is chosen as a single aperture realization and the 3rd sub harmonic is used for down conversion. The analysis does not consider the affect of noise, although, it is straightforward to accomplish, particularly in the case of AWGN. The lowpass spectrum possesses nulls at $nf_{SA}, n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots$, where $f_S = (T_S - T_A)^{-1}$. This Z0DH spectral response is also present at each harmonic of f_S although it is not indicated by the graphic.

The acquisition portion of the Fourier transform yields the following an important insight:

$$X_s(\omega) = \frac{KT_A}{T_s} \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(\omega - k\omega_s) \left(e^{j\omega T_A/2} \frac{\sin\left(\omega T_A/2\right)}{\omega T_A/2} \right) \cdot S_I(\omega)_c$$

EQ. (112)

$$S_I(\omega)_c = A_k T_A e^{j\omega T_A/2} \frac{\sin\left(\omega\left(T_A/2\right)\right)}{\omega\left(T_A/2\right)} \left(\delta(\omega - \omega_c) + \delta(\omega + \omega_c)\right)$$

EQ. (113)

As should be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant arts given the discussion herein, down conversion occurs whenever $k\omega_s = \omega_c$. It is useful to find T_A. which maximizes the component of the spectrum at ω_c, which is subject to down conversion and is the desired signal. This is accomplished simply by examining the kernel.

$$\tilde{X} \triangleq \left| \frac{T_A}{T_c} \frac{\sin\left(\omega\left(T_A/2\right)\right)}{\omega\left(T_A/2\right)} \right| \qquad \text{EQ. (114)}$$

For $\omega = \omega_c$,

$$\tilde{X} = \left| \frac{T_A}{n \cdot T_c} \frac{\sin\left(\pi \frac{T_A}{T_c}\right)}{\left(\pi \frac{T_A}{T_c}\right)} \right|, \quad nT_c = T_s \text{ for Harmonic Conversion}$$

$$\therefore \tilde{X} = \frac{1}{n\pi} \sin\left(\pi \frac{T_A}{T_c}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (115)}$$

The kernel is maximized for values of $\frac{T_A}{T_c} = {}^1/_2, {}^3/_2, {}^5/_2, \ldots$

Advocates of impulse samplers might be quick to point out that letting $T_A \to 0$ maximizes the sine function. This is true, but the sine function is multiplied by T_A in the acquisition phase. Hence, a delta function that does not have infinite amplitude will not acquire any energy during the acquisition phase of the sampler process. It must possess infinite amplitude to cancel the effect of $T_A \to 0$ so that the multiplier of the sine function possesses unity weighting. Clearly, this is not possible for practical circuits.

On the other hand, embodiments of the present invention with $\frac{T_A}{T_c} = {}^1/_2, {}^3/_2, {}^5/_2, \ldots$ etc., does pass significant calculable energy during the acquisition phase. This energy is directly used to drive the energy storage element of Ƶ0DH filter or other interpolation filter, resulting in practical RF impedance circuits. The cases for ${}^{T_A}/_{T_c}$ other than ${}^1/_2$ can be represented by multiple correlators, for example, operating on multiple half sine basis.

Moreover, it has been shown that the specific gating aperture, *C(t)* does not destroy the information. Quite the contrary, the aperture design for embodiments of the present invention produces the result of the impulse sampler, scaled by a gain constant, and possessing less variance. Hence, the delta sifting criteria, above trigonometric optimization, and correlator principles all point to an aperture of $\frac{T_A}{T_c} = \frac{1}{2}$ nominal.

If other impulse responses are added around the present invention (i.e., energy storage networks, matching networks, etc.) or if the present invention is implemented by simple circuits (such as the RC processor) then in embodiments the optimal aperture can be adjusted slightly to reflect the peaking of these other embodiments. It is also of interest to note that the Fourier analysis above predicts greater DC offsets for increasing ratios of $\frac{T_A}{T_c}$.

Therefore, for various embodiments, $\frac{T_A}{T_c} = \frac{1}{2}$ is probably the best design parameter for a low DC offset system.

9. *Comparison of the UFT Transform to the Fourier Sine and Cosine Transforms*

The sine and cosine transforms are defined as follows:

$$F_s(\omega) \triangleq \int_0^\infty f(t)\sin\ \omega t\ dt\ \ \omega \geq 0 \text{ (sine transform)} \qquad \text{EQ. (116)}$$

$$F_c(\omega) \triangleq \int_0^\infty f(t)\cos\ \omega t\ dt\ \ \omega \geq 0 \text{ (cosine transform)} \qquad \text{EQ. (117)}$$

Notice that when *f(t)* is defined by EQ. (118):

$$f(t) = u(t) - u(u - T_A) \qquad \text{EQ. (118)}$$

the UFT transform kernel appears as a sine or cosine transform depending on ϕ. Hence, many of the Fourier sine and cosine transform

properties may be used in conjunction with embodiments of the present invention to solve signal processing problems.

The following sine and cosine transform properties predict the following results of embodiments of the invention:

Sine and Cosine Transform Property	Prediction of Embodiments of the Invention
Frequency Shift Property	Modulation and Demodulation Preserving Information
Time Shift Property	Aperture Values Equivalent to Constant Time Delta Time Sift.
Frequency Scale Property	Frequency Division and Multiplication

Of course many other properties are applicable as well. The subtle point presented here is that for embodiments the UFT transform does in fact implement the transform, and therefore inherently possesses these properties.

Consider the following specific example: let $f(t) = u(t) - u(t - T_A)$ and let $\omega = 2\pi f = \pi f_A = 1$.

$$\Im_s[f(t)] = \int_0^{T_A} \cos(\omega t)\, dt = \frac{1}{\omega} \sin \omega T_A = 0 \qquad \text{EQ. (119)}$$

$$\Im_s[f(t)] = \frac{1}{\omega} - \frac{1}{\omega} \cos \omega T_A = 2 \qquad \text{EQ. (120)}$$

This is precisely the result for D_{1c} *and* D_{1s}. Time shifting yields:

$$\Im_s[f_0(t + T_s) + f_0(t - T_s)] = 2F_s(\omega)\cos(T_s\omega) \text{(Time Shift Property)}$$

Let the time shift to be denoted by T_s .

$$f(t) = u(t) - u(t - T_A) \qquad \text{EQ. (121)}$$

$$f_0(t) \triangleq \frac{1}{2}(u(t + T_s) - u(t)) + \frac{1}{2}(u(t) - u(t - T_s)) \qquad \text{EQ. (122)}$$

Notice that $f_0(t)$ has been formed due to the single sided nature of the sine and cosine transforms. Nevertheless, the amplitude is adjusted by $1/2$ to

accommodate the fact that the energy must be normalized to reflect the odd function extension. Then finally:

$$\Im_c\left[f_0(t+T_x)+f_0(t-T_x)\right]=\frac{2}{2}F_c(\omega)\cos(T_x\omega)=2\cos\left(\pi T_x/T_x\right)$$

EQ. (123)

which is the same solution for phase offset obtained earlier by other means.

The implications of this transform may be far reaching when it is considered that the discrete Fourier sine and cosine transforms are originally based on the continuous transforms as follows:

$$\Im_c\{f(t)\}=\int_0^\infty f(t)\cos\omega t\ dt \qquad \text{EQ. (124)}$$

$$\Im_{DC}\{f(t)\}\ \underline{\Delta}\ \Im\{f(n)\}=\sqrt{\frac{2}{N}}\sum_{n=0}^{N}\alpha_m\alpha_n\cos\left(\frac{mn\pi}{N}\right)f(n) \qquad \text{EQ. (125)}$$

That is, the original kernel $\cos(\omega t)$ and function *f(t)* are sampled such that:

$f(n)\ \underline{\Delta}$ Sampled Version of $f(t)$

$\omega_m=2\pi_m\Delta f$

$t_n=n\Delta t$

$\Delta f\ \underline{\Delta}$ Frequency Sample Interval

$\Delta t\ \underline{\Delta}$ Time Sample Interval

Hence the new discrete cosine transform kernel is:

$$k_c(m,n)=\cos(2\pi mn\ \Delta f\Delta t)=\cos(\pi mn/n)\ \Delta f\Delta t=1/2N$$

EQ. (126)

N is the total number of accumulated samples for *m, n,* or the total record length.

In recent years, the discrete cosine transform (DCT) and discrete

sine transform (DST) have gained much recognition due to their efficiency for waveform coding compression, spectrum analysis, etc. In fact, it can he shown that these transforms can approach the efficiency of Karhunen-Loeve transforms (KLT), with minimal computational complexity. The implication is that the sifted values from D_1 could be used as DCT sample values *f(n)*. Then the DCT and DST properties will apply along with their processing architectures. In this manner, communications signals, like OFDM, could he demodulated in a computationally efficient manner. Many other signal processing applications are possible using the present invention, and the possibilities are rich and varied.

10. Conversion, Fourier Transform, and Sampling Clock Considerations

The previous sub-sections described how embodiments of the present invention involve gating functions of controlled duration over which integration can occur. This section now addresses some consideration for the controlling waveform of the gating functions.

For sub harmonic sampling:

$f_s = f_c / M$

$f_s \triangleq$ Sample Rate

$f_c \triangleq$ Carrier Frequency

$M \triangleq$ As an integer such that $0 < M < \infty$

The case M=l represents a classic down conversion scenario since $f_s = f_c$ In general though, M will vary from 3 to 10 for most practical applications.

Thus the matched filtering operation of embodiments of the present invention is applied successively at a rate, f_S, using the approach of embodiments of the present invention. Each matched filter/correlator operation represents a new sample of the bandpass waveform.

The subsequent equations illustrate the sampling concept, with an analysis base on approximations that ignore some circuit phenomena. A more rigorous analysis requires explicit transformation of the circuit impulse response. This problem can be solved by convolving in the time domain as well, as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant arts given the discussion herein. The results will be the same. The analysis presented herein is an abbreviated version of one provided above. As in the subsection 8, the acquisition portion of the present invention response is analyzed separately from the hold portion of the response to provide some insight into each. The following sub-section uses a shorthand notation for convenience.

$$X_0(t) = S_i(t)\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty}\tilde{C}(t-kT_s) \text{ (approximate output of acquisition)}$$

EQ. (127)

$X_0(t)\triangleq$ Output of Sample

$S_i[t]\triangleq$ Waveform being Sampled

$k\triangleq$ Sampling Index

$T_s\triangleq$ Sampling Interval $= f_s^{-1}$

$\tilde{C}(t-kT_s)\ \triangleq$ Quasi-Matched Filter/Correlator Sampling Aperture, which includes averaging over the Aperture.

EQ. (127) can be rewritten a:

$$X_0(t) \cong \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} S_i(kT_s) * \tilde{C}(t-kT_s) \qquad \text{EQ. (128)}$$

If $\tilde{C}$(t) possesses a very small aperture with respect to the inverse information bandwidth, $T_A \ll BW_i^{-1}$ then the sampling aperture will weight the frequency domain harmonics of f_s. The Fourier transform and the modulation property may be applied to EQ. (128) to obtain EQ. (129) (note this problem was solved above by convolving in the time domain).

$$X_0(\omega) = \left(S_i(\omega), \tilde{C}(\omega) \right) \qquad \text{EQ. (129)}$$

$$\therefore X_0(\omega) \cong \frac{K}{T_s} \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta_i(\omega - k\omega_s) \left[\frac{T_A \cdot e^{j\omega T_A/2} \sin(\omega T_A/2)}{2 \quad \omega T_A/2} \right] \cdot S_i(\omega), \qquad \text{EQ. (130)}$$

$K \triangleq$ Arbitrary Gain Constant, which includes a $1/2\pi$ factor $\omega \triangleq 2\pi f$.

Essentially, on the macroscopic frequency scale, there is a harmonic sample comb generated, which possesses components at every Nf_s for N= 1,2,3…∞, with nulls at every Z f_A, where f_A is defined as T_A^{-1}. FIG. 191 illustrates this result..

The thickness of each spike in FIG. 191 illustrates the surrounding band produced from $S_i(\omega)$. $S_i(\omega)$ is a complex transform including magnitude and phase, which can be assigned a vector representation in the time domain (i.e., I and Q components). The natural action of embodiments of the present invention, in the hold portion of the response, acts as a lowpass filter in the down conversion case, thereby reducing the levels of all the harmonic sidebands. Likewise, the up converter utilizes a bandpass matched filter to extract the desired carrier and reject unwanted images.

Notice that each harmonic including basehand possesses a replica of $S_i(\omega)$ which is in fact the original desired signal. { $S_i(\omega)$ is the original information spectrum and is shown to survive the acquisition response of the present invention (i.e., independent integration over each aperture)}. Lathi and many others pointed out that (ω) could be virtually any

harmonic function and that conversion to baseband or passband will result from such operations on $S_i(t)$.

Each discrete harmonic spectrum provides a potential down conversion source to baseband (at DC). Of course, theoretically, there cannot be a conversion of $Z \cdot f_a$ because of the spectral nulls. FIG. 191 illustrates the important relationships between f_s, f_a and the relative harmonic conversion efficiency related to the sinc^2 function harmonic comb weighting, resulting from a simple rectangular sampling aperture.

It should also be noted that in all practical cases, $f_s \gg 2 \cdot BW_i$, so hat Nyquist criteria are more than satisfied. The lowpass response of embodiments of the present invention can be ideally modeled as a zero order data hold filter, with a finite time integrator impulse response duration of $T = T_s - T_A$. The ultimate output Fourier transform is given by EQ. (131).

$$S_o(\omega) = \underbrace{\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{K}{T_s} \delta(\omega - k\omega_s)}_{\text{Harmonic Sifter}} \underbrace{\left(\frac{T}{2} e^{j\omega T/2} \frac{\sin \omega T/2}{\omega T/2} \right)}_{Z0DH\ \text{Response}} \cdot \underbrace{X(\omega)}_{\text{Acquisition Response}}$$

EQ. (131)

The *Z0DH* is a type of lowpass filter or sample interpolator which provides a memory in between acquisitions. Each acquisition is accomplished by a correlation over T_A, and the result becomes an accumulated initial condition for the next acquisition.

10.1 Phase Noise Multiplication

Typically, processor embodiments of the present invention sample at a sub-harmonic rate. Hence the carrier frequency and associated bandpass signal are down converted by a $M \cdot f_s$ harmonic. The harmonic generation operation can be represented with a complex phasor.

$$S_{osc}(t) \triangleq \left(e^{-j\omega_s t + \phi(t)} \right)^M \qquad \text{EQ. (132)}$$

$S_{amp}(t)$can be rewritten as:

$$S_{amp}(t) = e^{-jM\omega_s t} \cdot e^{M\phi(t)} \qquad \text{EQ. (133)}$$

ϕ(t)$\underline{\Delta}$ Phase Noise on the Conversion Clock

As EQ. (133) indicates, not only is the frequency content of the phasor multiplied by M but the phase noise is also multiplied by M. This results in an M-tuple convolution of the phase noise spectrum around the harmonic. The total phase noise power increase is approximated by EQ. (134).

$$\phi = \underline{\Delta}\, 20 \log_{10} M \text{ (Phase Noise)} \qquad \text{EQ. (134)}$$

That is, whatever the phase jitter component, ϕ(t)existing on the original sample clock at Mf_s it possesses a phase noise floor degraded according to EQ. (134).

10.2 AM-PM Conversion and Phase Noise

This section describes what the conversion constant and the output noise is for AM to PM conversion according to embodiments of the present invention, considering the noise frequency of the threshold operation. As illustrated in FIG. 192, suppose that the output of a sine signal source must be filtered and compared, in order to obtain a suitable clock signal. For cases where the equivalent input noise power of the threshold device can be considered to be much less than the input power source sine wave, a single zero crossing per cycle of sine wave can be assumed to occur. For such low noise cases, the threshold operation may be viewed as an AM to PM conversion device.

The slope at the zero crossings of a pure sine wave, $s(t) = A \sin \omega t$, can be calculated. Differentiating $s(t)$ with respect to t yields $s(t)$

$= \omega A \cos \omega t$. For $\omega A \neq 0$, the zero crossings occur at $\omega t = {}^{\pi}/_{2}, {}^{3\pi}/_{2}, {}^{5\pi}/_{2} \ldots$

$$\therefore t = \frac{1}{4f}, \frac{3}{4f}, \frac{5}{4f} \ldots \{\text{for } s(t)\} \qquad \text{EQ. (135)}$$

These zero crossings represent the points of minimum slope or crests of the original *s(t)*. The maximum slope is found at the zero crossings of. s(t) at $\omega t = 0, \pi, 2\pi, \ldots$ etc. Plugging those arguments into *s(t)* give slopes of: Slope $= \omega A, -\omega A, \omega A, -\omega A$ …etc. The time at which these zero crossings occur is given by: $\omega t = \pi, 2\pi, 3\pi \ldots t = \frac{1}{2f}, \frac{1}{f}, \frac{3}{2f}, \ldots \{for\ s(t)\}$.

It stands to reason that for the low noise power assumption, which implies one zero crossing per carrier cycle, the slope at the zero crossing will be modified randomly if a Gaussian process *(n(t))* is summed to the signal. Of course, if the change in slope of the signal is detectable, the delta time of the zero crossing is detectable, and hence phase noise is produced. The addition of noise to the signal has the effect of moving the signal up and down on the amplitude axis while maintaining a zero mean. This can be written more formally as:

$$\left|\frac{\partial\, s(t)}{\partial\, t}\right| = \omega A = \text{for } \omega\, t = n\,{}^{\pi}/_{2} \qquad \text{EQ. (136)}$$

If A is replaced by A-Δa, where Δa represents the noise deviation, then one will not always observe a zero crossing at the point of maximum slope ωA. Sometimes the zero crossing will occur at (A-Δa). This leads to the low noise approximation:

$$\omega(A - \Delta a) = \omega A \cos[\omega(t \pm \varepsilon)] \qquad \text{EQ. (137)}$$

$$\arccos\left(\frac{\frac{A - \Delta a}{A}}{\omega}\right) = t \pm \varepsilon \qquad \text{EQ. (138)}$$

The low noise assumption implies that the low noise power prohibits the arcos function from transforming the Gaussian pdf of the noise. That is, $\pm\Delta a$occurs over minute ranges for the argument of the arcos and hence the relationship is essentially linear. Secondly, since A is a peak deviation in the sine wave Δa will be considered as a peak deviation of the additive noise process. This is traditionally accepted as being 4σ where σ is the standard deviation of the process and σ^2 is the variance. Therefore we write K arcos (1-4 σ / A) = t$\pm\varepsilon$, where ε represents a peak time deviation in the zero crossing excursion, $K = {}^{1}/_{\omega}$ and t is the mean zero crossing time given previously as: $t = {}^{1}/_{sf}, {}^{1}/_{f}, {}^{3}/_{2f}, \ldots$ If only the deviation contribution to the above equation is retained, the equation reduces to:

$$K\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{4\sigma}{A}\right) = \varepsilon = \Delta t \qquad \text{EQ. (139)}$$

Since for$4\sigma / A \ll .01,$, the above function is quasi-linear, one can write the final approximation as:

$$\therefore \sigma_\varepsilon = \frac{(360)\sigma}{2\pi A} \text{ degrees rms} \qquad \text{EQ. (142)}$$

An appropriate conversion to degrees becomes,

$$360^\circ f_c = \frac{4\sigma_x}{\frac{4\sigma}{\omega_c A}} \qquad \text{EQ. (141)}$$

f_c = frequency of carrier

σ_x = phase noise in degrees rms

σ = standard deviation of equivalent input comparator noise

$$\therefore \sigma_x = \frac{(360)\sigma}{2\pi A} \text{ degrees rms} \qquad \text{EQ. (142)}$$

$\frac{\sigma_x}{57.3}$ = radians rms = σ_ϕ

$\sigma_{\phi_{rms}}^2$ = variance or power in dBc

Now a typical threshold operator may have a noise figure, NF, of approximately 15 dB. Hence, one can calculate σ_x (assume $\sigma_\phi^2 = 2.4x10^{-8} rad^2$ source phase noise):

$$-174 dBm/Hz + 15 + 10\log_{10} 100x10^6 = -79 dBm \qquad \text{EQ. (143)}$$

where 100 MHz of input bandwidth is assumed.

$$anti\log -7.9 = 1.26x10^{-8} milliwatts = 1.26x10^{-11} watts \qquad \text{EQ. (144)}$$

$$\therefore \sigma = \sqrt{1.26x10^{-13}} \cong 3.55x10^{-6} \qquad \text{EQ. (145)}$$

$$\sigma_x = \frac{(360)3.55x10^{-6}}{2\pi(.6)} \cong 3.39x10^{-4} \text{ degrees rms}$$

$\sigma_{\phi_{rms}} \cong 5.92x10^{-6}$ rad rms

$\sigma_{\phi_T}^2 = \sigma_\phi^2 + \sigma_{\phi_{rms}}^2 \cong 2.4x10^{-8} + 3.5x10^{-11} \cong 2.4x10^{-8} rad^2$

σ_ϕ^2 = phase noise of source before threshold device

Therefore, the threshold device has little to no impact on the total phase noise modulation on this particular source because the original source phase noise dominates. A more general result can be obtained for arbitrarily shaped waveforms (other than simple sine waves) by using a Fourier series expansion and weighting each component of the series according to the previously described approximation. For simple waveforms like a triangle pulse, the slope is simply the amplitude divided by the time period so that in the approximation:

$$\Delta t \simeq \frac{k4\sigma T_r}{A_T} \qquad \text{EQ. (146)}$$

k; an arbitrary scaling constant

T_r; time period for the ramping edge of the triangle

Hence, the ratio of $\left(\sigma T_r / A_r\right)$ is important and should he minimized.

As an example, suppose that the triangle pulse rise time is 500 nsec. Furthermore, suppose that the amplitude, A_T, is 35 milli volts. Then, with a 15 dB NF, the Δt becomes:

$$\Delta t \simeq \frac{k\cdot 4\cdot (3.55\times 10^{-6})V\,500\text{nsec}}{.035} \simeq 203 \text{ ps}$$

$\sigma \simeq 203/4 \cong 50.7\ ps\ (1\Omega)$

This is all normalized to a 1Ω system. If a 50Ω system were assumed then:

$\sigma \simeq 358.5$ ps (50Ω)

In addition, it is straight forward to extend these results to the case of DC offset added to the input of the threshold device along with the sine wave.

Essentially the zero crossing slope is modified due to the virtual phase shift of the input sine function at the threshold. DC offset will increase the phase noise component on the present invention clock, and it could cause significant degradation or certain link budgets and modulation types.

11. Pulse Accumulation and System Time Constant

11.1 Pulse Accumulation

Examples and derivations presented in previous sub-sections illustrate that in embodiments single aperture acquisitions recover energies proportional to:

$$E_s = \int_0^{T_A} S_i^2(t)dt = \frac{A_n^2 T_A}{2} \text{ (optimum aperture)} \qquad \text{EQ. (147)}$$

$A_n\underline{\Delta}$ as the carrier envelope weighting of the nth sample.
In addition, sub-section 8 above, describes a complete UFT transform over many pulses applicable to embodiments of the invention. The following description therefore is an abbreviated description used to illustrate a long-term time constant consideration for the system.

As described elsewhere herein, the sample rate is much greater than the information bandwidth of interest for most if not all practical applications.

$$f_s >> BW_i \qquad \text{EQ. (148)}$$

Hence, many samples may be accumulated as indicated in previous sub-sections, provided that the following general rule applies:

$$\frac{f_s}{\ell} > BW_i \qquad \text{EQ. (149)}$$

where ℓ represents the total number of accumulated samples. EQ. (149) requires careful consideration of the desired information at baseband, which must be extracted. For instance, if the baseband waveform consists of sharp features such as square waves then several harmonics would necessarily be required to reconstruct the square wave which could require BW_i of up to seven times the square wave rate. In many applications however the base band waveform has been optimally prefiltered or bandwidth limited apriori (in a transmitter), thus permitting significant accumulation. In such circumstances, f_s / ℓ will approach BW_i.

This operation is well known in signal processing and historically has been used to mimic an average. In fact it is a means of averaging scaled by a gain constant. The following equation relates to EQ. (127).

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\ell} E_i = \sum_{i=0}^{\ell} \frac{A_n^2 T_A}{2} \cong \frac{\ell A^2 T_A}{2} \qquad \text{EQ. (150)}$$

Notice that the *nth* index has been removed from the sample weighting. In fact, the bandwidth criteria defined in EQ. (149) pennits the approximation because the information is contained by the pulse amplitude. A more accurate description is given by the complete UFT transform, which does permit variation in A. A cannot significantly vary from pulse to pulse over an ℓ pulse interval of accumulation, however. If A does vary significantly, ℓ is not properly selected. A must be permitted to vary naturally, however, according to the information envelope at a rate proportional to BW_i. This means that ℓ cannot be permitted to be too great because information would be lost due to filtering. This shorthand approximation illustrates that there is a long term system time constant that should be considered in addition to the short-term aperture integration interval.

In embodiments, usually the long term time constant is controlled

by the integration capacitor value, the present invention source impedance, the present invention output impedance, and the load. The detailed models presented elsewhere herein consider all these affects. The analysis in this section does not include a leakage term that was presented in previous sub-sections.

EQs. (149) and (150) can be considered a specification for slew rate. For instance, suppose that the bandwidth requirement can be specified in terms of a slew rate as follows:

$$SR = \times \frac{volts}{\mu sec} \qquad \text{EQ. (151)}$$

The number of samples per μsec is given by:

$\ell_s = f_s \times 1 \times 10^{-6}$ (f_s is derived from the present invention clock rate)

If each sample produces a voltage proportional to $A^2 \, {}^{T_A}/_2$ then the total voltage accumulated per microsecond is:

$$V_{\mu sec} \cong \ell_s \frac{A^2 T_A}{2} \qquad \text{EQ. (152)}$$

The previous sub-sections illustrates how the present invention output can accumulate voltage (proportional to energy) to acquire the information modulated onto a carrier. For down conversion, this whole process is akin to lowpass filtering, which is consistent with embodiments of the present invention that utilize a capacitor as a storage device or means for integration.

11.2 Pulse Accumulation by Correlation

The previous sub-sections introduced the idea that in embodiments information bandwidth is much less than the bandwidth associated with the present invention's impulse response for practical applications. The concept

of single aperture energy accumulation was used above to describe the central ideas of the present invention. As shown in FIG. 193, multiple aperture accumulation permits baseband waveform reconstruction. FIG. 193 illustrates the results from simulation of actual circuits according to emhodiments of the present invention implemented with CMOS and passive components.

The staircase output of the example in FIG. 193 follows the complex modulation envelope for the input signal. Sub-section 5 predicts this result via the time variant linear differential equation. FIG. 193 illustrates the staircase accumulation of half sine energy for three apertures based on 3x sampling. As can be seen in FIG. 193, the leakage between accumulations is very small.

12. Energy Budget Considerations

Consider the following equation for a window correlator aperture:

$$E_{ASO} = \int_0^{TA} A \cdot S_i(t)dt \qquad \text{EQ. (153)}$$

In EQ. (153), the rectangular aperture correlation function is weighted by A. For convenience, it is now assumed to be weighted such that:

$$E_{ASO} = \int_0^{TA} kA \cdot S_i(t)dt = 2A \text{ (normalized)} \qquad \text{EQ. (154)}$$

Since embodiments of the present invention typically operate at a sub-harmonic rate, not all of the energy is directly available due to the sub-harmonic sampling process. For the case of single aperture acquisition, the energy transferred versus the energy available is given by:

$$\frac{E_b}{E_i} = \frac{E_{ASO}}{2N} = \frac{A}{N} \qquad \text{EQ. (155)}$$

N ≙ harmonic of operation

The power loss due to harmonic operation is:

$$E_{LN} = 10 \log_{10}(2N) \qquad \text{EQ. (156)}$$

There is an additional loss due to the finite aperture, T_A, which induces (sin x/x) like weighting onto the harmonic of interest. This energy loss is proportional to:

$$E_{LSINC} \simeq \left(\frac{\sin(\pi N f_s T_A)}{\pi N f_s T_A} \right) \text{(up conversion only)} \qquad \text{EQ. (157)}$$

$N \cdot f_s$ ≙ operating carrier frequency

f_s ≙ sampling rate (directly related to the clock)

EQ. (157) indicates that the harmonic spectrum attenuates rapidly as $N \cdot f_s$ approaches T_A^{-1}. Of course there is some attenuation even if that scenario is avoided. EQ. (157) also reveals, however, that in embodiments for single aperture operation the conversion loss due to E_{LSINC} will always be near 3.92dB. This is because:

$$(2 \cdot N f_s)^{-1} = T_A \text{ (~3.92dB condition)} \qquad \text{EQ. (158)}$$

Another way of stating the condition is that T_A is always ½ the carrier period.

Consider an ideal implementation of an embodiment of the present invention, without any circuit losses, operating on a 5th harmonic basis. Without any other considerations, the energy loss through the device is at minimum:

$$E_L = E_{LN} + E_{LSINC} = 10\text{dB} + 3.92 \simeq 14\text{dB (for up conversion)} \qquad \text{EQ. (159)}$$

Down conversion does not possess the 3.92dB loss so that the baseline

loss for down conversion is that represented by EQ. (156). Parasitics will also affect the losses for practical systems. These parasitics must be examined in detail for the particular technology of interest.

Next suppose that a number of pulses may be accumulated using the multi-aperture strategy and diversity means of an embodiment of the present invention, as described above. In this case, some of the energy loss calculated by EQ. (159) can be regained. For example, if four apertures are used then the pulse energy accumulation gain is 6dB. For the previous example, this results in an overall gain of 6dB - 14dB, or -8dB (instead of -14dB). This energy gain is significant and will translate to system level specification improvements in the areas of noise frequency, intercept point, power consumption, size, etc. It should be recognized, however, that a diversity system with active split or separate amplifier chains would use more power and become more costly. In addition, in embodiments, energy storage networks coupled to the circuitry of the present invention may be used to accumulate energy between apertures so that each aperture delivers some significant portion of the stored energy from the network. In this manner, some inefficiencies of the sub harmonic sampling process can be removed by trading impedance matching vs. complexity, etc., as further described below.

12.1 Energy Storage Networks

Embodiments of the present invention have been shown to be a type of correlator, which is applied to the carrier on a sub harmonic basis. It is also been shown herein that certain architectures according to embodiments of the invention benefit significantly from the addition of passive networks, particular when coupled to the front end of a processor according to the present invention used as a receiver. This result can be explained using linear systems theory.

To understand this, it is useful to consider thc following. Embodiments of the present invention can be modeled as a linear, time-variant (LTV) device. Therefore, the following concepts apply:

- The LTV circuits can be modeled to have an average impcdance; and
- The LTV circuits can be modeled to have an average power transfer or gain.

These are powerful concepts because they permit the application of the maximum bilateral power transfer theorem to embodimcnts of the present invention. As a result, in embodiments, energy storage devices/circuits which fly wheel between apertures to pump up the inter sample power can be viewed on the many sample basis (long time average) as providing optimum power transfer through matching propcrtics. The betwecn sample model on thc timc microscopic scale is hest viewed on a differential equation hasis while the time macroscopic view can utilize simpler analysis techniques such as the maximum power transfer equations for networks, correlator theory, etc. The fact that the differential equations can be written for all time unifies the theory between the short time (between sample) view and long time (many sample accumulation) view. Fortunately, the concepts for information extraction from the output of the present invention are easily formulated without differential equation analysis.

Network theory can be used to explain why certain networks according to the present invention provide optimum power gain. For example, network theory explains embodiments of the present invention when energy storage networks or matching networks are utilized to 'fly wheel' between apertures, thereby, on the average, providing a good impedance match. Network theory does not explain, however, why T_A is optimal. For instance, in some embodiments, one may deliberately utilize an aperture that is much less than a carrier half cycle. For such an

aperture, there is an optimal matching network nonetheless. That is, a processor according to an emhodiment of the present invention utilizing an improper aperture can be optimized, although it will not perform as well as a processor according to an embodiment of the present invention that utilizes an optimal aperture accompanied by an optimal matching network.

The idea behind selecting an optimal aperture is matched filter theory, which provides a general guideline for obtaining the best correlation properties between the incoming waveform and the selected aperture. Any practical correlator or matched filter is constrained hy the same physical laws, however, which spawned the maximum power transfer theorems for networks. It does not do any good to design the optimum correlator aperture if the device possesses extraordinary impedance mismatches with its source and load. The circuit theorems do predict the optimal impedance match while matched filter theory does not. The two work hand in hand to permit a practical explanation for:

- Why T_A is optimal; and
- How processors according to embodiments of the present invention are optimized for performance in practical circuits.

The following sub-section analyzes the present invention on a macroscopic scale using the notions of average impedance and power transfer.

12.2 Impedance Matching

When a processor embodiment according to the present invention is 'off,' there is one impedance, and when a processor embodiment according to the present invention is 'on,' there is another impedance due to the architecture of the present invention and its load. In practice, the aperture will affect the 'on' impedance. Hence, on the average, the input

impedance looking into the circuitry of an embodiment of the present invention (i.e., its ports) is modified according to the present invention clock and T_A. Impedance matching networks must take this into account.

$$\not{Z}_{av} = \frac{V}{I_{av}} \qquad \text{EQ. (160)}$$

EQ. (160) illustrates that the average impedance, $\not{Z}_{av}$, is related to the voltage, V, divided by the average current flow, I_{av}, into a device, for example a processor according to an embodiment of the present invention. EQ. (160) indicates that for a processor according to an embodiment of the present invention the narrower T_A and the less frequent a sample is acquired, the greater $\not{Z}_{av}$ becomes.

To understand this, consider the fact that a 10th harmonic system according to an embodiment of the present invention operates with half as many samples as a 5th harmonic sample according to the present invention. Thus, according to EQ. (160), a 5th harmonic sample according to an embodiment of the present invention would typically possess a higher input/output impedance than that a 10th harmonic system according to the present invention. Of course, practical board and circuit parasitics will place limits on how much the impedance scaling properties of the present invention processor clock signals control the processor's overall input/output impedance.

As will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant arts given the discussion herein, in embodiments, matching networks should be included at the ports of a processor according to the present invention to accommodate $\not{Z}_{av}$, as measured by a typical network analyzer.

13. Time Domain Analysis

All signals can be represented by vectors in the complex signal plane. Previous sub-sections derived the result for down converting (or up converting) $S_i(t)$ in the transform domain via $S_i(\omega)$. An I/Q modem embodiment of the present invention, however, was developed using a time domain analysis. This time domain analysis is repeated here and provides a complementary view to the previous sub-sections.

FIG. 194 illustrates an embodiment of the present invention implementing a complex down converter architecture. Operation of this embodiment is described given by:

$$S_0(t_k) \cong \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (S_i(t_k) + n(t_k)) (C_{Ik} + C_{Qk}) \qquad \text{EQ. (161.1)}$$

where $S_i(t_k)$ is defined as the kth sample from the UFT transform such that $S_i(t_k)$ is filtered over the kth interval, $n(t_k)$ is defined as the noise sample at the output of the kth present invention kernel interval such that it has been averaged by the present invention process over the interval, C_{Ik} is defined as the kth in phase gating waveform (the present invention clock), and C_{Qk} is defined as the kth quadrature phase gating waveform (the present invention clock).

The 'goodness' of $S_i(t_k)$ and $n_i(t_k)$ has been shown previously herein as related to the type of present invention processor used (e.g .. , matched filtering/correlating processor, finite time integrating processor, or RC processor). Each t_k instant is the time tick corresponding to the averaging of input waveform energy over a T_A (aperture) duration. It has been assumed that C_{Ik} and C_{Qk} arc constant envelope and phase for the current analysis, although in general this is not required. Many different, interesting processors according to embodiments of the present invention can be constructed by manipulating the amplitudes and phases of the present invention clock.

C_{Ik} and C_{Qk} can he expanded as follows:

$$C_{Ik} = K\frac{T_A}{T_s}\left[1+2\left(\frac{\sin\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}{\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}\cdot\cos 2\pi f_s t_k + \frac{\sin 2\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}{\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}\cdot\cos 4\pi f_s t_k + \frac{\sin 3\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}{3\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}\cdot\cos 6\pi f_s t_k + \ldots \frac{\sin n\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}{n\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}\cdot\cos n\cdot 2\pi f_s t_k\right)\right]$$

EQ. (161.2)

$$C_{Qk} = K\frac{T_A}{T_s}\left[1+2\left(\frac{\sin\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}{\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}\cdot\sin 2\pi f_s t_k - \frac{\sin 2\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}{\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}\cdot\cos 4\pi f_s t_k - \frac{\sin 3\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}{3\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}\cdot\sin 6\pi f_s t_k \ldots \frac{\sin n\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}{n\pi\frac{T_A}{T_s}}\cdot\cos(n\cdot 2\pi f_s t_k + n\phi)\right)\right]$$

EQ. (161.3)

The above treatment is a Fourier series expansion of the present invention clocks where:

K $\triangleq$ Arbitrary Gain Constant

T_A $\triangleq$ Aperture Time = f_s^{-1}

T_s $\triangleq$ The Present Invention Clock Interval or Sample Time

n $\triangleq$ Harmonic Spectrum Harmonic Order

ϕ $\triangleq$ As phase shift angle usually selected as 90° $(\pi/2)$ for orthogonal signaling

Each term from C_{Ik}, C_{Qk} will down convert (or up convert). However, only the odd terms in the above formulation (for $\phi = \pi/2$) will convert in quadrature. ϕ could be selected otherwise to utilize the even harmonics, but this is typically not done in practice.

For the case of down conversion, *r(t)* can be written as:

$$r(t_k) = \sqrt{2}A\left(\tilde{S}_{il}(t_k)\cos(m \cdot 2\pi f t_k + \Theta) - \tilde{S}_{iQ}(t_k)\sin(m \cdot 2\pi f t_k + \Theta) + n(t)\right)$$

EQ. (162)

After applying (C_{Ik}, C_{Qk}) and lowpass filtering, which in embodiments is inherent to the present invention process, the down converted components become:

$$S_0(t_k)_I = A\ S_{il}(t_k) + \tilde{n}_{Ik} \qquad \text{EQ. (163)}$$

$$S_0(t_k)_Q = A\ S_{iQ}(t_k) + \tilde{n}_{Qk} \qquad \text{EQ. (164)}$$

where:

$S_{il}(t_k)$ $\triangleq$ The In phase component of the desired baseband signal.

$S_{iQ}(t_k)$ $\triangleq$ The quadrature phase component of the desired baseband signal

n_I, n_Q $\triangleq$ In phase and quadrature phase noise samples

m $\triangleq$ Is the harmonic of interest equal to one of the 'n' numbers, for perfect carrier synchronization.

Now m and n can be selected such that the down conversion ideally strips the carrier (mf_s), after lowpass filtering.

If the carrier is not perfectly coherent, a phase shift occurs as described in previous sub-section. The result presented above would modify to:

$$S_0(t) = \left(S_{il}(t)_I + jS_{il}(t)_Q\right) e^{j\phi} \qquad \text{EQ. (165)}$$

where ϕ is the phase shift. This is the same phase shift affect derived earlier as cosϕ in the present invention transform. When there is a slight carrier offset then ϕ can be written as ϕ(t) and the I and Q outputs represent orthogonal, harmonically oscillating vectors super imposed on the desired signal output with a beat frequency proportional to:

$$f_{error} \triangleq nf_s \pm m(f_s \pm f_\Delta) = f_s(n-m) + mf_\Delta \qquad \text{EQ. (166)}$$

$f_\Delta \triangleq$ as a slight frequency offset between the carrier and the present invention clock

This entire analysis could have been accomplished in the frequency domain as described herein, or it could have been formulated from the present invention kernel as:

$$S_0(t) = \mathrm{D}_{IQ}(S_1(t) + n(t)) \qquad \text{EQ. (167)}$$

The recursive kernel D_{IQ} is defined in sub-section 8 and the I/Q version is completed by superposition and phase shifting the quadrature kernel.

The previous equation for *r*(t) could be replaced with:

$$BB(t) = \tilde{S}_{\alpha} \pm \tilde{S}_{i\varphi} \text{ where } f = 0 \text{ and } \Theta = \pi/4 \text{ and } n(t) = 0 \quad \text{EQ. (168)}$$

BB(t) could be up converted by applying C_I, C_Q. The desired carrier then is the appropriate harmonic of C_I, C_Q whose energy is optimally extracted by a network matched to the desired carrier.

14. *Complex Passband Waveform Generation Using the Present Invention Cores*

This sub-section introduces the concept of using a present invention core to modulate signals at RF according to embodiments of the invention. Although many specific modulator architectures are possible, which target individual signaling schemes such as AM, FM, PM, etc., the example architecture presented here is a vector signal modulator. Such a modulator can be used to create virtually every known useful waveform to encompass the whole of analog and digital communications applications, for "wired" or "wireless," at radio frequency or intermediate frequency. In essence, a receiver process, which utilizes the present

invention, may be reversed to create signals of interest at passband. Using I/Q waveforms at baseband, all points within the two dimensional complex signaling constellation may be synthesized when cores according to the present invention are excited by orthogonal subharmonic clocks and connected at their outputs with particular comhining networks. A basic architecture that can be used is shown in FIG. 195.

FIG. 195 depicts one embodiment of a based vector modulator according to the present invention. FIG. 195 shows I and Q inputs that can accept analog or halanced digital waveforms. By selecting I and Q appropriately, AM, FM, BPSK, QPSK, MSK, QAM, OFDM, multi-tone, and a host of other signals can be synthesized. In this embodiment of the present invention, the present invention cores are driven differentially on I and Q. C_I, $C_{\overline{I}}, C_Q, C_{\overline{Q}}$ are the in phase and quadrature sub-harmonic clocks, respectively, with their inverted phases as well. C_I and C_Q can be created in quadrature for IQ operation if the output power combiner is a 0° combiner. On the other hand, C_I and C_Q can be in phase when a 90° output power combiner is utilized at RF. This latter architecture can be used whenever the signaling bandwidth is very small with respect to the RF center frequency of the output and small with respect to the ldB passband response of the combiner. If one assumes constant values on I and $\overline{I}$, the waveform diagrams in FIG 196 can be constructed. As indicated in FIG. 195, the power combiner and bandpass reconstruction filter are optional components.

In FIG. 196, C_I and $\overline{C_1}$ are out of phase by 180^0 if referenced back to the clock. In this case, clock refers to the suh-harmonic waveform used to generate C_I and $\overline{C_1}$. C_I is coincident with the rising edges of clock with a pulse width of T_A while $\overline{C_1}$ is coincident with the falling edges of clock with a pulse width of T_A. C_I and $\overline{C_1}$ activate two of the processors according to the present invention, as shown in FIG. 195, which are driven

by differential signals. I_c is illustrated as if the system is ideal without losses, parasitics, or distortions. The time axis for I_c may be arranged in a manner to represent the waveform as an odd function. For such an arrangement, the Fourier series is calculated to obtain EQ. (169).

$$I_c(t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{4 \sin\left(\frac{n\pi T_s}{T_s}\right) \cdot \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right)}{n\pi} \right) \cdot \sin\left(\frac{2n\pi t}{T_s}\right) \qquad \text{EQ. (169)}$$

To illustrate this, if a passband waveform must be created at five times the frequency of the sub-harmonic clock then a baseline power for that harmonic extraction can be calculated for n = 5. For the case of n = 5, it is found that the 5th harmonic yields:

$$I_c(t)\big|_{n=5} = \frac{4}{5\pi}(\sin(5\omega_s t)) \qquad \text{EQ. (170)}$$

This component can be extracted from the Fourier series via a bandpass filter centered around f_s. This component is a carrier at 5 times the sampling frequency.

This illustration can be extended to show the following:

$$m(t) \cdot I_c(t)\big|_{n=5,\ \phi=\phi(t)} = \frac{4 \cdot m(t)}{5\pi}(\sin(5\omega_s t + 5\phi(t))) \qquad \text{EQ. (171)}$$

This equation illustrates that a message signal may have been superposed on I and $\bar{I}$ such that both amplitude and phase are modulated, i.e., m(t) for amplitude and $\phi(t)$ for phase. In such cases, it should be noted that $\phi(t)$ is augmented modulo n while the amplitude modulation m(t) is scaled. The point of this illustration is that complex waveforms may be reconstructed from their Fourier series with multi-aperture processor combinations, according to the present invention.

In a practical system according to an embodiment of the present invention, parasitics, filtering, etc., may modify $I_c(t)$. In many

applications according to the present invention, charge injection properties of processors playa significant role. However, if the processors and the clock drive circuits according to embodiments of the present invention are matched then even the parasitics can be managed, particularly since unwanted distortions are removed by the final bandpass filter, which tends to completely reconstruct the waveform at passband.

Like the receiver embodiments of the present invention, which possess a lowpass information extraction and energy extraction impulse response, various transmitter embodiments of the present invention use a network to create a bandpass impulse response suitable for energy transfer and waveform reconstruction. In embodiments, the simplest reconstruction network is an L-C tank, which resonates at the desired carrier frequency $N \cdot f_s = f_c$.

V. Additional Embodiments

1. Example 1/Q Modulation Receiver Embodiment

FIG. 197 illustrates an example I/Q modulation receiver 19700, according to an embodiment of the present invention. I/Q modulation receiver 19700 comprises a first Processing module 19702, a first optional filter 19704, a second Processing module 19706, a second optional filter 19708, a third Processing module 19710, a third optional filter 19712, a fourth Processing module 19714, a fourth filter 19716, an optional LNA 19718, a first differential amplifier 19720, a second differential amplifier 19722, and an antenna 19772.

I/Q modulation receiver 19700 receives, down-converts, and demodulates a I/Q modulated RF input signal 19782 to an I baseband output signal 19784, and a Q baseband output signal 19786. I/Q modulated RF input signal comprises a first information signal and a

second information signal that are I/Q modulated onto an RF carrier signal. I baseband output signal 19784 comprises the first baseband information signal. Q baseband output signal 19786 comprises the second baseband information signal.

Antenna 19772 receives I/Q modulated RP input signal 19782. I/Q modulated RF input signal 19782 is output by antenna 19772 and received by optional LNA 19718. When present, LNA 19718 amplifies I/Q modulated RF input signal 19782, and outputs amplified I/Q signal 19788.

First Processing module 19702 receives amplified I/Q signal 19788. First Processing module 19702 down-converts the I-phase signal portion of amplified input I/Q signal 19788 according to an I control signal 19790. First Processing module 19702 outputs an I output signal 19798.

In an emhodiment, first Processing module 19702 compnses a first storage module 19724, a first UFT module 19726, and a first voltage reference 19728. In an embodiment, a switch contained within first UFT module 19726 opens and closes as a function of I control signal 19790. As a result of the opening and closing of this switch, which respectively couples and de-couples first storage module 19724 to and from first voltage reference 19728, a downconverted signal, referred to as I output signal 19798, results. First voltage reference 19728 may be any reference voltage, and is ground in some emhodiments. I output signal 1979H is stored hy first storage module 19724.

In an embodiment, first storage module 19724 comprises a first capacitor 19774. In addition to storing I output signal 19798, first capacitor 19774 reduces or prevents a DC offset voltage resulting from charge injection from appearing on I output signal19798

I output signal 19798 is received by optional first filter 19704. When present, first filter 19704 is a high pass filter to at least filter I

output signal 19798 to remove any carrier signal "bleed through". In an embodiment, when present, first filter 19704 comprises a first resistor 19730, a first filter capacitor 19732, and a first filter voltage reference 19734. Preferably, first resistor 19730 is coupled between I output signal 19798 and a filtered I output signal 19707, and first filter capacitor 19732 is coupled between filtered I output signal 19707 and first filter voltage reference 19734. Alternately, first filter 19704 may comprise any other applicahle filter configuration as would he understood by persons skilled in the relevant arts. First filter 19704 outputs filtered I output signal 19707.

Second Processing module 19706 receives amplified I/Q signal 19788. Second Processing module 19706 down-converts the inverted I-phase signal portion of amplified input I/Q signal 19788 according to an inverted I control signal 19792. Second Processing module 19706 outputs an inverted I output signal 19701.

In an emhodiment, second Processing module 19706 compnses a second storage module 19736, a second UFT module 19738, and a second voltage reference 19740. In an embodiment, a switch contained within second UFT module 19738 opens and closes as a function of inverted I control signal 19792. As a result of the opening and closing of this switch, which respectively couples and de-couples second storage module 19736 to and from second voltage reference 19740, a down-converted signal, referred to as inverted I output signal 19701, results. Second voltage reference 19740 may be any reference voltage, and is preferahly ground. Inverted I output signal 19701 is stored by second storage module 19736.

In an embodiment, second storage module 19736 comprises a second capacitor 19776. In addition to storing inverted I output signal 19701, second capacitor 19776 reduces or prevents a DC offset voltage resulting from above described charge injection from appearing on

inverted I output signal 19701.

Inverted I output signal 19701 is received by optional second filter 19708. When present, second filter 19708 is a high pass filter to at least filter inverted I output signal 19701 to remove any carrier signal "bleed through". In an embodiment, when present, second filter 19708 comprises a second resistor 19742, a second filter capacitor 19744, and a second filter voltage reference 19746. In an embodiment, second resistor 19742 is coupled between inverted I output signal 19701 and a filtered inverted I output signal 19709, and second filter capacitor 19744 is coupled between filtered inverted I output signal 19709 and second filter voltage reference 19746. Alternately, second filter 19708 may comprise any other applicable filter configuration as would be understood by persons skilled in the relevant arts. Second filter 19708 outputs filtered inverted I output signal 19709.

First differential amplifier 19720 receives filtered I output signal 19707 at its non-inverting input and receives filtered inverted I output signal 19709 at its inverting input. First differential amplifier 19720 suhtracts filtered inverted I output signal 19709 from filtered I output signal 19707, amplifies the result, and outputs I baseband output signal 19784. Other suitable subtractor modules may be substituted for first differential amplifier 19720, and second differential amplifier 19722, as would be understood by persons skilled in the relevant arts from the teachings herein. Because filtered inverted I output signal 19709 is substantially equal to an inverted version of filtered I output signal 19707, I baseband output signal 19784 is substantially equal to filtered I output signal 19709, with its amplitude douhled. Furthermore, filtered I output signal 19707 and filtered inverted I output signal 19709 may comprise substantially equal noise and DC offset contributions of the same polarity from prior down-conversion circuitry, including first Processing module 19702 and second Processing module 19706,

respectively. When first differential amplifier 19720 subtracts filtered inverted I output signal 19709 from filtered I output signal 19707, these noise and DC offset contributions substantially cancel each other.

Third Processing module 19710 receives amplified I/Q signal 19788. Third Processing module 19710 down-converts the Q-phase signal portion of amplified input I/Q signal 19788 according to an Q control signal 19794. Third Processing module 19710 outputs an Q output signal 19703.

In an embodiment, third Processing module 19710 comprises a third storage module 19748, a third UFT module 19750, and a third voltage reference 19752. In an embodiment, a switch contained within third UFT module 19750 opens and closes as a function of Q control signal 19794. As a result of the opening and closing of this switch, which respectively couples and de-couples third storage module 19748 to and from third voltage reference 19752, a down-converted signal, referred to as Q output signal 19703, results. Third voltage reference 19752 may be any reference voltage, and is preferably ground. Q output signal 19703 is stored by third storage module 19748.

In an embodiment, third storage module 19748 comprises a third capacitor 19778. In addition to storing Q output signal 19703, third capacitor 19778 reduces or prevents a DC offset voltage resulting from above described charge injection from appearing on Q output signal 19703.

Q output signal 19703 is received hy optional third filter 19716. When present, third filter 19716 is a high pass filter to at least filter Q output signal 19703 to remove any carrier signal "bleed through". In an embodiment, when present, third filter 19712 comprises a third resistor 19754, a third filter capacitor 19758, and a third filter voltage reference 19758. In an embodiment, third resistor 19754 is coupled between Q output signal 19703 and a filtered Q output signal 19711, and third filter

capacitor 19756 is coupled between filtered Q output signal 19711 and third filter voltage reference 19758. Alternately, third filter 19712 may comprise any other applicable filter configuration as would be understood by persons skilled in the relevant arts. Third filter 19712 outputs filtered Q output signal 19711.

Fourth Processing module 19714 receives amplified I/Q signal 19788. Fourth Processing module 19714 down-converts the inverted Q-phase signal portion of amplified input I/Q signal 19788 according to an inverted Q control signal 19796. Fourth Processing module 19714 outputs an inverted Q output signal 19705.

In an embodiment, fourth Processing module 19714 comprises a fourth storage module 19760, a fourth UFT module 19762, and a fourth voltage reference 19764. In an embodiment, a switch contained within fourth UFT module 19762 opens and closes as a function of inverted Q control signal 19796. As a result of the opening and closing of this switch, which respectively couples and de-couples fourth storage module 19760 to and from fourth voltage reference 19764, a down-converted signal, referred to as inverted Q output signal 19705, results. Fourth voltage reference 19764 may be any reference voltage, and is preferably ground. Inverted Q output signal 19705 is stored hy fourth storage module 19760.

In an embodiment, fourth storage module 19760 compnses a fourth capacitor 19780. In addition to storing inverted Q output signal 19705, fourth capacitor 19780 reduces or prevents a DC offset voltage resulting from above described charge injection from appearing on inverted Q output signal 19705.

Inverted Q output signal 19705 is received by optional fourth filter 19716. When present, fourth filter 19716 is a high pass filter to at least filter inverted Q output signal 19705 to remove any carrier signal "bleed through". In an embodiment, when present, fourth filter 19716

comprises a fourth resistor 19766, a fourth filter capacitor 19768, and a fourth filter voltage reference 19770. In an embodimnet, fourth resistor 19766 is coupled between inverted Q output signal 19705 and a filtered inverted Q output signal 19713, and fourth filter capacitor 19768 is coupled between filtered inverted Q output signal 19713 and fourth filter voltage reference 19770. Alternately, fourth filter 19716 may comprise any other applicable filter configuration as would be understood by persons skilled in the relevant arts. Fourth filter 19716 outputs filtered inverted Q output signal 19713.

Second differential amplifier 19722 receives filtered Q output signal 19711 at its non-inverting input and receives filtered inverted Q output signal 19713 at its inverting input. Second differential amplifier 19722 subtracts filtered inverted Q output signal 19713 from filtered Q output signal 19711, amplifies the result, and outputs Q baseband output signal 19786. Because filtered inverted Q output signal 19713 is substantially equal to an inverted version of filtered Q output signal 19711, Q baseband output signal 19786 is substantially equal to filtered Q output signal 19713, with its amplitude douhled. Furthermore, filtered Q output signal 19711 and filtered inverted Q output signal 19713 may comprise substantially equal noise and DC offset contributions of the same polarity from prior down-conversion circuitry, including third Processing module 19710 and fourth Processing module 19714, respectively. When second differential amplifier 19722 subtracts filtered inverted Q output signal 19713 from filtered Q output signal 19711, these noise and DC offset contributions substantially cancel each other.

2. Example I/Q Modulation Control Signal Generator Embodiments

FIG. 198 illustrates an exemplary block diagram for an example I/Q modulation control signal generator 19800, according to an embodiment ofthe present invention. I/Q modulation control signal generator 19800 generates I control signal 19790, inverted I control signal 19792, Q control signal 19794, and inverted Q control signal 19796 used by I/Q modulation receiver 19700 of FIG. 197. I control signal 19790 and inverted I control signal 19792 operate to down-convert the I-phase portion of an input I/Q modulated RF signal. Q control signal 19794 and inverted Q control signal 19796 act to down-convert the Q-phase portion of the input I/Q modulated RF signal. Furthermore, I/Q modulation control signal generator 19800 has the advantage of generating control signals in a manner such that resulting collective circuit re-radiation is radiated at one or more frequencies outside of the frequency range of interest. For instance, potential circuit re-radiation is radiated at a frequency substantially greater than that of the input RF carrier signal frequency.

I/Q modulation control signal generator 19800 comprises a local oscillator 19802, a first divide-hy-two module 19804, a 180 degree phase shiner 19806, a second divide-by-two module 19808, a first pulse generator 19810, a second pulse generator 19812, a third pulse generator 19814, and a fourth pulse generator 19816.

Local oscillator 19802 outputs an oscillating signal 19818. FIG. 199 shows an exemplary oscillating signal 19818.

First divide-by-two module 19804 receives oscillating signal 19818, divides oscillating signal 19818 by two, and outputs a half frequency LO signal 19820 and a half frequency inverted LO signal 19826. FIG. 199 shows an exemplary half frequency LO signal 19820. Half frequency inverted LO signal 19826 is an inverted version of half frequency LO signal 19820. First divide-by-two module 19804 may be implemented in circuit logic, hardware, software, or any comhination

thereof, as would he known hy persons skilled in the relevant arts.

180 degree phase shifter 19806 receives oscillating signal 19818, shifts the phase of oscillating signal 19818 by 180 degrees, and outputs phase shifted LO signal 19822. 180 degree phase shifter 19806 may he implemented in circuit logic, hardware, software, or any combination thereof, as would be known by persons skilled in the relevant arts. In alternative embodiments, other amounts of phase shift may be used.

Second divide-by two module 19808 receives phase shifted LO signal 19822, divides phase shifted LO signal 19822 by two, and outputs a half frequency phase shifted LO signal 19824 and a half frequency inverted phase shifted LO signal 19828. FIG. 199 shows an exemplary half frequency phase shifted LO signal 19824. Half frequency inverted phase shifted LO signal 19828 is an inverted version of half frequency phase shifted LO signal 19824. Second divide-by-two module 19808 may be implemented in circuit logic, hardware, software, or any combination thereof, as would be known by persons skilled in the relevant arts.

First pulse generator 19810 receives half frequency LO signal 19820, generates an output pulse whenever a rising edge is received on half frequency LO signal 19820, and outputs I control signal 19790. FIG. 199 shows an exemplary I control signal 19790.

Second pulse generator 19812 receIves half frequency inverted LO signal 19826, generates an output pulse whenever a rising edge is received on half frequency inverted LO signal 19826, and outputs inverted I control signal 19792. FIG. 199 shows an exemplary inverted I control signal 19792.

Third pulse generator 19814 receives half frequency phase shifted LO signal 19824, generates an output pulse whenever a rising edge is received on half frequency phase shifted LO signal 19824, and outputs Q control signal 19794. FIG. 199 shows an exemplary Q control signal 19794.

Fourth pulse generator 19816 receives half frequency inverted phase shifted LO signal 19828, generates an output pulse whenever a rising edge is received on half frequency inverted phase shifted LO signal 19828, and outputs inverted Q control signal 19796. FIG. 199 shows an exemplary inverted Q control signal 19796.

In an embodiment, control signals 19790, 19792, 19794 and 19796 output pulses having a width equal to one-half of a period of I/Q modulated RF input signal 19782. The invention, however, is not limited to these pulse widths, and control signals 19790, 19792, 19794, and 19796 may comprise pulse widths of any fraction of, or multiple and fraction of, a period of I/Q modulated RF input signal 19782. Also, other circuits for generating control signals 19790, 19792, 19794, and 19796 will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant arts based on the herein teachings.

First, second, third, and fourth pulse generators 19810, 19812, 19814, and 19816 may be implemented in circuit logic, hardware, software, or any comhination thereof, as would he known hy persons skilled in the relevant arts.

As shown in FIG. 199, in embodiments control signals 19790, 19792, 19794, and 19796 comprise pulses that are non-overlapping. Furthermore, in this example, pulses appear on these signals in the following order: I control signal 19790, Q control signal 19794, inverted I control signal 19792, and inverted Q control signal 19796. Potential circuit re-radiation from I/Q modulation receiver 19700 may comprise frequency components from a comhination of these control signals.

For example, FIG. 200 shows an overlay of pulses from I control signal 19790, Q control signal 19794, inverted I control signal 19792, and inverted Q control signal 19796. When pulses from these control signals leak through first, second, third, and fourth Processing modules 19702, 19706, 19710, and 19714 to antenna 19782 (shown in FIG. 197), they

may be radiated from I/Q modulation receiver 19700, with a combined waveform that appears to have a primary frequency equal to four times the frequency of any single one of control signals 19790, 19792, 19794, and 19796. FIG. 199 shows an example combined control signal 19902.

FIG. 200 also shows an example I/Q modulation RF input signal 19782 overlaid upon control signals 19790, 19792, 19794, and 19796. As shown in FIG. 200, pulses on I control signal 19790 overlay and act to down-convert a positive I-phase portion of I/Q modulation RF input signal 19782. Pulses on inverted I control signal 19792 overlay and act to down-convert a negative 1phase portion of I/Q modulation RF input signal 19782. Pulses on Q control signal 19794 overlay and act to down-convert a rising Q-phase portion of I/Q modulation RF input signal 19782. Pulses on inverted Q control signal 19796 overlay and act to down-convert a falling Q-phase portion of I/Q modulation RF input signal 19782.

As FIG. 200 further shows in this example, the frequency ratio hetween the combination of control signals 19790, 19792, 19794, and 19796 and I/Q modulation RF input signal 19782 is 4:3. Because the frequency of the potentially re-radiated signal, combined control signal 19902, is substantially different from that of the signal heing down-converted, I/Q modulation RF input signal 19782, it does not interfere with signal down-conversion as it is out of the frequency band of interest, and hence may be filtered out. In this manner, I/Q modulation receiver 19700 reduces problems due to circuit reradiation. As will he understood hy persons skilled in the relevant arts from the teachings herein, frequency ratios other than 4:3 may be implemented to achieve similar reduction of problems of circuit re-radiation.

It should be understood that the above control signal generator circuit example is provided for illustrative purposes only. The invention is not limited to these embodiments. Alternative embodiments

(including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the embodiments described herein) for I/Q modulation control signal generator 19800 will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant arts from the teachings herein, and are within the scope of the present invention.

3. Detailed Example I/Q Modulation Receiver Embodiment with Exemplary Waveforms

FIG. 201 illustrates a more detailed example circuit implementation of I/Q modulation receiver 19700, according to an embodiment of the present invention. FIGS. 202-40 show waveforms related to an example implementation of I/Q modulation receiver 19700 of FIG. 201.

FIGS. 202 and 203 show first and second input data signals 20102 and 20104 to be I/Q modulated with a RF carrier signal frequency as the I-phase and Q-phase information signals, respectively.

FIGS. 205 and 206 show the signals of FIG. 202 and 203 after modulation with a RF carrier signal frequency, respectively, as I-modulated signal 20106 and Q-modulated signal 20108.

FIG. 204 shows an I/Q modulation RF input signal 19782 formed from I-modulated signal 20106 and Q-modulated signal 20108 of FIGS. 205 and 206, respectively.

FIG. 211 shows an overlaid view of filtered I output signal 21102 and filtered inverted I output signal 21104.

FIG. 212 shows an overlaid view of filtered Q output signal 21202 and filtered inverted Q output signal 21204.

FIGS. 207 and 208 show I baseband output signal 19784 and Q baseband output signal 19786, respectfully. A data transition 20402 IS indicated in both I baseband output signal 19784 and Q baseband output

signal 19786. The corresponding data transition 20402 is indicated in I-modulated signal 20106 of FIG. 205, Q-modulated signal 20108 of FIG. 206, and I/Q modulation RF input signal 19782 of FIG. 204.

FIGS. 209 and 210 show I baseband output signal 19784 and Q baseband output signal 19786 over a wider time interval.

4. Example Single Channel Receiver Embodiment

FIG. 213 illustrates an example single channel receIver 21300, corresponding to either the I or Q channel of I/Q modulation receiver 19700, according to an embodiment of the present invention. Single channel receiver 21300 can down-convert an input RF signal 21306 modulated according to AM, PM, FM, and other modulation schemes. Refer to the section above for further description on the operation of single channel receiver 21300.

5. Example Automatic Gain Control (AGC) Embodiment

According to embodiments of the invention, the amplitude level of the down-converted signal can be controlled by modifying the aperture of the control signal that controls the switch module. Consider FIG. 43, that illustrates an equation that represents the change in charge in the storage device of embodiments of the UFT module, such as a capacitor. This equation is a function of T, which is the aperture of the control signal. Thus, by modifying the aperture T of the control signal, it is possible to modify the amplitude level of the down-convelied signal.

Some embodiments may include a control mechanism to enable manual control of aperture T, and thus manual control of the amplitude level of the down-converted signal. Other embodiments may include automatic or semi-automatic control modules to enable automatic or

semi-automatic control of aperture T, and thus automatic or semi-automatic control of the amplitude level of the down-converted signal. Such embodiments are herein referred to (without limitation) as automatic gain control (AGC) embodiments. Other embodiments include a combination of manual and automatic control of aperture T.

6. Other Example Embodiments

Additional aspects/embodiments of the invention are considered in this section.

In one embodiment of the present invention there is provided a method of transmitting information between a transmitter and a receiver comprising the steps of transmitting a first series of signals each having a known period from the transmitter at a known first repetition rate; sampling by the receiver each signal in the first series of signals a single time and for a known time interval the sampling of the first series of signals being at a second repetition rate that is a rate different from the first repetition rate by a known amount; and generating by the receiver an output signal indicative of the signal levels sampled in step B and having a period longer than the known period of a transmitted signal.

In another embodiment of the invention there is provided a communication system comprising a transmitter means for transmitting a first series of signals of known period at a known first repetition rate, a receiver means for receiving the first series of signals, the receiver means including sampling means for sampling the signal level of each signal first series of signals for a known time interval at a known second repetition rate, the second repetition rate heing different from the first repetition rate hy a known amount as established by the receiver means. The receiver means includes first circuit means for generating a first receiver output signal indicative of the signal levels sampled and having

a period longer than one signal of the first series of signals. The transmitter means includes an oscillator for generating an oscillator output signal at the first repetition rate, switch means for receiving the oscillator output signal and for selectively passing the oscillator output signal, waveform generating means for receiving the oscillator output signal for generating a waveform generator output signal having a time domain and frequency domain established by the waveform generating means.

The embodiment of the invention described herein involves a single or multi-user communications system that utilizes coherent signals to enhance the system performance over conventional radio frequency schemes while reducing cost and complexity. The design allows direct conversion of radio frequencies into baseband components for processing and provides a high level of rejection for signals that are not related to a known or controlled slew rate between the transmitter and receiver timing oscillators. The system can be designed to take advantage of broadband techniques that further increase its reliahility and permit a high user density within a given area. The technique employed allows the system to be configured as a separate transmitter-receiver pair or a transceiver.

An objective of the present system is to provide a new communication technique that can he applied to hoth narrow and wide hand systems. In its most robust form, all of the advantages of wide band communications are an inherent part of the system and the invention does not require complicated and costly circuitry as found in conventional wide band designs. The communications system utilizes coherent signals to send and receive information and consists of a transmitter and a receiver in its simplest form. The receiver contains circuitry to turn its radio frequency input on and off in a known relationship in time to the transmitted signal. This is accomplished by

allowing the transmitter timing oscillator and the receiver timing oscillator to operate at different but known frequencies to create a known slew rate between the oscillators. If the slew rate is small compared to the timing oscillator frequencies, the transmitted waveform will appear stable in time, i.e., coherent (moving at the known slew rate) to the receiver's switched input. The transmitted waveform is the only waveform that will appear stable in time to the receiver and thus the receiver's input can be averaged to achieve the desired level filtering of unwanted signals. This methodology makes the system extremely selective without complicated filters and complex encoding and decoding schemes and allows the direct conversion of radio frequency energy from an antenna or cable to baseband frequencies with a minimum number of standard components further reducing cost and complexity. The transmitted waveform can be a constant carrier (narrowband), a controlled pulse (wideband and ultra-wideband) or a combination of both such as a dampened sinusoidal wave and or any arbitrary periodic waveform thus the system can be designed to meet virtually any bandwidth requirement. Simple standard modulation and demodulation techniques such as AM and Pulse Width Modulation can he easily applied to the system.

Depending on the system requirements such as the rate of information transfer, the process gain, and the intended use, there are multiple preferred embodiments of the invention. The embodiment discussed herein will be the amplitude and pulse width modulated system. It is one of the simplest implementations of the technology and has many common components with the subsequent systems. A amplitude modulated transmitter consists of a Transmitter Timing Oscillator, a Multiplier, a Waveform Generator, and an Optional Amplifier. The Transmitter Timing Oscillator frequency can he determined by a number of resonate circuits including an inductor and

capacitor, a ceramic resonator, a SAW resonator, or a crystal. The output waveform is sinusoidal, although a squarewave oscillator would produce identical system performance.

The Multiplier component multiplies the Transmitter Timing Oscillator output signal by 0 or 1 or other constants, Kl and K2, to switch the oscillator output on and off to the Waveform Generator. In this embodiment, the information input can he digital data or analog data in the form of pulse width modulation. The Multiplier allows the Transmitter Timing Oscillator output to be present at the Waveform Generator input when the information input is above a predetermined value. In this state the transmitter will produce an output waveform. When the information input is below a predetermined value, there is no input to the Wavefonn Generator and thus there will be no transmitter output waveform. The output of the Waveform Generator determines the system's bandwidth in the frequency domain and consequently the number of users, process gain immunity to interference and overall reliability), the level of emissions on any given frequency, and the antenna or cable requirements. The Waveform Generator in this example creates a one cycle pulse output which produces an ultra-wideband signal in the frequency domain. An optional power Amplifier stage boosts the output of the Waveform Generator to a desired power level.

With reference now to the drawings, the amplitude and pulse width modulated transmitter in accord with the present invention is depicted at numeral 13000 in FIGS. 130 and 131. The Transmitter Timing Oscillator 13002 is a crystal-controlled oscillator operating at a frequency of 25 MHZ. Multiplier 13004 includes a two-input NAND gate 13102 controlling the gating of oscillator 13002 output to Waveform Generator 13006. Waveform Generator 13006 produces a pulse output as depicted at 13208 in FIGS. 132D and 133, which

produces a frequency spectrum 13402 in FIG. 134. Amplifier 13008 is optional. The transmitter 13000 output is applied to antenna or cable 13010, which as understood in the art, may be of various designs as appropriate in the circumstances.

FIGS. 132A-132D, 133, and 134 illustrate the various signals present in transmitter 13000. The output of transmitter 13000 at "A" may be either a sinusoidal or squarewave signal 13202 that is provided as one input into NAND gate 13102. Gate 13102 also receives an information signal 13204 at "B" which, in the emhodiment shown, is digital in form. The output 13206 of Multiplier 13004 can be either sinusoidal or squarewave depending upon the original signal 13202. Waveform Generator 13006 provides an output of a single cycle impulse signal 13208. The single cycle impulse 13210 vanes m voltage around a static level 13212 and is created at 40 nanoseconds intervals. In the illustrated embodiment, the frequency of transmitter 13002 is 25 MHZ and accordingly, one cycle pulses of 1.0 GHZ are transmitted every 40 nanoseconds during the total time interval that gate 13102 is "on" and passes the output of transmitter oscillator 13002.

FIG. 135 shows the preferred embodiment receiver block diagram to recover the amplitude or pulse width modulated information and consists of a Receiver Timing Oscillator 13510, Waveform Generator 13508, RF Switch Fixed or Variable Integrator 13506, Decode Circuit 13514, two optional Amplifier/Pilter stages 13504 and 13512, antenna or cahle input 13502, and Information Output 13516. The Receiver Timing Oscillator 13510 frequency can be determined by a number of resonate circuits including an inductor and capacitor, a ceramic resonator, a SAW resonator, or a crystal. As in the case of the transmitter, the oscillator 13510 shown here is a crystal oscillator. The output waveform is a squarewave, although a smewave oscillator would produce identical system performance. The squarewave timing oscillator output 13602 is

shown in FIG. 136A. The Receiver Timing Oscillator 13510 is designed to operate within a range of frequencies that creates a known range of slew rates relative to the Transmitter Timing Oscillator 13002. In this embodiment, the Transmitter Timing Oscillator 13002 frequency is 25 MHZ and the Receiver Timing Oscillator 13510 outputs between 25.0003 MHZ and 25.0012 MHZ which creates a +300 to +1200 Hz slew rate.

The Receiver Timing Oscillator 13510 is connected to the Waveform Generator 13508 which shapes the oscillator signal into the appropriate output to control the amount of the time that the RF switch 13506 is on and off. The on-time of the RP switch 13506 should he less than ½ of a cycle (1/1 0 of a cycle is preferred) or in the case of a single pulse, no wider than the pulse width of the transmitted waveform or the signal gain of the system will be reduced. Examples are illustrated in Table A1. Therefore the output of the Waveform Generator 13508 is a pulse of the appropriate width that occurs once per cycle of the receiver timing oscillator 13510. The output 13604 of the Waveform Generator is shown in FIG. 136B.

Transmitted Waveform	Gain Limit on-time	Preferred on-time
Single 1 nanosecond pulse	1 nanosecond	100 picoseconds
1 Gigahertz 1,2,3..etc. cycle output	500 picoseconds	50 picoseconds
10 Gigahertz 1,2,3..etc. cycle output	50 picoseconds	5 picoseconds

Table A1

The RF Switch/Integrator 13506 samples the RF signal 13606 shown in FIG. 136C when the Waveform Generator output 13604 is below a predetermined value. When the Waveform Generator output 13604 is above a predetermined value, the RF Switch 13506 becomes a

high impedance node and allows the Integrator to hold the last RF signal sample 13606 until the next cycle of the Wavefonn Generator 13508 output. The Integrator section of 13506 is designed to charge the Integrator quickly (fast attack) and discharge the Integrator at a controlled rate (slow decay). This embodiment provides unwanted signal rejection and is a factor in determining the baseband frequency response of the system. The sense of the switch control is arbitrary depending on the actual hardware implementation.

In an embodiment of the present invention, the gating or sampling rate of the receiver 13500 is 300 Hz higher than the 25 MHZ transmission rate from the transmitter 13000. Altematively, the sampling rate could be less than the transmission rate. The difference in repetition rates between the transmitter 13000 and receiver 13500, the "slew rate," is 300 Hz and results in a controlled drift of the sampling pulses over the transmitted pulse which thus appears "stable" in time to the receiver 13500. With reference now to FIGS. 132A-132D and 136A-136G, an example is illustrated for a simple case of an output signal 13608 (FIG. 136D) that is constructed of four samples from four RF input pulses 13606 for ease of explanation. As can be clearly seen, by sampling the RF pulses 13606 passed when the transmitter information signal 13204 (FIG. 132B) is above a predetermine threshold the signal 13608 is a replica of a signal 13606 but mapped into a different time base. In the case of this example, the new time base has a period four times longer than real time signal. The use of an optional amplifier/filter 13512 results in a further refinement of the signal 13608 which is shown as signal 13610 in FIG. 136E.

Decode Circuitry 13514 extracts the information contained in the transmitted signal and includes a Rectifier that rectifies signal 13608 or 13610 to provide signal 13612 shown in FIG. 136G. The Variable Threshold Generator circuitry in circuit 13514 provides a DC threshold

signal level 13614 for signal 13610 that is used to determine a high (transmitter output on) or low (transmitter output off) and is also shown in FIG. 136G. The final output signal 13616 shown in FIG. 136F is created by an output voltage comparator in circuit 13514 that combines signals 13612 and 13614 such that when the signal 13612 is a higher voltage than signal 13614, the information output signal goes high. Accordingly, signal 13616 represents, for example, a digital "1" that is now time-hased to a 1:4 expansion of the period of an original signal 13606. While this illustration provides a 4:1 reduction in frequency, it is sometimes desired to provide a reduction of more than 50,000:1; in the preferred embodiment, 100,000:1 or greater is achieved. This results in a shift directly from RF input frequency to low frequency baseband without the requirement of expensive intermediate circuitry that would have to be used if only a 4:1 conversion was used as a first stage. Table A2 provides information as to the time base conversion and includes examples.

Units

Receiver Timing Oscillator Frequency = 25.0003 MHz

Transmitter Timing Oscillator Frequency = 25 MHz

period =

period = 40 ns

time base multiplier =

time hase multiplier = 8.333_10^4

Example 1:

1 nanosecond translates into 83.33 microseconds

time base = (1 ns)_time base multiplier

time base = 83.333 us

Example 2:

2 Gigahertz translates into 24 Kilohertz 2 Gigahertz = 500 picosecond period

time base = (500 ps)_time base multiplier

time base = 41.667 us

frequency =

frequency = 24 KHz

Table A2

In the illustrated embodiment, the signal 13616 at "F" has a period of 83.33 usec, a frequency of 12 KHz and it is produced once every 3.3 msec for a 300 Hz slew rate. Stated another way, the system is converting a 1 gigahertz transmitted signal into an 83.33 microsecond signal.

Accordingly, the series of RF pulses 13210 that are transmitted during the presence of an "on" signal at the information input gate 13102 are used to reconstruct the information input signal 13204 by sampling the series of pulses at the receiver 13500. The system is designed to provide an adequate numher of RF inputs 13606 to allow for signal reconstruction.

An optional Amplifier/Filter stage or stages 13504 and 13512 may be included to provide additional receiver sensitivity, bandwidth

control or signal conditioning for the Decode Circuitry 13514. Choosing an appropriate time base multiplier will result in a signal at the output of the Integrator 13506 that can be amplified and filtered with operational amplifiers rather than RF amplifiers with a resultant simplification of the design process. The signal 13610 shown in FIG. 136E illustrates the use of Amplifier/Pilter 13512 (FIG. 137). The optional RF amplifier 13504 shown as the first stage of the receiver should be included in the design when increased sensitivity and/or additional filtering is required. Example receiver schematics are shown in FIGS. 137-139.

FIGS. 140-143 illustrate different pulse output signals 14002 and 14202 and their respective frequency domain at 14102 and 14302. As can be seen from FIGS. 140 and 141, the half-cycle signal 14002 generates a spectrum less subject to interference than the single cycle of FIG. 133 and the 10-cycle pulse of FIG. 142. The various outputs determine the system's immunity to interference, the number of users in a given area, and the cable and antenna requirements. FIGS. 133 and 134 illustrate example pulse outputs.

FIGS. 144 and 145 show example differential receiver designs. The theory of operation is similar to the non-differential receiver of FIG. 135 except that the differential technique provides an increased signal to noise ratio by means of common mode rejection. Any signal impressed in phase at both inputs on the differential receiver will attenuated by the differential amplifier shown in FIGS. 144 and 145 and conversely any signal that produces a phase difference between the receiver inputs will be amplified.

FIGS. 146 and 147 illustrate the time and frequency domains of a narrow hand/constant carrier signal in contrast to the ultra-wide hand signals used in the illustrated embodiment.

VI. Additional Features of the Invention

1. Architectural Features of the Invention

The present invention provides, among other things, the following architectural features:

optimal baseband signal to noise ratio regardless of modulation (programmable RF matched filter);

exceptional linearity per milliwatt consumed;

easily integrated into bulk C-MOS (small size/low cost, high level of integration);

fundamental or sub-harmonic operation (does not change conversion efficiency);

transmit function provides frequency multiplication and signal gain
and

optimal power transfer into a scalable output impedance (independent of device voltage or current);

The present invention provides simultaneous solutions for two domains: power sampling and matched filtering. A conventional sampler is a voltage sampling device, and does not suhstantially affect the input signal. A power sampler according to the present invention attempts to take as much power from the input to construct the output, and does not necessarily preserve the input signal.

2. Additional Benefits of the Invention

2.1 Compared to an Impulse Sampler

The present invention out-performs a theoretically perfect impulse sampler. The performance of a practical implementation of the present invention exceeds the performance of a practical implementation of an impulse sampler. The present invention is easily implemented (does not require impulse circuitry).

2.2 Linearity

The present invention provides exceptional linearity per milliwatt. For example, rail to rail dynamic range is possible with

minimal increase in power. In an example integrated circuit embodiment, the present invention provides +55dmb IP2, +15 dbm IP3, @ 3.3V, 4.4ma, -15dmb LO. GSM system requirements are +22dbm IP2, -10.5dmb IP3. CDMA system requirements are +50dmb IP2, +10dbm IP3.

2.3 Optimal Power Transfer into a Scalable Output Impedance

In an embodiment of the present invention, output impedance is scalable to facilitate a low system noise figure. In an embodiment, changes in output impedance do not affect power consumption.

2.4 System Integration

In an embodiment, the present invention enables a high level of integration in bulk C-MOS. Other features include:

small footprint;

no multiplier circuits (no device matching or balancing transistors);

transmit and receive filters at baseband;

low frequency synthesizers;

DC offset solutions;

Referring to FIG. 218A, a single-switch, differential input, differential output receiver 21800, according to an emhodiment of the present invention, is shown. If an I/Q signal is being received, receiver 21800 could be implemented for each of the I- and Q-phase signals. No balanced transistor is required in receiver 21800. Any charge injection that creates a DC offset voltage on a first switch input 21802 creates a

suhstantially equal DC offset voltage on a second switch input 21804, so that any resulting DC offset due to charge injection is substantially canceled.

In an embodiment, LO signal 21806 runs at a sub-harmonic. Gilbert cells lose efficiency when run at a sub-hannonic, as compared to the receiver of the present invention.

FIG. 218A shows a substantially maximal linearity configuration. The drain and source voltages are virtually fixed in relation to V_{gs}. The DC voltage across first switch input 21802 and second switch input 21804 remains substantially constant.

Single-switch, differential input, differential output receiver embodiments according to the present invention, are discussed in further detail elsewhere herein.

architecturally reduces re-radiation;

Referring to FIG. 218A, re-radiation is substantially all common mode. With a perfect splitter, the re-radiation will be substantially eliminated.

Referring to FIG. 218B, a first switch 21810 and a second switch 21812 are implemented in a receiver 21814, according to an emhodiment of the present invention. Receiver 21814 moves re-radiation off frequency to the next even harmonic frequency higher. Referring to FIG. 218D, re-radiation was substantially shifted from 2.49 GHz (see re-radiation spike 21818) to 3.29 GHz (see larger re-radiation spike 21820).

Receiver embodiments, according to the present invention, for reducing or eliminating circuit re-radiation, such as receiver 21814, are discussed in further detail elsewhere herein.

inherent noise rejection; and
lower cost.

2.5 Fundamental or Sub-Harmonic Operation

Sub-harmonic operation is preferred for many direct down-conversion implementations hecause it tends to avoid oscillators and/or signals near the desired operating frequency.

Conversion efficiency is generally constant regardless of the sub-harmonic. Suh-harmonic operation enahles micro power receiver designs.

2.6 Frequency Multiplication and Signal Gain

A transmit function in accordance with the present invention provides frequency multiplication and signal gain. For example, a 900 MHz design example (0.35 μ CMOS) embodiment features -15 dbm 180 MHz LO, 0 dbm 900 MHz I/O output, 5 VDC, 5 ma. A 2400 MHz design example (0.35 μ CMOS) embodiment features -15 dhm 800 MHz LO, -6 dhm 2.4 GHz I/O output, 5 VDC, 16 ma.

A transmit function in accordance with the present invention also provides direct up-conversion (true zero IF).

3. Controlled Aperture Sub-Harmonic Matched Filter Features

3.1 Non-Negligible Aperture

A non-negligible aperture, as taught herein, substantially preserves amplitude and phase information, but not necessarily the carrier signal. A general concept is to under-sample the carrier while over sampling the information.

The present invention transfers optimum energy. Example embodiments have been presented herein, including DC examples and carrier half cycle examples.

3.2 Bandwidth

With regard to input bandwidth, optimum energy transfer generally occurs every n + ½ cycle. Output bandwidth is generally a function of the LO.

3.3 Architectural Advantages of a Universal Frequency Down-Converter

A universal frequency down-converter (UDP), in accordance with the invention, can be designed to provides, among other things, the following features:

filter Q's of 100,000+;
filters with gain;
filter integration in CMOS;
electrically modified center frequency and bandwidth;
stable filter parameters in the presence of high level signals; and
UDF's can be mass produced without tuning.

3.4 Complimentary FET Switch Advantages

Complimentary FET switch implementations of the invention provide, among other things, increased dynamic range (lower Rds_{on} - increased conversion efficiency, higher IIP2, IIP3, minimal current increase (+CMOS inverter), and lower re-radiation (charge cancellation). For example, refer to FIGS. 240 and 241.

3.5 Differential Configuration Characteristics

Differential configuration implementations of the invention provide, among other things, DC off-set advantages, lower re-radiation, input and output common mode rejection, and minimal current increase. For example, refer to FIG. 242.

3.6 Clock Spreading Characteristics

Clock spreading aspects of the invention provide, among other things, lower re-radiation, DC off-set advantages, and flicker noise advantages. For example, refer to FIGS. 243-245.

3.7 Controlled Aperture Sub Harmonic Matched Filter Principles

The invention provides, among other things, optimization of signal to noise ratio subject to maximum energy transfer given a controlled aperture, and maximum energy transfer while preserving information. The invention also provides bandpass wave form auto sampling and pulse energy accumulation

3.8 Effects of Pulse Width Variation

Pulse width can be optimized for a frequency of interest. Generally, pulse width is n plus ½ cycles of a desired input frequency. Generally, in CMOS implementations of the invention, pulse width variation across process variations and temperature of interest is less than +/- 16 percent.

4. Conventional Systems

4.1 Heterodyne Systems

Conventional heterodyne systems, in contrast to the present invention, are relatively complex, require multiple RF synthesizers, require management of various electromagnetic modes (shield, etc.), require significant intermodulation management, and require a myriad of technologies that do not easily integrate onto integrated circuits.

4.2 Mobile Wireless Devices

High quality mobile wireless devices have not been implemented via zero IF because of the high power requirements for the first conversion in order to ohtain necessary dynamic range, the high level of LO required (LO re-radiation), adjacent channel interference rejection filtering, transmitter modulation filtering, transmitter LO leakage, and limitations on RF synthesizer performance and technology.

5. Phase Noise Cancellation

The complex phasor notation of a harmonic signal IS known from Euler's equation, shown here as equation 172.

$$S(t) = e^{-j(\omega_c t+\varphi)}$$

EQ. (172)

Suppose that φ is also some function of time $\varphi(t)$. $\varphi(t)$ represents phase noise or some other phase perturbation of the waveform. Furthermore, suppose that $\varphi(t)$ and $-\varphi(t)$. can be derived and manipulated. Then if follows that the multiplication of $S_1(t)$ and $S_2(t)$ will yield equation 173.

$$S(t) = S_1(t) \bullet S_2(t) = e^{-j(\omega_c t+\varphi(t))} \bullet e^{-j(\omega_c t-\varphi(t))} = e^{-j2\omega_c t}$$

EQ. (173)

Thus, the phase noise $\varphi(t)$ can be canceled. Trigonometric identities verify the same result except for an additional term at DC. This can be implemented with, for example, a four-quadrant version of the invention. FIG. 268 illustrates an implementation for a doubler (2X clock frequency and harmonics thereof). FIG. 269 illustrates another implementation (harmonics with odd order phase noise canceling).

In an embodiment two clocks are utilized for phase noise cancellation of odd and even order harmonics by cascading stages. A four quadrant implementation of the invention can be utilized to eliminate the multiplier illustrated in FIG. 269.

6. Multiplexed UFD

In an embodiment, parallel receivers and transmitters are implemented usmg single pole, double throw, triple throw, etc.,

implementations of the invention.

A multiple throw implementation of the invention can also be utilized. In this embodiment, many frequency conversion options at multiple rates can be performed in parallel or serial. This can be implemented for multiple receive functions, multi-band radios, multi-rate filters, etc.

7. Sampling Apertures

Multiple apertures can he utilized to accomplish a variety of effects. For example, FIG. 270 illustrates a bipolar sample aperture and a corresponding sine wave being sampled. The bipolar sample aperture IS operated at a sub harmonic of the sine wave being sampled. By calculating the Pourier transform of each component within the Pourier series, it can be shown that the sampling power spectrum goes to zero at the sub harmonics and super harmonics. As a result, the comb spectrum is substantially eliminated except at the conversion frequency.

Similarly, the numher of apertures can be extended with associated bipolar weighting to form a variety of impulse responses and to perform filtering at RF.

8. Diversity Reception and Equalizers

The present invention can be utilized to implement maximal ratio post detection combiners, equal gain post detection combiners, and selectors.

FIG. 271 illustrates an example diversity receiver implemented in accordance with the present invention.

FIG. 272 illustrates an example equalizer implemented in accordance with the present invention.

The present invention can serve as a quadrature down converter and as a unit delay function. In an example of such an implementation, the unit delay function is implemented with a decimated clock at baseband.

VII. Conclusions

Example embodiments of the methods, systems, and components of the present invention have been described herein. As noted elsewhere, these example embodiments have been described for illustrative purposes only, and are not limiting. Other embodiments are possible and are covered by the invention. Such other embodiments include but are not limited to hardware, software, and software/hardware implementations of the methods, systems, and components of the invention. Such other embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Thus, the breadth and scope of the present invention should not be limited by any of the above-described exemplary embodiments, but should be defined only in accordance with the following claims and their equivalents.

VIII. Glossary of Terms

A.M.	Amplitude Modulation
A/D	Analog/Digital
AWGN	Additive White Gaussian
C	Capacitor

CMOS	Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor
dB	Decibel
dBm	Decibels with Respect to One Milliwatt
DC	Direct Current
DCT	Discrete Cosine Transform
DST	Discrete Sine Transform
FIR	Finite Impulse Response
GHz	Giga Hertz
I/Q	In Phase/Quadrature Phase
IC	Integrated Circuits, Initial Conditions
IF	Intermediate Frequency
ISM	Industrial, Scientific, Medical Band
L-C	Inductor-Capacitor
LO	Local Oscillator
NF	Noise Frequency
OFDM	Olihogonal Frequency Division Multiplex
R	Resistor
RF	Radio Frequency
rms	Root Mean Square
SNR	Signal to Noise Ratio
WT"AN	Wireless T "ocal Area Network
UFT	Universal Frequency Translation

Abstract

Methods, systems, and apparatuses, and combinations and sub-combinations thereof, for down-converting an electromagnetic (EM) signal are described herein. Briefly stated, in embodiments the invention operates by receiving an EM signal and recursively operating on approximate half cycles (½ , 1 ½ , 2 ½ , etc) of the carrier signal. The recursive operations can be performed at a suh-harmonic rate of the carrier signal. The invention accumulates the results of the recursive operations and uses the accumulated results to form a down-converted signal. In an embodiment, the EM signal is down-converted to an intermediate frequency (IF) signal. In another emhodiment, the EM signal is down-converted to a hasehand information signal. In another embodiment, the EM signal is a frequency modulated (FM) signal, which is down-converted to a non-FM signal, such as a phase modulated (PM) signal or an amplitude modulated (AM) signal.

Doc Code: PA..
Document Description: Power of Attorney

PTO/AIA/82B (07-13)
Approved for use through 11/30/2014. OMB 0651-0051
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number

POWER OF ATTORNEY BY APPLICANT

I hereby revoke all previous powers of attorney given in the application identified in either the attached transmittal letter or the boxes below.

Application Number	Filing Date
14/172,392	February 4, 2014

(Note: The boxes above may be left blank if information is provided on form PTO/AIA/82A.)

☑ I hereby appoint the Patent Practitioner(s) associated with the following Customer Number as my/our attorney(s) or agent(s), and to transact all business in the United States Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith for the application referenced in the attached transmittal letter (form PTO/AIA/82A) or identified above: 22913

OR

☐ I hereby appoint Practitioner(s) named in the attached list (form PTO/AIA/82C) as my/our attorney(s) or agent(s), and to transact all business in the United States Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith for the patent application referenced in the attached transmittal letter (form PTO/AIA/82A) or identified above. (Note: Complete form PTO/AIA/82C.)

Please recognize or change the correspondence address for the application identified in the attached transmittal letter or the boxes above to:

☑ The address associated with the above-mentioned Customer Number

OR

☐ The address associated with Customer Number:

OR

Firm or Individual Name					
Address					
City		State		Zip	
Country					
Telephone		Email			

I am the Applicant (if the Applicant is a juristic entity, list the Applicant name in the box):

☐ Inventor or Joint Inventor (title not required below)

☐ Legal Representative of a Deceased or Legally Incapacitated Inventor (title not required below)

☑ Assignee or Person to Whom the Inventor is Under an Obligation to Assign (provide signer's title if applicant is a juristic entity)

☐ Person Who Otherwise Shows Sufficient Proprietary Interest (e.g., a petition under 37 CFR 1.46(b)(2) was granted in the application or is concurrently being filed with this document) (provide signer's title if applicant is a juristic entity)

SIGNATURE of Applicant for Patent

The undersigned (whose title is supplied below) is authorized to act on behalf of the applicant (e.g., where the applicant is a juristic entity).

Signature	/Thomas F. Presson/	Date (Optional)	
Name	Thomas F. Presson (Reg. No. 41,442)		
Title	Chief Intellectual Property Counsel, ParkerVision, Inc.		

NOTE: Signature - This form must be signed by the applicant in accordance with 37 CFR 1.33. See 37 CFR 1.4 for signature requirements and certifications. If more than one applicant, use multiple forms.

☐ Total of forms are submitted.

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.131, 1.32, and 1.33. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 3 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal

Application Number:	14172392
Filing Date:	04-Feb-2014
Title of Invention:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	David F. Sorrells
Filer:	Shane K Jensen/Ralene Eller
Attorney Docket Number:	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

Filed as Large Entity

Utility under 35 USC 111(a) Filing Fees

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD($)
Basic Filing:				
Utility application filing	1011	1	280	280
Utility Search Fee	1111	1	600	600
Utility Examination Fee	1311	1	720	720
Pages:				
Utility Appl Size fee per 50 sheets >100	1081	9	400	3600
Claims:				
Miscellaneous-Filing:				
Late Filing Fee for Oath or Declaration	1051	1	140	140

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD($)
Petition:				
Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:				
Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:				
Extension-of-Time:				
Extension - 1 month with $0 paid	1251	1	200	200
Miscellaneous:				
		Total in USD ($)		**5540**

Electronically Filed via *EFS*

PATENT APPLICATION
Docket: 19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re application of:		)
		)
	David F. Sorrells et al.	)
		) Art Unit
Serial No.:	14/172,392	) 2649
		)
Confirmation No.:	8448	)
		)
Filed:	February 4, 2014	)
		)
For:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships	)

Mail Stop Missing Parts
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Transmittal for Response To Notice to File Missing Parts of Application

Sir:

In response to the Notice to File Missing Parts of Nonprovisional Application Filed Under 37 CFR 1.53(b) mailed February 24, 2014, please find enclosed herewith the following items for filing in the United States Patent and Trademark Office in connection with the above-identified patent application:

- _X_ Amendment and Response to Notice to File Missing Parts with Marked Up and Clean Substitute Specifications;
- _X_ Petition for One Month Extension of Time; and
- _X_ Corrected ADS.

_X_ Payment by credit card in the amount of $5540.00 using the payment option in E-Filer with RAM will be used to cover the payment of the fees as follows:

_X_ The statutory basic filing fee of $280.00
_X_ The search fee of $600.00
_X_ The examination fee of $720.00
_X_ The excess page fees of $3600.00,
_X_ The one Month Extension of Time fees of $200.00, and
_X_ The $140.00 surcharge fee pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.16(f).

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge payment of the following fees associated with this communication or to credit any overpayment to Deposit Account No. 23-3178.

_X_ Any additional filing fees required under 37 C.F.R. § 1.16.
_X_ Any patent application processing fees under 37 C.F.R. § 1.17.

Please address all future correspondence in connection with this case to the attention of the undersigned.

DATED this 15th day of May, 2014.

Respectfully submitted,

/Shane K. Jensen 55,301/

RICK D. NYDEGGER
Registration No. 28,651
SHANE K. JENSEN
Registration No. 55,301
WORKMAN NYDEGGER
Attorneys for Applicant
Customer No. 022913
Telephone No. 801.533.9800

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt	
EFS ID:	19044749
Application Number:	14172392
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	8448
Title of Invention:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	David F. Sorrells
Customer Number:	22913
Filer:	Shane K Jensen/Ralene Eller
Filer Authorized By:	Shane K Jensen
Attorney Docket Number:	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
Receipt Date:	15-MAY-2014
Filing Date:	04-FEB-2014
Time Stamp:	18:02:39
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	Credit Card
Payment was successfully received in RAM	$5540
RAM confirmation Number	4756
Deposit Account	233178
Authorized User	JENSEN, SHANE K.
The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows: Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.17 (Patent application and reexamination processing fees) Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.19 (Document supply fees)	

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.20 (Post Issuance fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.21 (Miscellaneous fees and charges)

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Transmittal Letter	1920-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2014-05-15_TRX-Amd-MP.pdf	107629 9bf5e36db529a9435b45b449312785dba90c9e14	no	2
Warnings:					
Information:					
2	Applicant Response to Pre-Exam Formalities Notice	1920-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2014-05-15_Amd-MP.pdf	114287 67912e885023b1e78569373bef977f5f2f109c65	no	3
Warnings:					
Information:					
3	Specification	19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2014-05-15_Marked-Spec.pdf	2413468 cd3da1be12fbde62d98948298ed8e9f8d0f2863f	no	396
Warnings:					
Information:					
4	Specification	19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2014-05-15_Clean-Spec.pdf	2412725 1c0651eed7438e57eadc923b969ede8b54aab3c6	no	396
Warnings:					
Information:					
5	Extension of Time	19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2014-05-15_One-Month-EOT.PDF	171516 03cdbacef35807030fbfb03ab3a35a79b1538617	no	2
Warnings:					
Information:					
6	Application Data Sheet	19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2014-05-15_Corrected-ADS1.pdf	3084896 2ac6c386fb897e313ea88c7c0b1f13cc2a169ed4	no	9
Warnings:					
Information:					
This is not an USPTO supplied ADS fillable form					
7	Power of Attorney	19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2014-05-15_POA1.pdf	96253 42028c6e600d3f40a326201a033f8a0064708cee	no	1
Warnings:					
Information:					
8	Fee Worksheet (SB06)	fee-info.pdf	40061 62082381004de28d0fc3f6d68216cd6c34a7eacf	no	2

Warnings:	
Information:	
Total Files Size (in bytes):	8440835

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111
If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371
If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office
If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING or 371(c) DATE	GRP ART UNIT	FIL FEE REC'D	ATTY.DOCKET.NO	TOT CLAIMS	IND CLAIMS
14/172,392	02/04/2014	2649	5340	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2	1	1

CONFIRMATION NO. 8448

UPDATED FILING RECEIPT

22913
Workman Nydegger
60 East South Temple
Suite 1000
Salt Lake City, UT 84111

OC000000068514080

Date Mailed: 05/20/2014

Receipt is acknowledged of this non-provisional patent application. The application will be taken up for examination in due course. Applicant will be notified as to the results of the examination. Any correspondence concerning the application must include the following identification information: the U.S. APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING DATE, NAME OF APPLICANT, and TITLE OF INVENTION. Fees transmitted by check or draft are subject to collection. Please verify the accuracy of the data presented on this receipt. **If an error is noted on this Filing Receipt, please submit a written request for a Filing Receipt Correction. Please provide a copy of this Filing Receipt with the changes noted thereon. If you received a "Notice to File Missing Parts" for this application, please submit any corrections to this Filing Receipt with your reply to the Notice. When the USPTO processes the reply to the Notice, the USPTO will generate another Filing Receipt incorporating the requested corrections**

Inventor(s)

David F. Sorrells, Jacksonville, FL;
Michael J. Bultman, Jacksonville, FL;
Robert W. Cook, Switzerland, FL;
Richard C. Looke, Jacksonville, FL;
Charley D. Moses, Jacksonville, FL;
Gregory S. Rawlins, Lake Mary, FL;
Michael W. Rawlins, Lake Mary, FL;

Applicant(s)

David F. Sorrells, Jacksonville, FL;
Michael J. Bultman, Jacksonville, FL;
Robert W. Cook, Switzerland, FL;
Richard C. Looke, Jacksonville, FL;
Charley D. Moses, Jacksonville, FL;
Gregory S. Rawlins, Lake Mary, FL;
Michael W. Rawlins, Lake Mary, FL;

Power of Attorney: None

Domestic Priority data as claimed by applicant

This application is a CON of 13/549,213 07/13/2012 PAT 8660513
which is a CON of 12/976,839 12/22/2010 PAT 8340618
which is a CON of 12/349,802 01/07/2009 PAT 7865177
which is a DIV of 09/550,644 04/14/2000 PAT 7515896
which is a CIP of 09/293,342 04/16/1999 PAT 6687493
which is a CIP of 09/176,022 10/21/1998 PAT 6061551

Foreign Applications for which priority is claimed (You may be eligible to benefit from the **Patent Prosecution Highway** program at the USPTO. Please see http://www.uspto.gov for more information.) - None.
Foreign application information must be provided in an Application Data Sheet in order to constitute a claim to foreign priority. See 37 CFR 1.55 and 1.76.

Permission to Access - A proper **Authorization to Permit Access to Application by Participating Offices** (PTO/SB/39 or its equivalent) has been received by the USPTO.

If Required, Foreign Filing License Granted: 02/20/2014

The country code and number of your priority application, to be used for filing abroad under the Paris Convention, is **US 14/172,392**

Projected Publication Date: 08/28/2014

Non-Publication Request: No

Early Publication Request: No
Title

Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships

Preliminary Class

455

Statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78 for AIA (First Inventor to File) Transition Applications: No

PROTECTING YOUR INVENTION OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES

Since the rights granted by a U.S. patent extend only throughout the territory of the United States and have no effect in a foreign country, an inventor who wishes patent protection in another country must apply for a patent in a specific country or in regional patent offices. Applicants may wish to consider the filing of an international application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT). An international (PCT) application generally has the same effect as a regular national patent application in each PCT-member country. The PCT process **simplifies** the filing of patent applications on the same invention in member countries, but **does not result** in a grant of "an international patent" and does not eliminate the need of applicants to file additional documents and fees in countries where patent protection is desired.

Almost every country has its own patent law, and a person desiring a patent in a particular country must make an application for patent in that country in accordance with its particular laws. Since the laws of many countries differ in various respects from the patent law of the United States, applicants are advised to seek guidance from specific foreign countries to ensure that patent rights are not lost prematurely.

Applicants also are advised that in the case of inventions made in the United States, the Director of the USPTO must issue a license before applicants can apply for a patent in a foreign country. The filing of a U.S. patent application serves as a request for a foreign filing license. The application's filing receipt contains further information and guidance as to the status of applicant's license for foreign filing.

Applicants may wish to consult the USPTO booklet, "General Information Concerning Patents" (specifically, the section entitled "Treaties and Foreign Patents") for more information on timeframes and deadlines for filing foreign

patent applications. The guide is available either by contacting the USPTO Contact Center at 800-786-9199, or it can be viewed on the USPTO website at http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/doc/general/index.html.

For information on preventing theft of your intellectual property (patents, trademarks and copyrights), you may wish to consult the U.S. Government website, http://www.stopfakes.gov. Part of a Department of Commerce initiative, this website includes self-help "toolkits" giving innovators guidance on how to protect intellectual property in specific countries such as China, Korea and Mexico. For questions regarding patent enforcement issues, applicants may call the U.S. Government hotline at 1-866-999-HALT (1-866-999-4258).

LICENSE FOR FOREIGN FILING UNDER

Title 35, United States Code, Section 184

Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, 5.11 & 5.15

GRANTED

The applicant has been granted a license under 35 U.S.C. 184, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" followed by a date appears on this form. Such licenses are issued in all applications where the conditions for issuance of a license have been met, regardless of whether or not a license may be required as set forth in 37 CFR 5.15. The scope and limitations of this license are set forth in 37 CFR 5.15(a) unless an earlier license has been issued under 37 CFR 5.15(b). The license is subject to revocation upon written notification. The date indicated is the effective date of the license, unless an earlier license of similar scope has been granted under 37 CFR 5.13 or 5.14.

This license is to be retained by the licensee and may be used at any time on or after the effective date thereof unless it is revoked. This license is automatically transferred to any related applications(s) filed under 37 CFR 1.53(d). This license is not retroactive.

The grant of a license does not in any way lessen the responsibility of a licensee for the security of the subject matter as imposed by any Government contract or the provisions of existing laws relating to espionage and the national security or the export of technical data. Licensees should apprise themselves of current regulations especially with respect to certain countries, of other agencies, particularly the Office of Defense Trade Controls, Department of State (with respect to Arms, Munitions and Implements of War (22 CFR 121-128)); the Bureau of Industry and Security, Department of Commerce (15 CFR parts 730-774); the Office of Foreign AssetsControl, Department of Treasury (31 CFR Parts 500+) and the Department of Energy.

NOT GRANTED

No license under 35 U.S.C. 184 has been granted at this time, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" DOES NOT appear on this form. Applicant may still petition for a license under 37 CFR 5.12, if a license is desired before the expiration of 6 months from the filing date of the application. If 6 months has lapsed from the filing date of this application and the licensee has not received any indication of a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181, the licensee may foreign file the application pursuant to 37 CFR 5.15(b).

SelectUSA

The United States represents the largest, most dynamic marketplace in the world and is an unparalleled location for business investment, innovation, and commercialization of new technologies. The U.S. offers tremendous resources and advantages for those who invest and manufacture goods here. Through SelectUSA, our nation works to promote and facilitate business investment. SelectUSA provides information assistance to the international investor community; serves as an ombudsman for existing and potential investors; advocates on behalf of U.S. cities, states, and regions competing for global investment; and counsels U.S. economic development organizations on investment attraction best practices. To learn more about why the United States is the best country in the world to develop technology, manufacture products, deliver services, and grow your business, visit http://www.SelectUSA.gov or call +1-202-482-6800.

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD

Substitute for Form PTO-875

Application or Docket Number: 14/172,392

APPLICATION AS FILED - PART I

FOR	(Column 1) NUMBER FILED	(Column 2) NUMBER EXTRA	SMALL ENTITY RATE($)	SMALL ENTITY FEE($)	OR	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE($)	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY FEE($)
BASIC FEE (37 CFR 1.16(a), (b), or (c))	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	280
SEARCH FEE (37 CFR 1.16(k), (i), or (m))	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	600
EXAMINATION FEE (37 CFR 1.16(o), (p), or (q))	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	720
TOTAL CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(i))	1 minus 20 =	*			OR	x 80 =	0.00
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(h))	1 minus 3 =	*				x 420 =	0.00
APPLICATION SIZE FEE (37 CFR 1.16(s))	If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is $310 ($155 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR 1.16(s).						3600
MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT (37 CFR 1.16(j))							0.00
* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2.			TOTAL			TOTAL	5200

APPLICATION AS AMENDED - PART II

		(Column 1) CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		(Column 2) HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	(Column 3) PRESENT EXTRA	SMALL ENTITY RATE($)	SMALL ENTITY ADDITIONAL FEE($)	OR	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE($)	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY ADDITIONAL FEE($)
AMENDMENT A	Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus	**	=	x =		OR	x =	
	Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus	***	=	x =		OR	x =	
	Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))									
	FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))							OR		
						TOTAL ADD'L FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'L FEE	

		(Column 1) CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		(Column 2) HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	(Column 3) PRESENT EXTRA	RATE($)	ADDITIONAL FEE($)		RATE($)	ADDITIONAL FEE($)
AMENDMENT B	Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus	**	=	x =		OR	x =	
	Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus	***	=	x =		OR	x =	
	Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))									
	FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))							OR		
						TOTAL ADD'L FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'L FEE	

* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3.
** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20".
*** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest found in the appropriate box in column 1.

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
14/172,392	02/04/2014	David F. Sorrells	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

CONFIRMATION NO. 8448

IMPROPER CPOA LETTER

22913
Workman Nydegger
60 East South Temple
Suite 1000
Salt Lake City, UT 84111

OC000000068514652

Date Mailed: 05/20/2014

NOTICE REGARDING POWER OF ATTORNEY

This is in response to the power of attorney filed 05/15/2014. The power of attorney in this application is not accepted for the reason(s) listed below:

- The power of attorney has not been accepted because the party who is giving power has not been identified. Power of attorney may only be signed by the applicant for patent (37 CFR 1.42) or the patent owner. A party who is not the applicant must become the applicant in accordance with 37 CFR 1.46(c) and appoint any power of attorney in compliance with 37 CFR 3.71 and 3.73. For a reissue application, reexamination proceeding, or supplemental examination proceeding, a patent owner who was not the applicant under 37 CFR 1.46 must appoint any power of attorney in compliance with 37 CFR 3.71 and 3.73. See 37 CFR 1.32(b)(4).

/nton/

Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
14/172,392	02/04/2014	David F. Sorrells	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

CONFIRMATION NO. 8448

22913
Workman Nydegger
60 East South Temple
Suite 1000
Salt Lake City, UT 84111

NOTICE

OC000000068514081

Date Mailed: 05/20/2014

INFORMATIONAL NOTICE TO APPLICANT

Applicant is notified that the above-identified application contains the deficiencies noted below. No period for reply is set forth in this notice for correction of these deficiencies. However, if a deficiency relates to the inventor's oath or declaration, the applicant must file an oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63, or a substitute statement in compliance with 37 CFR 1.64, executed by or with respect to each actual inventor no later than the expiration of the time period set in the "Notice of Allowability" to avoid abandonment. See 37 CFR 1.53(f).

The item(s) indicated below are also required and should be submitted with any reply to this notice to avoid further processing delays.

- A properly executed inventor's oath or declaration has not been received for the following inventor(s):
  David F. Sorrells
  Michael J. Bultman
  Robert W. Cook
  Richard C. Looke
  Charley D. Moses
  Gregory S. Rawlins
  Michael W. Rawlins

EAST Search History

EAST Search History (Prior Art)

Ref #	Hits	Search Query	DBs	Default Operator	Plurals	Time Stamp
L1	21845	((455/413,113,118,130,131,182.1,190.1,191.1,313,323,343,350) or (327/113) or (375/130,142,143,150,152,316,343)).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2014/08/22 12:56
L2	561	inver$4 near15 "in-phase" same combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2014/08/22 12:56
L3	21845	((455/413,113,118,130,131,182.1,190.1,191.1,313,323,343,350) or (327/113) or (375/130,142,143,150,152,316,343)).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2014/08/22 12:56
L4	6	control$4 same discharg$3 same alias$3 same inver$4	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2014/08/22 12:56
L5	561	inver$4 near15 "in-phase" same combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2014/08/22 12:57
S1	12	finite adj2 time near2 integrat$3 near8 accumulat$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2009/09/30 12:38
S2	1	("7515896").PN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2009/10/23 13:49
S3	14021	((455/413,113,118,130,131,182.1,190.1,191.1,313,323,343,350) or (327/113) or (375/130,142,143,150,152,316,343)).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2009/10/23 13:53
S4	1519	time near2 integrat$3 near8 accumulat$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2009/10/23 16:34
S5	14021	((455/413,113,118,130,131,182.1,190.1,191.1,313,323,343,350) or (327/113) or (375/130,142,143,150,152,316,343)).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2009/10/23 16:35
S6	66	S5 and S4	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2009/10/23 16:35
S7	12	finite adj2 time near2 integrat$3 near8 accumulat$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2009/10/23 16:35
S8	57	S6 not S7	US-PGPUB;	OR	ON	2009/10/23 16:35

			USPAT; USOCR			
S9	0	downconver$4 near7 time near2 integrat$3 near8 accumulat$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2009/10/23 16:40
S10	12	finite adj2 time near2 integrat$3 near8 accumulat$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2009/10/24 16:17
S11	3634	time near2 integrat$3 near8 (accumulat$3 sum$4 add$3)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2009/10/24 16:47
S12	14	finite adj2 time near2 integrat$3 near8 (accumulat$3 sum$4 add$3)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2009/10/24 16:48
S13	14	(downconvert$3 or down adj2 convert$3) near8 integrat$3 near8 (accumulat$3 sum$4 add$3)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2009/10/24 16:49
S14	14782	((455/413,113,118,130,131,182.1,190.1,191.1,313,323,343,350) or (327/113) or (375/130,142,143,150,152,316,343)).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2010/05/10 10:10
S15	3	(("7515896") or ("6687493") or ("6061551")).PN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2010/05/10 10:11
S16	1741	match$3 near6 (filter$3 correlat$3) near10 combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2010/05/10 10:14
S17	1609	match$3 near6 filter$3 near10 combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2010/05/10 10:14
S18	1395	match$3 near3 filter$3 near10 combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2010/05/10 10:16
S19	324	S14 and S18	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2010/05/10 10:16
S20	1	match$3 near3 filter$3 near10 combin$3 near12 (downconvert$3 or "down-converting")	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2010/05/10 10:18
S23	14	(("7,653,145") or ("7,653,158") or ("5,222,250") or ("6,188,221") or ("7,693,230") or ("7,693,502") or ("7,697,916") or ("5,400,363") or ("6,215,830") or ("6,363,126") or ("7,724,845") or ("6,332,007") or ("5,449,939") or ("5,528,068")).PN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2010/06/30 15:13
S24	20067	((455/413,113,118,130,131,182.1,190.1,191.1,313,323,343,350) or (327/113) or (375/130,142,143,150,152,316,343)).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2013/07/28 20:33
S25	1	match$3 near3 filter$3 near10 combin$3 near12	US-	OR	ON	2013/07/28

		(downconvert$3 or "down-converting")	PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR			20:33
S26	1	inver$4 near15 (downconvert$3 or "down-converting") near8 combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2013/07/28 20:35
S27	23	inver$4 near15 (downconvert$3 or "down-converting") same combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2013/07/29 09:20
S28	1	("20130101064").PN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2013/07/29 10:02
S29	1992	inver$4 near10 "in-phase"	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	OFF	2013/07/29 10:02
S30	1	S28 and S29	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	OFF	2013/07/29 10:03
S31	1	(inver$4 same "in-phase") and S28	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	OFF	2013/07/29 10:03
S32	510	inver$4 near15 "in-phase" same combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2013/07/29 10:56
S33	79	inver$4 near15 "in-phase" near12 combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2013/07/29 10:56
S34	1	("6192225").PN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2013/07/29 11:12
S37	1	inver$4 near15 (downconvert$3 or "down-converting") near8 combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2013/09/27 16:31
S38	20397	((455/413,113,118,130,131,182.1,190.1,191.1,313,323,343,350) or (327/113) or (375/130,142,143,150,152,316,343)).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2013/09/27 16:32
S39	20	finite adj2 time near2 integrat$3 near8 accumulat$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2013/09/27 16:32
S40	0	control$4 near10 discharg$3 near10 alias$3 near10 inver$4	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2013/09/27 16:36
S41	4	control$4 same discharg$3 same alias$3 same inver$4	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2013/09/27 16:36

8/ 22/ 2014 1:06:47 PM
C:\ Users\ sbhattacharya\ Documents\ EAST\ Workspaces\ 14172392.wsp

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

BIB DATA SHEET

CONFIRMATION NO. 8448

SERIAL NUMBER	FILING or 371(c) DATE RULE	CLASS	GROUP ART UNIT	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.
14/172,392	02/04/2014	455	2646	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

APPLICANTS

INVENTORS

David F. Sorrells, Jacksonville, FL;
Michael J. Bultman, Jacksonville, FL;
Robert W. Cook, Switzerland, FL;
Richard C. Looke, Jacksonville, FL;
Charley D. Moses, Jacksonville, FL;
Gregory S. Rawlins, Lake Mary, FL;
Michael W. Rawlins, Lake Mary, FL;

**** CONTINUING DATA ***************************

This application is a CON of 13/549,213 07/13/2012 PAT 8660513
which is a CON of 12/976,839 12/22/2010 PAT 8340618
which is a CON of 12/349,802 01/07/2009 PAT 7865177
which is a DIV of 09/550,644 04/14/2000 PAT 7515896
which is a CIP of 09/293,342 04/16/1999 PAT 6687493
which is a CIP of 09/176,022 10/21/1998 PAT 6061551

**** FOREIGN APPLICATIONS ***************************

**** IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED ****
02/20/2014

Foreign Priority claimed ☐ Yes ☑ No 35 USC 119(a-d) conditions met ☐ Yes ☐ No Verified and Acknowledged /SAM BHATTACHARYA/ Examiner's Signature	☐ Met after Allowance sb Initials	STATE OR COUNTRY	SHEETS DRAWINGS	TOTAL CLAIMS	INDEPENDENT CLAIMS
		FL	284	1	1

ADDRESS

Workman Nydegger
60 East South Temple
Suite 1000
Salt Lake City, UT 84111
UNITED STATES

TITLE

Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships

FILING FEE RECEIVED		
5340	FEES: Authority has been given in Paper No._____ to charge/credit DEPOSIT ACCOUNT No._____ for following:	☐ All Fees ☐ 1.16 Fees (Filing) ☐ 1.17 Fees (Processing Ext. of time) ☐ 1.18 Fees (Issue) ☐ Other _____

BIB (Rev. 05/07).

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
14/172,392	02/04/2014	David F. Sorrells	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2	8448

22913 7590 08/27/2014

Workman Nydegger
60 East South Temple
Suite 1000
Salt Lake City, UT 84111

EXAMINER	
BHATTACHARYA, SAM	
ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
2646	

NOTIFICATION DATE	DELIVERY MODE
08/27/2014	ELECTRONIC

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.

Notice of the Office communication was sent electronically on above-indicated "Notification Date" to the following e-mail address(es):

Docketing@wnlaw.com

Office Action Summary	Application No. 14/172,392	Applicant(s) SORRELLS ET AL.	
	Examiner Sam Bhattacharya	Art Unit 2646	AIA (First Inventor to File) Status No

-- The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address --

Period for Reply

A SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR REPLY IS SET TO EXPIRE 3 MONTHS FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS COMMUNICATION.

- Extensions of time may be available under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a). In no event, however, may a reply be timely filed after SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- If NO period for reply is specified above, the maximum statutory period will apply and will expire SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- Failure to reply within the set or extended period for reply will, by statute, cause the application to become ABANDONED (35 U.S.C. § 133). Any reply received by the Office later than three months after the mailing date of this communication, even if timely filed, may reduce any earned patent term adjustment. See 37 CFR 1.704(b).

Status

1)☐ Responsive to communication(s) filed on _____.

☐ A declaration(s)/affidavit(s) under **37 CFR 1.130(b)** was/were filed on _____.

2a)☐ This action is **FINAL**. 2b)☒ This action is non-final.

3)☐ An election was made by the applicant in response to a restriction requirement set forth during the interview on _____; the restriction requirement and election have been incorporated into this action.

4)☐ Since this application is in condition for allowance except for formal matters, prosecution as to the merits is closed in accordance with the practice under *Ex parte Quayle*, 1935 C.D. 11, 453 O.G. 213.

Disposition of Claims*

5)☒ Claim(s) 1 is/are pending in the application.

5a) Of the above claim(s) _____ is/are withdrawn from consideration.

6)☐ Claim(s) _____ is/are allowed.

7)☒ Claim(s) 1 is/are rejected.

8)☐ Claim(s) _____ is/are objected to.

9)☐ Claim(s) _____ are subject to restriction and/or election requirement.

* If any claims have been determined allowable, you may be eligible to benefit from the **Patent Prosecution Highway** program at a participating intellectual property office for the corresponding application. For more information, please see http://www.uspto.gov/patents/init_events/pph/index.jsp or send an inquiry to PPHfeedback@uspto.gov.

Application Papers

10)☐ The specification is objected to by the Examiner.

11)☒ The drawing(s) filed on 2/4/14 is/are: a)☒ accepted or b)☐ objected to by the Examiner.

Applicant may not request that any objection to the drawing(s) be held in abeyance. See 37 CFR 1.85(a).

Replacement drawing sheet(s) including the correction is required if the drawing(s) is objected to. See 37 CFR 1.121(d).

Priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119

12)☐ Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d) or (f).

Certified copies:

a)☐ All b)☐ Some** c)☐ None of the:

1.☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received.

2.☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received in Application No. _____.

3.☐ Copies of the certified copies of the priority documents have been received in this National Stage application from the International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).

** See the attached detailed Office action for a list of the certified copies not received.

Attachment(s)

1) ☐ Notice of References Cited (PTO-892)

2) ☐ Information Disclosure Statement(s) (PTO/SB/08a and/or PTO/SB/08b) Paper No(s)/Mail Date _____.

3) ☐ Interview Summary (PTO-413) Paper No(s)/Mail Date. _____ .

4) ☐ Other: _____.

1. The present application is being examined under the pre-AIA first to invent provisions.

DETAILED ACTION

Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 102

2. The following is a quotation of the appropriate paragraphs of pre-AIA 35 U.S.C. 102 that form the basis for the rejections under this section made in this Office action:

> A person shall be entitled to a patent unless –
>
> (b) the invention was patented or described in a printed publication in this or a foreign country or in public use or on sale in this country, more than one year prior to the date of application for patent in the United States.

3. Claim 1 is rejected under pre-AIA 35 U.S.C. 102(b) as being anticipated by Arpaia et al. (US 6,192,225).

Regarding claim 1, Arpaia discloses a system for frequency down-converting a modulated carrier signal (FIG. 5), comprising: a first switch, a first aperture signal, and a first energy storage element that down-converts said modulated carrier signal according to a first control signal and outputs a down-converted in-phase signal portion of said modulated carrier signal; a second switch, a second aperture signal, and a second energy storage element that down-converts said modulated carrier signal according to a second control signal and outputs a down-converted inverted in-phase signal portion of said modulated carrier signal (col. 4, lines 21-50); and a first differential amplifier circuit that combines said down-converted in-phase signal portion with said inverted in-phase signal portion and outputs a first channel down-converted differential in-phase signal (col. 5, lines 31-50).

Conclusion

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to Sam Bhattacharya whose telephone number is (571)272-7917. The examiner can normally be reached on Weekdays, 9-5:30.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Lester Kincaid can be reached on (571) 272-7922. The fax phone number for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned is 571-273-8300.

Information regarding the status of an application may be obtained from the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. Status information for published applications may be obtained from either Private PAIR or Public PAIR. Status information for unpublished applications is available through Private PAIR only. For more information about the PAIR system, see http://pair-direct.uspto.gov. Should you have questions on access to the Private PAIR system, contact the Electronic Business Center (EBC) at 866-217-9197 (toll-free). If you would like assistance from a USPTO Customer Service Representative or access to the automated information system, call 800-786-9199 (IN USA OR CANADA) or 571-272-1000.

sb

/Sam Bhattacharya/
Primary Examiner, Art Unit 2646

Index of Claims	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination
	14172392	SORRELLS ET AL.
	Examiner	**Art Unit**
	SAM BHATTACHARYA	2646

✓	Rejected	-	Cancelled	N	Non-Elected	A	Appeal
=	Allowed	÷	Restricted	I	Interference	O	Objected

☐ Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant ☐ CPA ☐ T.D. ☐ R.1.47

CLAIM		DATE								
Final	Original	08/22/2014								
	1	✓								

Search Notes	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination
	14172392	SORRELLS ET AL.
	Examiner	Art Unit
	SAM BHATTACHARYA	2646

CPC- SEARCHED		
Symbol	Date	Examiner

CPC COMBINATION SETS - SEARCHED		
Symbol	Date	Examiner

US CLASSIFICATION SEARCHED			
Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner
455	413,113,118,130,131,182.1,190.1,191.1,313,323,343,350	8/22/2014	sb
327	113	8/22/2014	sb
375	130,142,143,150,152,316,343	8/22/2014	sb

SEARCH NOTES		
Search Notes	Date	Examiner
East	8/22/2014	sb

INTERFERENCE SEARCH			
US Class/ CPC Symbol	US Subclass / CPC Group	Date	Examiner

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
14/172,392	02/04/2014	David F. Sorrells	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

CONFIRMATION NO. 8448

22913
Workman Nydegger
60 East South Temple
Suite 1000
Salt Lake City, UT 84111

PUBLICATION NOTICE

OC000000070447141

Title: Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships

Publication No.US-2014-0241464-A1
Publication Date:08/28/2014

NOTICE OF PUBLICATION OF APPLICATION

The above-identified application will be electronically published as a patent application publication pursuant to 37 CFR 1.211, et seq. The patent application publication number and publication date are set forth above.

The publication may be accessed through the USPTO's publically available Searchable Databases via the Internet at www.uspto.gov. The direct link to access the publication is currently http://www.uspto.gov/patft/.

The publication process established by the Office does not provide for mailing a copy of the publication to applicant. A copy of the publication may be obtained from the Office upon payment of the appropriate fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.19(a)(1). Orders for copies of patent application publications are handled by the USPTO's Office of Public Records. The Office of Public Records can be reached by telephone at (703) 308-9726 or (800) 972-6382, by facsimile at (703) 305-8759, by mail addressed to the United States Patent and Trademark Office, Office of Public Records, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 or via the Internet.

In addition, information on the status of the application, including the mailing date of Office actions and the dates of receipt of correspondence filed in the Office, may also be accessed via the Internet through the Patent Electronic Business Center at www.uspto.gov using the public side of the Patent Application Information and Retrieval (PAIR) system. The direct link to access this status information is currently http://pair.uspto.gov/. Prior to publication, such status information is confidential and may only be obtained by applicant using the private side of PAIR.

Further assistance in electronically accessing the publication, or about PAIR, is available by calling the Patent Electronic Business Center at 1-866-217-9197.

Office of Data Managment, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101

PTO/AIA/96 (08-12)
Approved for use through 01/31/2013. OMB 0651-0031
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

STATEMENT UNDER 37 CFR 3.73(c)

Applicant/Patent Owner: David F. Sorrells, et al.

Application No./Patent No.: 14/172,392 Filed/Issue Date: February 4, 2014

Titled: Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships

ParkerVision, Inc., a Corporation

(Name of Assignee) (Type of Assignee, e.g., corporation, partnership, university, government agency, etc.)

states that, for the patent application/patent identified above, it is (choose **one** of options 1, 2, 3 or 4 below):

1. ☑ The assignee of the entire right, title, and interest.

2. ☐ An assignee of less than the entire right, title, and interest (check applicable box):

   ☐ The extent (by percentage) of its ownership interest is _____%. Additional Statement(s) by the owners holding the balance of the interest must be submitted to account for 100% of the ownership interest.

   ☐ There are unspecified percentages of ownership. The other parties, including inventors, who together own the entire right, title and interest are:

   Additional Statement(s) by the owner(s) holding the balance of the interest must be submitted to account for the entire right, title, and interest.

3. ☐ The assignee of an undivided interest in the entirety (a complete assignment from one of the joint inventors was made). The other parties, including inventors, who together own the entire right, title, and interest are:

   Additional Statement(s) by the owner(s) holding the balance of the interest must be submitted to account for the entire right, title, and interest.

4. ☐ The recipient, via a court proceeding or the like (*e.g.*, bankruptcy, probate), of an undivided interest in the entirety (a complete transfer of ownership interest was made). The certified document(s) showing the transfer is attached.

The interest identified in option 1, 2 or 3 above (not option 4) is evidenced by either (choose **one** of options A or B below):

A. ☑ An assignment from the inventor(s) of the patent application/patent identified above. The assignment was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at Reel 011099, Frame 0249, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

B. ☐ A chain of title from the inventor(s), of the patent application/patent identified above, to the current assignee as follows:

   1. From: _____ To: _____

      The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

      Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

   2. From: _____ To: _____

      The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

      Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 3.73(b). The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450**.

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

PTO/AIA/96 (08-12)
Approved for use through 01/31/2013. OMB 0651-0031
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

STATEMENT UNDER 37 CFR 3.73(c)

3. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

4. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

5. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

6. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

☐ Additional documents in the chain of title are listed on a supplemental sheet(s).

☑ As required by 37 CFR 3.73(c)(1)(i), the documentary evidence of the chain of title from the original owner to the assignee was, or concurrently is being, submitted for recordation pursuant to 37 CFR 3.11.

[NOTE: A separate copy (i.e., a true copy of the original assignment document(s)) must be submitted to Assignment Division in accordance with 37 CFR Part 3, to record the assignment in the records of the USPTO. See MPEP 302.08]

The undersigned (whose title is supplied below) is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee.

/Rick D. Nydegger/	February 27, 2015
Signature	Date
Rick D. Nydegger	28651
Printed or Typed Name	Title or Registration Number

[Page 2 of 2]

FILED ELECTRONICALLY

PATENT APPLICATION
Docket No. 19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re application of:	David F. Sorrells et al.	
Serial No.:	14/172,392	Art Unit 2646
Confirmation No.:	8448	
Filed:	February 4, 2014	
For:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships	
Examiner:	Sam Bhattacharya	
Customer No.:	22913	

TRANSMITTAL FOR AMENDMENT "A"

VIA eFILE AMENDMENT
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Dear Sir:

Transmitted herewith is an Amendment "A" and Response for entry in the above-identified application.

X To render the transmitted Amendment "A" and Response timely filed enclosed are the following:

X Petition for 3 Month Extension of Time with $1400.00 Petition fees.

The fee has been calculated as follows:

			SMALL ENTITY		LARGE ENTITY	
CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER	**HIGHEST NO. PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR**	**PRESENT EXTRA**	**RATE**	**ADDT'L FEE**	**RATE**	**ADDT'L FEE**
36	20	16	X		X $80.00	1280.00
INDEPENDENT 1	MINUS 3	= 0	X		X $420.00	00.00
1st PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM			+_____=		+_____=	
			TOTAL		**TOTAL**	1280.00

X Payment in the amount of $2680.00 using the Credit Card payment option in E-Filer will be used to cover the payment of the extra claims fees with respect to this Amendment and Petition for Extension of Time fees.

X The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge payment of any of the following fees that may be applicable to this communication, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account No. 23-3178: (1) any filing fees required under 37 CFR § 1.16; and/or (2) any patent application and reexamination processing fees under 37 CFR § 1.17; and/or (3) any post issuance fees under 37 CFR § 1.20. In addition, if any additional extension of time is required, which has not otherwise been requested, please consider this a petition therefore and charge any additional fees that may be required to Deposit Account No. 23-3178.

Dated this 27th day of February, 2015.

Respectfully submitted,



RICK D. NYDEGGER
Registration No. 28,651
Attorney for Applicant
Customer No. 22913

RDN:re
4998667_1

PTO/AIA/22 (03-13)
Approved for use through 7/31/2016. OMB 0651-0031
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

PETITION FOR EXTENSION OF TIME UNDER 37 CFR 1.136(a)	Docket Number (Optional) 19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
Application Number 14/172392	Filed February 4, 2014
For Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Tranforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships	
Art Unit 2646	Examiner Sam Bhattacharya

This is a request under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a) to extend the period for filing a reply in the above-identified application.

The requested extension and fee are as follows (check time period desired and enter the appropriate fee below):

		Fee	Small Entity Fee	Micro Entity Fee	
☐	One month (37 CFR 1.17(a)(1))	$200	$100	$50	$
☐	Two months (37 CFR 1.17(a)(2))	$600	$300	$150	$
☑	Three months (37 CFR 1.17(a)(3))	$1,400	$700	$350	$ 1400.00
☐	Four months (37 CFR 1.17(a)(4))	$2,200	$1,100	$550	$
☐	Five months (37 CFR 1.17(a)(5))	$3,000	$1,500	$750	$

☐ Applicant asserts small entity status. See 37 CFR 1.27.

☐ Applicant certifies micro entity status. See 37 CFR 1.29.
Form PTO/SB/15A or B or equivalent must either be enclosed or have been submitted previously.

☐ A check in the amount of the fee is enclosed.

☐ Payment by credit card. Form PTO-2038 is attached.

☐ The Director has already been authorized to charge fees in this application to a Deposit Account.

☑ The Director is hereby authorized to charge any fees which may be required, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account Number 23-3178.

☑ Payment made via EFS-Web.

WARNING: Information on this form may become public. Credit card information should not be included on this form. Provide credit card information and authorization on PTO-2038.

I am the

☐ applicant.

☑ attorney or agent of record. Registration number 28,651.

☐ attorney or agent acting under 37 CFR 1.34. Registration number _____.

/Rick D. Nydegger/	February 27, 2015
Signature	Date
Rick D. Nydegger	801-533-9800
Typed or printed name	Telephone Number

NOTE: This form must be signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.33. See 37 CFR 1.4 for signature requirements and certifications. Submit multiple forms if more than one signature is required, see below*.

☐ * Total of _____ forms are submitted.

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.136(a). The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public, which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 6 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Mail Stop PCT, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

Privacy Act Statement

The **Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579)** requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether disclosure of these records is required by the Freedom of Information Act.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (*i.e.*, GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspection or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt	
EFS ID:	21608000
Application Number:	14172392
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	8448
Title of Invention:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	David F. Sorrells
Customer Number:	22913
Filer:	Rick D. Nydegger/Ralene Eller
Filer Authorized By:	Rick D. Nydegger
Attorney Docket Number:	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
Receipt Date:	27-FEB-2015
Filing Date:	04-FEB-2014
Time Stamp:	14:05:16
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	Credit Card
Payment was successfully received in RAM	$2680
RAM confirmation Number	185
Deposit Account	233178
Authorized User	NYDEGGER, RICK D.
The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows: Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.17 (Patent application and reexamination processing fees)	

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.19 (Document supply fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.20 (Post Issuance fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.21 (Miscellaneous fees and charges)

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Transmittal Letter	19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2015-02-27_Transmittal-AmendmentA2.pdf	117656 e7344da0b6ebea1c02f3b1f96bc2274abdc7e57c	no	2
Warnings:					
Information:					
2	Extension of Time	19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2015-02-27_Extension-of-Time.pdf	163285 b4e66e2f8423729c512fe99e363ce9430067a1d7	no	2
Warnings:					
Information:					
3	Oath or Declaration filed	19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2015-02-27_Decs-MWR-GSR-DFS-CDM.pdf	253525 43d2a8de8ab748eefb612e029698e503e7c5ec23	no	4
Warnings:					
Information:					
4		19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2015-02-27_AmendmentA.pdf	279405 7ce5c124d6b218ce809a88ded44a18e0291b696b	yes	13

Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description

Document Description	Start	End
Amendment/Req. Reconsideration-After Non-Final Reject	1	1
Claims	2	9
Applicant Arguments/Remarks Made in an Amendment	10	13

Warnings:					
Information:					
5		19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2015-02-27_POA.pdf	104170 6b645e888a0775c6ded3dc4944dcccd29df28e05	yes	3

Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description

Document Description	Start	End
Power of Attorney	1	1

	Assignee showing of ownership per 37 CFR 3.73.		2	3	
Warnings:					
Information:					
6	Fee Worksheet (SB06)	fee-info.pdf	32521 80c95829f98af57105b759b6b98b37c41fc85f78	no	2
Warnings:					
Information:					
		Total Files Size (in bytes):	950562		

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111
If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371
If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office
If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal

Application Number:	14172392
Filing Date:	04-Feb-2014
Title of Invention:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	David F. Sorrells
Filer:	Rick D. Nydegger/Ralene Eller
Attorney Docket Number:	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

Filed as Large Entity

Filing Fees for Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD($)
Basic Filing:				
Pages:				
Claims:				
Claims in Excess of 20	1202	16	80	1280
Miscellaneous-Filing:				
Petition:				
Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:				
Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:				

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD($)
Extension-of-Time:				
Extension - 3 months with $0 paid	1253	1	1400	1400
Miscellaneous:				
		Total in USD ($)		**2680**

Doc Code: PA..
Document Description: Power of Attorney

PTO/AIA/82A (07-13)
Approved for use through 11/30/2014. OMB 0651-0051
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

TRANSMITTAL FOR POWER OF ATTORNEY TO ONE OR MORE REGISTERED PRACTITIONERS

NOTE: This form is to be submitted with the Power of Attorney by Applicant form (PTO/AIA/82B) to identify the application to which the Power of Attorney is directed, in accordance with 37 CFR 1.5, unless the application number and filing date are identified in the Power of Attorney by Applicant form. If neither form PTO/AIA/82A nor form PTO/AIA82B identifies the application to which the Power of Attorney is directed, the Power of Attorney will not be recognized in the application.

Application Number	14/172,392
Filing Date	February 4, 2014
First Named Inventor	David F. Sorrells
Title	METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR DOWN-CONVERTING AN ELECTROMAGNETIC SIGNAL, AND TRANSFORMS FOR SAME, AND APERTURE RELATIONSHIPS
Art Unit	2646
Examiner Name	Sam Bhattacharya
Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

SIGNATURE of Applicant or Patent Practitioner

Signature	/Rick D. Nydegger/	Date (Optional)	February 27, 2015
Name	Rick D. Nydegger	Registration Number	28651
Title (if Applicant is a juristic entity)			
Applicant Name (if Applicant is a juristic entity)			

NOTE: This form must be signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.33. See 37 CFR 1.4(d) for signature requirements and certifications. If more than one applicant, use multiple forms.

☐ *Total of _____ forms are submitted.

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.131, 1.32, and 1.33. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 3 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

PTO/AIA/01 (05-12)
Approved for use through 01/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION (37 CFR 1.63) FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN APPLICATION USING AN APPLICATION DATA SHEET (37 CFR 1.76)

Title of Invention	METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR DOWN-CONVERTING AN ELECTROMAGNETIC SIGNAL, AND TRANSFORMS FOR SAME, AND APERTURE RELATIONSHIPS

As the below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

This declaration is directed to:

☐ The attached application, or

☒ United States application or PCT international application number 14/172,392 filed on February 4, 2014.

The above-identified application was made or authorized to be made by me.

I believe that I am the original inventor or an original joint inventor of a claimed invention in the application.

I hereby acknowledge that any willful false statement made in this declaration is punishable under 18 U.S.C. 1001 by fine or imprisonment of not more than five (5) years, or both.

WARNING:

Petitioner/applicant is cautioned to avoid submitting personal information in documents filed in a patent application that may contribute to identity theft. Personal information such as social security numbers, bank account numbers, or credit card numbers (other than a check or credit card authorization form PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes) is never required by the USPTO to support a petition or an application. If this type of personal information is included in documents submitted to the USPTO, petitioners/applicants should consider redacting such personal information from the documents before submitting them to the USPTO. Petitioner/applicant is advised that the record of a patent application is available to the public after publication of the application (unless a non-publication request in compliance with 37 CFR 1.213(a) is made in the application) or issuance of a patent. Furthermore, the record from an abandoned application may also be available to the public if the application is referenced in a published application or an issued patent (see 37 CFR 1.14). Checks and credit card authorization forms PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes are not retained in the application file and therefore are not publicly available.

LEGAL NAME OF INVENTOR

Inventor: _____ Date (Optional): _____

Signature: Michael W. Rawlins

Note: An application data sheet (PTO/SB/14 or equivalent), including naming the entire inventive entity, must accompany this form or must have been previously filed. Use an additional PTO/AIA/01 form for each additional inventor.

This collection of information is required by 35 U.S.C. 115 and 37 CFR 1.63. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 minute to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

PTO/AIA/01 (06-12)
Approved for use through 01/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION (37 CFR 1.63) FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN APPLICATION USING AN APPLICATION DATA SHEET (37 CFR 1.76)

Title of Invention	METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR DOWN-CONVERTING AN ELECTROMAGNETIC SIGNAL, AND TRANSFORMS FOR SAME, AND APERTURE RELATIONSHIPS

As the below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

This declaration is directed to:

☐ The attached application, or

☒ United States application or PCT international application number 14/172,392 filed on February 4, 2014.

The above-identified application was made or authorized to be made by me.

I believe that I am the original inventor or an original joint inventor of a claimed invention in the application.

I hereby acknowledge that any willful false statement made in this declaration is punishable under 18 U.S.C. 1001 by fine or imprisonment of not more than five (5) years, or both.

WARNING:

Petitioner/applicant is cautioned to avoid submitting personal information in documents filed in a patent application that may contribute to identity theft. Personal information such as social security numbers, bank account numbers, or credit card numbers (other than a check or credit card authorization form PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes) is never required by the USPTO to support a petition or an application. If this type of personal information is included in documents submitted to the USPTO, petitioners/applicants should consider redacting such personal information from the documents before submitting them to the USPTO. Petitioner/applicant is advised that the record of a patent application is available to the public after publication of the application (unless a non-publication request in compliance with 37 CFR 1.213(a) is made in the application) or issuance of a patent. Furthermore, the record from an abandoned application may also be available to the public if the application is referenced in a published application or an issued patent (see 37 CFR 1.14). Checks and credit card authorization forms PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes are not retained in the application file and therefore are not publicly available.

LEGAL NAME OF INVENTOR

Inventor: David F. Sorrells Date (Optional): 2/18/2015

Signature: David F. Sorrells

Note: An application data sheet (PTO/SB/14 or equivalent), including naming the entire inventive entity, must accompany this form or must have been previously filed. Use an additional PTO/AIA/01 form for each additional inventor.

This collection of information is required by 35 U.S.C. 115 and 37 CFR 1.63. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 minute to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

PTO/AIA/01 (06-12)
Approved for use through 01/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION (37 CFR 1.63) FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN APPLICATION USING AN APPLICATION DATA SHEET (37 CFR 1.76)

Title of Invention	METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR DOWN-CONVERTING AN ELECTROMAGNETIC SIGNAL, AND TRANSFORMS FOR SAME, AND APERTURE RELATIONSHIPS

As the below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

This declaration is directed to:

☐ The attached application, or

☒ United States application or PCT international application number 14/172,392 filed on February 4, 2014.

The above-identified application was made or authorized to be made by me.

I believe that I am the original inventor or an original joint inventor of a claimed invention in the application.

I hereby acknowledge that any willful false statement made in this declaration is punishable under 18 U.S.C. 1001 by fine or imprisonment of not more than five (5) years, or both.

WARNING:

Petitioner/applicant is cautioned to avoid submitting personal information in documents filed in a patent application that may contribute to identity theft. Personal information such as social security numbers, bank account numbers, or credit card numbers (other than a check or credit card authorization form PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes) is never required by the USPTO to support a petition or an application. If this type of personal information is included in documents submitted to the USPTO, petitioners/applicants should consider redacting such personal information from the documents before submitting them to the USPTO. Petitioner/applicant is advised that the record of a patent application is available to the public after publication of the application (unless a non-publication request in compliance with 37 CFR 1.213(a) is made in the application) or issuance of a patent. Furthermore, the record from an abandoned application may also be available to the public if the application is referenced in a published application or an issued patent (see 37 CFR 1.14). Checks and credit card authorization forms PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes are not retained in the application file and therefore are not publicly available.

LEGAL NAME OF INVENTOR

Inventor: Charlie D. Moses Date (Optional): Feb 20, 2014

Signature: Charley D. Moses

Note: An application data sheet (PTO/SB/14 or equivalent), including naming the entire inventive entity, must accompany this form or must have been previously filed. Use an additional PTO/AIA/01 form for each additional inventor.

This collection of information is required by 35 U.S.C. 115 and 37 CFR 1.63. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 minute to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

PTO/AIA/01 (06-12)
Approved for use through 01/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION (37 CFR 1.63) FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN APPLICATION USING AN APPLICATION DATA SHEET (37 CFR 1.76)

Title of Invention	METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR DOWN-CONVERTING AN ELECTROMAGNETIC SIGNAL, AND TRANSFORMS FOR SAME, AND APERTURE RELATIONSHIPS

As the below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

This declaration is directed to:

☐ The attached application, or

☒ United States application or PCT international application number 14/172,392 filed on February 4, 2014.

The above-identified application was made or authorized to be made by me.

I believe that I am the original inventor or an original joint inventor of a claimed invention in the application.

I hereby acknowledge that any willful false statement made in this declaration is punishable under 18 U.S.C. 1001 by fine or imprisonment of not more than five (5) years, or both.

WARNING:

Petitioner/applicant is cautioned to avoid submitting personal information in documents filed in a patent application that may contribute to identity theft. Personal information such as social security numbers, bank account numbers, or credit card numbers (other than a check or credit card authorization form PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes) is never required by the USPTO to support a petition or an application. If this type of personal information is included in documents submitted to the USPTO, petitioners/applicants should consider redacting such personal information from the documents before submitting them to the USPTO. Petitioner/applicant is advised that the record of a patent application is available to the public after publication of the application (unless a non-publication request in compliance with 37 CFR 1.213(a) is made in the application) or issuance of a patent. Furthermore, the record from an abandoned application may also be available to the public if the application is referenced in a published application or an issued patent (see 37 CFR 1.14). Checks and credit card authorization forms PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes are not retained in the application file and therefore are not publicly available.

LEGAL NAME OF INVENTOR

Inventor: _____ Date (Optional) : _____

Signature: Gregory S. Rawlins

Note: An application data sheet (PTO/SB/14 or equivalent), including naming the entire inventive entity, must accompany this form or must have been previously filed. Use an additional PTO/AIA/01 form for each additional inventor.

This collection of information is required by 35 U.S.C. 115 and 37 CFR 1.63. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 minute to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

PCT WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 6 : H04B 1/707, H04J 13/00, 13/04 — A2

(11) International Publication Number: **WO 97/22185**

(43) International Publication Date: 19 June 1997 (19.06.97)

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US96/20023

(22) International Filing Date: 10 December 1996 (10.12.96)

(30) Priority Data:
08/570,431 11 December 1995 (11.12.95) US

(71) Applicant: ERICSSON INC. [US/US]; 7001 Development Drive, P.O. Box 13969, Research Triangle Park, NC 27709 (US).

(72) Inventor: DENT, Paul, W.; Prästgård, S-240 36 Stehags (SE).

(74) Agents: GRUDZIECKI, Ronald, L. et al.; Burns, Doane, Swecker & Mathis, L.L.P., P.O. Box 1404, Alexandria, VA 22313-1404 (US).

(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, HU, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, ARIPO patent (KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published
Without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report.

(54) Title: RE-ORTHOGONALIZATION OF WIDEBAND CDMA SIGNALS

(57) Abstract

A method and receiver which provides, among other features, for resubtraction of an already subtracted signal in order to eliminate subtraction errors, termed re-orthogonalization, is described herein. According to exemplary embodiments, pairwise combinations of spreading codes are used to despread received composite signals. For example, these pairwise combinations can include a first spreading code associated with a signal that has already been subtracted and a second spreading code associated with a signal which is weaker than that associated with the first spreading code. In this way both resubtraction and subtraction are performed at the same time.

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AM	Armenia	**GB**	United Kingdom	**MW**	Malawi
AT	Austria	**GE**	Georgia	**MX**	Mexico
AU	Australia	**GN**	Guinea	**NE**	Niger
BB	Barbados	**GR**	Greece	**NL**	Netherlands
BE	Belgium	**HU**	Hungary	**NO**	Norway
BF	Burkina Faso	**IE**	Ireland	**NZ**	New Zealand
BG	Bulgaria	**IT**	Italy	**PL**	Poland
BJ	Benin	**JP**	Japan	**PT**	Portugal
BR	Brazil	**KE**	Kenya	**RO**	Romania
BY	Belarus	**KG**	Kyrgystan	**RU**	Russian Federation
CA	Canada	**KP**	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	**SD**	Sudan
CF	Central African Republic			**SE**	Sweden
CG	Congo	**KR**	Republic of Korea	**SG**	Singapore
CH	Switzerland	**KZ**	Kazakhstan	**SI**	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	**LI**	Liechtenstein	**SK**	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	**LK**	Sri Lanka	**SN**	Senegal
CN	China	**LR**	Liberia	**SZ**	Swaziland
CS	Czechoslovakia	**LT**	Lithuania	**TD**	Chad
CZ	Czech Republic	**LU**	Luxembourg	**TG**	Togo
DE	Germany	**LV**	Latvia	**TJ**	Tajikistan
DK	Denmark	**MC**	Monaco	**TT**	Trinidad and Tobago
EE	Estonia	**MD**	Republic of Moldova	**UA**	Ukraine
ES	Spain	**MG**	Madagascar	**UG**	Uganda
FI	Finland	**ML**	Mali	**US**	United States of America
FR	France	**MN**	Mongolia	**UZ**	Uzbekistan
GA	Gabon	**MR**	Mauritania	**VN**	Viet Nam

RE-ORTHOGONALIZATION OF WIDEBAND CDMA SIGNALS

BACKGROUND

The present invention relates generally to radiocommunication systems and, more particularly, to signal processing techniques in spread spectrum radiocommunication systems.

CDMA and spread spectrum communications have been around since the days of World War II. Early applications were predominantly military oriented. However, today there has been an increasing interest in using spread spectrum systems in commercial applications, including digital cellular radio, land mobile radio, and indoor and outdoor personal communication networks.

The cellular telephone industry has made phenomenal strides in commercial operations in the United States as well as the rest of the world. Growth in major metropolitan areas has far exceeded expectations and is outstripping system capacity. If this trend continues, the effects of rapid growth will soon reach even the smallest markets. Innovative solutions are required to meet these increasing capacity needs as well as maintain high quality service and avoid rising prices.

Throughout the world, one important step in cellular systems is to change from analog to digital transmission. Equally important is the choice of an effective digital transmission scheme for implementing the next generation cellular technology. Furthermore, it is widely believed that the first generation of Personal Communication Networks (PCNs), employing low cost, pocket-size, cordless telephones that can be carried comfortably and used to make or receive calls in the home, office, street, car, etc., will be provided by cellular carriers using the next generation digital cellular system infrastructure. The key feature demanded in these new systems is increased traffic capacity.

Currently, channel access is achieved using Frequency Division Multiple Access (FDMA) and Time Division Multiple Access (TDMA) methods. In FDMA, a communication channel is a single radio frequency band into which a

signal's transmission power is concentrated. System capacity is limited by the available frequencies as well as by limitations imposed by channel reuse. In TDMA systems, a channel consists of a time slot in a periodic train of time intervals over the same frequency. System capacity is limited by the available time slots as well as by limitations imposed on channel reuse.

With FDMA or TDMA or hybrid FDMA/TDMA systems, the goal is to ensure that two potentially interfering signals do not occupy the same frequency at the same time. In contrast, Code Division Multiple Access (CDMA) allows signals to overlap in both time and frequency. Thus, all CDMA signals share the same frequency spectrum. In the frequency or the time domain, the multiple access signals appear to overlap one another.

There are a number of advantages associated with CDMA communication techniques. The capacity limits of CDMA-based cellular systems are projected to be up to twenty times that of existing analog technology as a result of the properties of a wide band CDMA system, such as improved coding gain/modulation density, voice activity gating, sectorization and reuse of the same spectrum in every cell. CDMA transmission of voice by a high bit rate decoder ensures superior, realistic voice quality. CDMA also provides for variable data rates allowing many different grades of voice quality to be offered. The scrambled signal format of CDMA completely eliminates cross talk and makes it very difficult and costly to eavesdrop or track calls, ensuring greater privacy for callers and greater immunity from air time fraud.

In a "traditional" direct-sequence CDMA system, the informational data stream to be transmitted is impressed upon a much higher rate data stream known as a signature sequence to generate a transmitted sequence. The informational data stream and the high bit rate signature sequence stream are combined by effectively multiplying the two bit streams together, assuming the binary values of the two bit streams are represented by +1 or -1. The informational data stream may consist of M'ary complex symbol values instead of binary +1 or -1 values. This combination of the higher bit rate signal with

the lower bit rate data stream is called coding or spreading the informational data stream signal. Each informational data stream or channel is allocated a unique signature sequence.

Typically, the signature sequence data are binary, giving rise to stream of bits referred to as "chips." One way to generate this signature sequence is with a pseudo-noise (PN) process that appears random, but can be replicated by an authorized receiver. It is common for the period of the signature sequence to occupy one data symbol period, so that each data symbol is spread by the same Nc-chip signature sequence. A randomizing code sequence with a very long period may be added on top of this. In general, this signature sequence may be represented by real and imaginary numbers, corresponding to sending a chip value on the carrier frequency (I channel) or on a 90-degree shifted version of the carrier frequency (Q channel). Also, the signature sequence may be a composite of two sequences, where one of these sequences is a Walsh-Hadamard code word.

Typically the data symbols are binary. Thus, transmission of the signature sequence or its inverse represents one bit of information. In general, to send information symbol b using signature sequence s(n), one transmits

$$t(n) = b\, s(n) \qquad (1)$$

The receiver correlates the received signal with the known signature sequence to produce a detection statistic, which is used to detect b. For binary information symbols, when a large positive correlation results, a "0" is detected; when a large negative correlation results, a "1" is detected.

A plurality of coded information signals modulate a radio frequency carrier, for example by phase shift keying (PSK), and are jointly received as a composite signal at the receiver. Each of the spread signals overlaps all of the other spread signals, as well as noise-related signals, in both frequency and time. If the receiver is authorized, then the composite signal is correlated with one of

the unique signature sequences, and the corresponding information signal can be isolated and decoded.

In the above example, a data symbol b directly modulates a signature sequence s(n), which is commonly referred to as coherent modulation. The data symbol can be binary (+1 or -1), quaternary (+1, +j, -1, -j), or, in general, M'ary, taking on any of M possible values. This allows $\log_2(M)$ information bits to be represented by one information symbol b. In another traditional CDMA modulation scheme, the information is contained in how b changes from one symbol to the next, this being referred to as differentially coherent modulation. In this case, the true information is usually given by b(t) b*(t-Ts), where * denotes complex conjugation, t is a time index, and Ts is the information symbol period. In yet another traditional CDMA modulation scheme, sometimes referred to as noncoherent modulation, an M'ary information symbol is conveyed by transmitting one of M different signature sequences.

Another CDMA technique, called "enhanced CDMA", also allows each transmitted sequence to represent more than one bit of information. A set of code words, typically orthogonal code words or bi-orthogonal code words, is used to code a group of information bits into a much longer code sequence or code symbol. A signature sequence is used to scramble the binary code sequence before transmission. This can be done by modulo-2 addition of the two binary sequences. At the receiver, the known scramble mask is used to descramble the received signal, which is then correlated to all possible code words. The code word with the largest correlation value indicates which code word was most likely sent, indicating which information bits were most likely sent. One common orthogonal code is the Walsh-Hadamard (WH) code. Enhanced CDMA can be viewed as a special case of noncoherent modulation.

In both traditional and enhanced CDMA, the "information bits" or "information symbols" referred to above can also be coded bits or symbols, where the code used is a block or convolutional code. One or more information bits can form a data symbol. Also, the signature sequence or scramble mask can

be much longer than a single code sequence, in which case a subsequence of the signature sequence or scramble mask is added to the code sequence.

In many radio communication systems, the received signal includes two components: an I (in-phase) component and a Q (quadrature) component. This results because the transmitted signal has two components, and/or the intervening channel or lack of coherent carrier reference causes the transmitted signal to be divided into I and Q components. In a typical receiver using digital signal processing, the received I and Q component signals are sampled every Tc seconds, where Tc is the duration of a chip, and stored.

U.S. Patents Nos. 5,151,919 and 5,218,619 to Paul W. Dent describe a CDMA system which allows several subscribers to communicate on the same radio frequency with a base station, which patents are incorporated here by reference. Unlike more traditional CDMA systems, interference is prevented in these patented systems by, for example, decoding signals successively in strength order from strongest to weakest, and subtracting the decoded signals from the received composite signal after decoding.

The exemplary implementations described in the foregoing incorporated patents use digital signal processing for descrambling a signal by use of its known scrambling code, transforming the signal to the spectral domain, and then notching out the spectral component associated with that signal. After notching, the remaining, non-zero components represent the transform of the other signals which have been descrambled with the first signal's code. The remainder is then transformed back to the waveform domain and the descrambling code re-applied to restore the signals to their original domain with one of them now subtracted.

In U.S. Patent No. 5,218,619, it is disclosed that imperfect signal subtraction caused by errors in the amount of signal subtracted due to interference from other, weaker, overlapping signals may be eliminated by subtracting an already subtracted signal again in suitable amount, after having subtracted some of said other signals. This resubtraction process, referred to as reorthogonalization, can be performed by digital signal processors. However,

this technique has the characteristic that the amount of processing increases with at least the fourth power of the spectrum bandwidth, making this technique costly for wideband signals.

SUMMARY

A different method and receiver which provide, among other features, for resubtraction of an already subtracted signal in order to eliminate subtraction errors, termed re-orthogonalization, and which can be optimized for wideband operations, are described herein. According to exemplary embodiments, pairwise combinations of spreading codes are used to despread received composite signals. For example, these pairwise combinations can include a first spreading code associated with a signal that has already been subtracted and a second spreading code associated with a signal which is weaker than that associated with the first spreading code. In this way both resubtraction and subtraction are performed at the same time. According to another exemplary embodiment, signal echos can also be subtracted by despreading using a time shifted version of the spreading code.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

The foregoing, and other, objects, features and advantages of the present invention will be more readily understood upon reading the following detailed description in conjunction with the drawings in which:

Figure 1 is a block diagram illustrating a CDMA receiver according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

Figure 2a is a block diagram illustrating re-orthogonalization at an intermediate frequency according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

Figure 2b is a block diagram illustrating re-orthogonalization at an intermediate frequency according to another exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

Figure 3 is a block diagram of an exemplary high-pass filtering embodiment according to the present invention;

Figure 4 is a block diagram illustrating removal of delayed signals rays according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention; and

Figure 5 is a block diagram illustrating monitoring and processing of rays according to another exemplary embodiment of the present invention.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

Figure 1 shows a block diagram of a subtractive CDMA receiver according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention. An antenna 10 receives a composite of overlapping CDMA communications signals using the same radio frequency. The composite signal is filtered in filter 11 to remove out-of-band interference, amplified by low noise amplifier 12 and then filtered again using filter 13 to remove image noise. The resultant signal can then be converted to a suitable intermediate frequency by heterodyne mixing in mixer 14 with a signal from local oscillator signal 15, which can be a programmable frequency synthesizer, to select any of several CDMA channels. The intermediate frequency signal is further filtered in IF filters 16 and 18 and amplified in amplifiers 17 and 19 in order to remove signals at other CDMA channel frequencies and to raise the signal to a convenient level. It will be appreciated by those skilled in the art that the foregoing description is that of a single superheterodyne receiver. However, it should be recognized that this type of receiver is used purely as an illustration. For example, a double superheterodyne receiver employing two frequency downconversions to the final intermediate frequency could equally be used or as will be further described, a so-called homodyne receiver can be employed in which a direct conversion from the received frequency at the antenna to a baseband frequency quadrature signal takes place.

In Figure 1, the last stage of conversion using quadrature local oscillator 22, quadrature mixers 20,21 and optional low-pass filters 23,24 is a homodyne

conversion, resulting in CDMA signals I and Q. The I and Q signals represent the original composite signal but frequency-translated down to around DC or zero frequency.

A common problem with homodyne receivers is that spurious DC offset components from the quadrature mixers 20 and 21 can be much stronger than the wanted signal, hindering detection of that signal. This problem is addressed in U.S. Patent No. 5,241,702 entitled "DC Offset Compensation" to Paul W. Dent which disclosure is incorporated here by reference. This patent utilizes differentiation of the I,Q signals to remove unwanted DC components, but may also remove wanted DC or low-frequency components of the signal. By utilizing known characteristics of what the total wanted signal waveform should look like however, the wanted components which have been unintentionally removed can be restored. This principle can be adapted to the subtractive CDMA receiver of Figure 1 to obtain advantageous characteristics. The I,Q components of the strongest signal in the composite signal are first descrambled using the a *priori* information of that signal's scrambling (i.e., spreading) code. For example, this *a priori* information can be used to program code generator 33 to generate a replica C1 of the spreading code associated with the strongest signal. This code replica is applied to balanced mixers 25 and 26 to produce despread I,Q signals at their outputs. Spurious DC offset from homodyne downconvertors 20 and 21 now appears as a component that is spread using the strongest signal's spreading code. It will be recognized by those skilled in the art that mixers 25 and 26 can be implemented in a number of ways including, for example, diode ring mixers, transistor Gilbert cells, phase reversing switches and the like.

The DC offset from homodyne downconvertors 20 and 21 can also be prevented from producing a spurious code component from I,Q despreaders 25 and 26 by including a high pass filter element in filters 23 and 24. The high pass filter removes DC offset components but only insignificantly affects the wideband composite CDMA signal reaching despreaders 25 and 26.

The signal despread with code C1 comprises a narrow spectral component (i.e., despread signal number 1) plus the rest of the composite signal still in wideband spread form. The other signals in the composite remain spread since code C1 is not correlated to their spreading codes. In fact the second strongest signal, which was originally spread with code C2, is at this point spread with a modulo-2 combination of C1 and C2.

The first despread signal can now be extracted from the outputs of despreaders 25 and 26 and further processed to extract information. This extracted information could, for example, take the form of digital data, digitized speech, analog FM or single-sideband speech modulation. Digital signals are preferred, as they lend themselves to other advantageous processing such as error correction coding and enciphering. Single-sideband, however, has the advantage that a significant self-interference reduction is realized due to the mean power in a speech signal being much less than its peak power. In a digital speech system, this advantage is limited to a factor of about two, which is obtained by turning off the transmission of the temporarily quiet party in a two-way conversation.

The first despread signal is then removed from the outputs of despreaders 25 and 26 by high-pass filters 27 and 28. The high pass filters are tailored to suppress the narrowband despread signal in the same way as filters 23 and 24 can be tailored to suppress the homodyne offset, while leaving the remaining, non-despread signals largely unaffected. The I,Q remainder signals from filters 27 and 28 can now be respread with the code C1 prior to despreading with the code C2. Moreover, these two steps can be performed at the same time by despreading the remainder with C1+C2, which is generated by the code generator 33 using a-priori knowledge of the codes of both the first (strongest) and second (second strongest) signals as well as their relative timing. Despreading with C1+C2, where the symbol "+" here means modulo-2 (bitwise) addition, results in the second signal appearing in narrowband, despread form at the output of despreaders 29 and 30. This narrowband signal can be extracted for I,Q processing to demodulate and decode information, and can also

be removed by high-pass filters 31 and 32 prior to despreading with C2+C3 and so forth until either all signals have been decoded or until a desired signal has been reached and decoded. In this way, a desired signal can lie well under the signal strength of the strongest signal and still be readable.

Two sources of subtraction imperfections can limit how far below the strongest signal a desired signal can still be read. Firstly, time-dispersion, that is delayed echos of a signal, add components that do not become despread using codes such as C1 or C2, because the echos are shifted one or more chips in time and then do not correlate perfectly their associated spreading code. The echos are then unsubtracted. To compensate for unsubtracted echos, the second stage of subtraction using code C2 can be carried out using a C2 code that is a time-shifted version of the C1 code, according to the echo delay. The second stage despreading code then appears to be C1 modulo-2 added to a delayed version of C1, namely C1(t).C1(t-T), where the symbol "." represents multiplication if chips of C1 are given the arithmetic values ± 1 or module-2 addition if chips are given the Boolean values 1 or 0. To implement this exemplary embodiment, the first two stages of subtraction illustrated in Figure 1 can be used to remove the first signal and its echos. The second signal would then be despread and subtracted in subsequent, similar stages.

To further process a signal despread in this way, the narrowband I,Q outputs from despreaders 25, 26, 29 and 30 can be fed to further processing circuitry (not shown) known as a RAKE combiner, where complex weighted sums are formed to decode the signal making maximum use of all the signal energy in both the direct wave and the echo. This RAKE combining process may be extended to include any number of significant delayed echoes. It is also sometimes desirable, e.g., in CDMA cellular downlink processing, to include weighted sums of despread echo components that do not exist, which of course one would not then attempt to subtract. Despreading non-existent echos with shifted codes for this purpose can be accomplished by despreader pairs (not shown) running side-by-side with a despreader pair such as pair 25 and 26 that is

despreading an echo having significant energy. However, only despreader pair 25 and 26 and other despreaders that despread real echos pass signals on to filters such as filters 27 and 28, while the parallel despreader pairs (not shown) that are operating on non-existent echos pass signals on only to further processing such as the RAKE combiner described above. In addition to traditional RAKE combiners, a RAKE combiner modified according to the inventive principles of U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/187,062 entitled "Method for Demodulation of Downlink CDMA Signals" can also be employed, which patent application is incorporated here by reference. This modification of the RAKE combining technique is appropriate for a CDMA mobile phone system application in the direction of transmission from base-to-mobile, i.e. for the mobile receiver, while conventional RAKE techniques are appropriate for the mobile-to-base direction, i.e. the base station receiver.

A second cause of imperfect subtraction is that an amount not only of the despread signal is removed, but also low frequency components of other signals, spread with, for example, C1+C2, C1+C3 ... etc. at the output of the first despreader pair, e.g., despreaders 25 and 26. If all codes C1,C2,C3 etc. belong to a set closed with respect to the property that the modulo-2 sum of any pair comprises an equal number of 1's and 0's, then this cause of imperfect subtraction may be reduced. For example, if all codes C1,C2,C3... belong to a closed set with respect to modulo-2 addition and all have equal numbers of 1's and 0's, the requirement is fulfilled. The Walsh-Hadamard orthogonal code set is such a set but has a limited number of members. An alternative expanded set was developed by Bottomley and Dent and is disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 5,353,352 entitled "Multiple Access Coding for Mobile Radio Communications" which patent is incorporated here by reference.

With any form of coding however, residuals of imperfect subtraction at an earlier stage may be further reduced at a later stage by re-subtraction in a manner similar to that described in U.S. Patent No. 5,218,619. To accomplish this resubtraction in the context of the exemplary circuitry of Figure 1, code C1

can be used again at a later despreading stage, e.g., beyond despreaders 29 and 30 and before despreading signal n with code Cn. This re-subtraction stage would actually use a despreading code C_{n-1}.C1 according to the aforementioned principle of combining respreading with a previous code C_{n-1} and despreading by the next code. Resubtraction of signal 2 may thus be accomplished using code C2 again in the stage before using C(n+1) and the despreading code would be Cn.C2, and so on. Resubtraction of strong multipath echoes may also need to be performed in a similar manner.

The code generator 33 can be programmed with knowledge of timing from a synchronization controller (not shown) and a signal strength tracker and sorter (not shown) which are however described in the above-incorporated U.S. Patent No. 5,218,619. It will also be appreciated that despreading a homodyne converted signal to obtain a narrowband signal around DC, which is then subtracted from the spread spectrum composite using a high pass filter is equivalent to low-pass filtering the despread result and then subtracting that result. Another analogous technique would be to despread a signal at a non-zero intermediate frequency to obtain a narrowband signal around that intermediate frequency and then to notch out the narrowband signal using a bandstop filter.

Figure 2 illustrates the aforedescribed re-orthogonalization principle applied by way of spectral nulling. A receiver 100 downconverts the received signal, if necessary, to a suitable intermediate frequency. The intermediate frequency is then despread using the code C1 of the strongest signal in despreader 101. The narrowband, despread signal is then nulled out in the spectral domain by nulling filter 102. The residual signal is then respread with code C1 in respreader 103 prior to being despread in 104 with code C2, nulling out signal 2 in filter 105 and respreading with C2 in block 106. According to this exemplary embodiment, re-orthogonalization of the signal with respect to C1, i.e. by subtracting out again a component that correlates with C1 after having subtracted or nulled out other signals, is shown as second C1 despreader 107, second nulling filter for C1-correlated components 108 and second C1

respreader 109. After the resubtraction stage represented by blocks 107, 108 and 109, the residual signal can be further processed to extract other signals, and later resubtraction of C2 and C1 for a third time. Indeed resubtraction of any or all of previously subtracted signals may be performed to prevent accumulation of subtraction imperfections that hinder the decoding of weak signals.

Figure 2b shows that, according to another exemplary embodiment, the respreading stage 103 and despreading stage 104 of Figure 2a can be combined into a single despreader 203 using a code waveform that is an arithmetic product (or a modulo-2 sum, for binary codes) of code waveforms C1 and C2. The despreaders of the resubtraction stage 205 and 206, when this combination is made, use code C1 combined with the immediately preceding code denoted by C(n-1) and C1 combined with the immediately following code, denoted by Cn, respectively.

Figure 3 shows an exemplary embodiment wherein the inventive resubtraction techniques are implemented using high-pass filtering of despread I,Q signals. A low noise amplifier 41 and filters 40 and 42 select and amplify the desired frequency band and apply a signal to homodyne downconvertor 50. It will be realized by persons skilled in the art that further stages of amplification, filtering and downconversion to an intermediate frequency can optionally precede the homodyne downconvertor 50. Homodyne downconvertor 50 includes quadrature mixers 51 and 52 driven by cosine and sine local oscillator waves that mix with the signal to produce complex I,Q baseband output signals. The local oscillator frequency ω_0 is centered on the desired channel to be processed so that the signal is converted into I,Q baseband frequencies centered on DC. DC offset from hardware imperfections can thus interfere with wanted signal processing and is preferably removed by high pass filters 60. The high pass filters have low attenuation over most of the wide spread-spectrum signal bandwidth and this does not substantially reduce wanted signal energy.

First despreader 70 includes mixers or phase reversing switches 71 and 72 and operates to despread a first signal using code C1. The first signal despread

is preferably the strongest signal. The despread signal component is compressed to a narrow bandwidth around DC which is removed by high-pass filters 81 and 82 in signal remover 80. Other signals that are not despread by code C1 are left substantially unattenuated by signal remover 80. High pass filters 81 and 82 are used in signal remover 80 when it is desired to remove a signal centered on zero, i.e., DC. In the event that some signal to be removed has a frequency offset relative to ω_0, it will appear after despreading as narrowband I,Q signals centered on a frequency other than DC and then filters 81 and 82 can be notch or bandstop filters.

After removal of the first signal in filter 80, the residual is respread using code C1 and despread using the code C2 of the next signal to be extracted. This can be accomplished in block 83 using structure which is similar to that of first despreader 70 but using a modulo-2 combination C1*C2 of codes C1 and C2, where the operator "*" signifies a bitwise exclusive-OR operation. Block 83 is also understood to contain filters to remove the despread C2 signal component before passing the new residual to the next stage, and so forth to final stage 84. If only a single signal is to be decoded, the cascade of stages terminates when the output signal is the desired signal with stronger interfering signals having been removed in previous stages. Each stage may optionally, however, output its despread signal component before removal, the output components being used to decode other signals such as in a cellular base station when all signals from mobile stations are desired to be decoded.

When the signal strength difference is large between the strongest signal S1 removed using code C1 and the final signal to be despread and decoded using Cn in a stage (not shown) following stage 84, residual errors caused by imperfect signal removal due to noise and multiple-user interference effects can remain, but as described in the above-incorporated U.S. Patent No. 5,218,619, the inventor showed that residual subtraction errors from a stage using code C1 would still be correlated with the code C1 and could be more accurately identified after first subtracting other signals. Thus, according to an aspect of the present invention,

the stage designated by reference numeral 84, which could in fact be any signal removal stage after 50, includes simultaneously respreading with the despreading code C_{n-1} of the immediately preceding stage combined with despreading again using the code C1 in order to despread and filter out residual components correlated with C1 that were not perfectly removed in stage 50. Likewise, any residual component correlated with C2 that was not removed in stage 83 can be further reduced by including similar re-removal stages at any point in the chain after stage 83, preferably after removing further signals to allow better identification of the small residual error.

Figure 4 illustrates that some of the signal removal stages can be used for removal of differently-delayed rays of the same signal by using a delayed version $C1_{t-T}$ of the code sequence $C1_t$. Rays are preferably removed in descending signal strength order. For example, assuming ray 1 of signal 1 is the strongest received ray of all; then it is despread in a first stage 91 using code $C1_t$. The despread components of the rays of the same signal (e.g., signal 1 ray 1, signal 1 ray 2, etc.) may be fed to combiner 95 which may be, for example, a RAKE combiner, that tracks the phase and amplitude of every ray and performs coherent combination with the aid of complex weights to enhance the signal for decoding in decoder 96. Block 95 can alternatively be a selection combiner for selecting for decoding always the strongest ray of signal 1, which, however, should always be arranged to be that removed in stage 91 by using the appropriate code delay $C1_t$, $C1_{t-T}$, etc. in stage 1. Block 92 illustrates that rays of other signals may be despread and removed before a second ray of signal 1 is despread, which is desirable if the other signal rays are stronger than signal 1 ray 2.

Signal 1 ray 2 is despread in stage 93 by using code C1 delayed by T, i.e., the code sequence $C1_{t-T}$ where T is chosen to correspond as closely as possible to the delay of the second strongest ray of signal 1 relative to the strongest ray of signal 1. The despread ray 2 component is fed to combiner 95 before being filtered out from the signal passed to subsequent stages represented

by block 94. Block 94 can proceed to despread and remove other rays of signal 1, rays of other signals, or to re-subtract components correlated with any of code $C1_t$, code $C1_{t-T}$ or any other code or delayed code used previously in an earlier signal removal stage. As shown in U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/187,062, to Paul Dent et al., which has been incorporated by reference above, it can be desirable to form combinations in combiner 95 including signal rays that are not received. This phenomenon arises in a mobile receiver for decoding a CDMA signal from a base station in the presence of multiple-user noise originating in the same base station. Those phantom rays that have a negative delay relative to the strongest ray or direct ray are used when the optimum receiver is a so-called "inverse channel filter approximation" and not a RAKE receiver, or a hybrid of the two when both same-base and other-base noise is to be combatted. Phantom rays do not, however, have to be subtracted as they do not constitute real interference to other signals.

Figure 5 shows an exemplary system for despreading of phantom rays in despreaders 191, 291, 197, 297, 98 and 198 that do not produce a cascade output signal because they do not perform a signal removal function, only a despreading function. Despreaders 91, 97 and 298 that despread real rays, however, include removal of the despread energy and generation of a cascade for connection to the next stage. Combiner 95 combines all despread rays, real or phantom, corresponding to the same signal, for example, signal 1, to produce an enhanced ratio of wanted signal to noise-plus-interference for information decoder 96. Figure 5 thus illustrates both parallel connected despreaders and cascade connected despreaders, those that produce the cascading signal as an output incorporating removal of despread signal energy by high-pass I,Q filtering or notch filtering at an intermediate frequency, while those that do not produce a cascade output are used to despread phantom rays or rays that are not presently sufficiently strong to warrant their removal, but which are being monitored in case they become so. It is to be understood that any signal removal stage can also constitute a re-subtraction stage for reducing residual errors left from a

previous subtraction of a signal using the same code. In that case, the despread signal from a resubtraction stage is not combined in the combiner 95 for the signal decoding, which can be effected, for example, by either not connecting resubtraction stages to combiners 95 or, alternatively, giving their despread output signals zero weight in combiner 95.

Configuring the implementations of Figures 3, 4 or 5 such that signals or rays are subtracted in the desired signal-strength dependent order may be conveniently effected by selection of the code sequences delivered from code generator 35 to each despreading stage to correspond to the signal or ray that stage must deal with. The programming of the code generator to output different codes to different stages at different times may be accomplished by tracking the changing amplitudes of different signals and rays in combiner 95. After sorting into signal and ray-strength order, control signals can be fed from combiner 95 to adapt the code generator so that the code delivered to stage 1 (i.e., Fig. 3, block 70 or Figs. 4 and 5, block 91) corresponds to the strongest ray and the codes delivered to following stages correspond to successively diminishing signal or ray strengths. Thus, no actual switching of signal paths is required to dynamically adapt the inventive receiver to dynamically changing signal strength conditions. The code generator 33 can be implemented using any conventional method for initially synchronizing its codes C1,C2,C3... with the timing of corresponding received signals S1,S2,S3... and maintaining that synchronization. Dynamically selecting the code and code delay of the code sequence delivered to each despreading stage largely accomplishes the sync maintenance operation automatically, however.

The above-described exemplary embodiments are intended to be illustrative in all respects, rather than restrictive, of the present invention. Thus the present invention is capable of many variations in detailed implementation that can be derived from the description contained herein by a person skilled in the art. All such variations and modifications are considered to be within the scope and spirit of the present invention as defined by the following claims.

CLAIMS:

1. A receiver for receiving a multiplicity of overlapping spread-spectrum signals and decoding at least one of said overlapping spread-spectrum signals comprising:

receiving means for producing I and Q quadrature baseband signals;

code generator means for providing replicas of spreading codes used by said overlapping signals;

I and Q signal despreading means for combining said I and Q quadrature baseband signals with a first of said spreading code replicas to generate I and Q despread signals; and

filtering means for removing signal energy of a first of said overlapping spread-spectrum signals spread with said first spreading code replica from said I and Q despread signals to leave first residual I and Q signals in which a total energy associated with others of said overlapping spread-spectrum signals remains substantially unaffected.

2. The receiver according to claim 1 further comprising:

means for despreading and removing a second of said overlapping spread spectrum signals from said first I and Q residual signals to leave second residual I and Q signals.

3. The receiver according to claim 2 wherein:

said means for despreading and removing uses a combination of said first spreading code replica and a second spreading code replica generated by said code generator means.

4. The receiver according to claim 1 in which said first spreading code replica is associated with a strongest one of said overlapping spread-spectrum signals.

5. The receiver according to claim 4 in which said strongest one of said overlapping spread spectrum signals is one of a pilot signal, a calling channel signal or a signalling channel signal.

6. The receiver according to claim 2 in which said first and second of said overlapping signals are despread and removed in signal strength order.

7. The receiver according to claim 1 in which said filtering means is a high-pass filter.

8. A receiver for receiving a multiplicity of overlapping spread-spectrum signals and decoding at least one of said overlapping spread-spectrum signals comprising:

receiving means for producing I and Q quadrature baseband signals;

high-pass filtering means for removing unwanted DC offsets from said I and Q quadrature baseband signals;

code generator means to provide replicas of spreading codes used by said overlapping signals;

I and Q signal despreading means for combining said quadrature baseband signals with a first of said spreading code replicas to obtain despread I and Q signals; and

filtering means for removing signal energy associated with a first of said overlapping spread-spectrum signals spread with a first spreading code from said despread signals to leave first residual I and Q signals in which a total energy associated with others of said overlapping spread-spectrum signals remains substantially unaffected.

9. The receiver according to claim 8 further comprising:

means for despreading and removing a second of said overlapping spread-spectrum signals to leave second residual I and Q signals.

10. The receiver according to claim 9 in which said means for despreading and removing uses a combination of said first code replica and a second code replica generated by said code generator means.

11. The receiver according to claim 8 in which said first spreading code replica is associated with a strongest of said overlapping spread spectrum signals.

12. The receiver according to claim 11 in which said strongest signal is one of a pilot signal, a calling channel signal or a signalling channel signal.

13. A receiver according to claim 9 in which said first and second of said overlapping signals are despread and removed in signal strength order.

14. A receiver according to claim 8 in which said filtering means is a high-pass filter.

15. A receiver for receiving a multiplicity of overlapping spread-spectrum signals and decoding at least one of said overlapping spread spectrum signals comprising:

receiving means for producing an intermediate frequency signal;

code generator means to provide replicas of despreading codes associated with said overlapping signals and combinations thereof;

first despreading means for despreading said intermediate frequency signal with a first of said despreading code replicas to obtain a despread signal;

first filtering means for removing signal energy of a first of said overlapping spread-spectrum signals spread with said first despreading code from said despread signals to leave a residual signal in which a total energy associated with other signals remains substantially unaffected; and

second despreading means for despreading said residual signal using a combination of said first despreading code replica and a second despreading code replica to obtain an output signal.

16. The receiver according to claim 15 in which said output signal is further processed to extract desired information.

17. The receiver according to claim 16 in which said desired information is a telephone speech signal.

18. The receiver according to claim 15 in which said output signal is further filtered to remove signal energy associated with said second despreading code replica.

19. A receiver for receiving a multiplicity of overlapping spread-spectrum signals and decoding at least one of said overlapping spread-spectrum signals comprising:

receiving means for producing an intermediate frequency signal;

code generator means for providing replicas of spreading codes used by said overlapping signals;

despreading means for despreading said intermediate frequency signal with a first of said spreading code replicas to obtain a despread signal;

filtering means for removing signal energy of a first of said overlapping spread-spectrum signals spread with said first spreading code from said despread signals to leave a first residual signal in which a total energy

associated with others of said overlapping spread-spectrum signals remains substantially unaffected;

respreading means for respreading said first residual signal using said first spreading code-replica to obtain a first respread signal;

additional despreading, filtering and respreading means using other of said code replicas for removing energy associated with other signals from said first residual signal to obtain a second residual signal; and

resubtraction means comprising despreading, filtering and respreading means using said first spreading code replica to remove from said second residual signal energy associated with said first signal to produce an output signal.

20. A receiver for receiving a multiplicity of overlapping spread-spectrum signals and decoding at least one of said overlapping spread-spectrum signals comprising:

receiving means for producing an intermediate frequency signal;

code generator means for providing replicas of spreading codes used by said overlapping signals and pairwise combinations thereof;

despreading means for despreading said intermediate frequency signal with a first of said spreading code replicas to obtain a despread signal;

filtering means for removing signal energy of a signal spread with said first despreading code from said despread signals to leave a first residual signal in which a total energy associated with other signals remains substantially unaffected;

additional despreading and filtering means using said pairwise code combinations for removing energy associated with other signals from said first residual signal to obtain a second residual signal; and

resubtraction means comprising despreading and filtering means using pairwise code combinations including said first despreading code to remove

from said second residual signal energy associated with said first signal to produce an output signal.

21. The receiver according to claim 19 in which said output signal is further processed to remove signal energy associated with other spreading codes to produce a final output signal.

22. The receiver according to claim 21 in which said output signal is further processed to extract desired information.

23. The receiver according to claim 22 in which said desired information is a telephone speech signal.

24. The receiver according to claim 22 in which said processing comprises demodulation or error-correction decoding and speech decoding from a low-bitrate form to a PCM form.

25. The receiver according to claim 24 in which said PCM form is transmitted to a telephone switching system over trunk lines.

26. The receiver according to claim 24 in which said PCM form is further processed using a digital-to-analog convertor to drive a telephone earpiece.

27. The receiver according to claim 20 in which said output signal is further processed to remove signal energy associated with other spreading codes to produce a final output signal.

28. The receiver according to claim 27 in which said output signal is further processed to extract desired information.

29. The receiver according to claim 28 in which said desired information is a telephone speech signal.

30. The receiver according to claim 28 in which said processing comprises demodulation or error-correction decoding and speech decoding from a low-bitrate form to a PCM form.

31. The receiver according to claim 30 in which said PCM form is transmitted to a telephone switching system over trunk lines.

32. A receiver according to claim 30 in which said PCM form is further processed using a digital-to-analog convertor to drive a telephone earpiece.

33. The receiver according to claim 2 in which said second residual signal is further processed to remove signal energy associated with other spreading codes to produce a final output signal.

34. The receiver according to claim 2 in which said second residual is further processed to extract desired information.

35. The receiver according to claim 34 in which said desired information is a telephone speech signal.

36. The receiver according to claim 34 in which said processing comprises demodulation or error-correction decoding and speech decoding from a low-bitrate form to a PCM form.

37. The receiver according to claim 36 in which said PCM form is transmitted to a telephone switching system over trunk lines.

38. The receiver according to claim 36 in which said PCM form is further processed using a digital-to-analog convertor to drive a telephone earpiece.

39. A receiver for receiving a multiplicity of overlapping spread-spectrum signals and decoding at least one of said signals, comprising:

receiving means for receiving said overlapping signals and quadrature downconverting said overlapping signals to produce complex baseband I and Q signals;

code generator means for producing replicas of spreading codes used by said overlapping signals;

I and Q despreading means for despreading I and Q signals using a replica of a first spreading code to produce first despread I and Q signals;

first filtering means for removing energy from said first despread I and Q signals associated with a first signal using said first spreading code while leaving substantially unaltered energy associated with other codes to produce first residual I and Q signals;

respreading and despreading means for respreading said first residual signals using said first spreading code replica and for despreading said first residual signals using a second code replica to produce second despread I and Q signals;

second filtering means for removing from said second despread I and Q signals energy associated with a signal using said second spreading code to leave second residual I and Q signals;

signal removal means for removing from said second residual signals energy associated with signals using spreading codes other than said second spreading code to produce third residual I and Q signals; and

resubtraction means for removing from said third residual signals remaining energy associated with said first signal using said first spreading code.

40. The receiver according to claim 39 in which said receiving means further comprises offset compensation means for removing DC offset from said complex baseband I and Q signals.

41. The receiver of claim 40 in which said offset compensation means is a high-pass filter.

42. The receiver of claim 39 in which said first filtering means is a high-pass filter.

43. The receiver of claim 39 in which said second filtering means is a high-pass filter.

44. The receiver according to claim 39 in which said respreading and despreading means comprises circuitry for forming a modulo-2 sum of said first and second spreading code replicas in said code generator to form a combined code and mixing said combined code with said first I and Q residual signals using an I-mixer and a Q-mixer.

45. The receiver of claim 39 in which said resubtraction means comprises:

second respreading and despreading means for respreading said third residual I and Q signal using a replica of a code used by a signal last removed in said signal removal means and for despreading said third residual signals using said first spreading code replica to produce fourth residual I and Q signals; and

third filtering means to remove from said fourth residual I and Q signals remaining energy associated with the first signal using said first spreading code to produce fifth residual I and Q signals.

46. The receiver according to claim 39 in which said first despread I and Q signals are further processed to extract desired information.

47. The receiver of claim 46 in which said desired information is a phase reference signal and said first despreading code is used by a pilot or phase reference signal.

48. The receiver of claim 46 in which said desired information is broadcast information.

49. The receiver of claim 46 in which said desired information is call alert information addressed to a mobile telephone number.

50. The receiver according to claim 39 in which said first despread I and Q signals are further processed to extract desired information carried by a first spread spectrum signal and said second despread I and Q signals are processed to extract desired information carried by a second spread spectrum signal and any subsequent despread I,Q signals obtained during operation of said signal removal means or after operation of said resubtraction means are processed to extract other desired information carried by other spread spectrum signals.

51. A receiver for receiving a multiplicity of overlapping spread-spectrum signals and decoding at least one of said signals, comprising:

receiving means for receiving said overlapping signals and quadrature downconverting said overlapping signals to produce complex baseband I and Q signals;

code generator means for producing replicas of the spreading codes used by said overlapping signals and time-shifted replicas of said spreading codes;

I and Q despreading means for despreading I and Q signals using a replica of a first spreading code to produce first despread I and Q signals;

first filtering means for removing energy from said first despread I and Q signals associated with a first signal using said first spreading code while leaving substantially unaltered energy associated with other of said spreading codes to produce first residual I and Q signals;

first respreading and despreading means for respreading said first residual signals using said first spreading code replica and for despreading said first residual signals using a timeshifted replica of said first spreading code to produce second despread I and Q signals;

second filtering means for removing from said second despread I,Q signals energy associated with an echo of said first signal to produce second residual I and Q signals;

second respreading and despreading means for respreading said second residual signals using said timeshifted replica of said first code and for despreading said second residual signals using a second code replica to produce third despread I and Q signals; and

processing means for processing said third despread signals to extract desired information carried by a signal using said second spreading code.

52. A receiver for receiving a multiplicity of overlapping spread-spectrum signals and decoding at least one of said signals, comprising:

receiving means for receiving said overlapping signals and converting to an intermediate frequency signal;

code generator means for producing replicas of spreading codes used by said overlapping signals and time-shifted replicas of said spreading codes;

despreading means for despreading said intermediate frequency signal using a replica of a first spreading code to produce a first despread signal;

notch filtering means for removing energy from said first despread signal associated with a first signal using said first spreading code while leaving substantially unaltered energy associated with other codes to produce a first residual signal;

first respreading and despreading means for respreading said first residual signal using said first spreading code replica and to despread using a timeshifted replica of said first spreading code to produce a second despread signal;

second filtering means to remove from said second despread signal energy associated with a delayed echo of said first signal to leave a second residual signal;

second respreading and despreading means to respread said second residual signal suing said timeshifted replica of said first code and to despread using a second code replica to produce a third despread signal; and

processing means to process said third despread signal to extract desired information carried by a second signal using said second spreading code.

53. A receiver according to claim 51 in which said first despread signal and said second despread signals are jointly processed to extract desired information carried by said first signal using said first spreading code.

54. A receiver according to claim 52 in which said first despread signal and said second despread signal are jointly processed to extract desired information carried by said first signal using said first spreading code.

55. A receiver according to claim 51 in which said processing means includes despreading and processing delayed echos of said second signal using said timeshifted replicas of said second code.

56. A receiver for receiving a multiplicity of overlapping spread-spectrum signals and decoding at least one of said signals, comprising:

receiving means for receiving said overlapping signals and quadrature downconverting said overlapping signals to produce complex baseband I and Q signals;

code generator means for producing time-shifted replicas of the spreading codes used by said overlapping signals;

first I and Q despreading means for despreading I and Q signals using a first time-shifted replica of a first spreading code to produce first despread I and Q signals;

second I and Q despreading means for despreading I and Q signals using a second time-shifted replica of said first spreading code to produce second despread I and Q signals;

processing means to jointly process said first and second despread signals to extract desired information;

filtering means to remove energy from said first despread I and Q signals associated with a first signal using said first spreading code while leaving substantially unaltered energy associated with other codes to produce first residual I,Q signals;

respreading and despreading means for respreading said first residual signals using said first time-shifted replica of said first code and for despreading said first residuals using a replica of a second code to produce third despread I and Q signals; and

processing means to process said third despread signals to extract desired information carried by a signal using said second spreading code.

57. A receiver for receiving a multiplicity of overlapping spread-spectrum signals and decoding at least one of said signals, comprising:

receiving means for receiving said overlapping signals and converting said overlapping signals to an intermediate frequency signal;

code generator means for producing time-shifted replicas of the spreading codes used by said overlapping signals;

first despreading means for despreading said intermediate frequency signal using a first time-shifted replica of a first spreading code to produce a first despread signal;

second despreading means for despreading said intermediate frequency signal using a second time-shifted replica of said first spreading code to produce a second despread signal;

processing means to jointly process said first and second despread signal to extract desired information;

filtering means for removing energy from said first despread signal associated with a first signal using said first spreading code while leaving substantially unaltered energy associated with other codes to produce a first residual signal;

respreading and despreading means for respreading said first residual signal using said first time-shifted replica of said first code and for respreading using a replica of a second code to produce a third despread signal; and

processing means to process said third despread signal to extract desired information carried by a signal using said second spreading code.

58. The receiver of claim 56 in which said first I and Q despreading means despreads the strongest ray of said first signal.

59. The receiver of claim 57 in which said first despreading means despreads the strongest ray of said first signal.

60. The receiver of claim 39 in which said first signal is the strongest of said overlapping signals and subsequently despread and removed signals are processed in descending order of signal strength.

61. A receiver for receiving a multiplicity of overlapping spread-spectrum signals and decoding at least one of said signals, comprising:

receiving means for receiving said overlapping signals and producing a downconverted signal for processing;

code generator means for producing replicas of spreading codes used by said overlapping signals and time-shifted replicas of said spreading codes which are delayed by one or more code symbol periods;

despreading means for despreading said downconverted signal using different time-shifted replicas of a first spreading code and producing corresponding first despread signals at least one of which forms a cascade signal output to a second despreading means; and

at least one processing means connected to jointly process said first despread signals that have been despread using timeshifted replicas of the first spreading code in order to extract desired information carried by a first signal using that spreading code.

62. The receiver of claim 61, wherein said despreading means includes respreading means to produce a cascade output for cascade connection and wherein said receiver further comprises:

additional despreading stages each stage being cascade connected to a cascade output of an immediately preceding stage to produce successive multiple despread signals from each cascaded stage using time-shifted replicas of spreading codes, each cascaded stage including filtering means for removing energy associated with a despread signal ray and respreading means to produce the cascade output for input to the next stage.

63. The receiver of claim 62 in which said cascade-connected stages remove signal energy associated with received signal rays in descending order of received signal ray strength.

64. The receiver of claim 61, wherein said despreading means further comprises:

filtering means to remove energy from one of said first despread signals corresponding to a received ray of a signal spread using said first spreading code while leaving energy corresponding to other signals or rays substantially unaltered.

65. The receiver of claim 62 in which said additional despreading means for despreading signals corresponding to echos which are being received at less than a predetermined strength to monitor for echos having significant strength.

66. The receiver of claim 62 in which said additional despreading means includes means for despreading signals corresponding to echos which are being received at less than a predetermined strength in order to provide despread signals to said at least one processing means for compensation of correlated interference on echos of said desired signal.

67. The receiver of claim 62 in which at least one of said cascade-connected despreading means removes residual energy associated with a signal ray using the same time-shift of the same spreading code as used in a preceding stage.

68. A receiver for receiving a multiplicity of overlapping spread-spectrum signals and decoding at least one of said overlapping spread-spectrum signals comprising:

receiving means for producing I and Q quadrature baseband signals;

high-pass filtering means for removing unwanted DC offsets from said I and Q quadrature baseband signals;

code generator means to provide replicas of spreading codes used by said overlapping signals;

I and Q signal despreading means for combining said quadrature baseband signals with a first of said spreading code replicas to obtain despread I and Q signals; and

processing means for jointly processing said I and Q signals to extract desired information.

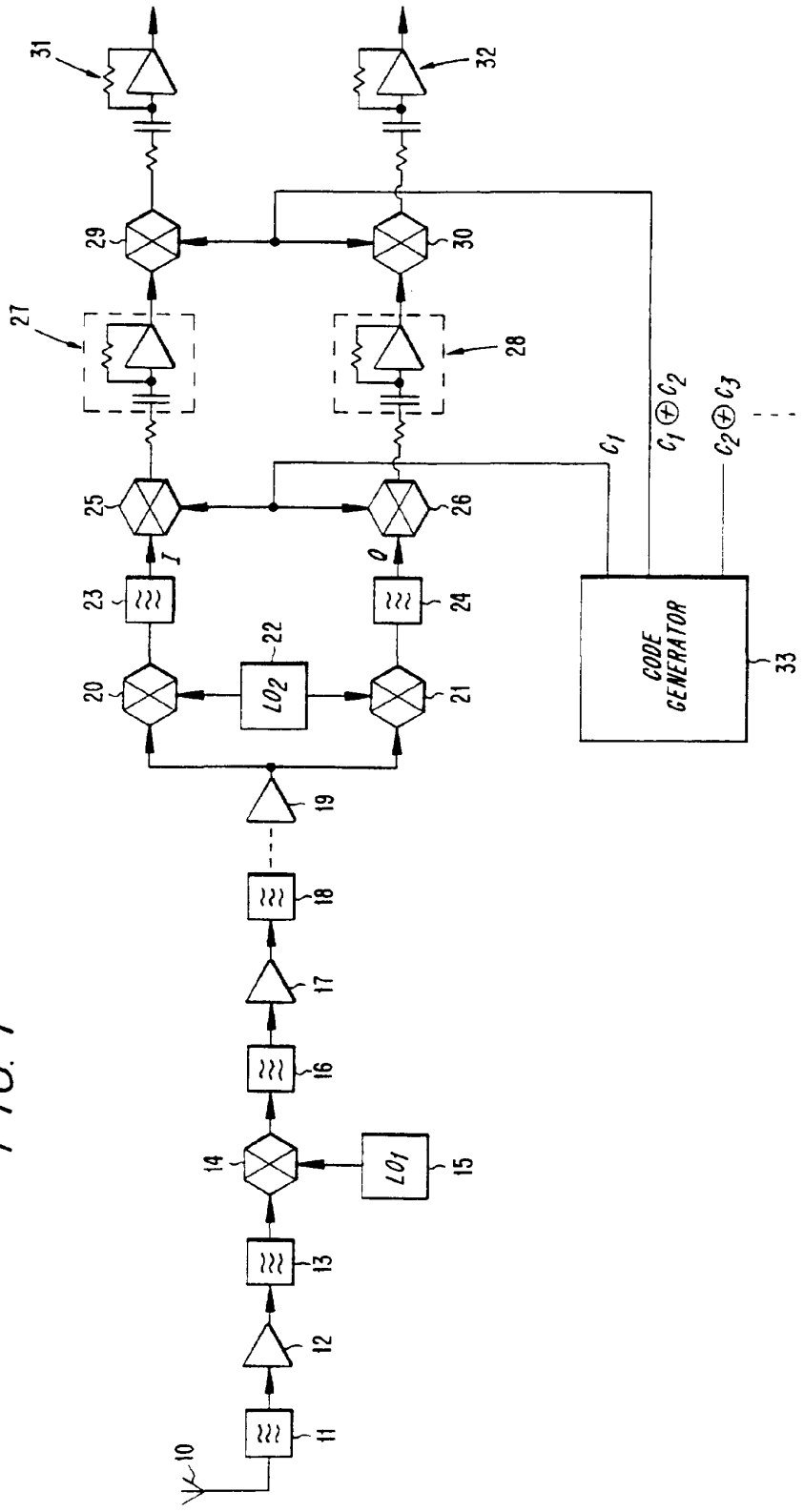
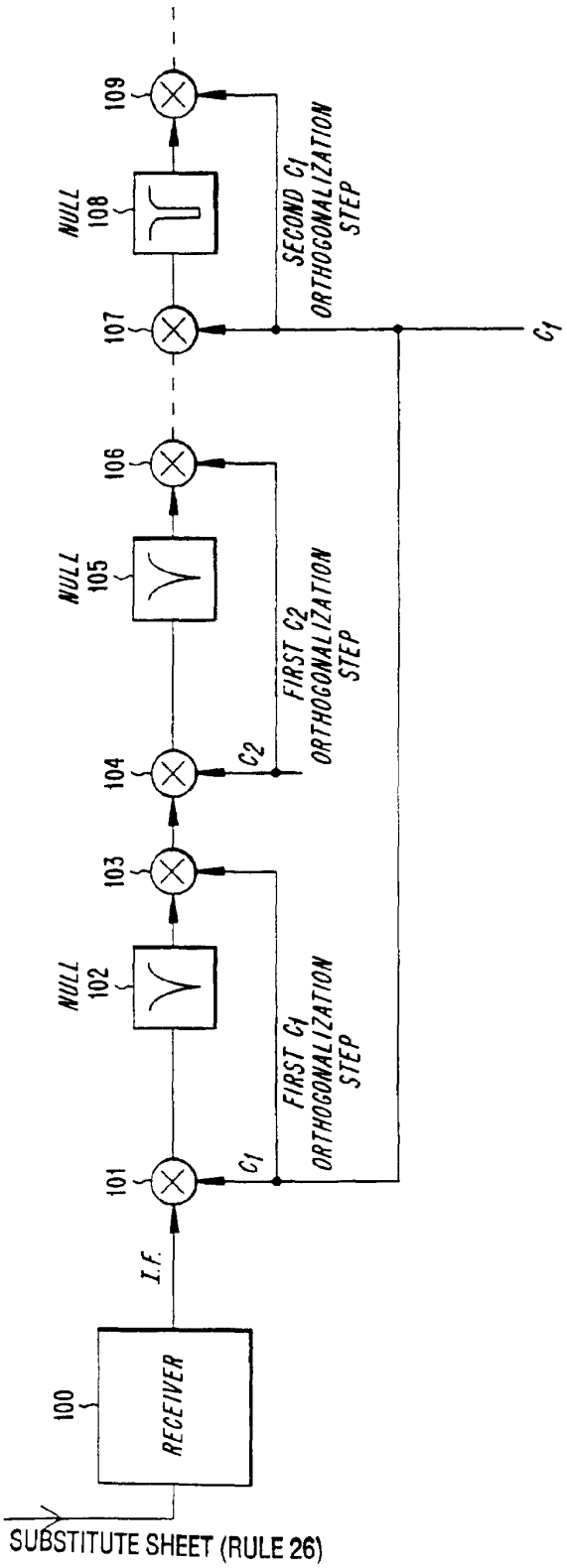

31
32
29
30
27
28
25
26
I
Q
23
24
22
LO2
20
21
19
18
17
16
14
LO1
15
13
12
11
10
C1
C1⊕C2
C2⊕C3
CODE GENERATOR
33

FIG. 1

FIG. 2(a)


100
RECEIVER
I.F.
101
NULL
102
103
104
NULL
105
106
NULL
108
109
107
C1
C2
FIRST C1 ORTHOGONALIZATION STEP
FIRST C2 ORTHOGONALIZATION STEP
SECOND C1 ORTHOGONALIZATION STEP

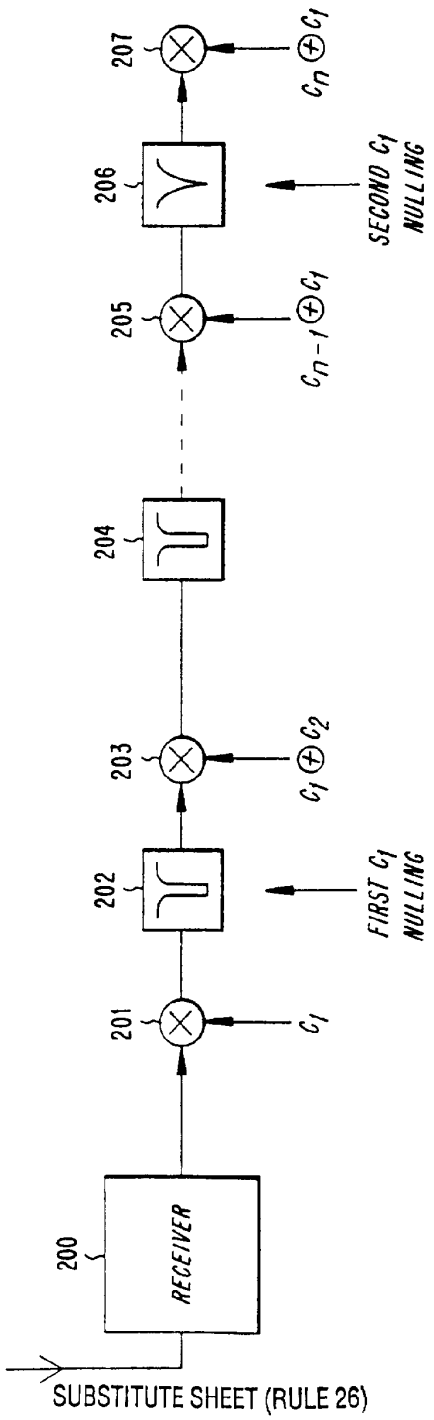
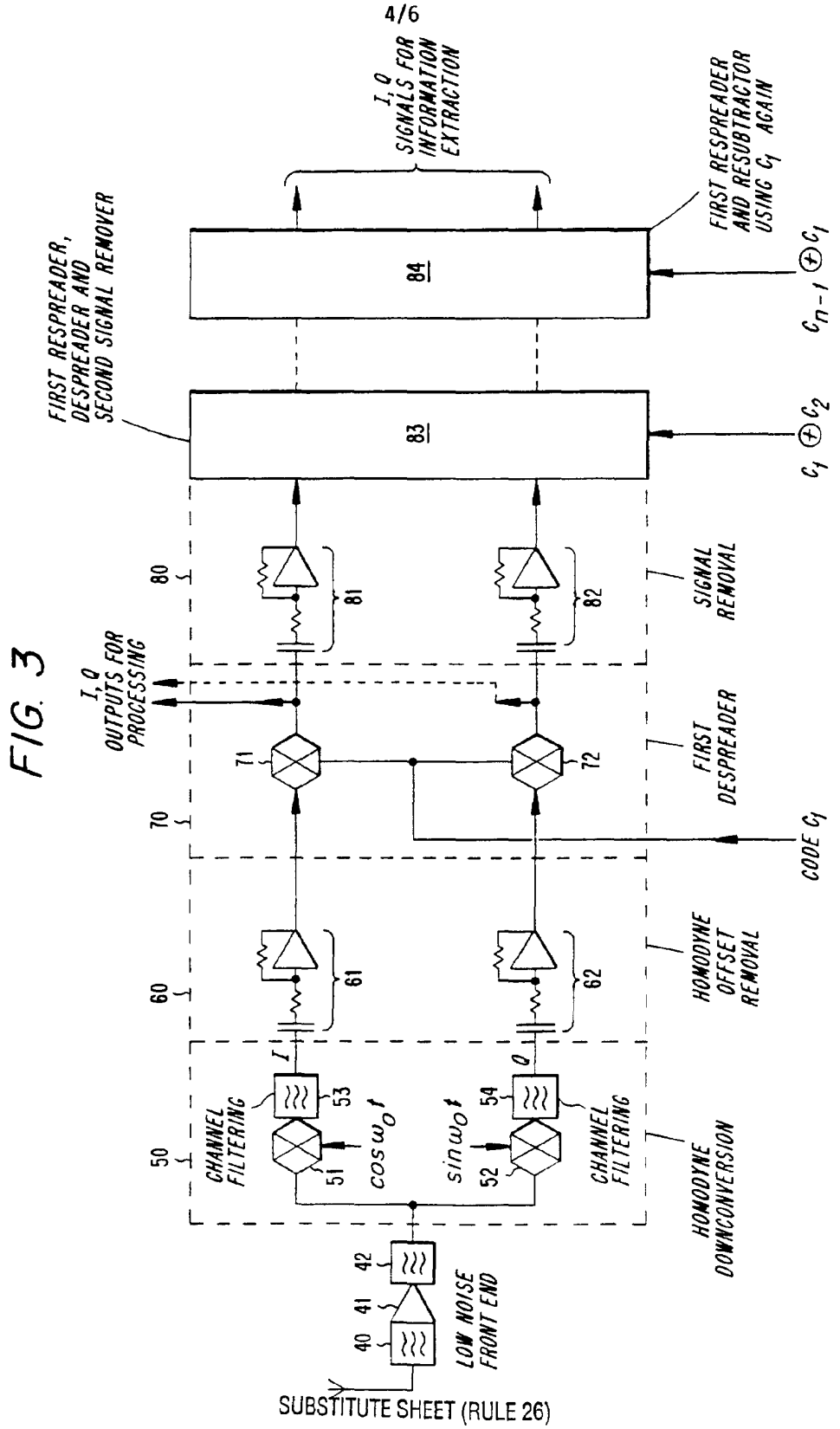

200
RECEIVER
201
c_1
202
FIRST c_1 NULLING
203
$c_1 \oplus c_2$
204
205
$c_{n-1} \oplus c_1$
206
SECOND c_1 NULLING
207
$c_n \oplus c_1$

FIG. 2(b)

FIG. 3


I, Q SIGNALS FOR INFORMATION EXTRACTION
FIRST RESPREADER AND RESUBTRACTOR USING C_1 AGAIN
$C_{n-1} \oplus C_1$
FIRST RESPREADER, DESPREADER AND SECOND SIGNAL REMOVER
84
83
$C_1 \oplus C_2$
80
81
82
SIGNAL REMOVAL
I, Q OUTPUTS FOR PROCESSING
71
72
70
FIRST DESPREADER
CODE C_1
60
61
62
HOMODYNE OFFSET REMOVAL
I
Q
50
CHANNEL FILTERING
53
54
$\cos \omega_o t$
$\sin \omega_o t$
51
52
CHANNEL FILTERING
HOMODYNE DOWNCONVERSION
42
41
40
LOW NOISE FRONT END

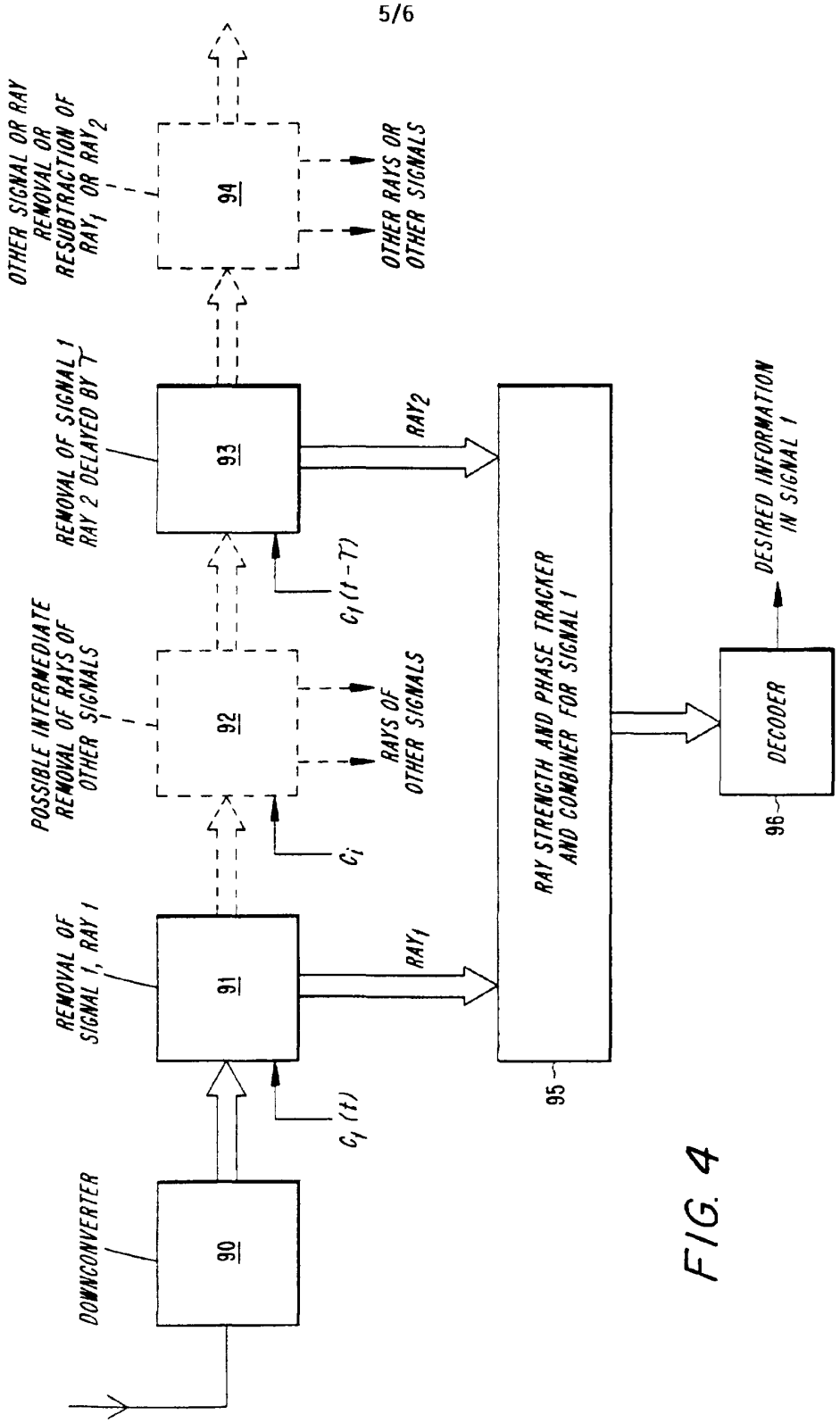

OTHER SIGNAL OR RAY REMOVAL OR RESUBTRACTION OF RAY1 OR RAY2
94
OTHER RAYS OR OTHER SIGNALS
REMOVAL OF SIGNAL 1 RAY 2 DELAYED BY τ
93
RAY2
C1 (t-τ)
POSSIBLE INTERMEDIATE REMOVAL OF RAYS OF OTHER SIGNALS
92
RAYS OF OTHER SIGNALS
Ci
REMOVAL OF SIGNAL 1, RAY 1
91
RAY1
C1 (t)
DOWNCONVERTER
90
RAY STRENGTH AND PHASE TRACKER AND COMBINER FOR SIGNAL 1
95
DECODER
96
DESIRED INFORMATION IN SIGNAL 1

FIG. 4

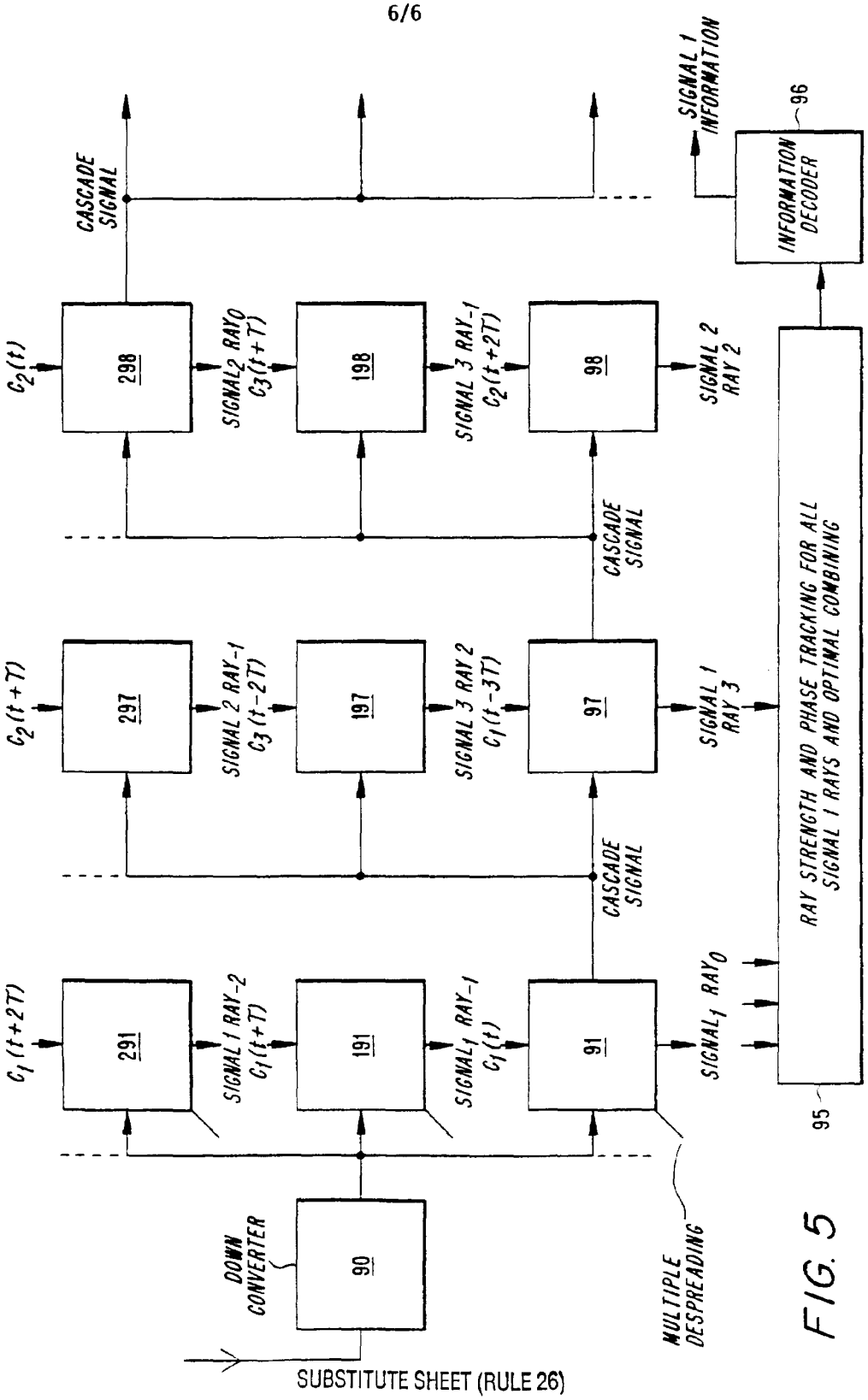

SIGNAL 1 INFORMATION
96
INFORMATION DECODER
CASCADE SIGNAL
$C_2(t)$
298
$SIGNAL_2$ RAY$_0$ $C_3(t+T)$
198
SIGNAL 3 RAY$_{-1}$ $C_2(t+2T)$
98
SIGNAL 2 RAY 2
CASCADE SIGNAL
$C_2(t+T)$
297
SIGNAL 2 RAY$_{-1}$ $C_3(t-2T)$
197
SIGNAL 3 RAY 2 $C_1(t-3T)$
97
SIGNAL 1 RAY 3
CASCADE SIGNAL
$C_1(t+2T)$
291
$SIGNAL_1$ RAY$_{-2}$ $C_1(t+T)$
191
$SIGNAL_1$ RAY$_{-1}$ $C_1(t)$
91
$SIGNAL_1$ RAY$_0$
RAY STRENGTH AND PHASE TRACKING FOR ALL SIGNAL 1 RAYS AND OPTIMAL COMBINING
95
DOWN CONVERTER
90
MULTIPLE DESPREADING

FIG. 5

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT

(Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

Application Number	14/172,392
Filing Date	2014-02-04
First Named Inventor	David F. Sorrells
Art Unit	2646
Examiner Name	Sam Bhattacharya
Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

U.S. PATENT APPLICATIONS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Document Number	Filing Date	Name of Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1	13/899,180	21-May-2013	Rawlins et al.	
	2	14/473,410	29-Aug-2014	Sorrells et al.	
	3	14/561,484	5-Dec-2014	Rawlins et al.	

U.S. PATENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Patent Number	Issue Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	4	4868908	19-Sep-1989	Pless et al.	
	5	4968958	6-Nov-1990	Hoare	
	6	6073001	6-Jun-2000	Sokoler	
	7	6085073	4-Jul-2000	Palermo et al.	
	8	6307894	23-Oct-2001	Edison et al.	
	9	6363262	26-Mar-2002	McNicol, John Duncan	
	10	6397051	28-May-2002	Abbasi et al.	
	11	6512798	28-Jan-2003	Akiyama et al.	
	12	6643502	4-Nov-2003	Van De Plassche et al.	
	13	6647250	11-Nov-2003	Bultman et al.	
	14	6853690	8-Feb-2005	Sorrells et al.	
	15	6879817	12-Apr-2005	Sorrells et al.	
	16	7010286	7-Mar-2006	Sorrells et al.	
	17	7218899	15-May-2007	Sorrells et al.	
	18	7386292	10-Jun-2008	Sorrells et al.	
	19	7496342	24-Feb-2009	Sorrells et al.	
	20	7693230	6-Apr-2010	Sorrells et al.	
	21	7773688	10-Aug-2010	Sorrells et al.	
	22	7994968	9-Aug-2011	McEwan, Thomas Edward	
	23	8571135	29-Oct-2013	Sorrells et al.	
	24	8588725	19-Nov-2013	Sorrells et al.	
	25	8594228	26-Nov-2013	Sorrells et al.	

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)		
	Application Number	14/172,392
	Filing Date	2014-02-04
	First Named Inventor	David F. Sorrells
	Art Unit	2646
	Examiner Name	Sam Bhattacharya
	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

	26	8649753	11-Feb-2014	Rofougaran et al.	
	27	8660513	25-Feb-2014	Sorrells et al.	
	28	8824993	2-Aug-2014	Sorrells et al.	

U.S. PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS					
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Publication Number	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	29	20030227983	22-Jan-2008	Milne et al.	
	30	20130109338	2-May-2013	Sorrells et al.	
	31	20130115906	9-May-2013	Forman et al.	
	32	20130122835	16-May-2013	Sorrells et al.	
	33	20130122846	16-May-2013	Sorrells et al.	
	34	20130182749	18-Jul-2013	Sorrells et al.	
	35	20130202070	8-Aug-2013	Sorrells et al.	
	36	20130225110	29-Aug-2013	Karlquist, Richard K.	
	37	20140226751	14-Aug-2014	Sorrells et al.	
	38	20140233670	21-Aug-2014	Sorrells et al.	
	39	20140308909	16-Oct-2014	Sorrells et al.	
	40	20140308911	16-Oct-2014	Sorrells et al.	
	41	20140308912	16-Oct-2014	Sorrells et al.	
	42	20140308913	16-Oct-2014	Sorrells et al.	

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS							
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Foreign Patent Document	Country Code	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T [1]
	43	WO 9722185	WO	19-Jun-1997	Ericsson GE Mobile Inc (US)		☐

NON PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS			
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium catalog, etc.) date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published	T [1]
	44	MAAS S. A. "A Gaas Mesfet Mixer with Very Low Intermodulation", IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques, IEEE Service Center, Piscataway, NJ, US, vol. MTT-35, no. 4, 1-April-1987, pages 425-429.	☐

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)		
	Application Number	14/172,392
	Filing Date	2014-02-04
	First Named Inventor	David F. Sorrells
	Art Unit	2646
	Examiner Name	Sam Bhattacharya
	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

OFFICE ACTION / NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE DOCUMENTS				
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Application Number	Mail Date	Document
	45	12/881,912	20-Jan-2012	Notice of Allowance
	46	12/881,912	16-Feb-2012	Notice of Allowance
	47	13/231,244	23-Aug-2013	Notice of Allowance
	48	13/549,213	8-Oct-2013	Notice of Allowance
	49	13/428,816	11-Oct-2013	Notice of Allowance
	50	13/829,795	15-Oct-2013	Office Action
	51	14/053,815	6-Jun-2014	Office Action
	52	14/075,535	30-Jul-2014	Office Action
	53	14/053,999	3-Sep-2014	Office Action
	54	14/081,501	3-Sep-2014	Office Action
	55	14/085,008	5-Sep-2014	Office Action
	56	14/053,327	9-Sep-2014	Office Action
	57	14/075,738	11-Sep-2014	Office Action
	58	14/054,548	26-Sep-2014	Office Action

EXAMINER SIGNATURE			
Examiner Signature		Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

[1]Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language translation is attached.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT

(Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

Application Number	14/172,392
Filing Date	2014-02-04
First Named Inventor	David F. Sorrells
Art Unit	2646
Examiner Name	Sam Bhattacharya
Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

CERTIFICATION STATEMENT

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

☐ That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

OR

☐ That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).

☐ See attached certification statement.

☒ Fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.

☐ None

☒ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge payment of any of the following fees that may be applicable to this communication, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account No. 23-3178: (1) any filing fees required under 37 CFR § 1.16; and/or (2) any patent application and reexamination processing fees under 37 CFR § 1.17.

SIGNATURE

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	/Rick D. Nydegger/	Date	27-Feb-2015
Name/Print	Rick D. Nydegger	Registration Number	28,651

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 hour to complete, including gathering, preparing and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

2113423_1.DOC

Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal

Application Number:	14172392
Filing Date:	04-Feb-2014
Title of Invention:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	David F. Sorrells
Filer:	Rick D. Nydegger/Braden Taft
Attorney Docket Number:	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

Filed as Large Entity

Filing Fees for Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD($)
Basic Filing:				
Pages:				
Claims:				
Miscellaneous-Filing:				
Petition:				
Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:				
Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:				
Extension-of-Time:				

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD($)
Miscellaneous:				
Submission- Information Disclosure Stmt	1806	1	180	180
		Total in USD ($)		**180**

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt	
EFS ID:	21625675
Application Number:	14172392
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	8448
Title of Invention:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	David F. Sorrells
Customer Number:	22913
Filer:	Rick D. Nydegger/Braden Taft
Filer Authorized By:	Rick D. Nydegger
Attorney Docket Number:	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
Receipt Date:	27-FEB-2015
Filing Date:	04-FEB-2014
Time Stamp:	16:50:50
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	Credit Card
Payment was successfully received in RAM	$180
RAM confirmation Number	4226
Deposit Account	233178
Authorized User	NYDEGGER, RICK D.
The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows: Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.16 (National application filing, search, and examination fees) Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.17 (Patent application and reexamination processing fees)	

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.19 (Document supply fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.20 (Post Issuance fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.21 (Miscellaneous fees and charges)

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Form (SB08)	19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2015-02-27_IDS.pdf	312684 a4eb06abeba870a66e60a6680294784c464c023b	no	4
Warnings:					
Information:					
This is not an USPTO supplied IDS fillable form					
2	Foreign Reference	WO9722185A2.pdf	3131378 1c3df9f96c7fac18a9854c7abf210c5539bfa43f	no	42
Warnings:					
Information:					
3	Non Patent Literature	NPL_Maas_A-GaAs-MESFET-Mixer.pdf	1169416 59b09ed49a45da60f5318944088284 53b76a01c8	no	5
Warnings:					
Information:					
4	Non Patent Literature	M-12881912-140120-NOA.pdf	587463 209539286438808fd32d0cb752d7590a07292b66	no	7
Warnings:					
Information:					
5	Non Patent Literature	M-12881912-140216-NOA.pdf	182628 3e8817972f44d4a2a779d337869028bb62ce27e8	no	3
Warnings:					
Information:					
6	Non Patent Literature	M-13231244-130823-NOA.pdf	605138 b4a17b695f7962861bb38644e20c071ada1aaa7f	no	8
Warnings:					
Information:					
7	Non Patent Literature	M-13549213-131008-NOA.pdf	657079 b0dd5f09cb622f8187644eb0ce5a5615383b7700	no	9
Warnings:					
Information:					

8	Non Patent Literature	M-13428816-131011-NOA.pdf	688268 33e5233c2dbd241e2db679a305091d29e7c0c560	no	10
Warnings:					
Information:					
9	Non Patent Literature	M-13829795-131015-OA.pdf	247525 f3809256f86e80b25d9f0a4babde239b9e0a6b6f	no	5
Warnings:					
Information:					
10	Non Patent Literature	M-14053815-140606-OA.pdf	688974 ab30617e35bf8a2149190b93fcec23823b1384ba	no	13
Warnings:					
Information:					
11	Non Patent Literature	M-14075535-140730-OA.pdf	249592 ad3016a569836d4867276c99585cadc2ea4766ec	no	5
Warnings:					
Information:					
12	Non Patent Literature	M-14053999-140903-OA.pdf	609580 ee14dff56b589a2d3d677304ca9271731ab53065	no	10
Warnings:					
Information:					
13	Non Patent Literature	M-14081501-140903-OA.pdf	540361 db04f3a360ad1fb7e871c981187b84aa2fa792a3	no	9
Warnings:					
Information:					
14	Non Patent Literature	M-14085008-140905-OA.pdf	235582 91b7cd2c0eda395d6417725432f9502365e790f8	no	4
Warnings:					
Information:					
15	Non Patent Literature	M-14053327-140909-OA.pdf	402819 17b14741c538ee685703f1a55c3ea6295f557fd3	no	8
Warnings:					
Information:					
16	Non Patent Literature	M-14075738-140911-OA.pdf	323636 95a4620f633c136ef4febc0c2ed1343f0c910ce5	no	6
Warnings:					
Information:					

17	Non Patent Literature	M-14054548-140926-OA.pdf	353548 4e498714ebcaf84c4c9d3992c10b0024e5dfda91	no	6
Warnings:					
Information:					
18	Fee Worksheet (SB06)	fee-info.pdf	30605 42561f4bd1fd89c5d1fe360f3df3bfae8fe706aa	no	2
Warnings:					
Information:					
		Total Files Size (in bytes):	11016276		

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111
If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371
If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office
If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

PTO/SB/06 (09-11)
Approved for use through 1/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD Substitute for Form PTO-875	Application or Docket Number 14/172,392	Filing Date 02/04/2014	☐ To be Mailed

ENTITY: ☒ LARGE ☐ SMALL ☐ MICRO

APPLICATION AS FILED – PART I

	(Column 1)	(Column 2)		
FOR	NUMBER FILED	NUMBER EXTRA	RATE ($)	FEE ($)
☐ BASIC FEE (37 CFR 1.16(a), (b), or (c))	N/A	N/A	N/A	
☐ SEARCH FEE (37 CFR 1.16(k), (i), or (m))	N/A	N/A	N/A	
☐ EXAMINATION FEE (37 CFR 1.16(o), (p), or (q))	N/A	N/A	N/A	
TOTAL CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(i))	minus 20 =	*	X $ =	
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(h))	minus 3 =	*	X $ =	
☐ APPLICATION SIZE FEE (37 CFR 1.16(s))	If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is $310 ($155 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR 1.16(s).			
☐ MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT (37 CFR 1.16(j))				
* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2.			TOTAL	

APPLICATION AS AMENDED – PART II

AMENDMENT	02/27/2015	(Column 1) CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		(Column 2) HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	(Column 3) PRESENT EXTRA	RATE ($)	ADDITIONAL FEE ($)
	Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	* 36	Minus	** 20	= 16	X $80 =	1280
	Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	* 1	Minus	***3	= 0	X $420 =	0
	☐ Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))						
	☐ FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))						
						TOTAL ADD'L FEE	**1280**

AMENDMENT		(Column 1) CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		(Column 2) HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	(Column 3) PRESENT EXTRA	RATE ($)	ADDITIONAL FEE ($)
	Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus	**	=	X $ =	
	Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus	***	=	X $ =	
	☐ Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))						
	☐ FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))						
						TOTAL ADD'L FEE	

* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3.
** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20".
*** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest number found in the appropriate box in column 1.

LIE
/KIMBERLY WHITE/

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.16. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

ELECTRONICALLY FILED

PATENT APPLICATION
Docket No. 19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re application of	David F. Sorrells et al.	)
Serial No.:	14/172,392	) Art Unit) 2646
Filed:	Feb. 4, 2014	)
Conf. No.:	8448	)
For:	METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR DOWN-CONVERTING AN ELECTROMAGNETIC SIGNAL, AND TRANSFORMS FOR SAME, AND APERTURE RELATIONSHIPS	)
Examiner:	Sam Bhattacharya	)
Customer No.:	22913	)

AMENDMENT "A" AND RESPONSE

Via E-File AMENDMENT
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Sir:

In response to the first Office action mailed August 27, 2014 please amend the above-identified application as follows:

Amendments to the Claims are reflected in the listing of claims which begins on page 2 of this paper; and

Remarks/Arguments begin on page 10 of this paper.

REMARKS

By this amendment claim 1 has been cancelled without prejudice, and new claims 2 – 37 have been added.[1] Accordingly, claims 2 – 37 are pending and presented for consideration, of which claim 2 (directed to a system) is the only independent claims at issue.

Response to the Office Action

A. Introductory Comments

As presented herein, applicants' system is directed to a first switch coupled to a first control signal which comprises a sampling aperture with a specified frequency, wherein the first switch is on and a portion of energy that is distinguishable from noise is transferred from the modulated carrier signal as an output of said first switch during the sampling aperture of the first control signal. A first energy storage element stores the transferred energy from the modulated carrier signal and outputs a down-converted in-phase baseband signal portion of said modulated carrier signal.

Similarly, a second switch coupled to a second control signal which comprises a sampling aperture with a specified frequency, wherein the second switch is on and a portion of energy that is distinguishable from noise is transferred from the modulated carrier signal as an output of said second switch during the sampling aperture of the second control signal. A second energy storage element stores the transferred energy from the modulated carrier signal and outputs a down-converted inverted in-phase baseband signal portion of said modulated carrier signal.

The portions of transferred energy from each of the first and second switch are integrated over time to accumulate the portions of transferred energy from which the down-converted in-phase baseband signal portion and the down-converted inverted in-phase baseband signal portion are derived. And then a first differential amplifier circuit combines the down-converted in-phase baseband signal portion with the down-converted inverted in-phase baseband signal portion and outputs a first channel down-converted differential in-phase baseband signal.

---

[1] Support for the claims is found throughout the specification and previously presented claims, including but not limited to paragraphs [1689] - [1697], [1791], [1795], [1825] and [1956], and Figures 150 – 151, 182 and 197.

B. Response to Rejection of Claims 1 – 8 Under 35 U.S.C. § 102(b)

Claim 1 was rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 102(b)[2] as being anticipated by U.S. Pat. No. 6,192,225 (Arpaia).

Arpaia describes a direct conversion (homodyne) receiver that is designed to reduce distortion caused by constant or non-constant interference (Abs. and Col. 2, lines 35-37). Arpaia's receiver includes various components as shown in Figure 5. For instance, the receiver includes a preselector filter (1) and an amplifier (2) which filter and amplify an input signal. The filtered signal is then sent to mixers (3) where the input signal is multiplied by a multiplier (5, 6 or 7) according to a frequency which is set by a local oscillator (4). After mixing, the signal is sent to a low pass filter (8), is amplified (9), and is sent to a subtractor (10). The multipliers (at $+\pi/2$, π and $-\pi/2$) effectively invert the signal in sync with the phase changes of the local oscillator (4). This repeated inverting effectively "chops-up" any second-order products by switching the polarity of the signal at a rate equal to the frequency of the local oscillator (Col. 4, lines 40-43). This translates any second-order distortion at baseband to the stopband of the low pass filters (10). (Col. 4, lines 43-44). In this manner, distortion caused by second-order product is reduced or eliminated (see Col. 4, lines 21-50).

Arpaia does not mention any kind of sampling signal that, as applied to a switch, *serves to provide energy of the modulated carrier signal [that] is sampled and differentially applied to the respective integration modules and energy storage elements at the frequency of the respective control signal's aperture* as set forth in the claims (e.g., claim 2 "a first switch coupled to a first control signal which comprises a sampling aperture with a specified frequency, wherein the first switch is on and a portion of energy that is distinguishable from noise is transferred from the modulated carrier signal as an output of said first switch during the sampling aperture of the first control signal . . . a first energy storage element that stores the transferred energy from the modulated carrier signal and outputs a down-converted in-phase baseband signal portion of said modulated carrier signal . . . a second switch coupled to a second control signal which comprises a sampling aperture with a specified frequency, wherein the second switch is on and a portion of energy that is distinguishable from noise is transferred from the modulated

[2] References to Title 35 refer to the pre-AIA provisions of the statute since this application is proceeding under the statute as it existed prior to enactment of the AIA.

carrier signal as an output of said second switch during the sampling aperture of the second control signal . . . [and] a second energy storage element that stores the transferred energy from the modulated carrier signal and outputs a down-converted inverted in-phase baseband signal portion of said modulated carrier signal.").

Nor is there any teaching or suggestion in Arpaia with respect to "the portions of transferred energy from each of the first and second switch [being] integrated over time to accumulate said portions of transferred energy from which said down-converted in-phase baseband signal portion and said down-converted inverted in-phase baseband signal portion are derived." Claim 2.

Accordingly, it is respectfully submitted that claim 2 and the claims depending therefrom are neither anticipated nor made obvious by Arpaia or any other reference(s) of record, either singly or in combination.

Conclusion

For at least the reasons noted above, the claims as presented herein for reconsideration are believed to patentably define over the references of record.[3] Thus, favorable reconsideration and allowance is respectfully requested. In the event the Examiner finds any remaining impediment to allowance of this application that may be clarified through a telephone interview, the Examiner is respectfully requested to contact the undersigned attorney at (801) 533-9800.

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge payment of any of the following fees that may be applicable to this communication, or credit any overpayment, to **Deposit Account No. 23-3178**: (1) any filing fees required under 37 CFR § 1.16; (2) any patent application and reexamination processing fees under 37 CFR § 1.17; and/or (3) any post issuance fees under 37 CFR § 1.20. In addition, if any additional extension of time is required, which has not otherwise

[3] The arguments herein have focused on the differences between the independent claims and the references of record, which differences are equally applicable to the dependent claims. This does not mean, however, that by so doing these are necessarily the *only* differences between the claimed invention and the references of record. For example, Arpaia does not teach or suggest *control signals that control a charging and discharging cycle of their respective energy storage elements by controlling the switching devices so that for each switching device the portion of energy is transferred from the modulated carrier signal to the respective energy storage element during a charging part of the cycle and a portion of the transferred energy is discharged during a discharging part of the cycle for each respective switching device. See, e.g.,* dependent claims 8, 9, 24 and 25.

been requested, please consider this a petition therefore and charge any additional fees that may be required to **Deposit Account No. 23-3178**.

Dated this 27th day of February, 2015.

Respectfully submitted,



RICK D. NYDEGGER
Registration No. 28,651
WORKMAN NYDEGGER
Attorneys for Applicant
Customer No. 22913

RDN:re
5008259_1

AMENDMENTS TO THE CLAIMS

This listing of claims replaces all prior versions, and listings, of claims in the application:

Listing of Claims:

1. (Cancelled)

2. (New) A system for frequency down-converting a modulated carrier signal to a baseband signal, comprising:

a first switch coupled to a first control signal which comprises a sampling aperture with a specified frequency, wherein the first switch is on and a portion of energy that is distinguishable from noise is transferred from the modulated carrier signal as an output of said first switch during the sampling aperture of the first control signal;

a first energy storage element that stores the transferred energy from the modulated carrier signal and outputs a down-converted in-phase baseband signal portion of said modulated carrier signal;

a second switch coupled to a second control signal which comprises a sampling aperture with a specified frequency, wherein the second switch is on and a portion of energy that is distinguishable from noise is transferred from the modulated carrier signal as an output of said second switch during the sampling aperture of the second control signal;

a second energy storage element that stores the transferred energy from the modulated carrier signal and outputs a down-converted inverted in-phase baseband signal portion of said modulated carrier signal;

wherein the portions of transferred energy from each of the first and second switch are integrated over time to accumulate said portions of transferred energy from which said down-converted in-phase baseband signal portion and said down-converted inverted in-phase baseband signal portion are derived; and

a first differential amplifier circuit that combines said down-converted in-phase baseband signal portion with said down-converted inverted in-phase baseband signal portion and outputs a first channel down-converted differential in-phase baseband signal.

3. (New) The system of claim 2, wherein said modulated carrier signal includes an amplitude variation.

4. (New) The system of claim 2, wherein said modulated carrier signal includes a phase variation.

5. (New) The system of claim 2, wherein said modulated carrier signal includes a combination of amplitude variation and phase variation.

6. (New) The system of claim 2, wherein the first switch is on for less than one-half cycle of the modulated carrier signal.

7. (New) The system of claim 2, wherein the second switch is on for approximately one-tenth of a cycle of the modulated carrier signal.

8. (New) The system of claim 2, wherein the apertures of the first and second control signals are defined by a windowing function $u(t) - u(t-T_A)$, where the length of the windowing function aperture is T_A, which is equal to an approximate half cycle of the received carrier signal, $S_i(t)$.

9. (New) The system of claim 2, wherein the first and second control signals each control a charging and discharging cycle of their respective energy storage element by respectively controlling the first and second switching devices so that for each switching device said portion of energy that is distinguishable from noise is transferred to the respective storage element when the switch is on during the charging cycle, and a portion of the transferred energy is discharged during the discharging part of the cycle for each respective switching device when the switching device is off.

10. (New) The system of claim 9, wherein for each respective storage element, the energy discharged during any given discharge cycle is not completely discharged, with the remaining undischarged energy from the given discharge cycle becoming an initial condition for the next charging cycle.

11. (New) The system of claim 9, wherein each said control signal operates at an aliasing rate selected so that energy of the modulated carrier signal is sampled and differentially applied to the respective energy storage element at the frequency of the respective control signal's aperture, and each respective energy storage element outputs, respectively, said differential down-converted in-phase baseband signal portion and said down-converted inverted in-phase baseband signal portion of said modulated carrier signal as a result of the alternate charging and discharging applied to the respective energy storage elements.

12. (New) The system of claim 2, wherein the frequencies of the first and second apertures have periods that are two (2) percent or greater of the modulated carrier signal's period.

13. (New) The system of claim 2, wherein the frequencies of the first and second apertures have periods that are five (5) percent or greater of the modulated carrier signal's period.

14. (New) The system of claim 2, wherein the frequencies of the first and second apertures have periods that are ten (10) percent or greater of the modulated carrier signal's period.

15. (New) The system of claim 2, wherein the frequencies of the first and second apertures have periods that are twelve and a half (12.5) percent or greater of the modulated carrier signal's period.

16. (New) The system of claim 2, further comprising:

a first filter that filters said down-converted in-phase baseband signal portion; and

a second filter that filters said down-converted inverted in-phase baseband signal portion.

17. (New) The system of claim 16, wherein the first and second filters each comprise a low-pass filter.

18. (New) The system of claim 2, wherein said portions of transferred energy from each of the first and second switch which are integrated over time to accumulate said portions of transferred energy are integrated by a separate integration module coupled to the output of each said first and second switch.

19. (New) The system of claim 2, wherein said first and second storage elements are capacitive storage circuits, and wherein said portions of transferred energy from each of the first and second switch which are integrated over time to accumulate said portions of transferred energy are integrated by the capacitive storage circuits as they accumulate charge during successive sampling apertures.

20 (New) The system of claim 2, further comprising:

a third switch coupled to a third control signal which comprises a sampling aperture with a specified frequency, wherein the third switch is on and a portion of energy that is distinguishable from noise is transferred from the modulated carrier signal as an output of said third switch during the sampling aperture of the third control signal;

a third energy storage element that stores the transferred energy from the modulated carrier signal and outputs a down-converted quadrature-phase baseband signal portion of said modulated carrier signal;

a fourth switch coupled to a fourth control signal which comprises a sampling aperture with a specified frequency, wherein the fourth switch is on and a portion of energy that is distinguishable from noise is transferred from the modulated carrier signal as an output of said fourth switch during the sampling aperture of the fourth control signal;

a fourth energy storage element that stores the transferred energy from the modulated carrier signal and outputs a down-converted differential quadrature-phase baseband signal portion of said modulated carrier signal;

wherein the portions of transferred energy from each of the third and fourth switch are integrated over time to accumulate said portions of transferred energy from which said down-converted quadrature-phase baseband signal portion and said down-converted differential quadrature-phase baseband signal portion are derived; and

a second differential amplifier circuit that combines said down-converted quadrature-phase baseband signal portion with said down-converted differential quadrature-phase baseband signal portion and outputs a second channel down-converted differential quadrature-phase baseband signal.

21. (New) The system of claim 20, wherein said modulated carrier signal includes an amplitude variation.

22. (New) The system of claim 20, wherein said modulated carrier signal includes a phase variation.

23. (New) The system of claim 20, wherein said modulated carrier signal includes a combination of amplitude variation and phase variation.

24. (New) The system of claim 20, wherein the third switch is on for less than one-half cycle of the modulated carrier signal.

25. (New) The system of claim 20, wherein the fourth switch is on for approximately one-tenth of a cycle of the modulated carrier signal.

26. (New) The system of claim 20, wherein the apertures of the third and fourth control signals are defined by a windowing function $u(t) - u(t-T_A)$, where the length of the windowing function aperture is T_A, which is equal to an approximate half cycle of the received carrier signal, $S_i(t)$.

27. (New) The system of claim 20, wherein the third and fourth control signals each control a charging and discharging cycle of their respective third and fourth energy storage element by respectively controlling the third and fourth switching devices so that for each third and fourth switching device a portion of energy that is distinguishable from noise is transferred to the respective third and fourth storage element when the respective switch is on during the charging cycle, and a portion of the transferred energy is discharged during the discharging part of the cycle for each respective third and fourth switching device when the respective switching device is off.

28. (New) The system of claim 27, wherein for each respective energy storage element, the energy discharged during any given discharge cycle is not completely discharged, with the remaining undischarged energy from the given discharge cycle becoming an initial condition for the next charging cycle.

29. (New) The system of claim 27, wherein each said third and fourth control signal operates at an aliasing rate selected so that energy of the modulated carrier signal is sampled and differentially applied to the respective energy storage element at the frequency of the respective third and fourth control signal's aperture, and each respective third and fourth energy storage element generates, respectively, said differential down-converted in-phase baseband signal portion and said down-converted inverted in-phase baseband signal portion of said modulated carrier signal from the alternate charging and discharging applied to the respective energy storage elements.

30. (New) The system of claim 20, wherein the frequencies of the third and fourth apertures have periods that are two (2) percent or greater of the modulated carrier signal's period.

31. (New) The system of claim 20, wherein the frequencies of the third and fourth apertures have periods that are five (5) percent or greater of the modulated carrier signal's period.

32. (New) The system of claim 20, wherein the frequencies of the third and fourth apertures have periods that are ten (10) percent or greater of the modulated carrier signal's period.

33. (New) The system of claim 20, wherein the frequencies of the third and fourth apertures have periods that are twelve and a half (12.5) percent or greater of the modulated carrier signal's period.

34. (New) The system of claim 20, further comprising:

a first filter that filters said down-converted in-phase baseband signal portion;

a second filter that filters said down-converted inverted in-phase baseband signal portion;

a third filter that filters said down-converted quadrature-phase baseband signal portion;

a fourth filter that filters said down-converted inverted quadrature-phase baseband signal portion.

35. (New) The system of claim 34, wherein the first, second, third, and fourth filters each comprise a low-pass filter.

36. (New) The system of claim 20, wherein said portions of transferred energy from each of the first, second, third and fourth switch which are integrated over time to accumulate said portions of transferred energy are integrated by a separate integration module coupled to the output of each said first, second, third and fourth switch respectively.

37. (New) The system of claim 20, wherein said first, second, third and fourth storage elements are capacitive storage circuits, and wherein said portions of transferred energy from each of the first, second, third and fourth switch which are integrated over time to accumulate said portions of transferred energy are integrated by the capacitive storage circuits of the respective first, second, third and fourth storage elements as they accumulate charge during successive sampling apertures.

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
14/172,392	02/04/2014	David F. Sorrells	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

CONFIRMATION NO. 8448

IMPROPER CPOA LETTER

22913
Workman Nydegger
60 East South Temple
Suite 1000
Salt Lake City, UT 84111

OC000000073814259

Date Mailed: 03/09/2015

NOTICE REGARDING POWER OF ATTORNEY

This is in response to the power of attorney filed 02/27/2015. The power of attorney in this application is not accepted for the reason(s) listed below:

- The power of attorney has not been accepted because the party who is giving power has not been identified. Power of attorney may only be signed by the applicant for patent (37 CFR 1.42) or the patent owner. A party who is not the applicant must become the applicant in accordance with 37 CFR 1.46(c) and appoint any power of attorney in compliance with 37 CFR 3.71 and 3.73. For a reissue application, reexamination proceeding, or supplemental examination proceeding, a patent owner who was not the applicant under 37 CFR 1.46 must appoint any power of attorney in compliance with 37 CFR 3.71 and 3.73. See 37 CFR 1.32(b)(4).

/sleutchit/

Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
14/172,392	02/04/2014	David F. Sorrells	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

CONFIRMATION NO. 8448

22913
Workman Nydegger
60 East South Temple
Suite 1000
Salt Lake City, UT 84111

IMPROPER CFR REQUEST

OC000000073814276

Date Mailed: 03/09/2015

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR CORRECTED FILING RECEIPT

Power of Attorney, Claims, Fees, System Limitations, and Miscellaneous

In response to your request for a corrected Filing Receipt, the Office is unable to comply with your request because:

- Any request to correct or update the name of the applicant must include an application data sheet (ADS) in compliance with 37 CFR 1.76 specifying the correct or updated name of the applicant in the applicant information section. Any request to change the applicant after an original applicant has been specified under 37 CFR 1.46(b) must include a new ADS in compliance with 37 CFR 1.76 specifying the applicant in the applicant information section and comply with 37 CFR 3.71 and 3.73. See 37 CFR 1.46(c).

/sleutchit/

Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101

PTO/AIA/80 (07-12)
Approved for use through 11/30/2014. OMB 0651-0035
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

POWER OF ATTORNEY TO PROSECUTE APPLICATIONS BEFORE THE USPTO

I hereby revoke all previous powers of attorney given in the application identified in the attached statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c).

I hereby appoint:

☒ Practitioners associated with Customer Number: 22913

OR

☐ Practitioner(s) named below (if more than ten patent practitioners are to be named, then a customer number must be used):

Name	Registration Number	Name	Registration Number

As attorney(s) or agent(s) to represent the undersigned before the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) in connection with any and all patent applications assigned only to the undersigned according to the USPTO assignment records or assignments documents attached to this form in accordance with 37 CFR 3.73(c).

Please change the correspondence address for the application identified in the attached statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c) to:

☑ The address associated with Customer Number: 22913

OR

☐

Firm or Individual Name			
Address			
City		State	Zip
Country			
Telephone		Email	

Assignee Name and Address: ParkerVision, Inc.
7915 Baymeadows Way, Suite 400
Jacksonville, FL 32256

A copy of this form, together with a statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c) (Form PTO/AIA/96 or equivalent) is required to be Filed in each application in which this form is used. The statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c) may be completed by one of The practitioners appointed in this form, and must identify the application in which this Power of Attorney is to be filed.

SIGNATURE of Assignee of Record
The individual whose signature and title is supplied below is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee

Signature	Thomas F. Presson	Date	April 14, 2014
Name	Thomas F. Presson (Reg. No. 41,442)	Telephone	904-563-1330
Title	Chief Intellectual Property Counsel - ParkerVision, Inc.		

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.31, 1.32 and 1.33. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 3 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

PTO/AIA/96 (08-12)
Approved for use through 01/31/2013. OMB 0651-0031
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

STATEMENT UNDER 37 CFR 3.73(c)

Applicant/Patent Owner: David F. Sorrells, et al.

Application No./Patent No.: 14/172,392 Filed/Issue Date: February 4, 2014

Titled: Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships

ParkerVision, Inc., a Corporation

(Name of Assignee) (Type of Assignee, e.g., corporation, partnership, university, government agency, etc.)

states that, for the patent application/patent identified above, it is (choose **one** of options 1, 2, 3 or 4 below):

1. ☑ The assignee of the entire right, title, and interest.

2. ☐ An assignee of less than the entire right, title, and interest (check applicable box):

   ☐ The extent (by percentage) of its ownership interest is _____%. Additional Statement(s) by the owners holding the balance of the interest must be submitted to account for 100% of the ownership interest.

   ☐ There are unspecified percentages of ownership. The other parties, including inventors, who together own the entire right, title and interest are:

   Additional Statement(s) by the owner(s) holding the balance of the interest must be submitted to account for the entire right, title, and interest.

3. ☐ The assignee of an undivided interest in the entirety (a complete assignment from one of the joint inventors was made). The other parties, including inventors, who together own the entire right, title, and interest are:

   Additional Statement(s) by the owner(s) holding the balance of the interest must be submitted to account for the entire right, title, and interest.

4. ☐ The recipient, via a court proceeding or the like (*e.g.*, bankruptcy, probate), of an undivided interest in the entirety (a complete transfer of ownership interest was made). The certified document(s) showing the transfer is attached.

The interest identified in option 1, 2 or 3 above (not option 4) is evidenced by either (choose **one** of options A or B below):

A. ☑ An assignment from the inventor(s) of the patent application/patent identified above. The assignment was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at Reel 035039, Frame 0402, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

B. ☐ A chain of title from the inventor(s), of the patent application/patent identified above, to the current assignee as follows:

   1. From: _____ To: _____

      The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

      Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

   2. From: _____ To: _____

      The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

      Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 3.73(b). The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

PTO/AIA/96 (08-12)
Approved for use through 01/31/2013. OMB 0651-0031
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

STATEMENT UNDER 37 CFR 3.73(c)

3. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

4. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

5. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

6. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

☐ Additional documents in the chain of title are listed on a supplemental sheet(s).

☑ As required by 37 CFR 3.73(c)(1)(i), the documentary evidence of the chain of title from the original owner to the assignee was, or concurrently is being, submitted for recordation pursuant to 37 CFR 3.11.

[NOTE: A separate copy (i.e., a true copy of the original assignment document(s)) must be submitted to Assignment Division in accordance with 37 CFR Part 3, to record the assignment in the records of the USPTO. See MPEP 302.08]

The undersigned (whose title is supplied below) is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee.

/Rick D. Nydegger/	March 9, 2015
Signature	Date
Rick D. Nydegger	28651
Printed or Typed Name	Title or Registration Number

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	21708438
Application Number:	14172392
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	8448
Title of Invention:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	David F. Sorrells
Customer Number:	22913
Filer:	Rick D. Nydegger/Ralene Eller
Filer Authorized By:	Rick D. Nydegger
Attorney Docket Number:	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
Receipt Date:	09-MAR-2015
Filing Date:	04-FEB-2014
Time Stamp:	12:38:01
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	no

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1		19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2015-03-09_POA1.pdf	190814 54fe7015512f0fcf30e8166e3c2a906cd84d267e	yes	3

	Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description		
	Document Description	**Start**	**End**
	Power of Attorney	1	1
	Assignee showing of ownership per 37 CFR 3.73.	2	3
Warnings:			
Information:			
	Total Files Size (in bytes):	190814	

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111
If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371
If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office
If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal

Application Number:	14172392
Filing Date:	04-Feb-2014
Title of Invention:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	David F. Sorrells
Filer:	Rick D. Nydegger/Braden Taft
Attorney Docket Number:	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

Filed as Large Entity

Filing Fees for Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD($)
Basic Filing:				
Pages:				
Claims:				
Miscellaneous-Filing:				
Petition:				
Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:				
Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:				
Extension-of-Time:				

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD($)
Miscellaneous:				
Submission- Information Disclosure Stmt	1806	1	180	180
		Total in USD ($)		**180**

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt	
EFS ID:	21732301
Application Number:	14172392
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	8448
Title of Invention:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	David F. Sorrells
Customer Number:	22913
Filer:	Rick D. Nydegger/Braden Taft
Filer Authorized By:	Rick D. Nydegger
Attorney Docket Number:	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
Receipt Date:	10-MAR-2015
Filing Date:	04-FEB-2014
Time Stamp:	20:45:03
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	Credit Card
Payment was successfully received in RAM	$180
RAM confirmation Number	6733
Deposit Account	233178
Authorized User	NYDEGGER, RICK D.
The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows: Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.16 (National application filing, search, and examination fees) Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.17 (Patent application and reexamination processing fees)	

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.19 (Document supply fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.20 (Post Issuance fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.21 (Miscellaneous fees and charges)

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Form (SB08)	19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2015-03-10_IPR-IDS.pdf	454638 f65d04545380de1b9f8318fe8ae61bd25228dde0	no	6
Warnings:					
Information:					
This is not an USPTO supplied IDS fillable form					
2	Non Patent Literature	R1-IPR2014-00948-IPR-Petition.pdf	1980795 39117156fbe9777577f87a67cae4047a050c0edc	no	65
Warnings:					
Information:					
3	Non Patent Literature	R2-IPR2014-00948-PO-Preliminary-Response.pdf	837865 933449ea4e69161a444029e64e7143d0bcf16174	no	62
Warnings:					
Information:					
4	Non Patent Literature	R3-IPR2014-00948-Decision-Institution-of-IPR.pdf	370668 997573d9b490b3970042c167f78f513018ade46a	no	21
Warnings:					
Information:					
5	Non Patent Literature	R4-IPR2014-00946-IPR-Petition.pdf	3385124 c946ae4b3008b7ef4c22e0b5095b3c9a89b48add	no	67
Warnings:					
Information:					
6	Non Patent Literature	R5-IPR2014-00946-PO-Preliminary-Response.pdf	1524994 369971ec970d4d053a31ba8179fd174817564dcd	no	68
Warnings:					
Information:					
7	Non Patent Literature	R6-IPR2014-00946-Decision-Institution-of-IPR.pdf	359892 52941792c13c31800c69ff7a8a29194c61e77cab	no	33
Warnings:					
Information:					

8	Non Patent Literature	R7-IPR2014-00946-Petitioners-Request-for-Rehearing.pdf	466078 4f56e3e2ed0ca9967feb34d3c86d8155a7d5b165	no	11
Warnings:					
Information:					
9	Non Patent Literature	R8-IPR2014-00946-Decision-Petitioners-Request-for-Rehearing.pdf	132041 5e1fcfffa55c9c5e1f72fba8d02d04ebdee41606	no	7
Warnings:					
Information:					
10	Non Patent Literature	R9-IPR2014-00946-Asad-Abidi-Declaration-1.pdf	2019489 46c1851a0907f651354c5782ec11b90b73171240	no	40
Warnings:					
Information:					
11	Non Patent Literature	R10-IPR2014-00946--PVs-Motion-for-SJ-of-No-Invalidity-Part1.pdf	10674147 44bf3aff32f15b853105fcdf4013ce8958db9050	no	150
Warnings:					
Information:					
12	Non Patent Literature	R10-IPR2014-00946--PVs-Motion-for-SJ-of-No-Invalidity-Part2.pdf	14773094 71cc14d8cd2c930a78e25e0613fe177aee3d53b6	no	150
Warnings:					
Information:					
13	Non Patent Literature	R10-IPR2014-00946--PVs-Motion-for-SJ-of-No-Invalidity-Part3.pdf	6410094 d34ea58461c3a0af72b3543e9d5cca3017c7aeac	no	161
Warnings:					
Information:					
14	Non Patent Literature	R11-IPR2014-00946-Order.pdf	4445042 9a9a3300c0e8d5fce1b67401d2c7a26a1d58cb57	no	48
Warnings:					
Information:					
15	Non Patent Literature	R12-IPR2014-00946-Transcript-Markman-Hearing-Part1.pdf	15898074 d11849f9450c724290b173a0cf22a4e669cfb604	no	70
Warnings:					
Information:					
16	Non Patent Literature	R12-IPR2014-00946-Transcript-Markman-Hearing-Part2.pdf	15490480 f6b8886c7eb6edfefbc61b34220eab4cb6933995	no	69
Warnings:					
Information:					

17	Non Patent Literature	R13-IPR2014-00946-Rebuttal-ER-Peter-Weisskopf.pdf	349548 1c8947c2a6f2a031f6d63715e7fcaeafd0e18155	no	14
Warnings:					
Information:					
18	Non Patent Literature	R14-IPR2014-00946-Transcript-Jury-Trial-Day6.PDF	1105326 13a12939d9f5b5027d880f4c8abe0addcdb0eba7	no	182
Warnings:					
Information:					
19	Non Patent Literature	R15-IPR2014-00946-Joint-Claim-Construction-Statement.pdf	561502 97a2df3d67600d39e0d98135bb2374b748bc94dd	no	28
Warnings:					
Information:					
20	Non Patent Literature	R16-IPR2014-00946-Transcript-Jury-Trial-Day2.PDF	1335824 b6812bf2f1713bf256e5c01b3847db840f70761e	no	259
Warnings:					
Information:					
21	Non Patent Literature	R17-IPR2014-00946-Transcript-Jury-Trial-Day3.PDF	1363329 092240b2154acbfdddf31e4ada9f447634b21dd5	no	266
Warnings:					
Information:					
22	Non Patent Literature	R18-IPR2014-00946-Transcript-Jury-Trial-Day4.PDF	1421369 0c228e25fdaf1f5c1e74fe39a15ef7d0fb5f8ac2	no	289
Warnings:					
Information:					
23	Non Patent Literature	R19-IPR2014-00946-PV-Reply-QC-Opp.pdf	203930 9a9b549e055a72f0a14f0cb1c2520c99bfe44489	no	16
Warnings:					
Information:					
24	Non Patent Literature	R20-IPR2014-00946-Order.pdf	338472 93156f633a0931f8b92efcd9fbcc28071964a8ad	no	13
Warnings:					
Information:					
25	Non Patent Literature	R21-IPR2014-00946-Declaration-Prucnal.pdf	2080285 d03b6a48e7777a835a576aa4b5f72afeddd3dc6c	no	68
Warnings:					
Information:					

26	Non Patent Literature	R22-IPR2014-00946-PV-Rebuttal-Claim-Construction-Brief.pdf	295029 c9ec108b9290f66d675c46c513886e3fc8aaec5e	no	26
Warnings:					
Information:					
27	Non Patent Literature	R23-IPR2014-00946-PV-Rsp-Opp-to-QC-Motion.pdf	862817 ac22538fa5154e882faccae33775cababf6934e8	no	72
Warnings:					
Information:					
28	Non Patent Literature	R24-IPR2014-00946-ESTABROOK-Polly-The-Direction-Conversion-Receiver-Part1.pdf	11749071 7b0618acdeb1a0eaca428b6930ce3a762115ef3f	no	100
Warnings:					
Information:					
29	Non Patent Literature	R24-IPR2014-00946-ESTABROOK-Polly-The-Direction-Conversion-Receiver-Part2.pdf	12662194 20835e4accd23c217363a5d7f4bab089dcceff38	no	100
Warnings:					
Information:					
30	Non Patent Literature	R24-IPR2014-00946-ESTABROOK-Polly-The-Direction-Conversion-Receiver-Part3.pdf	12201356 e4a2a633ef3f7e908ddab6efefa7eb131817e78d	no	100
Warnings:					
Information:					
31	Non Patent Literature	R24-IPR2014-00946-ESTABROOK-Polly-The-Direction-Conversion-Receiver-Part4.pdf	12935439 2f942e7c0df423e225ddf9f3317b98b4771fbc5f	no	119
Warnings:					
Information:					
32	Non Patent Literature	R25-IPR2014-00946-Weisskopf-Subharmonic-Sampling.pdf	845072 e7f875272f1d2b8b00fec4796d432e369debb63e	no	7
Warnings:					
Information:					
33	Non Patent Literature	R26-IPR2014-00946-AVITABILE-S-band-digital-downconverter.pdf	245384 b2c3f73285dfb08d9837c7aa5c9eb9dff9e6276b	no	6
Warnings:					
Information:					
34	Non Patent Literature	R27-IPR2014-00946-SHANNON-Communication-in-the-Presence-of-Noise.pdf	5093716 32a3d2454bee5626aa3e1c1bbc64c4d0c88b4ed8	no	12
Warnings:					
Information:					

35	Non Patent Literature	R28-IPR2014-00946-BLACK-Modulation-Theory.pdf	6499769 34e296b0f4d3c15f7d523713ccb815afd3f91fe7	no	5
Warnings:					
Information:					
36	Non Patent Literature	R29-IPR2014-00946-Mangelsdorf-200-MSPS-8-BIT-IC-AD-Converter.pdf	21248059 d2b87d3dfa642c0f93d21957d3b8d315c5d2adeb	no	5
Warnings:					
Information:					
37	Non Patent Literature	R30-IPR2014-00946-COCHRANE-Sampling-Principles.pdf	1359592 35be0bde41e3085c54b716b8710bb55fef1c036a	no	16
Warnings:					
Information:					
38	Non Patent Literature	R31-IPR2014-00946-JANSSEN-An-Experimental-Stroboscopic-Oscilloscope-Part1.pdf	22068843 e1920cdeebb230c2a78b7d744ddfce663fe267f3	no	9
Warnings:					
Information:					
39	Non Patent Literature	R31-IPR2014-00946-JANSSEN-An-Experimental-Stroboscopic-Oscilloscope-Part2.pdf	19859823 7110fd7c539ce9d3801ee83dd4cd80f3e255461a	no	9
Warnings:					
Information:					
40	Non Patent Literature	R32-IPR2014-00946-SCHWARTZ-Communication-Systems-and-Techniques.pdf	3820747 4d8243e405e30f7bab0f8482dcb49e54bfd60a3a	no	4
Warnings:					
Information:					
41	Non Patent Literature	R33-IPR2014-00946-LINDEN-Discussion-of-Sampling.pdf	2301862 1fedbb304fc68c4ecff9fb3a8cd7092ed03d89c9	no	8
Warnings:					
Information:					
42	Non Patent Literature	R34-IPR2014-00946-Ragazzini-Sampled-Data-Control-Systems.pdf	23307387 e033b76388a6b8859e6c7fcb04f35bd0c80c85d2	no	18
Warnings:					
Information:					
43	Non Patent Literature	R35-IPR2014-00946-YEN-Pase-Locked-Sampling-Instruments.pdf	1794029 2406a600b0562da81ab225210e66d97352b51eb2	no	5
Warnings:					
Information:					

44	Fee Worksheet (SB06)	fee-info.pdf	30604 043929e40498a410d7490197c6b6de3624cb7b09	no	2
Warnings:					
Information:					
			Total Files Size (in bytes):	247162893	

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111
If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371
If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office
If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)		
	Application Number	14/172,392
	Filing Date	2014-02-04
	First Named Inventor	David F. Sorrells
	Art Unit	2646
	Examiner Name	Sam Bhattacharya
	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

U.S. PATENT APPLICATIONS					
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Document Number	Filing Date	Name of Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear

U.S. PATENTS					
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Patent Number	Issue Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear

U.S. PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS					
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Publication Number	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS							
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Foreign Patent Document	Country Code	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T [1]

NON PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS			
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium catalog, etc.) date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published	T [1]
	1	IPR2014-00948 Petition for Inter Partes Review of U.S. Patent No. 6,370,371 dated June 12, 2014	☐
	2	IPR2014-00948 Patent Owner Preliminary Response dated September 24, 2014	☐
	3	IPR2014-00948 Decision Institute of Inter Partes Review dated December 18, 2014	☐
	4	IPR2014-00946 Petition for Inter Partes Review of U.S. Patent No. 6,266,518 dated June 12, 2014	☐
	5	IPR2014-00946 Patent Owner Preliminary Response dated September 24, 2014	☐
	6	IPR2014-00946 Decision Institute of Inter Partes Review dated December 18, 2014	☐
	7	IPR2014-00946 Petitioner's Request for Rehearing dated January 2, 2015	☐

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)		
	Application Number	14/172,392
	Filing Date	2014-02-04
	First Named Inventor	David F. Sorrells
	Art Unit	2646
	Examiner Name	Sam Bhattacharya
	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

	8	IPR2014-00946 Decision Petitioner's Request for Rehearing dated January 27, 2015	☐
	9	IPR2014-00946 Exhibit 1004 Asad Abidi Declaration dated June 7, 2014, filed in IPR Proceedings June 12, 2014	☐
	10	IPR2014-00946 Exhibit 1007 ParkerVision's Motion for Summary Judgment of No Invalidity dated May 22, 2013, filed in IPR Proceedings June 12, 2014	☐
	11	IPR2014-00946 Exhibit 1008 Order of Judge Roy Dalton dated February 20, 2013, filed in IPR Proceedings June 12, 2014	☐
	12	IPR2014-00946 Exhibit 1009 Transcript of Markman Hearing dated August 13, 2012, filed in IPR Proceedings June 12, 2014	☐
	13	IPR2014-00946 Exhibit 1010 Rebuttal Expert Report of Peter Weisskopf dated April 1, 2013, filed in IPR Proceedings June 12, 2014	☐
	14	IPR2014-00946 Exhibit 1011 Transcript of Jury Trial Day Six dated October 16, 2013, filed in IPR Proceedings June 12, 2014	☐
	15	IPR2014-00946 Exhibit 1012 Joint Claim Construction Statement dated May 29, 2012, filed in IPR Proceedings June 12, 2014	☐
	16	IPR2014-00946 Exhibit 1013 Transcript of Jury Trial Day Two dated October 9, 2013 filed in IPR Proceedings June 12, 2014	☐
	17	IPR2014-00946 Exhibit 1014 Transcript of Jury Trial Day Three dated October 10, 2013 filed in IPR Proceedings June 12, 2014	☐
	18	IPR2014-00946 Exhibit 1015 Transcript of Jury Trial Day Four dated October 11, 2013 filed in IPR Proceedings June 12, 2014	☐
	19	IPR2014-00946 Exhibit 1016 ParkerVision's Reply to Qualcomm's Opposition to ParkerVision's Motion for Summary Judgment of No Invalidity dated July 11, 2013 filed in IPR Proceedings June 12, 2014	☐
	20	IPR2014-00946 Exhibit 1017 Order dated August 25, 2013 filed in IPR Proceedings June 12, 2014	☐
	21	IPR2014-00946 Exhibit 1018 Declaration of Paul Prucnal, Ph.D. in Support of Plaintiff ParkerVision, Inc.'s Rebuttal Claim Construction Brief dated July 27, 2012 filed in IPR Proceedings June 12, 2014	☐
	22	IPR2014-00946 Exhibit 1020 Plaintiff ParkerVision, Inc.'s Rebuttal Claim Construction Brief dated July 27, 2012 filed in IPR Proceedings June 12, 2014	☐
	23	IPR2014-00946 Exhibit 1021 ParkerVision, Inc.'s Response in Opposition to Qualcomm's Motion for Judgment as a Matter of Law of Noninfringement dated July 27, 2012 filed in IPR Proceedings June 12, 2014	☐

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)		
	Application Number	14/172,392
	Filing Date	2014-02-04
	First Named Inventor	David F. Sorrells
	Art Unit	2646
	Examiner Name	Sam Bhattacharya
	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

	24	EASTABROOK, Polly, Ph.D. "The Direct Conversion Receiver: Analysis and Design of the Front-end Components" Ph.D. dissertation, Stanford University, August 1989.	☐
	25	WEISSKOPF, Peter A.,"Subharmonic Sampling of Microwave Signal Processing Requirements", *Microwave Journal*, Vol. 35, No. 5, May 1992, pgs. 239-247.	☐
	26	AVITABILE, G., et al., "S-band Digital Downcoverter for Radar Applications Based on a GaAs MMIC Fast Sample-and-Hold" *IEEE Proc. on Circuits Devices and Systems.*, Vol. 143, No. 6, December 1996, pgs. 337-342.	☐
	27	Shannon, C.E., "Communication in the presence of Noise," *Proceedings of the IRE,* Vol. 37, No. 1, 1949, ppgs. 10-21.	☐
	28	BLACK, Harold S., *Modulation Theory*, ser. The Bell Telephone Laboratory Series. New York: Van Nostrand, pgs 55-57, 1953.	☐
	29	MANGELSDORF, Chris, et al., "200-MSPS 8-Bit IC A/D Converter Has 250-MHz Bandwidth", *Analog Dialogue* Vol. 22, No. 2, pgs. 3-7, 1988.	☐
	30	COCHRANE, P., "Sampling Principles," in *Microwave Measurements,* 2nd ed., A.E. Bailey, Ed. London: Peter Peregrinus, 1989, Chapter 15, pgs. 344-358.	☐
	31	JANSSEN, J.M.L., "An Experimental 'Stroboscopic' Oscilloscope for Frequencies up to About 50 Mc/s" *Philips Technical Review*, Volume 12, No. 2, pgs. 52 – 81, 1950.	☐
	32	BENNETTT, W.R. "Pulse Modulation" in *Communication Systems and Techniques*, M. Schwartz, et al. Eds. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1966, pgs. 244-245.	☐
	33	LINDEN, D.A., "A Discussion of Sampling Theorems", *Proceedings of the IRE* Vol. 47, No. 7, July 1959, pgs. 1219-1226.	☐
	34	RAGAZZINI, John R., "*Sampled-Data Control Systems*, New York: McGraw-Hill, 1958, Chapter 2, pgs. 12-28.	☐
	35	YEN, Chu-Sun, "Phase-Locked Sampling Instruments" *IEEE Transactions on Instrumentation and Measurement,* Vol. 14, No. 1 and 2, pgs. 64-68, 1965.	☐
	36	HOWARD, Dar, et al., "The Wideband Sampling Gate, An Analysis, Characterization and Application Discussion" in WESCON 1966, Conference Proceedings, 23/1/1-11.	☐
	37	COCHRANE, P., Sampling Principles, in *Microwave Measurements 2nd ed.,* A.E. Bailey, Ed. London: Peter Peregrinus,1989, chapter 16, pgs. 360-384.	☐
	38	DETHLEFSEN, Michael et al., "Design Considerations in the Microwave Transition Analyzer", *Hewlett-Packard Journal,* Vol. 43, No. 5, October 1992, pgs. 63-71.	☐
	39	"SAMPLING NOTES" *Tektronix,* Application Note 85W-23777-0, *1964.*	☐

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)		
	Application Number	14/172,392
	Filing Date	2014-02-04
	First Named Inventor	David F. Sorrells
	Art Unit	2646
	Examiner Name	Sam Bhattacharya
	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

	40	GROVE, W.M., "Sampling for Oscilloscopes and Other RF Systems: Dc Through X-Band", *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques,* December, 1966, pgs. 629-635	☐
	41	FAULKNER, Neil D. et al., "Subharmonic Sampling for the Measurement of Short-Term Stability of Microwave Oscillators", *IEEE Translations on Instrumentation and Measurement,* Volume MITT-14, No. 12, March 1966, pgs. 208-213.	☐
	42	"Fundamentals of RF and Microwave Noise Figure Measurements" Hewlett Packard Application Note AN 57-1, 1983.	☐
	43	TAUB, Herbert et al., "*Principles of Communication Systems*, 2nd Ed, New York: McGraw-Hill, 1986, pgs. 615-623.	☐
	44	BALLO, David J., et al. "The Microwave Transition Analyzer: A New Instrument Architecture for Component and Signal Analysis" *Hewlett-Packard Journal*, Vol. 43, No. 5, October 1992, Pgs. 48-62.	☐
	45	CLARKE, Kenneth K. et al., *Communication Circuits: Analysis and Design*, Reading, MA:Addison-Wesley,1971, pgs. 353-385.	☐
	46	GIBBONS, James F., *Semiconductor Electronics.* New York: McGraw-Hill, 1966.	☐
	47	GUILLEMIN, Ernst A. *Introductory Circuit Theory*, New York: Wiley, 1953, pgs. 520-521.	☐
	48	DESOER, Charles A. et al., *Basic Circuit Theory*, New York: McGraw-Hill, 1969, Chapter 9, pgs. 396-397.	☐
	49	ESTABROOK, P. et al., "A Mixer Computer-Aided Design Tool Based in the Time Domain" IEEE MTT-5 Digest, 1988, pgs. 1107-1110.	☐
	50	IPR2014-00947 Petition for Inter Partes Review of U.S. Patent No. 6,061,551 dated June 12, 2014	☐
	51	IPR2014-00947 Patent Owner Preliminary Response dated September 24, 2014	☐
	52	IPR2014-00947 Decision Institute of Inter Partes Review dated December 18, 2014	☐
	53	IPR2014-001107 Petition for Inter Partes Review of U.S. Patent No. 7,496,342 dated July 2, 2014	☐
	54	IPR2014-001107 Patent Owner Preliminary Response dated October 10, 2014	☐
	55	IPR2014-001107 Decision Institute of Inter Partes Review dated January 8, 2014	☐

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)		
	Application Number	14/172,392
	Filing Date	2014-02-04
	First Named Inventor	David F. Sorrells
	Art Unit	2646
	Examiner Name	Sam Bhattacharya
	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

	56	IPR2014-001107 Asad Abidi Declaration dated July 2, 2014, filed in IPR Proceedings July 2, 2014	☐
	57	OXNER, Ed, "FETs in Balanced Mixers" *Siliconix,* Application Note, AN-72-1, 1979, pgs. 6-29 to 6-38	☐
	58	RAZAVI, Behzad, *Principles of Data Conversion System Design*, IEEE Press, 1995, pgs. 7-28.	☐
	59	BULT, Klaas et al., "A CMOS Four-Quadrant Analog Multiplier" IEEE Journal of Solid-State Circuits, Vol. sc-21, No. 3, June 1986, pgs. 430-435.	☐
	60	Thornton, Richard D. et al. *MultiStage Transistor Circuits,* New York: Wiley, 1965	☐
	61	DeMaw, Doug, *Practical RF Design Manual,* Prentice-Hall, 1982, pgs. 118-213.	☐
	62	IPR2014-01107 Parkervision's Response in Opposition to Qualcomm's Renewed Motion for Judgment as a Matter of Law and Motion for New Trial Regarding Invalidity, dated January 24, 2014 filed in IPR Proceedings July 2, 2014.	☐
	63	Zimmerman, H.J. et al. *Electronic Circuit Theory*. NewYork: Wiley, 1959, pgs. 142-144.	☐
	64	"U430/431 Matched N-Channel JFET Pairs" Siliconix, Data Sheet P-37405 – Rev.D., 1994.	☐
	65	Schelkunoff, S.A., et al. *Antennas: Theory and Practice*. New York: Wiley, 1952, pgs. 324-325.	☐

OFFICE ACTION / NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE DOCUMENTS				
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Application Number	Mail Date	Document

EXAMINER SIGNATURE			
Examiner Signature		Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

[1]Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language translation is attached.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)		
	Application Number	14/172,392
	Filing Date	2014-02-04
	First Named Inventor	David F. Sorrells
	Art Unit	2646
	Examiner Name	Sam Bhattacharya
	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

CERTIFICATION STATEMENT

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

☐ That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

OR

☐ That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).

☐ See attached certification statement.

☒ Fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.

☐ None

☒ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge payment of any of the following fees that may be applicable to this communication, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account No. 23-3178: (1) any filing fees required under 37 CFR § 1.16; and/or (2) any patent application and reexamination processing fees under 37 CFR § 1.17.

SIGNATURE

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	Rick D. Nydegger	Date	2015-03-10
Name/Print	Rick D. Nydegger	Registration Number	28,651

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 hour to complete, including gathering, preparing and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

5023839_1

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	21732439
Application Number:	14172392
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	8448
Title of Invention:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	David F. Sorrells
Customer Number:	22913
Filer:	Rick D. Nydegger/Braden Taft
Filer Authorized By:	Rick D. Nydegger
Attorney Docket Number:	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
Receipt Date:	10-MAR-2015
Filing Date:	04-FEB-2014
Time Stamp:	21:20:47
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	no

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Non Patent Literature	R36-IPR2014-00946-Impact-of-Ultra-Wideband-Sampling.pdf	3330068 4c080dcf683d956dce06b7e6d20212c5fe223d12	no	13
Warnings:					
Information:					

2	Non Patent Literature	R37-IPR2014-00946-COCHRANE-Sampling-Principles.pdf	2467402 e530d22398b728b90c06f0f66dcc9ca80fced7cf	no	27
Warnings:					
Information:					
3	Non Patent Literature	R38-IPR2014-00946-Dethlefsen-Design-Considerations-Part1.pdf	12507587 d5dd01d919f5d9ebe832888bf7320a0c89f480c7	no	3
Warnings:					
Information:					
4	Non Patent Literature	R38-IPR2014-00946-Dethlefsen-Design-Considerations-Part2.pdf	16394805 e6254a3c62529da5a20dcd1cc24e9a422e91b921	no	3
Warnings:					
Information:					
5	Non Patent Literature	R38-IPR2014-00946-Dethlefsen-Design-Considerations-Part3.pdf	14796350 077046c6e112cff3aa356c9b4f5b8a411aa84fc8	no	3
Warnings:					
Information:					
6	Non Patent Literature	R39-IPR2014-00946-Sampling-Notes.pdf	5997827 ff2c0b0b2748af2a85e69b378ad4de18f1e698a6	no	15
Warnings:					
Information:					
7	Non Patent Literature	R40-IPR2014-00946-GROVE-Sampling-for-Oscilloscopes.pdf	962626 a7808fc94bbe96f7728f02fffa48d14468a98810	no	7
Warnings:					
Information:					
8	Non Patent Literature	R41-IPR2014-00946-FAULKER-Subharmonic-Sampling.pdf	2116163 2ce2d39a73036a5aa4555ce5723991b24fe3f3df	no	6
Warnings:					
Information:					
9	Non Patent Literature	R42-IPR2014-00946-Fundamentals-of-RF-Part1.pdf	20621833 9a30ab9d151ea18dd7ec497dbc44f5242b5fdfed	no	15
Warnings:					
Information:					
10	Non Patent Literature	R42-IPR2014-00946-Fundamentals-of-RF-Part2.pdf	15500452 49be6fbeabea2e352a652f1d502103cd29c7f7f2	no	15
Warnings:					
Information:					

11	Non Patent Literature	R42-IPR2014-00946-Fundamentals-of-RF-Part3.pdf	11528901 78864a088cef316028a603358bdea04a25c2ec11	no	11
Warnings:					
Information:					
12	Non Patent Literature	R43-IPR2014-00946-TAUB-Principles-of-Communication-Systems.pdf	6844659 5f305cdc65e397570835c8a12878ac6ea65c0b8f	no	7
Warnings:					
Information:					
13	Non Patent Literature	R44-IPR2014-00946-BALLO-The-Microwave-Transition-Analyzer-Part1.pdf	21312477 fb5577de140096c91455f27f3ff8ae2bd3d98d72	no	4
Warnings:					
Information:					
14	Non Patent Literature	R44-IPR2014-00946-BALLO-The-Microwave-Transition-Analyzer-Part2.pdf	19675160 468423444b5dd3a990ebbb87797528a578779d5f	no	4
Warnings:					
Information:					
15	Non Patent Literature	R44-IPR2014-00946-BALLO-The-Microwave-Transition-Analyzer-Part3.pdf	19933463 779fa43909af139ecd7f72f72d3d43b285e6709e	no	4
Warnings:					
Information:					
16	Non Patent Literature	R44-IPR2014-00946-BALLO-The-Microwave-Transition-Analyzer-Part4.pdf	8272962 4f4053c746918fdbfc94b444ac7d1f5fecbb9216	no	3
Warnings:					
Information:					
17	Non Patent Literature	R45-IPR2014-00946-CLARKE-Communication-Circuits.pdf	11750416 2e3b2346e104d419f51948583257314c3d506c69	no	19
Warnings:					
Information:					
18	Non Patent Literature	R46-IPR2014-00946-GIBBONS-Semiconductor-Electronics.pdf	5390016 e5afb4fe38e60fefc1a5d1f3982482af2b567e75	no	6
Warnings:					
Information:					
19	Non Patent Literature	R47-IPR2014-00946-GUILLEMIN-Introductory-Circuit-Theory.pdf	2605402 dd282bdc12833da33b4a4b2b0005f664270ee2e1	no	4
Warnings:					
Information:					

20	Non Patent Literature	R48-IPR2014-00946-DESOER-Basic-Circuit-Theory.pdf	3954094 19cc993b56bfbc3297a91d7b88ad66a54ee43237	no	4
Warnings:					
Information:					
21	Non Patent Literature	R49-IPR2014-00946-Estabrook-A-Mixer-Computer-Aided-Design.pdf	957531 12cd7b2546f71a263ef46ac380dd9995af810627	no	4
Warnings:					
Information:					
22	Non Patent Literature	R50-IPR2014-00947-IPR-Petition.pdf	2172405 5eaae30ed2c6e798f7cd4289cbcbeb2f5f803716	no	67
Warnings:					
Information:					
23	Non Patent Literature	R51-IPR2014-00947-PO-Preliminary-Response.pdf	495365 5f3df51436bce28ddc3bd155f0f5fe8cb931ada6	no	60
Warnings:					
Information:					
24	Non Patent Literature	R52-IPR2014-00947-Decision-Institution-IPR.pdf	246374 9f477897b0c05dfe33407ab52d6f5dda3d03a5ab	no	26
Warnings:					
Information:					
25	Non Patent Literature	R53-IPR2014-01107-IPR-Petition.pdf	1588507 71d1f3515f04efbabd67d42acc11f83c492440ac	no	51
Warnings:					
Information:					
26	Non Patent Literature	R54-IPR2014-01107-PO-Preliminary-Response.pdf	1498757 37b7ddf2684394ab959d47bacb7abbdf1893a2e8	no	63
Warnings:					
Information:					
27	Non Patent Literature	R55-IPR2014-01107-Institution-Decision.pdf	513807 9b422af27375bda2756450 01fc2dd5d56bf3edb7	no	31
Warnings:					
Information:					
28	Non Patent Literature	R56-IPR2014-01107-Abidi-Declaration-2.pdf	760105 190ed3b8f8bc86421b82f76ba98e8be2b5985f19	no	11
Warnings:					
Information:					

29	Non Patent Literature	R57-IPR2014-01107-Oxner-Application-Note.pdf	922390 3582d4832be81d57c097ee17c155adeff630c41f	no	10
Warnings:					
Information:					
30	Non Patent Literature	R58-IPR2014-01107-Razavi-Principles-Data-Conversion.pdf	3634524 c8c79ec8241f9d2da0f1bf4313d1dc675605b2f4	no	17
Warnings:					
Information:					
31	Non Patent Literature	R59-IPR2014-01107-BULT-A-CMOS-Four-Quadrant-Analog.pdf	937611 a6d6fcbb7cf487ef21a7f37bc26b875a6282968a	no	6
Warnings:					
Information:					
32	Non Patent Literature	R60-IPR2014-01107-Thornton-Multistage-Transistor-Circuits.pdf	9251025 f0a844a4f0148a8b2170290f9a99336c2a333dcf	no	14
Warnings:					
Information:					
33	Non Patent Literature	R61-IPR2014-01107-DEMAW-Practical-RF-DesignManual.pdf	2455320 3eb20ad08d7e836d671941d8c3d80cc80f77e44e	no	27
Warnings:					
Information:					
34	Non Patent Literature	R62-IPR2014-01107-PVs-Resp-in-Opp.pdf	315493 d065d6ef362cb9f4dbe937194504d39736eb5de8	no	35
Warnings:					
Information:					
35	Non Patent Literature	R63-IPR2014-01107-Zimmerman-Electronic-Circuit-Theory.pdf	4089123 44f55955c010fab1a7f010090c244a90441314ff	no	5
Warnings:					
Information:					
36	Non Patent Literature	R64-IPR2014-01107-Siliconix-datasheet.pdf	485538 da9ef52d81a0e27d03a8f46fed0925ba16f6b3b3	no	6
Warnings:					
Information:					
37	Non Patent Literature	R65-IPR2014-01107-Schelkunoff-Antennas.pdf	381833 a2a7552a29d67bfa731468691ac589b1860dda94	no	1
Warnings:					
Information:					

Total Files Size (in bytes):	236668371

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111
If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371
If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office
If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal

Application Number:	14172392
Filing Date:	04-Feb-2014
Title of Invention:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	David F. Sorrells
Filer:	Rick D. Nydegger/Braden Taft
Attorney Docket Number:	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

Filed as Large Entity

Filing Fees for Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD($)
Basic Filing:				
Pages:				
Claims:				
Miscellaneous-Filing:				
Petition:				
Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:				
Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:				
Extension-of-Time:				

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD($)
Miscellaneous:				
Submission- Information Disclosure Stmt	1806	1	180	180
		Total in USD ($)		**180**

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt	
EFS ID:	21744100
Application Number:	14172392
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	8448
Title of Invention:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	David F. Sorrells
Customer Number:	22913
Filer:	Rick D. Nydegger/Braden Taft
Filer Authorized By:	Rick D. Nydegger
Attorney Docket Number:	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
Receipt Date:	11-MAR-2015
Filing Date:	04-FEB-2014
Time Stamp:	19:28:12
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	Credit Card
Payment was successfully received in RAM	$180
RAM confirmation Number	5440
Deposit Account	233178
Authorized User	NYDEGGER, RICK D.
The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows: Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.16 (National application filing, search, and examination fees) Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.17 (Patent application and reexamination processing fees)	

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.19 (Document supply fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.20 (Post Issuance fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.21 (Miscellaneous fees and charges)

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Form (SB08)	19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2015-03-11_IPR-IDS.pdf	148751 46d63d9b4d83ea10b6ac4a85d68c902a2389bf5c	no	2
Warnings:					
Information:					
This is not an USPTO supplied IDS fillable form					
2	Non Patent Literature	R66-IPR2014-CLARKE-Communication-Circuits.pdf	1598739 a205a923e28e06c50a00ec9147f9fa258f09e629	no	3
Warnings:					
Information:					
3	Fee Worksheet (SB06)	fee-info.pdf	30595 3fdfbe02fd6b4810f98ff5415e1511422d59e03a	no	2
Warnings:					
Information:					
		Total Files Size (in bytes):	1778085		

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

<u>New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111</u>
If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

<u>National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371</u>
If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

<u>New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office</u>
If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)		
	Application Number	14/172,392
	Filing Date	2014-02-04
	First Named Inventor	David F. Sorrells
	Art Unit	2646
	Examiner Name	Sam Bhattacharya
	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

U.S. PATENT APPLICATIONS					
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Document Number	Filing Date	Name of Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear

U.S. PATENTS					
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Patent Number	Issue Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1	3241078	1966-03-15	Jones, Howard E.	

U.S. PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS					
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Publication Number	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS							
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Foreign Patent Document	Country Code	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T [1]

NON PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS			
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium catalog, etc.) date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published	T [1]
	2	CLARKE, Kenneth K. et al., *Communication Circuits: Analysis and Design*, Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley,1971, pgs. 467.	☐

OFFICE ACTION / NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE DOCUMENTS				
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Application Number	Mail Date	Document

EXAMINER SIGNATURE			
Examiner Signature		Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

[1]Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language translation is attached.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)		
	Application Number	14/172,392
	Filing Date	2014-02-04
	First Named Inventor	David F. Sorrells
	Art Unit	2646
	Examiner Name	Sam Bhattacharya
	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

CERTIFICATION STATEMENT

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

☐ That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

OR

☐ That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).

☐ See attached certification statement.

☒ Fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.

☐ None

☒ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge payment of any of the following fees that may be applicable to this communication, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account No. 23-3178: (1) any filing fees required under 37 CFR § 1.16; and/or (2) any patent application and reexamination processing fees under 37 CFR § 1.17.

SIGNATURE

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	/Rick D. Nydegger/	Date	2015-03-11
Name/Print	Rick D. Nydegger	Registration Number	28,651

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 hour to complete, including gathering, preparing and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

2113423_1.DOC

Index of Claims	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination
	14172392	SORRELLS ET AL.
	Examiner	**Art Unit**
	SAM BHATTACHARYA	2646

✓	Rejected	-	Cancelled	N	Non-Elected	A	Appeal
=	Allowed	÷	Restricted	I	Interference	O	Objected

☐ Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant ☐ CPA ☐ T.D. ☐ R.1.47

CLAIM		DATE								
Final	Original	08/22/2014	03/03/2015							
	1	✓								
1	2		=							
2	3		=							
3	4		=							
4	5		=							
5	6		=							
6	7		=							
7	8		=							
8	9		=							
9	10		=							
10	11		=							
11	12		=							
12	13		=							
13	14		=							
14	15		=							
15	16		=							
16	17		=							
17	18		=							
18	19		=							
19	20		=							
20	21		=							
21	22		=							
22	23		=							
23	24		=							
24	25		=							
25	26		=							
26	27		=							
27	28		=							
28	29		=							
29	30		=							
30	31		=							
31	32		=							
32	33		=							
33	34		=							
34	35		=							
35	36		=							

Index of Claims	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination
	14172392	SORRELLS ET AL.
	Examiner	Art Unit
	SAM BHATTACHARYA	2646

✓	Rejected	-	Cancelled	N	Non-Elected	A	Appeal
=	Allowed	÷	Restricted	I	Interference	O	Objected

☐ Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant ☐ CPA ☐ T.D. ☐ R.1.47

CLAIM		DATE								
Final	Original	08/22/2014	03/03/2015							
36	37		=							

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT

(Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

Application Number	14/172,392
Filing Date	2014-02-04
First Named Inventor	David F. Sorrells
Art Unit	2646
Examiner Name	Sam Bhattacharya
Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

U.S. PATENT APPLICATIONS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Document Number	Filing Date	Name of Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1	13/899,180	21-May-2013	Rawlins et al.	
	2	14/473,410	29-Aug-2014	Sorrells et al.	
	3	14/561,484	5-Dec-2014	Rawlins et al.	

U.S. PATENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Patent Number	Issue Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	4	4868908	19-Sep-1989	Pless et al.	
	5	4968958	6-Nov-1990	Hoare	
	6	6073001	6-Jun-2000	Sokoler	
	7	6085073	4-Jul-2000	Palermo et al.	
	8	6307894	23-Oct-2001	Edison et al.	
	9	6363262	26-Mar-2002	McNicol, John Duncan	
	10	6397051	28-May-2002	Abbasi et al.	
	11	6512798	28-Jan-2003	Akiyama et al.	
	12	6643502	4-Nov-2003	Van De Plassche et al.	
	13	6647250	11-Nov-2003	Bultman et al.	
	14	6853690	8-Feb-2005	Sorrells et al.	
	15	6879817	12-Apr-2005	Sorrells et al.	
	16	7010286	7-Mar-2006	Sorrells et al.	
	17	7218899	15-May-2007	Sorrells et al.	
	18	7386292	10-Jun-2008	Sorrells et al.	
	19	7496342	24-Feb-2009	Sorrells et al.	
	20	7693230	6-Apr-2010	Sorrells et al.	
	21	7773688	10-Aug-2010	Sorrells et al.	
	22	7994968	9-Aug-2011	McEwan, Thomas Edward	
	23	8571135	29-Oct-2013	Sorrells et al.	
	24	8588725	19-Nov-2013	Sorrells et al.	
	25	8594228	26-Nov-2013	Sorrells et al.	

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /S.E

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)		
	Application Number	14/172,392
	Filing Date	2014-02-04
	First Named Inventor	David F. Sorrells
	Art Unit	2646
	Examiner Name	Sam Bhattacharya
	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

	26	8649753	11-Feb-2014	Rofougaran et al.	
	27	8660513	25-Feb-2014	Sorrells et al.	
	28	8824993	2-Aug-2014	Sorrells et al.	

U.S. PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS					
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Publication Number	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	29	20030227983	22-Jan-2008	Milne et al.	
	30	20130109338	2-May-2013	Sorrells et al.	
	31	20130115906	9-May-2013	Forman et al.	
	32	20130122835	16-May-2013	Sorrells et al.	
	33	20130122846	16-May-2013	Sorrells et al.	
	34	20130182749	18-Jul-2013	Sorrells et al.	
	35	20130202070	8-Aug-2013	Sorrells et al.	
	36	20130225110	29-Aug-2013	Karlquist, Richard K.	
	37	20140226751	14-Aug-2014	Sorrells et al.	
	38	20140233670	21-Aug-2014	Sorrells et al.	
	39	20140308909	16-Oct-2014	Sorrells et al.	
	40	20140308911	16-Oct-2014	Sorrells et al.	
	41	20140308912	16-Oct-2014	Sorrells et al.	
	42	20140308913	16-Oct-2014	Sorrells et al.	

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS							
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Foreign Patent Document	Country Code	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T [1]
	43	WO 9722185	WO	19-Jun-1997	Ericsson GE Mobile Inc (US)		☐

NON PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS			
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium catalog, etc.) date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published	T [1]
	44	MAAS S. A. "A Gaas Mesfet Mixer with Very Low Intermodulation", IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques, IEEE Service Center, Piscataway, NJ, US, vol. MTT-35, no. 4, 1-April-1987, pages 425-429.	☐

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /S.E

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)		
	Application Number	14/172,392
	Filing Date	2014-02-04
	First Named Inventor	David F. Sorrells
	Art Unit	2646
	Examiner Name	Sam Bhattacharya
	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

OFFICE ACTION / NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE DOCUMENTS				
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.	Application Number	Mail Date	Document
	45	12/881,912	20-Jan-2012	Notice of Allowance
	46	12/881,912	16-Feb-2012	Notice of Allowance
	47	13/231,244	23-Aug-2013	Notice of Allowance
	48	13/549,213	8-Oct-2013	Notice of Allowance
	49	13/428,816	11-Oct-2013	Notice of Allowance
	50	13/829,795	15-Oct-2013	Office Action
	51	14/053,815	6-Jun-2014	Office Action
	52	14/075,535	30-Jul-2014	Office Action
	53	14/053,999	3-Sep-2014	Office Action
	54	14/081,501	3-Sep-2014	Office Action
	55	14/085,008	5-Sep-2014	Office Action
	56	14/053,327	9-Sep-2014	Office Action
	57	14/075,738	11-Sep-2014	Office Action
	58	14/054,548	26-Sep-2014	Office Action

EXAMINER SIGNATURE			
Examiner Signature	/Sam Bhattacharya/	Date Considered	03/01/2015

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

[1]Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language translation is attached.

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /S.E

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT

(Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

Application Number	14/172,392
Filing Date	2014-02-04
First Named Inventor	David F. Sorrells
Art Unit	2646
Examiner Name	Sam Bhattacharya
Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

CERTIFICATION STATEMENT

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

☐ That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

OR

☐ That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).

☐ See attached certification statement.

☒ Fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.

☐ None

☒ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge payment of any of the following fees that may be applicable to this communication, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account No. 23-3178: (1) any filing fees required under 37 CFR § 1.16; and/or (2) any patent application and reexamination processing fees under 37 CFR § 1.17.

SIGNATURE

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	/Rick D. Nydegger/	Date	27-Feb-2015
Name/Print	Rick D. Nydegger	Registration Number	28,651

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 hour to complete, including gathering, preparing and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

2113423_1.DOC

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /S.E

EAST Search History

EAST Search History (Prior Art)

Ref #	Hits	Search Query	DBs	Default Operator	Plurals	Time Stamp
L2	17	(switch$3 near7 integrat$3 near8 accumulat$3) and sorrells.in.	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	ON	2015/03/03 13:25
S1	12	finite adj2 time near2 integrat$3 near8 accumulat$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2009/09/30 12:38
S2	1	("7515896").PN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2009/10/23 13:49
S3	14021	((455/413,113,118,130,131,182.1,190.1,191.1,313,323,343,350) or (327/113) or (375/130,142,143,150,152,316,343)).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2009/10/23 13:53
S4	1519	time near2 integrat$3 near8 accumulat$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2009/10/23 16:34
S5	14021	((455/413,113,118,130,131,182.1,190.1,191.1,313,323,343,350) or (327/113) or (375/130,142,143,150,152,316,343)).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2009/10/23 16:35
S6	66	S5 and S4	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2009/10/23 16:35
S7	12	finite adj2 time near2 integrat$3 near8 accumulat$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2009/10/23 16:35
S8	57	S6 not S7	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2009/10/23 16:35
S9	0	downconver$4 near7 time near2 integrat$3 near8 accumulat$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2009/10/23 16:40
S10	12	finite adj2 time near2 integrat$3 near8 accumulat$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2009/10/24 16:17
S11	3634	time near2 integrat$3 near8 (accumulat$3 sum$4 add$3)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2009/10/24 16:47
S12	14	finite adj2 time near2 integrat$3 near8 (accumulat$3 sum$4 add$3)	US-PGPUB; USPAT;	OR	ON	2009/10/24 16:48

			USOCR			
S13	14	(downconvert$3 or down adj2 convert$3) near8 integrat$3 near8 (accumulat$3 sum$4 add$3)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2009/10/24 16:49
S14	14782	((455/413,113,118,130,131,182.1,190.1,191.1,313,323,343,350) or (327/113) or (375/130,142,143,150,152,316,343)).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2010/05/10 10:10
S15	3	(("7515896") or ("6687493") or ("6061551")).PN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2010/05/10 10:11
S16	1741	match$3 near6 (filter$3 correlat$3) near10 combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2010/05/10 10:14
S17	1609	match$3 near6 filter$3 near10 combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2010/05/10 10:14
S18	1395	match$3 near3 filter$3 near10 combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2010/05/10 10:16
S19	324	S14 and S18	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2010/05/10 10:16
S20	1	match$3 near3 filter$3 near10 combin$3 near12 (downconvert$3 or "down-converting")	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2010/05/10 10:18
S23	14	(("7,653,145") or ("7,653,158") or ("5,222,250") or ("6,188,221") or ("7,693,230") or ("7,693,502") or ("7,697,916") or ("5,400,363") or ("6,215,830") or ("6,363,126") or ("7,724,845") or ("6,332,007") or ("5,449,939") or ("5,528,068")).PN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2010/06/30 15:13
S24	20067	((455/413,113,118,130,131,182.1,190.1,191.1,313,323,343,350) or (327/113) or (375/130,142,143,150,152,316,343)).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2013/07/28 20:33
S25	1	match$3 near3 filter$3 near10 combin$3 near12 (downconvert$3 or "down-converting")	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2013/07/28 20:33
S26	1	inver$4 near15 (downconvert$3 or "down-converting") near8 combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2013/07/28 20:35
S27	23	inver$4 near15 (downconvert$3 or "down-converting") same combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2013/07/29 09:20
S28	1	("20130101064").PN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2013/07/29 10:02
S29	1992	inver$4 near10 "in-phase"	US-PGPUB;	OR	OFF	2013/07/29 10:02

			USPAT			
S30	1	S28 and S29	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	OFF	2013/07/29 10:03
S31	1	(inver$4 same "in-phase") and S28	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	OFF	2013/07/29 10:03
S32	510	inver$4 near15 "in-phase" same combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2013/07/29 10:56
S33	79	inver$4 near15 "in-phase" near12 combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2013/07/29 10:56
S34	1	("6192225").PN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2013/07/29 11:12
S37	1	inver$4 near15 (downconvert$3 or "down-converting") near8 combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2013/09/27 16:31
S38	20397	((455/413,113,118,130,131,182.1,190.1,191.1,313,323,343,350) or (327/113) or (375/130,142,143,150,152,316,343)).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2013/09/27 16:32
S39	20	finite adj2 time near2 integrat$3 near8 accumulat$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2013/09/27 16:32
S40	0	control$4 near10 discharg$3 near10 alias$3 near10 inver$4	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2013/09/27 16:36
S41	4	control$4 same discharg$3 same alias$3 same inver$4	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2013/09/27 16:36
S45	21845	((455/413,113,118,130,131,182.1,190.1,191.1,313,323,343,350) or (327/113) or (375/130,142,143,150,152,316,343)).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2014/08/22 12:56
S46	561	inver$4 near15 "in-phase" same combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2014/08/22 12:56
S47	21845	((455/413,113,118,130,131,182.1,190.1,191.1,313,323,343,350) or (327/113) or (375/130,142,143,150,152,316,343)).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2014/08/22 12:56
S48	6	control$4 same discharg$3 same alias$3 same inver$4	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2014/08/22 12:56
S49	561	inver$4 near15 "in-phase" same combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2014/08/22 12:57

S50	2682	match$3 near6 (filter$3 correlat$3) near10 combin$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2015/03/03 11:02
S51	22623	((455/413,113,118,130,131,182.1,190.1,191.1,313,323,343,350) or (327/113) or (375/130,142,143,150,152,316,343)).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2015/03/03 11:02
S52	2484	time near2 integrat$3 near8 accumulat$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2015/03/03 11:02
S53	22	finite adj2 time near2 integrat$3 near8 accumulat$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	ON	2015/03/03 11:03
S54	765	switch$3 near7 integrat$3 near8 accumulat$3	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	ON	2015/03/03 11:04
S55	174	switch$3 near7 integrat$3 near8 accumulat$3 same (amp amplifi$6)	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	ON	2015/03/03 11:06
S56	19	(switch$3 near7 integrat$3 near8 accumulat$3 same (amp amplifi$6)).clm.	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	ON	2015/03/03 11:09

3/ 3/ 2015 1:30:44 PM
C:\ Users\ sbhattacharya\ Documents\ EAST\ Workspaces\ 14172392.wsp

Search Notes	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination
	14172392	SORRELLS ET AL.
	Examiner	Art Unit
	SAM BHATTACHARYA	2646

CPC- SEARCHED		
Symbol	Date	Examiner

CPC COMBINATION SETS - SEARCHED		
Symbol	Date	Examiner

US CLASSIFICATION SEARCHED			
Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner
455	413,113,118,130,131,182.1,190.1,191.1,313,323,343,350	8/22/2014	sb
327	113	8/22/2014	sb
375	130,142,143,150,152,316,343	8/22/2014	sb
Updated		3/3/2015	sb

SEARCH NOTES		
Search Notes	Date	Examiner
East	8/22/2014	sb
Updated East	3/3/2015	sb

INTERFERENCE SEARCH			
US Class/ CPC Symbol	US Subclass / CPC Group	Date	Examiner
455	413,113,118,130,131,182.1,190.1,191.1,313,323,343,350	3/3/2015	sb
327	113	3/3/2015	sb
375	130,142,143,150,152,316,343	3/3/2015	sb
East		3/3/2015	sb

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE AND FEE(S) DUE

22913 7590 03/12/2015

Workman Nydegger
60 East South Temple
Suite 1000
Salt Lake City, UT 84111

EXAMINER
BHATTACHARYA, SAM

ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
2646	

DATE MAILED: 03/12/2015

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
14/172,392	02/04/2014	David F. Sorrells	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2	8448

TITLE OF INVENTION: Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships

APPLN. TYPE	ENTITY STATUS	ISSUE FEE DUE	PUBLICATION FEE DUE	PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
nonprovisional	UNDISCOUNTED	$960	$0	$0	$960	06/12/2015

THE APPLICATION IDENTIFIED ABOVE HAS BEEN EXAMINED AND IS ALLOWED FOR ISSUANCE AS A PATENT. PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS CLOSED. THIS NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE IS NOT A GRANT OF PATENT RIGHTS. THIS APPLICATION IS SUBJECT TO WITHDRAWAL FROM ISSUE AT THE INITIATIVE OF THE OFFICE OR UPON PETITION BY THE APPLICANT. SEE 37 CFR 1.313 AND MPEP 1308.

THE ISSUE FEE AND PUBLICATION FEE (IF REQUIRED) MUST BE PAID WITHIN THREE MONTHS FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS NOTICE OR THIS APPLICATION SHALL BE REGARDED AS ABANDONED. THIS STATUTORY PERIOD CANNOT BE EXTENDED. SEE 35 U.S.C. 151. THE ISSUE FEE DUE INDICATED ABOVE DOES NOT REFLECT A CREDIT FOR ANY PREVIOUSLY PAID ISSUE FEE IN THIS APPLICATION. IF AN ISSUE FEE HAS PREVIOUSLY BEEN PAID IN THIS APPLICATION (AS SHOWN ABOVE), THE RETURN OF PART B OF THIS FORM WILL BE CONSIDERED A REQUEST TO REAPPLY THE PREVIOUSLY PAID ISSUE FEE TOWARD THE ISSUE FEE NOW DUE.

HOW TO REPLY TO THIS NOTICE:

I. Review the ENTITY STATUS shown above. If the ENTITY STATUS is shown as SMALL or MICRO, verify whether entitlement to that entity status still applies.

If the ENTITY STATUS is the same as shown above, pay the TOTAL FEE(S) DUE shown above.

If the ENTITY STATUS is changed from that shown above, on PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL, complete section number 5 titled "Change in Entity Status (from status indicated above)".

For purposes of this notice, small entity fees are 1/2 the amount of undiscounted fees, and micro entity fees are 1/2 the amount of small entity fees.

II. PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL, or its equivalent, must be completed and returned to the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) with your ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). If you are charging the fee(s) to your deposit account, section "4b" of Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal should be completed and an extra copy of the form should be submitted. If an equivalent of Part B is filed, a request to reapply a previously paid issue fee must be clearly made, and delays in processing may occur due to the difficulty in recognizing the paper as an equivalent of Part B.

III. All communications regarding this application must give the application number. Please direct all communications prior to issuance to Mail Stop ISSUE FEE unless advised to the contrary.

IMPORTANT REMINDER: Utility patents issuing on applications filed on or after Dec. 12, 1980 may require payment of maintenance fees. It is patentee's responsibility to ensure timely payment of maintenance fees when due.

PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL

Complete and send this form, together with applicable fee(s), to: Mail **Mail Stop ISSUE FEE**
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
or Fax (571)-273-2885

INSTRUCTIONS: This form should be used for transmitting the ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). Blocks 1 through 5 should be completed where appropriate. All further correspondence including the Patent, advance orders and notification of maintenance fees will be mailed to the current correspondence address as indicated unless corrected below or directed otherwise in Block 1, by (a) specifying a new correspondence address; and/or (b) indicating a separate "FEE ADDRESS" for maintenance fee notifications.

CURRENT CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS (Note: Use Block 1 for any change of address)

22913 7590 03/12/2015
Workman Nydegger
60 East South Temple
Suite 1000
Salt Lake City, UT 84111

Note: A certificate of mailing can only be used for domestic mailings of the Fee(s) Transmittal. This certificate cannot be used for any other accompanying papers. Each additional paper, such as an assignment or formal drawing, must have its own certificate of mailing or transmission.

Certificate of Mailing or Transmission
I hereby certify that this Fee(s) Transmittal is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage for first class mail in an envelope addressed to the Mail Stop ISSUE FEE address above, or being facsimile transmitted to the USPTO (571) 273-2885, on the date indicated below.

(Depositor's name)
(Signature)
(Date)

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
14/172,392	02/04/2014	David F. Sorrells	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2	8448

TITLE OF INVENTION: Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships

APPLN. TYPE	ENTITY STATUS	ISSUE FEE DUE	PUBLICATION FEE DUE	PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
nonprovisional	UNDISCOUNTED	$960	$0	$0	$960	06/12/2015

EXAMINER	ART UNIT	CLASS-SUBCLASS
BHATTACHARYA, SAM	2646	455-313000

1. Change of correspondence address or indication of "Fee Address" (37 CFR 1.363).
❑ Change of correspondence address (or Change of Correspondence Address form PTO/SB/122) attached.
❑ "Fee Address" indication (or "Fee Address" Indication form PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 or more recent) attached. **Use of a Customer Number is required.**

2. For printing on the patent front page, list
(1) The names of up to 3 registered patent attorneys or agents OR, alternatively,
(2) The name of a single firm (having as a member a registered attorney or agent) and the names of up to 2 registered patent attorneys or agents. If no name is listed, no name will be printed.
1 _____
2 _____
3 _____

3. ASSIGNEE NAME AND RESIDENCE DATA TO BE PRINTED ON THE PATENT (print or type)

PLEASE NOTE: Unless an assignee is identified below, no assignee data will appear on the patent. If an assignee is identified below, the document has been filed for recordation as set forth in 37 CFR 3.11. Completion of this form is NOT a substitute for filing an assignment.

(A) NAME OF ASSIGNEE (B) RESIDENCE: (CITY and STATE OR COUNTRY)

Please check the appropriate assignee category or categories (will not be printed on the patent) : ❑ Individual ❑ Corporation or other private group entity ❑ Government

4a. The following fee(s) are submitted:
❑ Issue Fee
❑ Publication Fee (No small entity discount permitted)
❑ Advance Order - # of Copies _____

4b. Payment of Fee(s): **(Please first reapply any previously paid issue fee shown above)**
❑ A check is enclosed.
❑ Payment by credit card. Form PTO-2038 is attached.
❑ The director is hereby authorized to charge the required fee(s), any deficiency, or credits any overpayment, to Deposit Account Number _____ (enclose an extra copy of this form).

5. **Change in Entity Status** (from status indicated above)

❑ Applicant certifying micro entity status. See 37 CFR 1.29
NOTE: Absent a valid certification of Micro Entity Status (see forms PTO/SB/15A and 15B), issue fee payment in the micro entity amount will not be accepted at the risk of application abandonment.

❑ Applicant asserting small entity status. See 37 CFR 1.27
NOTE: If the application was previously under micro entity status, checking this box will be taken to be a notification of loss of entitlement to micro entity status.

❑ Applicant changing to regular undiscounted fee status.
NOTE: Checking this box will be taken to be a notification of loss of entitlement to small or micro entity status, as applicable.

NOTE: This form must be signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.31 and 1.33. See 37 CFR 1.4 for signature requirements and certifications.

Authorized Signature _____ Date _____

Typed or printed name _____ Registration No. _____

PTOL-85 Part B (10-13) Approved for use through 10/31/2013. OMB 0651-0033 U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
14/172,392	02/04/2014	David F. Sorrells	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2	8448

22913 7590 03/12/2015

Workman Nydegger
60 East South Temple
Suite 1000
Salt Lake City, UT 84111

EXAMINER	
BHATTACHARYA, SAM	
ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
2646	

DATE MAILED: 03/12/2015

Determination of Patent Term Adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154 (b)
(Applications filed on or after May 29, 2000)

The Office has discontinued providing a Patent Term Adjustment (PTA) calculation with the Notice of Allowance.

Section 1(h)(2) of the AIA Technical Corrections Act amended 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(3)(B)(i) to eliminate the requirement that the Office provide a patent term adjustment determination with the notice of allowance. See Revisions to Patent Term Adjustment, 78 Fed. Reg. 19416, 19417 (Apr. 1, 2013). Therefore, the Office is no longer providing an initial patent term adjustment determination with the notice of allowance. The Office will continue to provide a patent term adjustment determination with the Issue Notification Letter that is mailed to applicant approximately three weeks prior to the issue date of the patent, and will include the patent term adjustment on the patent. Any request for reconsideration of the patent term adjustment determination (or reinstatement of patent term adjustment) should follow the process outlined in 37 CFR 1.705.

Any questions regarding the Patent Term Extension or Adjustment determination should be directed to the Office of Patent Legal Administration at (571)-272-7702. Questions relating to issue and publication fee payments should be directed to the Customer Service Center of the Office of Patent Publication at 1-(888)-786-0101 or (571)-272-4200.

Notice Requiring Inventor's Oath or Declaration	Application No. 14/172,392	Applicant(s) David F. Sorrells	
	Examiner BHATTACHARYA, SAM	Art Unit 2646	

This notice is an attachment to the Notice of Allowability (PTOL-37), or the Notice of Allowability For A Design Application (PTOL-37D).

An inventor's oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63 or 1.64 executed by or with respect to each inventor has not yet been submitted.

An oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63, or a substitute statement in compliance with 37 CFR 1.64, executed by or with respect to each inventor (for any inventor for which a compliant oath, declaration, or substitute statement has not yet been submitted) MUST be filed no later than the date on which the issue fee is paid. See 35 U.S.C. 115(f). Failure to timely comply will result in ABANDONMENT of this application.

A properly executed inventor's oath to declaration has not been received for the following inventor(s):

If applicant previously filed one or more oaths, declarations, or substitute statements, applicant may have received an informational notice regarding deficiencies therein.

The following deficiencies are noted:

INFORMAL ACTION PROBLEMS

- A properly executed inventor's oath or declaration has not been received for the following inventor(s): **David F. Sorrells**, **Michael J. Bultman**, **Robert W. Cook**, **Richard C. Looke**, **Charley D. Moses**, **Gregory S. Rawlins**, and **Michael W. Rawlins**.
  Applicant may submit the inventor's oath or declaration at any time before the Notice of Allowance and Fee(s) Due, PTOL-85, is mailed.

Questions relating to this Notice should be directed to the Application Assistance Unit at 571-272-4200.

OMB Clearance and PRA Burden Statement for PTOL-85 Part B

The Paperwork Reduction Act (PRA) of 1995 requires Federal agencies to obtain Office of Management and Budget approval before requesting most types of information from the public. When OMB approves an agency request to collect information from the public, OMB (i) provides a valid OMB Control Number and expiration date for the agency to display on the instrument that will be used to collect the information and (ii) requires the agency to inform the public about the OMB Control Number's legal significance in accordance with 5 CFR 1320.5(b).

The information collected by PTOL-85 Part B is required by 37 CFR 1.311. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450. Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether disclosure of these records is required by the Freedom of Information Act.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspection or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

Notice of Allowability	Application No. 14/172,392	Applicant(s) SORRELLS ET AL.	
	Examiner Sam Bhattacharya	Art Unit 2646	AIA (First Inventor to File) Status No

-- The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address--

All claims being allowable, PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS (OR REMAINS) CLOSED in this application. If not included herewith (or previously mailed), a Notice of Allowance (PTOL-85) or other appropriate communication will be mailed in due course. **THIS NOTICE OF ALLOWABILITY IS NOT A GRANT OF PATENT RIGHTS.** This application is subject to withdrawal from issue at the initiative of the Office or upon petition by the applicant. See 37 CFR 1.313 and MPEP 1308.

1. ☒ This communication is responsive to *the Amendment filed on 2/27/15*.
   ☐ A declaration(s)/affidavit(s) under **37 CFR 1.130(b)** was/were filed on_____.
2. ☐ An election was made by the applicant in response to a restriction requirement set forth during the interview on _____; the restriction requirement and election have been incorporated into this action.
3. ☒ The allowed claim(s) is/are *2-37*. As a result of the allowed claim(s), you may be eligible to benefit from the **Patent Prosecution Highway** program at a participating intellectual property office for the corresponding application. For more information, please see http://www.uspto.gov/patents/init_events/pph/index.jsp or send an inquiry to PPHfeedback@uspto.gov .
4. ☐ Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d) or (f).

   Certified copies:

   a) ☐ All b) ☐ Some *c) ☐ None of the:
   1. ☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received.
   2. ☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received in Application No. _____ .
   3. ☐ Copies of the certified copies of the priority documents have been received in this national stage application from the International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).

   * Certified copies not received: _____.

Applicant has THREE MONTHS FROM THE "MAILING DATE" of this communication to file a reply complying with the requirements noted below. Failure to timely comply will result in ABANDONMENT of this application.
THIS THREE-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDABLE.

5. ☐ CORRECTED DRAWINGS (as "replacement sheets") must be submitted.
   ☐ including changes required by the attached Examiner's Amendment / Comment or in the Office action of Paper No./Mail Date _____.

   Identifying indicia such as the application number (see 37 CFR 1.84(c)) should be written on the drawings in the front (not the back) of each sheet. Replacement sheet(s) should be labeled as such in the header according to 37 CFR 1.121(d).
6. ☐ DEPOSIT OF and/or INFORMATION about the deposit of BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL must be submitted. Note the attached Examiner's comment regarding REQUIREMENT FOR THE DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL.

Attachment(s)

1. ☐ Notice of References Cited (PTO-892)
2. ☒ Information Disclosure Statements (PTO/SB/08), Paper No./Mail Date _____
3. ☐ Examiner's Comment Regarding Requirement for Deposit of Biological Material
4. ☐ Interview Summary (PTO-413), Paper No./Mail Date _____ .
5. ☐ Examiner's Amendment/Comment
6. ☒ Examiner's Statement of Reasons for Allowance
7. ☐ Other _____.

/Sam Bhattacharya/
Primary Examiner, Art Unit 2646

1. The present application is being examined under the pre-AIA first to invent provisions.

DETAILED ACTION

Allowable Subject Matter

2. Claims 2-37 are allowed.

3. The following is an examiner's statement of reasons for allowance: the prior art fails to disclose the recited combination of elements in a system for frequency down-converting a modulated carrier signal to a baseband signal, including a first switch coupled to a first control signal which comprises a sampling aperture with a specified frequency, wherein the first switch is on and a portion of energy that is distinguishable from noise is transferred from the modulated carrier signal as an output of said first switch during the sampling aperture of the first control signal; a first energy storage element that stores the transferred energy from the modulated carrier signal and outputs a down-converted in-phase baseband signal portion of said modulated carrier signal; a second switch coupled to a second control signal which comprises a sampling aperture with a specified frequency, wherein the second switch is on and a portion of energy that is distinguishable from noise is transferred from the modulated carrier signal as an output of said second switch during the sampling aperture of the second control signal; a second energy storage element that stores the transferred energy from the modulated carrier signal and outputs a down-converted inverted in-phase baseband signal portion of said modulated carrier signal; wherein the portions of transferred energy from each of the first and second switch are integrated over time to accumulate said portions of transferred energy from which said down- converted in-phase baseband signal portion and said down-converted inverted in-phase baseband signal portion are derived, as in claim 2.

Any comments considered necessary by applicant must be submitted no later than the payment of the issue fee and, to avoid processing delays, should preferably accompany the issue fee. Such submissions should be clearly labeled "Comments on Statement of Reasons for Allowance."

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to Sam Bhattacharya whose telephone number is (571)272-7917. The examiner can normally be reached on Weekdays, 9-5:30.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Lester Kincaid can be reached on (571) 272-7922. The fax phone number for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned is 571-273-8300.

Information regarding the status of an application may be obtained from the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. Status information for published applications may be obtained from either Private PAIR or Public PAIR. Status information for unpublished applications is available through Private PAIR only. For more information about the PAIR system, see http://pair-direct.uspto.gov. Should you have questions on access to the Private PAIR system, contact the Electronic Business Center (EBC) at 866-217-9197 (toll-free). If you would like assistance from a USPTO Customer Service Representative or access to the automated information system, call 800-786-9199 (IN USA OR CANADA) or 571-272-1000.

sb

/Sam Bhattacharya/
Primary Examiner, Art Unit 2646

Issue Classification	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination
	14172392	SORRELLS ET AL.
	Examiner	**Art Unit**
	SAM BHATTACHARYA	2646

CPC						
Symbol					**Type**	**Version**
H04L		27	/	12	F	2013-01-01
H03C		1	/	62	I	2013-01-01
H03D		7	/	00	I	2013-01-01
H04B		1	/	0025	I	2013-01-01
H04B		1	/	28	I	2013-01-01
H04B		7	/	12	I	2013-01-01
H04L		27	/	00	I	2013-01-01
			/			
			/			
			/			
			/			
			/			
			/			
			/			
			/			

CPC Combination Sets							
Symbol					**Type**	**Set**	**Ranking**	**Version**
			/					
			/					

NONE		**Total Claims Allowed:**	
(Assistant Examiner)	(Date)	36	
/SAM BHATTACHARYA/ Primary Examiner.Art Unit 2646	3/3/15	O.G. Print Claim(s)	O.G. Print Figure
(Primary Examiner)	(Date)	1	197

Issue Classification	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination
	14172392	SORRELLS ET AL.
	Examiner	**Art Unit**
	SAM BHATTACHARYA	2646

US ORIGINAL CLASSIFICATION		INTERNATIONAL CLASSIFICATION									
CLASS	SUBCLASS	CLAIMED					NON-CLAIMED				
455	313	H	0	4	L	27 / 12 (2006.01.01)					

CROSS REFERENCE(S)					
CLASS	SUBCLASS (ONE SUBCLASS PER BLOCK)				
455	323				

NONE		Total Claims Allowed:	
(Assistant Examiner)	(Date)	36	
/SAM BHATTACHARYA/ Primary Examiner.Art Unit 2646	3/3/15	O.G. Print Claim(s)	O.G. Print Figure
(Primary Examiner)	(Date)	1	197

Issue Classification	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination
	14172392	SORRELLS ET AL.
	Examiner	**Art Unit**
	SAM BHATTACHARYA	2646

☐ Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant ☐ CPA ☐ T.D. ☐ R.1.47

Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original
	1	16	17	32	33										
1	2	17	18	33	34										
2	3	18	19	34	35										
3	4	19	20	35	36										
4	5	20	21	36	37										
5	6	21	22												
6	7	22	23												
7	8	23	24												
8	9	24	25												
9	10	25	26												
10	11	26	27												
11	12	27	28												
12	13	28	29												
13	14	29	30												
14	15	30	31												
15	16	31	32												

NONE (Assistant Examiner)	(Date)	**Total Claims Allowed:** 36	
/SAM BHATTACHARYA/ Primary Examiner.Art Unit 2646 (Primary Examiner)	3/3/15 (Date)	O.G. Print Claim(s) 1	O.G. Print Figure 197

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office Part of Paper No. 20150303

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
14/172,392	02/04/2014	David F. Sorrells	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

CONFIRMATION NO. 8448

22913
Workman Nydegger
60 East South Temple
Suite 1000
Salt Lake City, UT 84111

IMPROPER CFR REQUEST

OC000000074033810

Date Mailed: 03/18/2015

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR CORRECTED FILING RECEIPT

Power of Attorney, Claims, Fees, System Limitations, and Miscellaneous

In response to your request for a corrected Filing Receipt, the Office is unable to comply with your request because:

- Any request to correct or update the name of the applicant must include an application data sheet (ADS) in compliance with 37 CFR 1.76 specifying the correct or updated name of the applicant in the applicant information section. Any request to change the applicant after an original applicant has been specified under 37 CFR 1.46(b) must include a new ADS in compliance with 37 CFR 1.76 specifying the applicant in the applicant information section and comply with 37 CFR 3.71 and 3.73. See 37 CFR 1.46(c).

/ttkim/

Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
14/172,392	02/04/2014	David F. Sorrells	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

CONFIRMATION NO. 8448

IMPROPER CPOA LETTER

22913
Workman Nydegger
60 East South Temple
Suite 1000
Salt Lake City, UT 84111

OC000000074033800

Date Mailed: 03/18/2015

NOTICE REGARDING POWER OF ATTORNEY

This is in response to the power of attorney filed 03/09/2015. The power of attorney in this application is not accepted for the reason(s) listed below:

- The power of attorney has not been accepted because the party who is giving power has not been identified. Power of attorney may only be signed by the applicant for patent (37 CFR 1.42) or the patent owner. A party who is not the applicant must become the applicant in accordance with 37 CFR 1.46(c) and appoint any power of attorney in compliance with 37 CFR 3.71 and 3.73. For a reissue application, reexamination proceeding, or supplemental examination proceeding, a patent owner who was not the applicant under 37 CFR 1.46 must appoint any power of attorney in compliance with 37 CFR 3.71 and 3.73. See 37 CFR 1.32(b)(4).

/ttkim/

Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	21811074
Application Number:	14172392
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	8448
Title of Invention:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	David F. Sorrells
Customer Number:	22913
Filer:	Rick D. Nydegger/Ralene Eller
Filer Authorized By:	Rick D. Nydegger
Attorney Docket Number:	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
Receipt Date:	18-MAR-2015
Filing Date:	04-FEB-2014
Time Stamp:	16:54:01
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	no

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Power of Attorney	19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2015-03-18_POA.PDF	190814 54fe7015512f0fcf30e8166e3c2a906cd84d267e	no	3
Warnings:					
Information:					

2	Application Data Sheet	19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2015-03-18_Corrected-ADS.pdf	3445907 7a3341941c39aade560410363d48401e2a6244a6	no	9

Warnings:	
Information:	
This is not an USPTO supplied ADS fillable form	
Total Files Size (in bytes):	3636721

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111
If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371
If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office
If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

PTO/AIA/14 (12-13)
Approved for use through 01/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Corrected **Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76**	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
	Application Number	14/172,392
Title of Invention	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships	

The application data sheet is part of the provisional or nonprovisional application for which it is being submitted. The following form contains the bibliographic data arranged in a format specified by the United States Patent and Trademark Office as outlined in 37 CFR 1.76.
This document may be completed electronically and submitted to the Office in electronic format using the Electronic Filing System (EFS) or the document may be printed and included in a paper filed application.

Secrecy Order 37 CFR 5.2

☐ Portions or all of the application associated with this Application Data Sheet may fall under a Secrecy Order pursuant to 37 CFR 5.2 (Paper filers only. Applications that fall under Secrecy Order may not be filed electronically.)

Inventor Information:

Inventor 1 Remove

Legal Name

Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
	David	F.	Sorrells	

Residence Information (Select One) ◉ US Residency ○ Non US Residency ○ Active US Military Service

City	Jacksonville	State/Province	FL	Country of Residence	US

Mailing Address of Inventor:

Address 1	ParkerVision, Inc.
Address 2	7915 Baymeadows Way, Suite 400

City	Jacksonville	State/Province	FL
Postal Code	32256	Country	US

Inventor 2 Remove

Legal Name

Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
	Michael	J.	Bultman	

Residence Information (Select One) ◉ US Residency ○ Non US Residency ○ Active US Military Service

City	Jacksonville	State/Province	FL	Country of Residence	US

Mailing Address of Inventor:

Address 1	ParkerVision, Inc.
Address 2	7915 Baymeadows Way, Suite 400

City	Jacksonville	State/Province	FL
Postal Code	32256	Country	US

Inventor 3 Remove

Legal Name

Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
	Robert	W.	Cook	

Residence Information (Select One) ◉ US Residency ○ Non US Residency ○ Active US Military Service

PTO/AIA/14 (12-13)
Approved for use through 01/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
	Application Number	14/172,392
Title of Invention	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships	

City	Switzerland	State/Province	FL	Country of Residence	US

Mailing Address of Inventor:

Address 1	ParkerVision, Inc.		
Address 2	7915 Baymeadows Way, Suite 400		
City	Jacksonville	State/Province	FL
Postal Code	32256	Country	US

Inventor 4 Remove

Legal Name

Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
	Richard	C.	Looke	

Residence Information (Select One) (•) US Residency ( ) Non US Residency ( ) Active US Military Service

City	Jacksonville	State/Province	FL	Country of Residence	US

Mailing Address of Inventor:

Address 1	ParkerVision, Inc.		
Address 2	7915 Baymeadows Way, Suite 400		
City	Jacksonville	State/Province	FL
Postal Code	32256	Country	US

Inventor 5 Remove

Legal Name

Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
	Charley	D.	Moses	

Residence Information (Select One) (•) US Residency ( ) Non US Residency ( ) Active US Military Service

City	Jacksonville	State/Province	FL	Country of Residence	US

Mailing Address of Inventor:

Address 1	ParkerVision, Inc.		
Address 2	7915 Baymeadows Way, Suite 400		
City	Jacksonville	State/Province	FL
Postal Code	32256	Country	US

Inventor 6 Remove

Legal Name

Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
	Gregory	S.	Rawlins	

Residence Information (Select One) (•) US Residency ( ) Non US Residency ( ) Active US Military Service

City	Lake Mary	State/Province	FL	Country of Residence	US

PTO/AIA/14 (12-13)
Approved for use through 01/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
	Application Number	14/172,392
Title of Invention	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships	

Mailing Address of Inventor:

Address 1	ParkerVision, Inc.		
Address 2	7915 Baymeadows Way, Suite 400		
City	Jacksonville	**State/Province**	FL
Postal Code	32256	**Country** i	US

Inventor 7 Remove

Legal Name

Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
	Michael	W.	Rawlins	

Residence Information (Select One) (•) US Residency ( ) Non US Residency ( ) Active US Military Service

City	Lake Mary	**State/Province**	FL	**Country of Residence** i	US

Mailing Address of Inventor:

Address 1	ParkerVision, Inc.		
Address 2	7915 Baymeadows Way, Suite 400		
City	Jacksonville	**State/Province**	FL
Postal Code	32256	**Country** i	US

All Inventors Must Be Listed - Additional Inventor Information blocks may be generated within this form by selecting the **Add** button. Add

Correspondence Information:

Enter either Customer Number or complete the Correspondence Information section below. For further information see 37 CFR 1.33(a).

☐ **An Address is being provided for the correspondence Information of this application.**

Customer Number	22913		
Email Address		Add Email	Remove Email

Application Information:

Title of the Invention	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships		
Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2	**Small Entity Status Claimed** ☐	
Application Type	Nonprovisional		
Subject Matter	Utility		
Total Number of Drawing Sheets (if any)	284	**Suggested Figure for Publication (if any)**	

Filing By Reference :

PTO/AIA/14 (12-13)
Approved for use through 01/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
	Application Number	14/172,392
Title of Invention	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships	

Only compete this section when filing an application by reference under 35 U.S.C. 111(c) and 37 CFR 1.57(a). Do not complete this section if application papers including a specification and any drawings are being filed. Any domestic benefit or foreign priority information must be provided in the appropriate section(s) below (i.e., "Domestic Benefit/National Stage Information" and "Foreign Priority Information").

For the purposes of a filing date under 37 CFR 1.53(b), the description and any drawings of the present application are replaced by this reference to the previously filed application, subject to conditions and requirements of 37 CFR 1.57(a).

Application number of the previously filed application	Filing date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Intellectual Property Authority or Country

Publication Information:

☐ Request Early Publication (Fee required at time of Request 37 CFR 1.219)

☐ **Request Not to Publish.** I hereby request that the attached application not be published under 35 U.S.C. 122(b) and certify that the invention disclosed in the attached application **has not and will not** be the subject of an application filed in another country, or under a multilateral international agreement, that requires publication at eighteen months after filing.

Representative Information:

Representative information should be provided for all practitioners having a power of attorney in the application. Providing this information in the Application Data Sheet does not constitute a power of attorney in the application (see 37 CFR 1.32).
Either enter Customer Number or complete the Representative Name section below. If both sections are completed the customer Number will be used for the Representative Information during processing.

Please Select One:	◉ Customer Number	○ US Patent Practitioner	○ Limited Recognition (37 CFR 11.9)
Customer Number	22913		

Domestic Benefit/National Stage Information:

This section allows for the applicant to either claim benefit under 35 U.S.C. 119(e), 120, 121, or 365(c) or indicate National Stage entry from a PCT application. Providing this information in the application data sheet constitutes the specific reference required by 35 U.S.C. 119(e) or 120, and 37 CFR 1.78.
When referring to the current application, please leave the application number blank.

Prior Application Status	Pending		Remove
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
	Continuation of	13549213	2012-07-13
Prior Application Status	Pending		Remove
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
13549213	Continuation of	12678729	2010-12-22
Prior Application Status	Patented		Remove

PTO/AIA/14 (12-13)
Approved for use through 01/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
	Application Number	14/172,392
Title of Invention	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships	

Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Patent Number	Issue Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
~~12678729~~ 12/976,879	Continuation of	12349802	2009-01-07	7865177	2011-01-04
Prior Application Status	Patented			Remove	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Patent Number	Issue Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
12349802	Division of	09550644	2000-04-14	7515896	2009-04-07
Prior Application Status	Patented			Remove	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Patent Number	Issue Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
09550644	Continuation in part of	09293342	1999-04-16	6687493	2004-02-03
Prior Application Status	Patented			Remove	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Patent Number	Issue Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
09293342	Continuation in part of	09176022	1998-10-21	6061551	2000-05-09

Additional Domestic Benefit/National Stage Data may be generated within this form by selecting the **Add** button.

Foreign Priority Information:

This section allows for the applicant to claim priority to a foreign application. Providing this information in the application data sheet constitutes the claim for priority as required by 35 U.S.C. 119(b) and 37 CFR 1.55(d). When priority is claimed to a foreign application that is eligible for retrieval under the priority document exchange program (PDX)[i] the information will be used by the Office to automatically attempt retrieval pursuant to 37 CFR 1.55(h)(1) and (2). Under the PDX program, applicant bears the ultimate responsibility for ensuring that a copy of the foreign application is received by the Office from the participating foreign intellectual property office, or a certified copy of the foreign priority application is filed, within the time period specified in 37 CFR 1.55(g)(1).

Remove

Application Number	Country[i]	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Access Code[i] (if applicable)

Additional Foreign Priority Data may be generated within this form by selecting the **Add** button.

PTO/AIA/14 (12-13)
Approved for use through 01/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
	Application Number	14/172,392
Title of Invention	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships	

Statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78 for AIA (First Inventor to File) Transition Applications

☐ This application (1) claims priority to or the benefit of an application filed before March 16, 2013 and (2) also contains, or contained at any time, a claim to a claimed invention that has an effective filing date on or after March 16, 2013.
NOTE: By providing this statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78, this application, with a filing date on or after March 16, 2013, will be examined under the first inventor to file provisions of the AIA.

Authorization to Permit Access:

☒ Authorization to Permit Access to the Instant Application by the Participating Offices

If checked, the undersigned hereby grants the USPTO authority to provide the European Patent Office (EPO), the Japan Patent Office (JPO), the Korean Intellectual Property Office (KIPO), the World Intellectual Property Office (WIPO), and any other intellectual property offices in which a foreign application claiming priority to the instant patent application is filed access to the instant patent application. See 37 CFR 1.14(c) and (h). This box should not be checked if the applicant does not wish the EPO, JPO, KIPO, WIPO, or other intellectual property office in which a foreign application claiming priority to the instant patent application is filed to have access to the instant patent application.

In accordance with 37 CFR 1.14(h)(3), access will be provided to a copy of the instant patent application with respect to: 1) the instant patent application-as-filed; 2) any foreign application to which the instant patent application claims priority under 35 U.S.C. 119(a)-(d) if a copy of the foreign application that satisfies the certified copy requirement of 37 CFR 1.55 has been filed in the instant patent application; and 3) any U.S. application-as-filed from which benefit is sought in the instant patent application.

In accordance with 37 CFR 1.14(c), access may be provided to information concerning the date o f filing this Authorization.

Applicant Information:

Providing assignment information in this section does not substitute for compliance with any requirement of part 3 of Title 37 of CFR to have an assignment recorded by the Office.

PTO/AIA/14 (12-13)
Approved for use through 01/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
	Application Number	14/172,392
Title of Invention	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships	

Applicant 1

If the applicant is the inventor (or the remaining joint inventor or inventors under 37 CFR 1.45), this section should not be completed. The information to be provided in this section is the name and address of the legal representative who is the applicant under 37 CFR 1.43; or the name and address of the assignee, person to whom the inventor is under an obligation to assign the invention, or person who otherwise shows sufficient proprietary interest in the matter who is the applicant under 37 CFR 1.46. If the applicant is an applicant under 37 CFR 1.46 (assignee, person to whom the inventor is obligated to assign, or person who otherwise shows sufficient proprietary interest) together with one or more joint inventors, then the joint inventor or inventors who are also the applicant should be identified in this section.

Clear

(●) Assignee	( ) Legal Representative under 35 U.S.C. 117	( ) Joint Inventor
( ) Person to whom the inventor is obligated to assign.	( ) Person who shows sufficient proprietary interest	

If applicant is the legal representative, indicate the authority to file the patent application, the inventor is:

Name of the Deceased or Legally Incapacitated Inventor :

If the Applicant is an Organization check here. ☒

Organization Name	ParkerVision, Inc.		
Mailing Address Information For Applicant:			
Address 1	7915 Baymeadows Way		
Address 2	Suite 400		
City	Jacksonville	**State/Province**	FL
Country	US	Postal Code	32256
Phone Number		Fax Number	
Email Address			

Additional Applicant Data may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.

Assignee Information including Non-Applicant Assignee Information:

Providing assignment information in this section does not subsitute for compliance with any requirement of part 3 of Title 37 of CFR to have an assignment recorded by the Office.

Assignee 1

Complete this section if assignee information, including non-applicant assignee information, is desired to be included on the patent application publication . An assignee-applicant identified in the "Applicant Information" section will appear on the patent application publication as an applicant. For an assignee-applicant, complete this section only if identification as an assignee is also desired on the patent application publication.

If the Assignee or Non-Applicant Assignee is an Organization check here. ☐

PTO/AIA/14 (12-13)
Approved for use through 01/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76	Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
	Application Number	14/172,392
Title of Invention	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships	

Prefix	**Given Name**	Middle Name	**Family Name**	Suffix

Mailing Address Information For Assignee including Non-Applicant Assignee:

Address 1			
Address 2			
City		**State/Province**	
Country i		Postal Code	
Phone Number		Fax Number	
Email Address			

Additional Assignee or Non-Applicant Assignee Data may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.

Signature:

NOTE: This form must be signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.33. See 37 CFR 1.4 for signature requirements and certifications.

Signature	/Rick D. Nydegger/			Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2015-03-18
First Name	Rick D.	Last Name	Nydegger	Registration Number	28651

Additional Signature may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.76. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 23 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application data sheet form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether the Freedom of Information Act requires disclosure of these records.

2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.

3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.

4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).

5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent C o o p eration Treaty.

6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).

7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.

8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspections or an issued patent.

9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

EFS Web 2.2.10

PTO/AIA/96 (08-12)
Approved for use through 01/31/2013. OMB 0651-0031
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

STATEMENT UNDER 37 CFR 3.73(c)

Applicant/Patent Owner: David F. Sorrells, et al.

Application No./Patent No.: 14/172,392 Filed/Issue Date: February 4, 2014

Titled: Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships

ParkerVision, Inc., a Corporation

(Name of Assignee) (Type of Assignee, e.g., corporation, partnership, university, government agency, etc.)

states that, for the patent application/patent identified above, it is (choose **one** of options 1, 2, 3 or 4 below):

1. ☑ The assignee of the entire right, title, and interest.

2. ☐ An assignee of less than the entire right, title, and interest (check applicable box):

   ☐ The extent (by percentage) of its ownership interest is _____%. Additional Statement(s) by the owners holding the balance of the interest must be submitted to account for 100% of the ownership interest.

   ☐ There are unspecified percentages of ownership. The other parties, including inventors, who together own the entire right, title and interest are:

   Additional Statement(s) by the owner(s) holding the balance of the interest must be submitted to account for the entire right, title, and interest.

3. ☐ The assignee of an undivided interest in the entirety (a complete assignment from one of the joint inventors was made). The other parties, including inventors, who together own the entire right, title, and interest are:

   Additional Statement(s) by the owner(s) holding the balance of the interest must be submitted to account for the entire right, title, and interest.

4. ☐ The recipient, via a court proceeding or the like (*e.g.*, bankruptcy, probate), of an undivided interest in the entirety (a complete transfer of ownership interest was made). The certified document(s) showing the transfer is attached.

The interest identified in option 1, 2 or 3 above (not option 4) is evidenced by either (choose **one** of options A or B below):

A. ☑ An assignment from the inventor(s) of the patent application/patent identified above. The assignment was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at Reel 035039, Frame 0402, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

B. ☐ A chain of title from the inventor(s), of the patent application/patent identified above, to the current assignee as follows:

   1. From: _____ To: _____

      The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

      Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

   2. From: _____ To: _____

      The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

      Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 3.73(b). The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

PTO/AIA/96 (08-12)
Approved for use through 01/31/2013. OMB 0651-0031
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

STATEMENT UNDER 37 CFR 3.73(c)

3. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

4. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

5. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

6. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

☐ Additional documents in the chain of title are listed on a supplemental sheet(s).

☑ As required by 37 CFR 3.73(c)(1)(i), the documentary evidence of the chain of title from the original owner to the assignee was, or concurrently is being, submitted for recordation pursuant to 37 CFR 3.11.

[NOTE: A separate copy (i.e., a true copy of the original assignment document(s)) must be submitted to Assignment Division in accordance with 37 CFR Part 3, to record the assignment in the records of the USPTO. See MPEP 302.08]

The undersigned (whose title is supplied below) is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee.

/Rick D. Nydegger/	March 9, 2015
Signature	Date
Rick D. Nydegger	28651
Printed or Typed Name	Title or Registration Number

PTO/AIA/80 (07-12)
Approved for use through 11/30/2014. OMB 0651-0035
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

POWER OF ATTORNEY TO PROSECUTE APPLICATIONS BEFORE THE USPTO

I hereby revoke all previous powers of attorney given in the application identified in the attached statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c).

I hereby appoint:

☒ Practitioners associated with Customer Number: 22913

OR

☐ Practitioner(s) named below (if more than ten patent practitioners are to be named, then a customer number must be used):

Name	Registration Number	Name	Registration Number

As attorney(s) or agent(s) to represent the undersigned before the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) in connection with any and all patent applications assigned only to the undersigned according to the USPTO assignment records or assignments documents attached to this form in accordance with 37 CFR 3.73(c).

Please change the correspondence address for the application identified in the attached statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c) to:

☑ The address associated with Customer Number: 22913

OR

☐

Firm or Individual Name			
Address			
City		State	Zip
Country			
Telephone		Email	

Assignee Name and Address: ParkerVision, Inc.
7915 Baymeadows Way, Suite 400
Jacksonville, FL 32256

A copy of this form, together with a statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c) (Form PTO/AIA/96 or equivalent) is required to be Filed in each application in which this form is used. The statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c) may be completed by one of The practitioners appointed in this form, and must identify the application in which this Power of Attorney is to be filed.

SIGNATURE of Assignee of Record

The individual whose signature and title is supplied below is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee

Signature	Thomas F. Presson	Date	April 14, 2014
Name	Thomas F. Presson (Reg. No. 41,442)	Telephone	904-563-1330
Title	Chief Intellectual Property Counsel - ParkerVision, Inc.		

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.31, 1.32 and 1.33. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 3 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING or 371(c) DATE	GRP ART UNIT	FIL FEE REC'D	ATTY.DOCKET.NO	TOT CLAIMS	IND CLAIMS
14/172,392	02/04/2014	2646	6620	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2	1	1

CONFIRMATION NO. 8448

REPLACEMENT FILING RECEIPT

22913
Workman Nydegger
60 East South Temple
Suite 1000
Salt Lake City, UT 84111

OC000000074110877

Date Mailed: 03/20/2015

Receipt is acknowledged of this non-provisional patent application. The application will be taken up for examination in due course. Applicant will be notified as to the results of the examination. Any correspondence concerning the application must include the following identification information: the U.S. APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING DATE, NAME OF APPLICANT, and TITLE OF INVENTION. Fees transmitted by check or draft are subject to collection. Please verify the accuracy of the data presented on this receipt. **If an error is noted on this Filing Receipt, please submit a written request for a Filing Receipt Correction. Please provide a copy of this Filing Receipt with the changes noted thereon. If you received a "Notice to File Missing Parts" for this application, please submit any corrections to this Filing Receipt with your reply to the Notice. When the USPTO processes the reply to the Notice, the USPTO will generate another Filing Receipt incorporating the requested corrections**

Inventor(s)

David F. Sorrells, Jacksonville, FL;
Michael J. Bultman, Jacksonville, FL;
Robert W. Cook, Switzerland, FL;
Richard C. Looke, Jacksonville, FL;
Charley D. Moses, Jacksonville, FL;
Gregory S. Rawlins, Lake Mary, FL;
Michael W. Rawlins, Lake Mary, FL;

Applicant(s)

ParkerVision, Inc., Jacksonville, FL

Power of Attorney: The patent practitioners associated with Customer Number 22913

Domestic Priority data as claimed by applicant

This application is a CON of 13/549,213 07/13/2012 PAT 8660513
which is a CON of 12/976,839 12/22/2010 PAT 8340618
which is a CON of 12/349,802 01/07/2009 PAT 7865177
which is a DIV of 09/550,644 04/14/2000 PAT 7515896
which is a CIP of 09/293,342 04/16/1999 PAT 6687493
which is a CIP of 09/176,022 10/21/1998 PAT 6061551

Foreign Applications for which priority is claimed (You may be eligible to benefit from the **Patent Prosecution Highway** program at the USPTO. Please see http://www.uspto.gov for more information.) - None.
Foreign application information must be provided in an Application Data Sheet in order to constitute a claim to foreign priority. See 37 CFR 1.55 and 1.76.

Permission to Access - A proper **Authorization to Permit Access to Application by Participating Offices** (PTO/SB/39 or its equivalent) has been received by the USPTO.

If Required, Foreign Filing License Granted: 02/20/2014

The country code and number of your priority application, to be used for filing abroad under the Paris Convention, is **US 14/172,392**

Projected Publication Date: Not Applicable

Non-Publication Request: No

Early Publication Request: No

Title

Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships

Preliminary Class

455

Statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78 for AIA (First Inventor to File) Transition Applications: No

PROTECTING YOUR INVENTION OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES

Since the rights granted by a U.S. patent extend only throughout the territory of the United States and have no effect in a foreign country, an inventor who wishes patent protection in another country must apply for a patent in a specific country or in regional patent offices. Applicants may wish to consider the filing of an international application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT). An international (PCT) application generally has the same effect as a regular national patent application in each PCT-member country. The PCT process **simplifies** the filing of patent applications on the same invention in member countries, but **does not result** in a grant of "an international patent" and does not eliminate the need of applicants to file additional documents and fees in countries where patent protection is desired.

Almost every country has its own patent law, and a person desiring a patent in a particular country must make an application for patent in that country in accordance with its particular laws. Since the laws of many countries differ in various respects from the patent law of the United States, applicants are advised to seek guidance from specific foreign countries to ensure that patent rights are not lost prematurely.

Applicants also are advised that in the case of inventions made in the United States, the Director of the USPTO must issue a license before applicants can apply for a patent in a foreign country. The filing of a U.S. patent application serves as a request for a foreign filing license. The application's filing receipt contains further information and guidance as to the status of applicant's license for foreign filing.

Applicants may wish to consult the USPTO booklet, "General Information Concerning Patents" (specifically, the section entitled "Treaties and Foreign Patents") for more information on timeframes and deadlines for filing foreign patent applications. The guide is available either by contacting the USPTO Contact Center at 800-786-9199, or it can be viewed on the USPTO website at http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/doc/general/index.html.

For information on preventing theft of your intellectual property (patents, trademarks and copyrights), you may wish to consult the U.S. Government website, http://www.stopfakes.gov. Part of a Department of Commerce initiative, this website includes self-help "toolkits" giving innovators guidance on how to protect intellectual property in specific

countries such as China, Korea and Mexico. For questions regarding patent enforcement issues, applicants may call the U.S. Government hotline at 1-866-999-HALT (1-866-999-4258).

LICENSE FOR FOREIGN FILING UNDER

Title 35, United States Code, Section 184

Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, 5.11 & 5.15

GRANTED

The applicant has been granted a license under 35 U.S.C. 184, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" followed by a date appears on this form. Such licenses are issued in all applications where the conditions for issuance of a license have been met, regardless of whether or not a license may be required as set forth in 37 CFR 5.15. The scope and limitations of this license are set forth in 37 CFR 5.15(a) unless an earlier license has been issued under 37 CFR 5.15(b). The license is subject to revocation upon written notification. The date indicated is the effective date of the license, unless an earlier license of similar scope has been granted under 37 CFR 5.13 or 5.14.

This license is to be retained by the licensee and may be used at any time on or after the effective date thereof unless it is revoked. This license is automatically transferred to any related applications(s) filed under 37 CFR 1.53(d). This license is not retroactive.

The grant of a license does not in any way lessen the responsibility of a licensee for the security of the subject matter as imposed by any Government contract or the provisions of existing laws relating to espionage and the national security or the export of technical data. Licensees should apprise themselves of current regulations especially with respect to certain countries, of other agencies, particularly the Office of Defense Trade Controls, Department of State (with respect to Arms, Munitions and Implements of War (22 CFR 121-128)); the Bureau of Industry and Security, Department of Commerce (15 CFR parts 730-774); the Office of Foreign AssetsControl, Department of Treasury (31 CFR Parts 500+) and the Department of Energy.

NOT GRANTED

No license under 35 U.S.C. 184 has been granted at this time, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" DOES NOT appear on this form. Applicant may still petition for a license under 37 CFR 5.12, if a license is desired before the expiration of 6 months from the filing date of the application. If 6 months has lapsed from the filing date of this application and the licensee has not received any indication of a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181, the licensee may foreign file the application pursuant to 37 CFR 5.15(b).

SelectUSA

The United States represents the largest, most dynamic marketplace in the world and is an unparalleled location for business investment, innovation, and commercialization of new technologies. The U.S. offers tremendous resources and advantages for those who invest and manufacture goods here. Through SelectUSA, our nation works to promote and facilitate business investment. SelectUSA provides information assistance to the international investor community; serves as an ombudsman for existing and potential investors; advocates on behalf of U.S. cities, states, and regions competing for global investment; and counsels U.S. economic development organizations on investment attraction best practices. To learn more about why the United States is the best country in the world to develop

technology, manufacture products, deliver services, and grow your business, visit http://www.SelectUSA.gov or call +1-202-482-6800.

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
14/172,392	02/04/2014	David F. Sorrells	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

CONFIRMATION NO. 8448

22913
Workman Nydegger
60 East South Temple
Suite 1000
Salt Lake City, UT 84111

POA ACCEPTANCE LETTER

OC000000074110827

Date Mailed: 03/20/2015

NOTICE OF ACCEPTANCE OF POWER OF ATTORNEY

This is in response to the Power of Attorney filed 03/18/2015.

The Power of Attorney in this application is accepted. Correspondence in this application will be mailed to the above address as provided by 37 CFR 1.33.

/atesfai/

Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101

Doc Code: DISQ.E.FILE
Document Description: Electronic Terminal Disclaimer – Approved

Application No.: 14172392

Filing Date: 04-Feb-2014

Applicant/Patent under Reexamination: Sorrells et al.

Electronic Terminal Disclaimer filed on March 26, 2015

☒ APPROVED

This patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer

☐ DISAPPROVED

Approved/Disapproved by: Electronic Terminal Disclaimer automatically approved by EFS-Web

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt	
EFS ID:	21881451
Application Number:	14172392
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	8448
Title of Invention:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	David F. Sorrells
Customer Number:	22913
Filer:	Rick D. Nydegger/Ralene Eller
Filer Authorized By:	Rick D. Nydegger
Attorney Docket Number:	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
Receipt Date:	26-MAR-2015
Filing Date:	04-FEB-2014
Time Stamp:	09:39:44
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	Credit Card
Payment was successfully received in RAM	$160
RAM confirmation Number	16251
Deposit Account	233178
Authorized User	NYDEGGER, RICK D.
The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows: Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.17 (Patent application and reexamination processing fees)	

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.19 (Document supply fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.20 (Post Issuance fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.21 (Miscellaneous fees and charges)

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Electronic Terminal Disclaimer-Filed	eTerminal-Disclaimer.pdf	33511 af5b93c70019ebd6c528d53455381f04bb915e0f	no	2
Warnings:					
Information:					
2	Fee Worksheet (SB06)	fee-info.pdf	30437 3ea43f8d2f443bc5b4ac3ab91e7aae80d65895b7	no	2
Warnings:					
Information:					
		Total Files Size (in bytes):	63948		

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111
If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371
If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office
If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal

Application Number:	14172392
Filing Date:	04-Feb-2014
Title of Invention:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	David F. Sorrells
Filer:	Rick D. Nydegger/Ralene Eller
Attorney Docket Number:	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

Filed as Large Entity

Filing Fees for Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD($)
Basic Filing:				
Statutory or Terminal Disclaimer	1814	1	160	160
Pages:				
Claims:				
Miscellaneous-Filing:				
Petition:				
Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:				
Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:				

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD($)
Extension-of-Time:				
Miscellaneous:				
			Total in USD ($)	**160**

Doc Code: DIST.E.FILE **Document Description: Electronic Terminal Disclaimer - Filed**	PTO/SB/26 U.S. Patent and Trademark Office Department of Commerce

Electronic Petition Request	**TERMINAL DISCLAIMER TO OBVIATE A DOUBLE PATENTING REJECTION OVER A "PRIOR" PATENT**
Application Number	14172392
Filing Date	04-Feb-2014
First Named Inventor	David Sorrells
Attorney Docket Number	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
Title of Invention	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships

☒ Filing of terminal disclaimer does not obviate requirement for response under 37 CFR 1.111 to outstanding Office Action

☒ This electronic Terminal Disclaimer is not being used for a Joint Research Agreement.

Owner	Percent Interest
ParkerVision, Inc.	100%

The owner(s) with percent interest listed above in the instant application hereby disclaims, except as provided below, the terminal part of the statutory term of any patent granted on the instant application which would extend beyond the expiration date of the full statutory term of prior patent number(s)

8594607

8660513

as the term of said prior patent is presently shortened by any terminal disclaimer. The owner hereby agrees that any patent so granted on the instant application shall be enforceable only for and during such period that it and the prior patent are commonly owned. This agreement runs with any patent granted on the instant application and is binding upon the grantee, its successors or assigns.

In making the above disclaimer, the owner does not disclaim the terminal part of the term of any patent granted on the instant application that would extend to the expiration date of the full statutory term of the prior patent, "as the term of said prior patent is presently shortened by any terminal disclaimer," in the event that said prior patent later:
- expires for failure to pay a maintenance fee;
- is held unenforceable;
- is found invalid by a court of competent jurisdiction;
- is statutorily disclaimed in whole or terminally disclaimed under 37 CFR 1.321;
- has all claims canceled by a reexamination certificate;
- is reissued; or
- is in any manner terminated prior to the expiration of its full statutory term as presently shortened by any terminal disclaimer.

◉ Terminal disclaimer fee under 37 CFR 1.20(d) is included with Electronic Terminal Disclaimer request. ○ I certify, in accordance with 37 CFR 1.4(d)(4), that the terminal disclaimer fee under 37 CFR 1.20(d) required for this terminal disclaimer has already been paid in the above-identified application.	
Applicant claims the following fee status: ○ Small Entity ○ Micro Entity ◉ Regular Undiscounted I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.	
THIS PORTION MUST BE COMPLETED BY THE SIGNATORY OR SIGNATORIES I certify, in accordance with 37 CFR 1.4(d)(4) that I am: ◉ An attorney or agent registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office who is of record in this application Registration Number 28651 ○ A sole inventor ○ A joint inventor; I certify that I am authorized to sign this submission on behalf of all of the inventors as evidenced by the power of attorney in the application ○ A joint inventor; all of whom are signing this request	
Signature	/Rick D. Nydegger/
Name	Rick D. Nydegger

*Statement under 37 CFR 3.73(b) is required if terminal disclaimer is signed by the assignee (owner).
Form PTO/SB/96 may be used for making this certification. See MPEP § 324.

Doc code: Oath
Document Description: Oath or declaration filed

PTO/**AIA/02** (07-13)
Approved for use through 01/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

SUBSTITUTE STATEMENT IN LIEU OF AN OATH OR DECLARATION FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN PATENT APPLICATION (35 U.S.C. 115(d) AND 37 CFR 1.64)

Title of Invention	Applications of Universal Frequency Translation

This statement is directed to:

☐ The attached application,

OR

☒ United States application or PCT international application number 14/172,392 filed on February 4, 2014 .

LEGAL NAME of inventor to whom this substitute statement applies:

(*E.g.*, Given Name (first and middle (if any)) and Family Name or Surname)

Richard C. Looke

Residence (except for a deceased or legally incapacitated inventor):

City	State	Country

Mailing Address (except for a deceased or legally incapacitated inventor):

City	State	Zip	Country

I believe the above-named inventor or joint inventor to be the original inventor or an original joint inventor of a claimed invention in the application.

The above-identified application was made or authorized to be made by me.

I hereby acknowledge that any willful false statement made in this statement is punishable under 18 U.S.C. 1001 by fine or imprisonment of not more than five (5) years, or both.

Relationship to the inventor to whom this substitute statement applies:

☐ Legal Representative (for deceased or legally incapacitated inventor only),
☒ Assignee,
☐ Person to whom the inventor is under an obligation to assign,
☐ Person who otherwise shows a sufficient proprietary interest in the matter (petition under 37 CFR 1.46 is required), or
☐ Joint Inventor.

This collection of information is required by 35 U.S.C. 115 and 37 CFR 1.63. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 minute to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

PTO/SB/AIA02 (07-13)
Approved for use through 01/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office: U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

SUBSTITUTE STATEMENT

Circumstances permitting execution of this substitute statement:

- [x] Inventor is deceased,
- [ ] Inventor is under legal incapacity,
- [ ] Inventor cannot be found or reached after diligent effort, or
- [ ] Inventor has refused to execute the oath or declaration under 37 CFR 1.63.

If there are joint inventors, please check the appropriate box below:

- [x] An application data sheet under 37 CFR 1.76 (PTO/AIA/14 or equivalent) naming the entire inventive entity has been or is currently submitted.

OR

- [ ] An application data sheet under 37 CFR 1.76 (PTO/AIA/14 or equivalent) has not been submitted. Thus, a Substitute Statement Supplemental Sheet (PTO/AIA/11 or equivalent) naming the entire inventive entity and providing inventor information is attached. See 37 CFR 1.64(b).

WARNING:

Petitioner/applicant is cautioned to avoid submitting personal information in documents filed in a patent application that may contribute to identity theft. Personal information such as social security numbers, bank account numbers, or credit card numbers (other than a check or credit card authorization form PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes) is never required by the USPTO to support a petition or an application. If this type of personal information is included in documents submitted to the USPTO, petitioners/applicants should consider redacting such personal information from the documents before submitting them to the USPTO. Petitioner/applicant is advised that the record of a patent application is available to the public after publication of the application (unless a non-publication request in compliance with 37 CFR 1.213(a) is made in the application) or issuance of a patent. Furthermore, the record from an abandoned application may also be available to the public if the application is referenced in a published application or an issued patent (see 37 CFR 1.14). Checks and credit card authorization forms PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes are not retained in the application file and therefore are not publicly available.

PERSON EXECUTING THIS SUBSTITUTE STATEMENT:

Name: Thomas F. Presson

Date (Optional): 7/18/14

Signature: Thomas F. Presson (41,442)

APPLICANT NAME AND TITLE OF PERSON EXECUTING THIS SUBSTITUTE STATEMENT:

If the applicant is a juristic entity, list the applicant name and the title of the signer:

Applicant Name: ParkerVision, Inc.

Title of Person Executing This Substitute Statement: Chief Intellectual Property Counsel

The signer, whose title is supplied above, is authorized to act on behalf of the applicant.

Residence of the signer (unless provided in an application data sheet, PTO/AIA/14 or equivalent):

City	State	Country
Jacksonville	FL	US

Mailing Address of the signer (unless provided in an application data sheet, PTO/AIA/14 or equivalent)

City	State	Zip	Country

Note: Use an additional PTO/AIA/02 form for each inventor who is deceased, legally incapacitated, cannot be found or reached after diligent effort, or has refused to execute the oath or declaration under 37 CFR 1.63.

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	21953261
Application Number:	14172392
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	8448
Title of Invention:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	David F. Sorrells
Customer Number:	22913
Filer:	Rick D. Nydegger/Ralene Eller
Filer Authorized By:	Rick D. Nydegger
Attorney Docket Number:	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
Receipt Date:	02-APR-2015
Filing Date:	04-FEB-2014
Time Stamp:	14:01:51
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	no

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Oath or Declaration filed	19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2015-04-02_Looke-Sub-Statement.pdf	800279 909a18d65064ec3cdecbe3ff09a093afd9fbe8d9	no	2
Warnings:					
Information:					

2	Oath or Declaration filed	19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2015-04-02_Cook-Dec.pdf	140724 5fc5f0fafda8c64bb9feaed618783a5067634acc	no	1
Warnings:					
Information:					
			Total Files Size (in bytes):	941003	

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111
If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371
If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office
If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

PTO/AIA/01 (06-12)
Approved for use through 01/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION (37 CFR 1.63) FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN APPLICATION USING AN APPLICATION DATA SHEET (37 CFR 1.76)

Title of Invention	METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR DOWN-CONVERTING AN ELECTROMAGNETIC SIGNAL, AND TRANSFORMS FOR SAME, AND APERTURE RELATIONSHIPS

As the below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

This declaration is directed to:

☐ The attached application, or

☒ United States application or PCT international application number 14/172,392 filed on February 4, 2014.

The above-identified application was made or authorized to be made by me.

I believe that I am the original inventor or an original joint inventor of a claimed invention in the application.

I hereby acknowledge that any willful false statement made in this declaration is punishable under 18 U.S.C. 1001 by fine or imprisonment of not more than five (5) years, or both.

WARNING:

Petitioner/applicant is cautioned to avoid submitting personal information in documents filed in a patent application that may contribute to identity theft. Personal information such as social security numbers, bank account numbers, or credit card numbers (other than a check or credit card authorization form PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes) is never required by the USPTO to support a petition or an application. If this type of personal information is included in documents submitted to the USPTO, petitioners/applicants should consider redacting such personal information from the documents before submitting them to the USPTO. Petitioner/applicant is advised that the record of a patent application is available to the public after publication of the application (unless a non-publication request in compliance with 37 CFR 1.213(a) is made in the application) or issuance of a patent. Furthermore, the record from an abandoned application may also be available to the public if the application is referenced in a published application or an issued patent (see 37 CFR 1.14). Checks and credit card authorization forms PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes are not retained in the application file and therefore are not publicly available.

LEGAL NAME OF INVENTOR

Inventor: _____ Date (Optional): 3/25/2015

Signature: Robert W. Cook Robert W Cook

Note: An application data sheet (PTO/SB/14 or equivalent), including naming the entire inventive entity, must accompany this form or must have been previously filed. Use an additional PTO/AIA/01 form for each additional inventor.

This collection of information is required by 35 U.S.C. 115 and 37 CFR 1.63. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 minute to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
14/172,392	02/04/2014	David F. Sorrells	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2	8448

22913 7590 04/06/2015

Workman Nydegger
60 East South Temple
Suite 1000
Salt Lake City, UT 84111

EXAMINER	
BHATTACHARYA, SAM	

ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
2646	

NOTIFICATION DATE	DELIVERY MODE
04/06/2015	ELECTRONIC

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.

Notice of the Office communication was sent electronically on above-indicated "Notification Date" to the following e-mail address(es):

Docketing@wnlaw.com

Applicant-Initiated Interview Summary	Application No.	Applicant(s)	
	14/172,392	SORRELLS ET AL.	
	Examiner	Art Unit	
	Sam Bhattacharya	2646	

All participants (applicant, applicant's representative, PTO personnel):

(1) *Sam Bhattacharya*. (3)_____.

(2) *Rick D. Nydegger*. (4)_____.

Date of Interview: *27 March 2015*.

Type: ☐ Telephonic ☐ Video Conference
☒ Personal [copy given to: ☐ applicant ☒ applicant's representative]

Exhibit shown or demonstration conducted: ☐ Yes ☒ No.
If Yes, brief description: _____.

Issues Discussed ☐101 ☐112 ☐102 ☐103 ☒Others
(For each of the checked box(es) above, please describe below the issue and detailed description of the discussion)

Claim(s) discussed: *2*.

Identification of prior art discussed: *Eastabrook, Weiskopf,Avitabile*.

Substance of Interview
(For each issue discussed, provide a detailed description and indicate if agreement was reached. Some topics may include: identification or clarification of a reference or a portion thereof, claim interpretation, proposed amendments, arguments of any applied references etc...)

Applicant's representative briefly discussed the claim differences as between the '392 application (parent) and the '296, '310 and '366 continuations of the parent. Terminal disclaimers as discussed have been filed for the parent over '513 and '607 patents, and will be considered for the three continations ('266 application over the '392 case and the '513 and '607 patents, and the '310 and '366 applications relative to at least each other). The prior art of record was also briefly reviewed.

Applicant recordation instructions: The formal written reply to the last Office action must include the substance of the interview. (See MPEP section 713.04). If a reply to the last Office action has already been filed, applicant is given a non-extendable period of the longer of one month or thirty days from this interview date, or the mailing date of this interview summary form, whichever is later, to file a statement of the substance of the interview

Examiner recordation instructions: Examiners must summarize the substance of any interview of record. A complete and proper recordation of the substance of an interview should include the items listed in MPEP 713.04 for complete and proper recordation including the identification of the general thrust of each argument or issue discussed, a general indication of any other pertinent matters discussed regarding patentability and the general results or outcome of the interview, to include an indication as to whether or not agreement was reached on the issues raised.

☐ Attachment

/Sam Bhattacharya/ Primary Examiner, Art Unit 2646	

Summary of Record of Interview Requirements

Manual of Patent Examining Procedure (MPEP), Section 713.04, Substance of Interview Must be Made of Record
A complete written statement as to the substance of any face-to-face, video conference, or telephone interview with regard to an application must be made of record in the application whether or not an agreement with the examiner was reached at the interview.

Title 37 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) § 1.133 Interviews
Paragraph (b)

In every instance where reconsideration is requested in view of an interview with an examiner, a complete written statement of the reasons presented at the interview as warranting favorable action must be filed by the applicant. An interview does not remove the necessity for reply to Office action as specified in §§ 1.111, 1.135. (35 U.S.C. 132)

37 CFR §1.2 Business to be transacted in writing.
All business with the Patent or Trademark Office should be transacted in writing. The personal attendance of applicants or their attorneys or agents at the Patent and Trademark Office is unnecessary. The action of the Patent and Trademark Office will be based exclusively on the written record in the Office. No attention will be paid to any alleged oral promise, stipulation, or understanding in relation to which there is disagreement or doubt.

The action of the Patent and Trademark Office cannot be based exclusively on the written record in the Office if that record is itself incomplete through the failure to record the substance of interviews.

It is the responsibility of the applicant or the attorney or agent to make the substance of an interview of record in the application file, unless the examiner indicates he or she will do so. It is the examiner's responsibility to see that such a record is made and to correct material inaccuracies which bear directly on the question of patentability.

Examiners must complete an Interview Summary Form for each interview held where a matter of substance has been discussed during the interview by checking the appropriate boxes and filling in the blanks. Discussions regarding only procedural matters, directed solely to restriction requirements for which interview recordation is otherwise provided for in Section 812.01 of the Manual of Patent Examining Procedure, or pointing out typographical errors or unreadable script in Office actions or the like, are excluded from the interview recordation procedures below. Where the substance of an interview is completely recorded in an Examiners Amendment, no separate Interview Summary Record is required.

The Interview Summary Form shall be given an appropriate Paper No., placed in the right hand portion of the file, and listed on the "Contents" section of the file wrapper. In a personal interview, a duplicate of the Form is given to the applicant (or attorney or agent) at the conclusion of the interview. In the case of a telephone or video-conference interview, the copy is mailed to the applicant's correspondence address either with or prior to the next official communication. If additional correspondence from the examiner is not likely before an allowance or if other circumstances dictate, the Form should be mailed promptly after the interview rather than with the next official communication.

The Form provides for recordation of the following information:
- Application Number (Series Code and Serial Number)
- Name of applicant
- Name of examiner
- Date of interview
- Type of interview (telephonic, video-conference, or personal)
- Name of participant(s) (applicant, attorney or agent, examiner, other PTO personnel, etc.)
- An indication whether or not an exhibit was shown or a demonstration conducted
- An identification of the specific prior art discussed
- An indication whether an agreement was reached and if so, a description of the general nature of the agreement (may be by attachment of a copy of amendments or claims agreed as being allowable). Note: Agreement as to allowability is tentative and does not restrict further action by the examiner to the contrary.
- The signature of the examiner who conducted the interview (if Form is not an attachment to a signed Office action)

It is desirable that the examiner orally remind the applicant of his or her obligation to record the substance of the interview of each case. It should be noted, however, that the Interview Summary Form will not normally be considered a complete and proper recordation of the interview unless it includes, or is supplemented by the applicant or the examiner to include, all of the applicable items required below concerning the substance of the interview.

A complete and proper recordation of the substance of any interview should include at least the following applicable items:
1) A brief description of the nature of any exhibit shown or any demonstration conducted,
2) an identification of the claims discussed,
3) an identification of the specific prior art discussed,
4) an identification of the principal proposed amendments of a substantive nature discussed, unless these are already described on the Interview Summary Form completed by the Examiner,
5) a brief identification of the general thrust of the principal arguments presented to the examiner,
   (The identification of arguments need not be lengthy or elaborate. A verbatim or highly detailed description of the arguments is not required. The identification of the arguments is sufficient if the general nature or thrust of the principal arguments made to the examiner can be understood in the context of the application file. Of course, the applicant may desire to emphasize and fully describe those arguments which he or she feels were or might be persuasive to the examiner.)
6) a general indication of any other pertinent matters discussed, and
7) if appropriate, the general results or outcome of the interview unless already described in the Interview Summary Form completed by the examiner.

Examiners are expected to carefully review the applicant's record of the substance of an interview. If the record is not complete and accurate, the examiner will give the applicant an extendable one month time period to correct the record.

Examiner to Check for Accuracy

If the claims are allowable for other reasons of record, the examiner should send a letter setting forth the examiner's version of the statement attributed to him or her. If the record is complete and accurate, the examiner should place the indication, "Interview Record OK" on the paper recording the substance of the interview along with the date and the examiner's initials.

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
14/172,392	02/04/2014	David F. Sorrells	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2	8448

22913 7590 04/10/2015

Workman Nydegger
60 East South Temple
Suite 1000
Salt Lake City, UT 84111

EXAMINER	
BHATTACHARYA, SAM	

ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
2646	

NOTIFICATION DATE	DELIVERY MODE
04/10/2015	ELECTRONIC

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.

Notice of the Office communication was sent electronically on above-indicated "Notification Date" to the following e-mail address(es):

Docketing@wnlaw.com

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Commissioner for Patents
United States Patent and Trademark Office
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

Application No. : 14172392
Applicant : Sorrells
Filing Date : 02/04/2014
Date Mailed : 04/10/2015

NOTICE TO FILE CORRECTED APPLICATION PAPERS

Notice of Allowance Mailed

This application has been accorded an Allowance Date and is being prepared for issuance. The application, however, is incomplete for the reasons below.

Applicant is given 1 month(s) from the mail date of this Notice, or the time remaining from the Notice of Allowance and Fee(s) Due, whichever is longer, within which to respond.

The informalities requiring correction are indicated in the attachment(s). If the informality pertains to the abstract, specification (including claims) or drawings, the informality must be corrected with an amendment in compliance with 37 CFR 1.121 (or, if the application is a reissue application, 37 CFR 1.173). Such an amendment may be filed after payment of the issue fee if limited to correction of informalities noted herein. See Waiver of 37 CFR 1.312 for Documents Required by the Office of Patent Publication, 1280 Off. Gaz. Patent Office 918 (March 23, 2004). In addition, if the informality is not corrected until after payment of the issue fee, for purposes of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(iv), "all outstanding requirements" will be considered to have been satisfied when the informality has been corrected. A failure to respond within the above-identified time period will result in the application being ABANDONED. **This period for reply is NOT extendable under 37 CFR 1.136(a).**

See attachment(s).

A copy of this notice MUST be returned with the reply. Please address response to "Mail Stop Issue Fee, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450".

/Daxa Patel/
Publication Branch
Office of Data Management
(571) 272-4200

Application No. 14172392

IDENTIFICATION OF APPLICATION DEFICIENCIES IN APPLICATION FILED ON OR AFTER SEPTEMBER 16, 2012

[X] Applicant must provide legible text for the following item(s).

- [X] Specification filed 05/15/2014, page(s) 74-391.
- [ ] Claims filed , claim(s) .
- [X] Other: Trough out the specification contains illegible data..

[ ] Applicant must provide missing information on the following page(s) of the specification by amending the specification to add the missing text. No new matter may be added.
Page/line no(s).

[ ] The specification refers to one or more applications by attorney docket number and does not show the U.S. application number(s). Applicant must supply the U.S. application number in place of each attorney docket number.
Page/line no(s).

[ ] Applicant must provide an Abstract of the Disclosure.

[ ] The Application Data Sheet (ADS dated) does not supply the inventor's city and/or does not supply the inventor's U.S. state and/or does not supply the inventor's country. Applicant must submit a signed application data sheet that corrects this deficiency. To be in compliance with 37 CFR 1.76, the corrected application data sheet must identify the information being changed by using underlining for additions and strikethroughs or brackets for deletions..

[ ] The Application Data Sheet (ADS dated) was not properly signed. Applicant must submit an application data sheet that is properly signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.76(e) and 1.33(b). If the unsigned application data sheet shows foreign priority information or domestic benefit information, and if the Office does not show foreign priority information or domestic benefit information on the filing receipt, applicant may need to file a petition under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78 for delayed claim for priority or benefit if the claim for priority or benefit has not been filed in accordance with the time periods set forth in 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78.

[ ] Other:

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	22092558
Application Number:	14172392
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	8448
Title of Invention:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	David F. Sorrells
Customer Number:	22913
Filer:	Rick D. Nydegger/Ralene Eller
Filer Authorized By:	Rick D. Nydegger
Attorney Docket Number:	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
Receipt Date:	17-APR-2015
Filing Date:	04-FEB-2014
Time Stamp:	12:16:42
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	no

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Oath or Declaration filed	19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2015-04-17_Bultman-Dec.pdf	81980 20bd23bb5178964ed7529e5c5eb49f1b6bbaa1c2	no	1

Warnings:	
Information:	

Total Files Size (in bytes):	81980

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111
If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371
If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office
If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

PTO/AIA/01 (06-12)
Approved for use through 01/31/2014. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office: U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION (37 CFR 1.63) FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN APPLICATION USING AN APPLICATION DATA SHEET (37 CFR 1.76)

Title of Invention	METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR DOWN-CONVERTING AN ELECTROMAGNETIC SIGNAL, AND TRANSFORMS FOR SAME, AND APERTURE RELATIONSHIPS

As the below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

This declaration is directed to:

☐ The attached application, or

☒ United States application or PCT international application number 14/172,392

filed on February 4, 2014.

The above-identified application was made or authorized to be made by me.

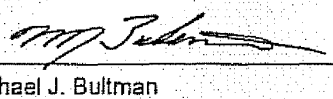
I believe that I am the original inventor or an original joint inventor of a claimed invention in the application.

I hereby acknowledge that any willful false statement made in this declaration is punishable under 18 U.S.C. 1001 by fine or imprisonment of not more than five (5) years, or both.

WARNING:

Petitioner/applicant is cautioned to avoid submitting personal information in documents filed in a patent application that may contribute to identity theft. Personal information such as social security numbers, bank account numbers, or credit card numbers (other than a check or credit card authorization form PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes) is never required by the USPTO to support a petition or an application. If this type of personal information is included in documents submitted to the USPTO, petitioners/applicants should consider redacting such personal information from the documents before submitting them to the USPTO. Petitioner/applicant is advised that the record of a patent application is available to the public after publication of the application (unless a non-publication request in compliance with 37 CFR 1.213(a) is made in the application) or issuance of a patent. Furthermore, the record from an abandoned application may also be available to the public if the application is referenced in a published application or an issued patent (see 37 CFR 1.14). Checks and credit card authorization forms PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes are not retained in the application file and therefore are not publicly available.

LEGAL NAME OF INVENTOR

Inventor:  Date (Optional): 12 Apr 15

Signature: Michael J. Bultman

Note: An application data sheet (PTO/SB/14 or equivalent), including naming the entire inventive entity, must accompany this form or must have been previously filed. Use an additional PTO/AIA/01 form for each additional inventor.

This collection of information is required by 35 U.S.C. 115 and 37 CFR 1.63. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 minute to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

Electronically Filed via *EFS*

PATENT APPLICATION
Docket: 19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re application of:		)
	David F. Sorrells et al.	)
		)
Serial No.:	14/172,392	)
		)
Confirmation No.:	8448	)
		)
Filed:	February 4, 2014	)
		)
For:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships	)

RESPONSE TO NOTICE TO FILE CORRECTED APPLICATION PAPERS

Mail Stop ISSUE FEE
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Dear Commissioner:

In response to the Notice to File Corrected Application Papers mailed April 10, 2015, please amend the above-identified application as follows:

Remarks/Arguments begin on page 2 of this paper.

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	22133673
Application Number:	14172392
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	8448
Title of Invention:	Method and System for Down-Converting an Electromagnetic Signal, and Transforms for Same, and Aperture Relationships
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	David F. Sorrells
Customer Number:	22913
Filer:	Rick D. Nydegger/Ralene Eller
Filer Authorized By:	Rick D. Nydegger
Attorney Docket Number:	19200.1.1.1.2.2.1.2
Receipt Date:	22-APR-2015
Filing Date:	04-FEB-2014
Time Stamp:	12:51:58
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	no

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Applicant Response to Pre-Exam Formalities Notice	19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2015-04-22_Response-to-Notice-to-file-Corrected-Application-Papers.pdf	129162 fba4c535043c6ea9b768bb6c72ddac204345d72e	no	2

Warnings:	
Information:	

2	Specification	19200-1-1-1-2-2-1-2_2015-04-22_Cover-and-Replacement-pages-74-391.pdf	1273001 1f57c574c44362e10a0ef54c80b3adb14de37605	no	319
Warnings:					
Information:					
			Total Files Size (in bytes):	1402163	

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111
If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371
If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office
If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

REMARKS

In response to the Notice to File Corrected Application Papers mailed April 10, 2015, Applicants have provided herewith replacement pages 74-391 of the specification. No new matter has been added. Applicants respectfully submit that by replacing pages 74-391, the objections to the rejections have been overcome. Accordingly, Applicants request that the objection to the specification be withdrawn.

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge payment of any of the following fees that may be applicable to this communication, or credit any overpayment, to **Deposit Account No. 23-3178**: (1) any filing fees required under 37 CFR § 1.16; (2) any patent application and reexamination processing fees under 37 CFR § 1.17; and/or (3) any post issuance fees under 37 CFR § 1.20. In addition, if any additional extension of time is required, which has not otherwise been requested, please consider this a petition therefore and charge any additional fees that may be required to **Deposit Account No. 23-3178**.

Dated April 22, 2015.

Respectfully submitted,



RICK D. NYDEGGER
Attorney for Applicant
Registration No.: 28,651
Customer No. 022913

WORKMAN NYDEGGER
1000 Eagle Gate Tower
60 East South Temple
Salt Lake City, UT 84111
Phone: 801-533-9800
Fax: 801-328-1707

5093366_1

REPLACEMENT PAGES 74-391 OF SPECIFICATION
SERIAL NO. 14/172,392

$F_{DIFF} = F_C + F_{IF}$, and for a constant F_{DIFF}, as F_C increases, F_{IF} necessarily decreases. In the latter case of $F_{DIFF} = F_C + F_{IF}$, any phase or frequency changes on F_C correspond to reversed or inverted phase or frequency changes on F_{IF}. This is mentioned to teach the reader that if $F_{DIFF} = F_C + F_{IF}$ is used, the above effect will affect the phase and frequency response of the modulated intermediate signal F_{IF}.

EQs. (2) through (7) can be solved for any valid n. A suitable n can be determined for any given difference frequency F_{DIFF} and for any desired aliasing rate $F_{AR(Desired)}$. EQs. (2) through (7) can be utilized to identify a specific harmonic closest to a desired aliasing rate $F_{AR(Desired)}$ that will generate the desired intermediate signal F_{IF}.

An example is now provided for determining a suitable n for a given difference frequency F_{DIFF} and for a desired aliasing rate $F_{AR(Desired)}$. For ease of illustration, only the case of $(F_C - F_{IF})$ is illustrated in the example below.

$$n = \frac{F_C - F_{IF}}{F_{AR(Desired)}} = \frac{F_{DIFF}}{F_{AR(Desired)}}$$

The desired aliasing rate $F_{AR(Desired)}$ can be, for example, 140 MHZ. Using the previous examples, where the carrier frequency is 901 MHZ and the IF is 1 MHZ, an initial value of n is determined as:

$$n = \frac{901\ \text{MHZ} - 1\ \text{MHZ}}{140\ \text{MHZ}} = \frac{900}{140} = 6.4$$

The initial value 6.4 can be rounded up or down to the valid nearest n, which was defined above as including (0.5, 1, 2, 3, . . .). In this example, 6.4 is rounded down to 6.0, which is inserted into EQ. (5) for the case of $(F_C - F_{IF}) = F_{DIFF}$.:

$$F_{AR} = \frac{F_C - F_{IF}}{n}$$

$$F_{AR} = \frac{901\ \text{MHZ} - 1\ \text{MHZ}}{n} = \frac{900\ \text{MHZ}}{n} = 150\ \text{MHZ}$$

In other words, under-sampling a 901 MHZ EM carrier signal at 150 MHZ generates an intermediate signal at 1 MHZ. When the under-sampled EM carrier signal is a modulated carrier signal, the intermediate signal will also substantially include the modulation. The modulated intermediate signal can be demodulated through any conventional demodulation technique.

Alternatively, instead of starting from a desired aliasing rate, a list of suitable aliasing rates can be determined from the modified form of EQ. (5), by solving for various values of n. Example solutions are listed

below.

$$F_{AR} = \frac{(F_C - F_{IF})}{n} = \frac{F_{DIFF}}{n} = \frac{901\,MHZ - 1\,MHZ}{n} = \frac{900\,MHZ}{n}$$

Solving for n = 0.5, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6:

900 MHZ/0.5 = 1.8 GHZ (i.e., second harmonic, illustrated in FIG. 25A as 2502);

900 MHZ/1 = 900 MHZ (i.e., fundamental frequency, illustrated in FIG. 25B as 2504);

900 MHZ/2 = 450 MHZ (i.e., second sub-harmonic, illustrated in FIG. 25C as 2506);

900 MHZ/3 = 300 MHZ (i.e., third sub-harmonic, illustrated in FIG. 25D as 2508);

900 MHZ/4 = 225 MHZ (i.e., fourth sub-harmonic, illustrated in FIG. 25E as 2510);

900 MHZ/5 = 180 MHZ(i.e., fifth sub-harmonic, illustrated in FIG. 25F as 2512); and

900 MHZ/6 = 150 MHZ(i.e., sixth sub-harmonic, illustrated in FIG. 25G as 2514).

The steps described above can be performed for the case of (F_C+F_{IF}) in a similar fashion. The results can be compared to the results obtained from the case of (F_C-F_{IF}) to determine which provides better result for an application.

In an embodiment, the invention down-converts an EM signal to a relatively standard IF in the range of, for example, 100KHZ to 200 MHZ. In another embodiment, referred to herein as a small off-set implementation, the invention down-converts an EM signal to a relatively low frequency of,

for example, less than 100 KHZ. In another embodiment, referred to herein as a large off-set implementation, the invention down-converts an EM signal to a relatively higher IF signal, such as, for example, above 200 MHZ.

The various off-set implementations provide selectivity for different applications. Generally, lower data rate applications can operate at lower intermediate frequencies. But higher intermediate frequencies can allow more information to be supported for a given modulation technique.

In accordance with the invention, a designer picks an optimum information bandwidth for an application and an optimum intermediate frequency to support the baseband signal. The intermediate frequency should be high enough to support the bandwidth of the modulating baseband signal F_{MB}.

Generally, as the aliasing rate approaches a harmonic or sub-harmonic frequency of the EM signal, the frequency of the down-converted IF signal decreases. Similarly, as the aliasing rate moves away from a harmonic or sub-harmonic frequency of the EM signal, the IF increases.

Aliased frequencies occur above and below every harmonic of the aliasing frequency. In order to avoid mapping other aliasing frequencies in the band of the aliasing frequency (IF) of interest, the IF of interest is preferably not near one half the aliasing rate.

As described in example implementations below, an aliasing module, including a universal frequency translator (UFT) module built in accordance with the invention, provides a wide range of flexibility in frequency selection and can thus be implemented in a wide range of applications. Conventional systems cannot easily offer, or do not allow, this level of flexibility in frequency selection.

1.1.2 Structural Description

FIG. 16 illustrates a block diagram of an under-sampling system 1602 according to an embodiment of the invention. The under-sampling system 1602 is an example embodiment of the generic aliasing system 1302 in FIG. 13. The under-sampling system 1602 includes an under-sampling module 1606. The under-sampling module 1606 receives the EM signal 1304 and an under-sampling signal 1604, which includes under-sampling pulses having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time, occurring at a frequency equal to the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The under-sampling signal 1604 is an example embodiment of the aliasing signal 1310. The under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the EM signal 1304 at the aliasing rate F_{AR} of the under-sampling signal 1604. The under-sampling system 1602 outputs a down-converted signal 1308A.

Preferably, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the EM signal 1304 to down-convert it to the intermediate signal F_{IF} in the manner shown in the operational flowchart 1407 of FIG. 14B. But it should be understood that the scope and spirit of the invention includes other structural embodiments for performing the steps of the flowchart 1407. The specifics of the other structural embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein. In an embodiment, the aliasing rate F_{AR} of the under-sampling signal 1604 is chosen in the manner discussed in Section II.1.1.1 so that the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the EM carrier signal 1304 generating the intermediate frequency F_{IF}.

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described with reference to the flowchart 1407 and to the timing diagrams in FIGS. 15A-D. In step 1408, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the AM signal 616 (FIG. 15A). In step 1410, the under-sampling module 1606

receives the under-sampling signal 1502 (FIG. 15B). In step 1412, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 1502, or a multiple thereof, to down-convert the AM carrier signal 616 to the intermediate signal 1506 (FIG. 15D).

Example implementations of the under-sampling module 1606 are provided in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.2 Example Embodiments

Various embodiments related to the method(s) and structure(s) described above are presented in this section (and its subsections). These embodiments are described herein for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to these embodiments. Alternate embodiments (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the embodiments described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. The invention is intended and adapted to include such alternate embodiments.

The method for down-converting the EM signal 1304 to the intermediate signal F_{IF}, illustrated in the flowchart 1407 of FIG. 14B, can be implemented with any type of EM signal, including unmodulated EM carrier signals and modulated carrier signals including, but not limited to, AM, FM, PM, etc., or any combination thereof. Operation of the flowchart 1407 of FIG. 14B is described below for AM, FM and PM carrier signals. The exemplary descriptions below are intended to facilitate an understanding of the present invention. The present invention is not limited to or by the exemplary embodiments below.

1.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Amplitude Modulation

1.2.1.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 1407 in FIG. 14B is described below for the analog AM carrier signal 516, illustrated in FIG. 5C, and for the digital AM carrier signal 616, illustrated in FIG. 6C.

1.2.1.1.1 Analog AM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the analog AM carrier signal 516 in FIG. 5C to an analog AM intermediate signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1407 in FIG. 14B. The analog AM carrier signal 516 is re-illustrated in FIG. 19A for convenience. For this example, the analog AM carrier signal 516 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 19B, an analog AM carrier signal 1904 illustrates a portion of the analog AM carrier signal 516 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1408, which includes receiving the EM signal. This is represented by the analog AM carrier signal 516 in FIG. 19A.

Step 1410 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 19C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 1906 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 19B. The under-sampling signal 1906 includes a train of pulses 1907 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 1907 repeat at the aliasing rate, or pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. For this example, the aliasing rate is approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1412 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to the intermediate signal F_{IF}. Step 1412 is illustrated in FIG. 19B by under-sample points 1905.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the AM carrier signal 516, the under-sample points 1905 "walk through" the analog AM carrier signal 516. In this example, the under-sample points 1905 "walk through" the analog AM carrier signal 516 at approximately a one megahertz rate. In other words, the under-sample points 1905 occur at different locations on subsequent cycles of the AM carrier signal 516. As a result, the under-sample points 1905 capture varying amplitudes of the analog AM signal 516. For example, under-sample point1905A has a larger amplitude than under-sample point 1905B.

In FIG. 19D, the under-sample points 1905 correlate to voltage points 1908. In an embodiment, the voltage points 1908 form an analog AM intermediate signal 1910. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 1908 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as discussed below.

In FIG. 19E, an AM intermediate signal 1912 represents the AM intermediate signal 1910, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 19E illustrates the AM intermediate signal 1912 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The AM intermediate signal 1912 is substantially similar to the AM carrier signal 516, except that the AM intermediate signal 1912 is at the 1 MHZ intermediate frequency. The AM intermediate signal 1912 can be demodulated through any conventional AM demodulation technique.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the AM intermediate signal 1910 in FIG. 19D and the AM intermediate signal 1912 in FIG. 19E illustrate that the AM carrier signal 516 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.1.1.2 Digital AM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the digital AM carrier signal 616 in FIG. 6C to a digital AM intermediate signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1407 in FIG. 14B. The digital AM carrier signal 616 is re-illustrated in FIG. 18A for convenience. For this example, the digital AM carrier signal 616 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 18B, an AM carrier signal 1804 illustrates a portion of the AM signal 616, from time t0 to t1, on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1408, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the AM signal 616 in FIG. 18A.

Step 1410 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 18C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 1806 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 18B. The under-sampling signal 1806 includes a train of pulses 1807 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 1807 repeat at the aliasing rate, or pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down- converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. For this example, the aliasing rate is approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1412 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to the intermediate signal F_{IF}. Step 1412 is illustrated in FIG. 18B by under-sample points 1805.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the AM carrier signal 616, the under-sample points 1805 walk through the AM carrier signal 616. In other words, the under-sample points 1805 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the AM signal 616. As a result, the under-sample points 1805 capture various amplitudes of the AM signal 616. In this example, the under-sample points 1805 walk through the AM carrier signal 616 at approximately a 1 MHZ rate. For example, under-sample point 1805A has a larger amplitude than under-sample point 1805B.

In FIG. 18D, the under-sample points 1805 correlate to voltage points 1808. In an embodiment, the voltage points 1805 form an AM intermediate signal 1810. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 1808 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as discussed below.

In FIG. 18E, an AM intermediate signal 1812 represents the AM intermediate signal 1810, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 18E illustrates the AM intermediate signal 1812 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The AM intermediate signal 1812 is substantially similar to the AM carrier signal 616, except that the AM intermediate signal 1812 is at the 1 MHZ intermediate frequency. The AM intermediate signal 1812 can be demodulated through any conventional AM demodulation technique.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the AM intermediate signal

1810 in FIG. 18D and the AM intermediate signal 1812 in FIG. 18E illustrate that the AM carrier signal 616 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.1.2 Structural Description

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for the analog AM carrier signal 516, with reference to the flowchart 1407 and to the timing diagrams of FIGS. 19A-E. In step 1408, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the AM carrier signal 516 (FIG. 19A). In step 1410, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 1906 (FIG. 19C). In step 1412, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the AM carrier signal 516 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 1906 to down-convert it to the AM intermediate signal 1912 (FIG. 19E).

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for the digital AM carrier signal 616, with reference to the flowchart 1407 and to the timing diagrams of FIGS. 18A-E. In step 1408, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the AM carrier signal 616 (FIG. 18A). In step 1410, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 1806 (FIG. 18C). In step 1412, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 1806 to down-convert it to the AM intermediate signal 1812 (FIG. 18E).

Example implementations of the under-sampling module 1606 are provided in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.2.2 Second Example Embodiment: Frequency Modulation

1.2.2.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 1407 in FIG. 14B is described below for the analog FM carrier signal 716, illustrated in FIG. 7C, and for the digital FM carrier signal 816, illustrated in FIG. 8C.

1.2.2.1.1 Analog FM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the analog FM carrier signal 716 to an analog FM intermediate signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1407 in FIG. 14B. The analog FM carrier signal 716 is re-illustrated in FIG. 20A for convenience. For this example, the analog FM carrier signal 716 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 20B, an FM carrier signal 2004 illustrates a portion of the analog FM carrier signal 716, from time t1 to t3, on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1408, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented in FIG. 20A by the FM carrier signal 716.

Step 1410 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 20C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 2006 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 20B. The under-sampling signal 2006 includes a train of pulses 2007 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 2007 repeat at the aliasing rate or pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. For

this example, where the FM carrier signal 716 is centered around 901 MHZ, the aliasing rate is approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1412 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to the intermediate signal F_{IF}. Step 1412 is illustrated in FIG. 20B by under-sample points 2005.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the FM carrier signal 716, the under-sample points 2005 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the under-sampled signal 716. In other words, the under-sample points 2005 walk through the signal 716. As a result, the under-sample points 2005 capture various amplitudes of the FM carrier signal 716.

In FIG. 20D, the under-sample points 2005 correlate to voltage points 2008. In an embodiment, the voltage points 2005 form an analog FM intermediate signal 2010. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 2008 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as discussed below.

In FIG. 20E, an FM intermediate signal 2012 illustrates the FM intermediate signal 2010, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 20E illustrates the FM intermediate signal 2012 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The FM intermediate signal 2012 is substantially similar to the FM carrier signal 716, except that the FM intermediate signal 2012 is at the 1 MHZ intermediate frequency. The FM intermediate signal 2012 can be demodulated through any conventional FM demodulation technique.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the FM intermediate signal

2010 in FIG. 20D and the FM intermediate signal 2012 in FIG. 20E illustrate that the FM carrier signal 716 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.2.1.2 Digital FM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the digital FM carrier signal 816 to a digital FM intermediate signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1407 in FIG. 14B. The digital FM carrier signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 21A for convenience. For this example, the digital FM carrier signal 816 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 21B, an FM carrier signal 2104 illustrates a portion of the FM carrier signal 816, from time t1 to t3, on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1408, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented in FIG. 21A, by the FM carrier signal 816.

Step 1410 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 21C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 2106 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 21B. The under-sampling signal 2106 includes a train of pulses 2107 having negligible apertures that tend toward zero time in duration. The pulses 2107 repeat at the aliasing rate, or pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. In this example, where the FM carrier signal 816 is centered around 901 MHZ, the aliasing rate is selected as approximately 450 MHZ, which is a sub-harmonic of 900 MHZ, which is off-set by 1 MHZ from the center frequency of the FM carrier signal 816.

Step 1412 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to an intermediate signal F_{IF}. Step 1412 is illustrated in FIG. 21B by under-sample points 2105.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the FM carrier signal 816, the under-sample points 2105 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the FM carrier signal 816. In other words, the under-sample points 2105 walk through the signal 816. As a result, the under-sample points 2105 capture various amplitudes of the signal 816.

In FIG. 21D, the under-sample points 2105 correlate to voltage points 2108. In an embodiment, the voltage points 2108 form a digital FM intermediate signal 2110. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 2108 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as described below.

In FIG. 21E, an FM intermediate signal 2112 represents the FM intermediate signal 2110, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 21E illustrates the FM intermediate signal 2112 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The FM intermediate signal 2112 is substantially similar to the FM carrier signal 816, except that the FM intermediate signal 2112 is at the 1 MHZ intermediate frequency. The FM intermediate signal 2112 can be demodulated through any conventional FM demodulation technique.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the FM intermediate signal 2110 in FIG. 21D and the FM intermediate signal 2112 in FIG. 21E illustrate that the FM carrier signal 816 was successfully down-converted to

an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.2.2 Structural Description

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for the analog FM carrier signal 716, with reference to the flowchart 1407 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 20A-E. In step 1408, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the FM carrier signal 716 (FIG. 20A). In step 1410, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 2006 (FIG. 20C). In step 1412, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the FM carrier signal 716 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 2006 to down-convert the FM carrier signal 716 to the FM intermediate signal 2012 (FIG. 20E).

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for the digital FM carrier signal 816, with reference to the flowchart 1407 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 21A-E. In step 1408, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the FM carrier signal 816 (FIG. 21A). In step 1410, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 2106 (FIG. 21C). In step 1412, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the FM carrier signal 816 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 2106 to down-convert the FM carrier signal 816 to the FM intermediate signal 2112 (FIG. 21E).

Example implementations of the under-sampling module 1606 are provided in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.2.3 Third Example Embodiment: Phase Modulation

1.2.3.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 1407 in FIG. 14B is described below for the analog PM carrier signal 916, illustrated in FIG. 9C, and for the digital PM carrier signal 1016, illustrated in FIG. 10C.

1.2.3.1.1 Analog PM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the analog PM carrier signal 916 to an analog PM intermediate signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1407 in FIG. 14B. The analog PM carrier signal 916 is re-illustrated in FIG. 23A for convenience. For this example, the analog PM carrier signal 916 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 23B, a PM carrier signal 2304 illustrates a portion of the analog PM carrier signal 916, from time t1 to t3, on an expanded time scale.

The process of down-converting the PM carrier signal 916 to a PM intermediate signal begins at step 1408, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented in FIG. 23A, by the analog PM carrier signal 916.

Step 1410 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 23C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 2306 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 23B. The under-sampling signal 2306 includes a train of pulses 2307 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 2307 repeat at the aliasing rate, or pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. In this example, the aliasing rate is approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1412 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to the intermediate signal F_{IF}. Step 1412 is illustrated in FIG. 23B by under-sample points 2305.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the PM carrier signal 916, the under-sample points 2305 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the PM carrier signal 916. As a result, the under-sample points capture various amplitudes of the PM carrier signal 916.

In FIG. 23D, voltage points 2308 correlate to the under-sample points 2305. In an embodiment, the voltage points 2308 form an analog PM intermediate signal 2310. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 2308 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as described below.

In FIG. 23E, an analog PM intermediate signal 2312 illustrates the analog PM intermediate signal 2310, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 23E illustrates the PM intermediate signal 2312 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The analog PM intermediate signal 2312 is substantially similar to the analog PM carrier signal 916, except that the analog PM intermediate signal 2312 is at the 1 MHZ intermediate frequency. The analog PM intermediate signal 2312 can be demodulated through any conventional PM demodulation technique.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the analog PM intermediate signal 2310 in FIG. 23D and the analog PM intermediate signal 2312 in FIG. 23E illustrate that the analog PM carrier signal 2316 was successfully

down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.3.1.2 Digital PM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the digital PM carrier signal 1016 to a digital PM intermediate signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1407 in FIG. 14B. The digital PM carrier signal 1016 is re-illustrated in FIG. 22A for convenience. For this example, the digital PM carrier signal 1016 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 22B, a PM carrier signal 2204 illustrates a portion of the digital PM carrier signal 1016, from time t1 to t3, on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1408, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented in FIG. 22A by the digital PM carrier signal 1016.

Step 1408 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 22C illustrates example under-sampling signal 2206 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 22B. The under-sampling signal 2206 includes a train of pulses 2207 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 2207 repeat at the aliasing rate, or a pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. In this example, the aliasing rate is approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1412 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to an intermediate signal F_{IF}. Step 1412 is illustrated in FIG. 22B by under-sample points 2205.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the PM carrier signal 1016, the under-sample points 2205 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the PM carrier signal 1016.

In FIG. 22D, voltage points 2208 correlate to the under-sample points 2205. In an embodiment, the voltage points 2208 form a digital analog PM intermediate signal 2210. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 2208 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as described below.

In FIG. 22E, a digital PM intermediate signal 2212 represents the digital PM intermediate signal 2210 on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 22E illustrates the PM intermediate signal 2212 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The digital PM intermediate signal 2212 is substantially similar to the digital PM carrier signal 1016, except that the digital PM intermediate signal 2212 is at the 1 MHZ intermediate frequency. The digital PM carrier signal 2212 can be demodulated through any conventional PM demodulation technique.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the digital PM intermediate signal 2210 in FIG. 22D and the digital PM intermediate signal 2212 in FIG. 22E illustrate that the digital PM carrier signal 1016 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.3.2 Structural Description

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for the analog PM carrier signal 916, with reference to the flowchart 1407 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 23A-E. In step 1408, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the PM carrier signal 916 (FIG. 23A). In step 1410, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 2306 (FIG. 23C). In step 1412, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the PM carrier signal 916 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 2306 to down-convert the PM carrier signal 916 to the PM intermediate signal 2312 (FIG. 23E).

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for the digital PM carrier signal 1016, with reference to the flowchart 1407 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 22A-E. In step 1408, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the PM carrier signal 1016 (FIG. 22A). In step 1410, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 2206 (FIG. 22C). In step 1412, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the PM carrier signal 1016 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 2206 to down-convert the PM carrier signal 1016 to the PM intermediate signal 2212 (FIG. 22E).

Example implementations of the under-sampling module 1606 are provided in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.2.4 Other Embodiments

The embodiments described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These embodiments are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate embodiments, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate embodiments fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention. Example

implementations of the under-sampling module 1606 are provided in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.3 Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the method(s), structure(s), and/or embodiments described above are presented in Sections 4 and 5 below. The implementations are presented for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described therein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

2. Directly Down-Converting an EM Signal to a Baseband Signal (Direct-to-Data)

In an embodiment, the invention directly down-converts an EM signal to a baseband signal, by under-sampling the EM signal. This embodiment is referred to herein as direct-to-data down-conversion and is illustrated in FIG. 45B as 4510.

This embodiment can be implemented with modulated and unmodulated EM signals. This embodiment is described herein using the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} in FIG. 1, as an example. In the example, the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} is directly down-converted to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention is applicable to down-convert any EM signal, including but not limited to, modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signals.

The following sections describe example methods for directly down-converting the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. Exemplary structural embodiments for implementing the methods are also described. It should be understood that the invention is not limited to the particular embodiments described below. Equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the following will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., are within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

The following sections include a high level discussion, example embodiments, and implementation examples.

2.1 High Level Description

This section (including its subsections) provides a high-level description of directly down-converting the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}, according to the invention. In particular, an operational process of directly down-converting the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB} is described at a high-level. Also, a structural implementation for implementing this process is described at a high-level. The structural implementation is described herein for illustrative purposes, and is not limiting. In particular, the process described in this section can be achieved using any number of structural implementations, one of which is described in this section. The details of such structural implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein.

2.1.1 Operational Description

FIG. 14C depicts a flowchart 1413 that illustrates an exemplary method for directly down-converting an EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. The exemplary method illustrated in the flowchart 1413 is an embodiment of the flowchart 1401 in FIG. 14A.

Any and all combinations of modulation techniques are valid for this invention. For ease of discussion, the digital AM carrier signal 616 is used to illustrate a high level operational description of the invention. Subsequent sections provide detailed descriptions for AM and PM example embodiments. FM presents special considerations that are dealt with separately in Section II.3, below. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any type of EM signal, including any form of modulated carrier signal and unmodulated carrier signals.

The method illustrated in the flowchart 1413 is now described at a high level using the digital AM carrier signal 616, from FIG. 6C. The digital AM carrier signal 616 is re-illustrated in FIG. 33A for convenience.

The process of the flowchart 1413 begins at step 1414, which includes receiving an EM signal. Step 1414 is represented by the digital AM carrier signal 616 in FIG. 33A.

Step 1416 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 33B illustrates an example under-sampling signal 3302 which includes a train of pulses 3303 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 3303 repeat at the aliasing rate or pulse repetition rate. The aliasing rate is determined in accordance with EQ. (2), reproduced below for convenience.

$$F_C = n \bullet F_{AR} \pm F_{IF} \qquad \text{EQ. (2)}$$

When directly down-converting an EM signal to baseband (i.e., zero IF), EQ. (2) becomes:

$$F_C = n \bullet F_{AR} \qquad \text{EQ. (8)}$$

Thus, to directly down-convert the AM signal 616 to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the AM signal 616 or to a harmonic or sub-harmonic thereof. Although the aliasing rate is too low to permit reconstruction of higher frequency components of the AM signal 616 (i.e., the carrier frequency), it is high enough to permit substantial reconstruction of the lower frequency modulating baseband signal 310.

Step 1418 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert it to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. FIG. 33C illustrates a stair step demodulated baseband signal 3304, which is generated by the direct down-conversion process. The demodulated baseband signal 3304 is similar to the digital modulating baseband signal 310 in FIG. 3.

FIG. 33D depicts a filtered demodulated baseband signal 3306, which can be generated from the stair step demodulated baseband signal 3304. The invention can thus generate a filtered output signal, a partially filtered output signal, or a relatively unfiltered stair step output signal. The choice between filtered, partially filtered and non-filtered output signals is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

2.1.2 Structural Description

FIG. 16 illustrates the block diagram of the under-sampling system 1602 according to an embodiment of the invention. The under-sampling system 1602 is an example embodiment of the generic aliasing system 1302 in FIG. 13.

In a direct to data embodiment, the frequency of the under-sampling signal 1604 is substantially equal to a harmonic of the EM signal 1304 or, more typically, a sub-harmonic thereof Preferably, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the EM signal 1304 to directly down-convert it to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}, in the manner shown in the operational flowchart 1413. But it should be understood that the scope and spirit of the invention includes other structural embodiments for performing the steps of the flowchart 1413. The specifics of the other structural embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

The operation of the aliasing system 1602 is now described for the digital AM carrier signal 616, with reference to the flowchart 1413 and to the timing diagrams in FIGS. 33A-D. In step 1414, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the AM carrier signal 616 (FIG. 33A). In step 1416, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 3302 (FIG. 33B). In step 1418, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 3302 to directly down-convert the AM carrier signal 616 to the demodulated baseband signal 3304 in FIG. 33C or the filtered demodulated baseband signal 3306 in FIG. 33D.

Example implementations of the under-sampling module 1606 are provided in Sections 4 and 5 below.

2.2 Example Embodiments

Various embodiments related to the method(s) and structure(s) described above are presented in this section (and its subsections). These embodiments are described herein for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to these embodiments. Alternate embodiments (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the embodiments described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. The invention is intended and adapted to include such alternate embodiments.

The method for down-converting the EM signal 1304 to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}, illustrated in the flowchart 1413 of FIG. 14C, can be implemented with any type EM signal, including modulated carrier signals, including but not limited to, AM, PM, etc., or any combination thereof. Operation of the flowchart 1413 of FIG. 14C is described below for AM and PM carrier signals. The exemplary descriptions below are intended to facilitate an understanding of the present invention. The present invention is not limited to or by the exemplary embodiments below.

2.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Amplitude Modulation

2.2.1.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 1413 in FIG. 14C is described below for the analog AM carrier signal 516, illustrated in FIG. 5C and for the digital AM carrier signal 616, illustrated in FIG. 6C.

2.2.1.1.1 Analog AM Carrier Signal

A process for directly down-converting the analog AM carrier signal 516 to a demodulated baseband signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1413 in FIG. 14C. The analog AM carrier signal 516 is re-illustrated in 35A for convenience. For this example, the analog AM carrier signal 516 oscillates at approximately 900 MHZ. In FIG. 35B, an analog AM carrier signal 3504 illustrates a portion of the analog AM carrier signal 516 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1414, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the analog AM carrier signal 516.

Step 1416 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 35C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 3506 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 35B. The under-sampling signal 3506 includes a train of pulses 3507 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 3507 repeat at the aliasing rate or pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when directly down-converting to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the under-sampled signal. In this example, the aliasing rate is approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1418 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert it to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. Step 1418 is illustrated in FIG. 35B by under- sample points 3505. Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the

signal 516, essentially no IF is produced. The only substantial aliased component is the baseband signal.

In FIG. 35D, voltage points 3508 correlate to the under-sample points 3505. In an embodiment, the voltage points 3508 form a demodulated baseband signal 3510. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 3508 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as described below.

In FIG. 35E, a demodulated baseband signal 3512 represents the demodulated baseband signal 3510, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 35E illustrates the demodulated baseband signal 3512 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The demodulated baseband signal 3512 is substantially similar to the modulating baseband signal 210. The demodulated baseband signal 3512 can be processed using any signal processing technique(s) without further down-conversion or demodulation.

The aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal is preferably controlled to optimize the demodulated baseband signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

In the example above, the under-sample points 3505 occur at positive locations of the AM carrier signal 516. Alternatively, the under-sample points 3505 can occur at other locations including negative points of the analog AM carrier signal 516. When the under-sample points 3505 occur at negative locations of the AM carrier signal 516, the resultant demodulated baseband signal is inverted relative to the modulating baseband signal 210.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate direct to data down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the demodulated

baseband signal 3510 in FIG. 35D and the demodulated baseband signal 3512 in FIG. 35E illustrate that the AM carrier signal 516 was successfully down-converted to the demodulated baseband signal 3510 by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

2.2.1.1.2 Digital AM Carrier Signal

A process for directly down-converting the digital AM carrier signal 616 to a demodulated baseband signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1413 in FIG. 14C. The digital AM carrier signal 616 is re-illustrated in FIG. 36A for convenience. For this example, the digital AM carrier signal 616 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 36B, a digital AM carrier signal 3604 illustrates a portion of the digital AM carrier signal 616 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1414, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the digital AM carrier signal 616.

Step 1416 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 36C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 3606 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 36B. The under-sampling signal 3606 includes a train of pulses 3607 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 3607 repeat at the aliasing rate or pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when directly down-converting to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the under-sampled signal. In this example, the aliasing rate is approximately 450 MHZ. .

Step 1418 includes under-sampling the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert it to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. Step 1418 is illustrated in FIG. 36B by under- sample points 3605. Because the

aliasing rate is substantially equal to the AM carrier signal 616, or to a harmonic or sub-harmonic thereof, essentially no IF is produced. The only substantial aliased component is the baseband signal.

In FIG. 36D, voltage points 3608 correlate to the under-sample points 3605. In an embodiment, the voltage points 3608 form a demodulated baseband signal 3610. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 3608 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as described below.

In FIG. 36E, a demodulated baseband signal 3612 represents the demodulated baseband signal 3610, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 36E illustrates the demodulated baseband signal 3612 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The demodulated baseband signal 3612 is substantially similar to the digital modulating baseband signal 310. The demodulated analog baseband signal 3612 can be processed using any signal processing technique(s) without further down-conversion or demodulation.

The aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal is preferably controlled to optimize the demodulated baseband signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

In the example above, the under-sample points 3605 occur at positive locations of signal portion 3604. Alternatively, the under-sample points 3605 can occur at other locations including negative locations of the signal portion 3604. When the under-sample points 3605 occur at negative points, the resultant demodulated baseband signal is inverted with respect to the modulating baseband signal 310.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the demodulated baseband signal 3610 in FIG. 36D and the demodulated baseband signal 3612 in FIG. 36E illustrate that the digital AM carrier signal 616 was successfully down-converted to the demodulated baseband signal 3610 by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

2.2.1.2 Structural Description

The operation of the under-sampling module 1606 is now described for the analog AM carrier signal 516, with reference to the flowchart 1413 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 35A-E. In step 1414, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the analog AM carrier signal 516 (FIG. 35A). In step 1416, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 3506 (FIG. 35C). In step 1418, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the analog AM carrier signal 516 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 3506 to directly to down-convert the AM carrier signal 516 to the demodulated analog baseband signal 3510 in FIG. 35D or to the filtered demodulated analog baseband signal 3512 in FIG. 35E.

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for the digital AM carrier signal 616, with reference to the flowchart 1413 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 36A-E. In step 1414, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the digital AM carrier signal 616 (FIG. 36A). In step 1416, the under - sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 3606 (FIG. 36C). In step 1418, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the digital AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 3606 to down-convert the digital AM carrier signal 616 to the demodulated digital baseband signal

3610 in FIG. 36D or to the filtered demodulated digital baseband signal 3612 in FIG. 36E.

Example implementations of the under-sampling module 1606 are provided in Sections 4 and 5 below.

2.2.2 Second Example Embodiment: Phase Modulation

2.2.2.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 1413 in FIG. 14C is described below for the analog PM carrier signal 916, illustrated in FIG. 9C, and for the digital PM carrier signal 1016, illustrated in FIG. 10C.

2.2.2.1.1 Analog PM Carrier Signal

A process for directly down-converting the analog PM carrier signal 916 to a demodulated baseband signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1413 in FIG. 14C. The analog PM carrier signal 916 is re-illustrated in 37A for convenience. For this example, the analog PM carrier signal 916 oscillates at approximately 900 MHZ. In FIG. 37B, an analog PM carrier signal 3704 illustrates a portion of the analog PM carrier signal 916 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1414, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the analog PM signal 916.

Step 1416 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 37C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 3706 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 37B. The under-sampling signal 3706 includes a train of pulses 3707 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 3707 repeat at

the aliasing rate or pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when directly down-converting to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the under-sampled signal. In this example, the aliasing rate is approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1418 includes under-sampling the analog PM carrier signal 916 at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert it to a demodulated baseband signal. Step 1418 is illustrated in FIG. 37B by under-sample points 3705.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the signal 916, or substantially equal to a harmonic or sub-harmonic thereof, essentially no IF is produced. The only substantial aliased component is the baseband signal.

In FIG. 37D, voltage points 3708 correlate to the under-sample points 3705. In an embodiment, the voltage points 3708 form a demodulated baseband signal 3710. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 3708 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as described below.

In FIG. 37E, a demodulated baseband signal 3712 represents the demodulated baseband signal 3710, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 37E illustrates the demodulated baseband signal 3712 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The demodulated baseband signal 3712 is substantially similar to the analog modulating baseband signal 210. The demodulated baseband signal 3712 can be processed without further down-conversion or demodulation.

The aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal is preferably controlled to optimize the demodulated baseband signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

In the example above, the under-sample points 3705 occur at positive locations of the analog PM carrier signal 916. Alternatively, the under-sample points 3705 can occur at other locations include negative points of the analog PM carrier signal 916. When the under-sample points 3705 occur at negative locations of the analog PM carrier signal 916, the resultant demodulated baseband signal is inverted relative to the modulating baseband signal 210.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate direct to data down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the demodulated baseband signal 3710 in FIG. 37D and the demodulated baseband signal 3712 in FIG. 37E illustrate that the analog PM carrier signal 916 was successfully down-converted to the demodulated baseband signal 3710 by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

2.2.2.1.2 Digital PM Carrier Signal

A process for directly down-converting the digital PM carrier signal 1016 to a demodulated baseband signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 1413 in FIG. 14C. The digital PM carrier signal 1016 is re-illustrated in 38A for convenience. For this example, the digital PM carrier signal 1016 oscillates at approximately 900 MHZ. In FIG. 38B, a digital PM carrier signal 3804 illustrates a portion of the digital PM carrier signal 1016 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 1414, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the digital PM signal 1016.

Step 1416 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 38C illustrates an example under-sampling signal

3806 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 38B. The under-sampling signal 3806 includes a train of pulses 3807 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 3807 repeat at the aliasing rate or pulse repetition rate, which is determined or selected as described above. Generally, when directly down-converting to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the under-sampled signal. In this example, the aliasing rate is approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1418 includes under-sampling the digital PM carrier signal 1016 at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert it to a demodulated baseband signal. This is illustrated in FIG. 38B by under-sample points 3705.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the signal 1016, essentially no IF is produced. The only substantial aliased component is the baseband signal.

In FIG. 38D, voltage points 3808 correlate to the under-sample points 3805. In an embodiment, the voltage points 3808 form a demodulated baseband signal 3810. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 3808 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as described below.

In FIG. 38E, a demodulated baseband signal 3812 represents the demodulated baseband signal 3810, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 38E illustrates the demodulated baseband signal 3812 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications.

The demodulated baseband signal 3812 is substantially similar to the digital modulating baseband signal 310. The demodulated baseband signal 3812 can be processed without further down-conversion or demodulation.

The aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal is preferably controlled to optimize the demodulated baseband signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

In the example above, the under-sample points 3805 occur at positive locations of the digital PM carrier signal 1016. Alternatively, the under-sample points 3805 can occur at other locations include negative points of the digital PM carrier signal 1016. When the under-sample points 3805 occur at negative locations of the digital PM carrier signal 1016, the resultant demodulated baseband signal is inverted relative to the modulating baseband signal 310.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the demodulated baseband signal 3810 in FIG. 38D and the demodulated baseband signal 3812 in FIG. 38E illustrate that the digital PM carrier signal 1016 was successfully down-converted to the demodulated baseband signal 3810 by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

2.2.2.2 Structural Description

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for the analog PM carrier signal 916, with reference to the flowchart 1413 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 37A-E. In step 1414, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the analog PM carrier signal 916 (FIG. 37A). In step 1416, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 3706 (FIG. 37C). In step 1418, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the analog PM carrier signal 916 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 3706 to down-convert the PM carrier signal 916 to the demodulated analog baseband signal 3710 in FIG. 37D or to the filtered

demodulated analog baseband signal 3712 in FIG. 37E.

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for the digital PM carrier signal 1016, with reference to the flowchart 1413 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 38A-E. In step 1414, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the digital PM carrier signal 1016 (FIG. 38A). In step 1416, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 3806 (FIG. 38C). In step 1418, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the digital PM carrier signal 1016 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 3806 to down-convert the digital PM carrier signal 1016 to the demodulated digital baseband signal 3810 in FIG. 38D or to the filtered demodulated digital baseband signal 3812 in FIG. 38E.

2.2.3 Other Embodiments

The embodiments described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These embodiments are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate embodiments, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate embodiments fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

2.3 Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the method(s), structure(s), and/or embodiments described above are presented in Sections 4 and 5 below. These implementations are presented for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described therein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the

relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

3. Modulation Conversion

In an embodiment, the invention down-converts an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to a non-FM signal $F_{(NON\text{-}FM)}$, by under-sampling the FM carrier signal F_{FMC}. This embodiment is illustrated in FIG. 45B as 4512.

In an example embodiment, the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} is down-converted to a phase modulated (PM) signal F_{PM}. In another example embodiment, the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} is down- converted to an amplitude modulated (AM) signal F_{AM}. The invention is not limited to these embodiments. The down-converted signal can be demodulated with any conventional demodulation technique to obtain a demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}.

The invention can be implemented with any type of FM signal. Exemplary embodiments are provided below for down-converting a frequency shift keying (FSK) signal to a non-FSK signal. FSK is a sub-set of FM, wherein an FM signal shifts or switches between two or more frequencies. FSK is typically used for digital modulating baseband signals, such as the digital modulating baseband signal 310 in FIG. 3. For example, in FIG. 8, the digital FM signal 816 is an FSK signal that shifts between an upper frequency and a lower frequency, corresponding to amplitude shifts in the digital modulating baseband signal 310. The FSK signal 816 is used in example embodiments below.

In a first example embodiment, the FSK signal 816 is under-sampled at an aliasing rate that is based on a mid-point between the upper and lower frequencies of the FSK signal 816. When the aliasing rate is based on the mid-point, the FSK signal 816 is down-converted to a phase shift keying

(PSK) signal. PSK is a sub-set of phase modulation, wherein a PM signal shifts or switches between two or more phases. PSK is typically used for digital modulating baseband signals. For example, in FIG. 10, the digital PM signal 1016 is a PSK signal that shifts between two phases. The PSK signal 1016 can be demodulated by any conventional PSK demodulation technique(s).

In a second example embodiment, the FSK signal 816 is under-sampled at an aliasing rate that is based upon either the upper frequency or the lower frequency of the FSK signal 816. When the aliasing rate is based upon the upper frequency or the lower frequency of the FSK signal 816, the FSK signal 816 is down-converted to an amplitude shift keying (ASK) signal. ASK is a sub-set of amplitude modulation, wherein an AM signal shifts or switches between two or more amplitudes. ASK is typically used for digital modulating baseband signals. For example, in FIG. 6, the digital AM signal 616 is an ASK signal that shifts between the first amplitude and the second amplitude. The ASK signal 616 can be demodulated by any conventional ASK demodulation technique(s).

The following sections describe methods for under-sampling an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to down-convert it to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON\text{-}FM)}$. Exemplary structural embodiments for implementing the methods are also described. It should be understood that the invention is not limited to the particular embodiments described below. Equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the following will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., are within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

The following sections include a high level discussion, example embodiments, and implementation examples.

3.1 High Level Description

This section (including its subsections) provides a high-level description of under-sampling the FM carrier signal F_{FM} to down-convert it to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON\text{-}FM)}$, according to the invention. In particular, an operational process for down-converting the FM carrier signal F_{FM} to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON\text{-}FM)}$ is described at a high-level. Also, a structural implementation for implementing this process is described at a high-level. The structural implementation is described herein for illustrative purposes, and is not limiting. In particular, the process described in this section can be achieved using any number of structural implementations, one of which is described in this section. The details of such structural implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein.

3.1.1 Operational Description

FIG. 14D depicts a flowchart 1419 that illustrates an exemplary method for down-converting the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON\text{-}FM)}$. The exemplary method illustrated in the flowchart 1419 is an embodiment of the flowchart 1401 in FIG. 14A.

Any and all forms of frequency modulation techniques are valid for this invention. For ease of discussion, the digital FM carrier (FSK) signal 816 is used to illustrate a high level operational description of the invention. Subsequent sections provide detailed flowcharts and descriptions for the FSK signal 816. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any type of FM signal.

The method illustrated in the flowchart 1419 is described below at a high level for down-converting the FSK signal 816 in FIG. 8C to a PSK signal. The FSK signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 39A for convenience.

The process of the flowchart 1419 begins at step 1420, which includes receiving an FM signal. This is represented by the FSK signal 816. The FSK signal 816 shifts between an upper frequency 3910 and a lower frequency 3912. In an exemplary embodiment, the upper frequency 3910 is approximately 901 MHZ and the lower frequency 3912 is approximately 899 MHZ.

Step 1422 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 39B illustrates an example under-sampling signal 3902 which includes a train of pulses 3903 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 3903 repeat at the aliasing rate or pulse repetition rate.

When down-converting an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to a non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a frequency contained within the FM signal, or substantially equal to a harmonic or sub-harmonic thereof. In this example overview embodiment, where the FSK signal 816 is to be down-converted to a PSK signal, the aliasing rate is based on a mid-point between the upper frequency 3910 and the lower frequency 3912. For this example, the mid-point is approximately 900 MHZ. In another embodiment described below, where the FSK signal 816 is to be down-converted to an ASK signal, the aliasing rate is based on either the upper frequency 3910 or the lower frequency 3912, not the mid-point.

Step 1424 includes under-sampling the FM signal F_{FMC} at the aliasing rate to down-convert the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$. Step 1424 is illustrated in FIG. 39C, which illustrates a stair step PSK signal 3904, which is generated by the modulation conversion process.

When the upper frequency 3910 is under-sampled, the PSK signal 3904 has a frequency of approximately 1 MHZ and is used as a phase reference. When the lower frequency 3912 is under-sampled, the PSK signal 3904 has a frequency of 1 MHZ and is phase shifted 180 degrees from the phase reference.

FIG. 39D depicts a PSK signal 3906, which is a filtered version of the PSK signal 3904. The invention can thus generate a filtered output signal, a partially filtered output signal, or a relatively unfiltered stair step output signal. The choice between filtered, partially filtered and non-filtered output signals is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

Detailed exemplary embodiments for down-converting an FSK signal to a PSK signal and for down-converting an FSK signal to an ASK signal are provided below.

3.1.2 Structural Description

FIG. 16 illustrates the block diagram of the under-sampling system 1602 according to an embodiment of the invention. The under-sampling system 1602 includes the under-sampling module 1606. The under-sampling system 1602 is an example embodiment of the generic aliasing system 1302 in FIG. 13.

In a modulation conversion embodiment, the EM signal 1304 is an FM carrier signal and the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the FM carrier signal at a frequency that is substantially equal to a harmonic of a frequency within the FM signal or, more typically, substantially equal to a sub-harmonic of a frequency within the FM signal. Preferably, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to down-convert it to a non-FM signal $F_{(NON\text{-}FM)}$ in the manner shown in the operational flowchart 1419. But it should be understood that the scope and spirit of the invention includes other structural embodiments for performing the steps of the flowchart 1419. The specifics of the other structural embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 shall now be described with reference to the flowchart 1419 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 39A-39D. In step 1420, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the FSK signal 816. In step 1422, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 3902. In step 1424, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the FSK signal 816 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 3902 to down-convert the FSK signal 816 to the PSK signal 3904 or 3906.

Example implementations of the under-sampling module 1606 are provided in Section 4 below.

3.2 Example Embodiments

Various embodiments related to the method(s) and structure(s) described above are presented in this section (and its subsections). These embodiments are described herein for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to these embodiments. Alternate embodiments (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the embodiments described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. The invention is intended and adapted to include such alternate embodiments.

The method for down-converting an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to a non-FM signal, $F_{(NON\text{-}FM)}$, illustrated in the flowchart 1419 of FIG.14D, can be implemented with any type of FM carrier signal including, but not limited to, FSK signals. The flowchart 1419 is described in detail below for down-converting an FSK signal to a PSK signal and for down-converting a PSK signal to an ASK signal. The exemplary descriptions below are intended to facilitate an understanding of the present invention. The present invention is not limited to or by the exemplary embodiments below.

3.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Down-Converting an FM Signal to a PM Signal

3.2.1.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 1419 in FIG. 14D is now described for down-converting the FSK signal 816 illustrated in FIG. 8C to a PSK signal. The FSK signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 40A for convenience.

The FSK signal 816 shifts between a first frequency 4006 and a second frequency 4008. In the exemplary embodiment, the first frequency 4006 is lower than the second frequency 4008. In an alternative embodiment, the first frequency 4006 is higher than the second frequency 4008. For this example, the first frequency 4006 is approximately 899 MHZ and the second frequency 4008 is approximately 901 MHZ.

FIG. 40B illustrates an FSK signal portion 4004 that represents a portion of the FSK signal 816 on an expanded time scale.

The process of down-converting the FSK signal 816 to a PSK signal begins at step 1420, which includes receiving an FM signal. This is represented by the FSK signal 816.

Step 1422 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 40C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 4007 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 40B. The under-sampling signal 4007 includes a train of pulses 4009 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 4009 repeat at the aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as described above. Generally, when down-converting an FM signal to a non-FM signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of a frequency contained within the FM signal.

In this example, where an FSK signal is being down-converted to a PSK signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic of the mid-point between the frequencies 4006 and 4008 or, more typically, substantially equal to a sub-harmonic of the mid-point between the frequencies 4006 and 4008. In this example, where the first frequency 4006

is 899 MHZ and second frequency 4008 is 901 MHZ, the mid-point is approximately 900 MHZ. Suitable aliasing rates include 1.8 GHZ, 900 MHZ, 450 MHZ, etc. In this example, the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 4008 is approximately 450 MHZ.

Step 1424 includes under-sampling the FM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert it to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON\text{-}FM)}$. Step 1424 is illustrated in FIG. 40B by under-sample points 4005. The under-sample points 4005 occur at the aliasing rate of the pulses 4009.

In FIG. 40D, voltage points 4010 correlate to the under-sample points 4005. In an embodiment, the voltage points 4010 form a PSK signal 4012. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 4010 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as described below.

When the first frequency 4006 is under-sampled, the PSK signal 4012 has a frequency of approximately 1 MHZ and is used as a phase reference. When the second frequency 4008 is under-sampled, the PSK signal 4012 has a frequency of 1 MHZ and is phase shifted 180 degrees from the phase reference.

In FIG. 40E, a PSK signal 4014 illustrates the PSK signal 4012, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 40E illustrates the PSK signal 4012 as a filtered output signal 4014, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications. The PSK signal 4014 can be demodulated through any conventional phase demodulation technique.

The aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

In the example above, the under-sample points 4005 occur at positive locations of the FSK signal 816. Alternatively, the under-sample points 4005 can occur at other locations including negative points of the FSK signal 816. When the under-sample points 4005 occur at negative locations of the FSK signal 816, the resultant PSK signal is inverted relative to the PSK signal 4014.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate modulation conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the PSK signal 4014 in FIG. 40E illustrates that the FSK signal 816 was successfully down-converted to the PSK signal 4012 and 4014 by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

3.2.1.2 Structural Description

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for down-converting the FSK signal 816 to a PSK signal, with reference to the flowchart 1419 and to the timing diagrams of FIGS. 40A-E. In step 1420, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the FSK signal 816 (FIG. 40A). In step 1422, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 4007 (FIG. 40C). In step 1424, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the FSK signal 816 at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 4007 to down-convert the FSK signal 816 to the PSK signal 4012 in FIG. 40D or the PSK signal 4014 in FIG. 40E.

3.2.2 Second Example Embodiment: Down-Converting an FM Signal to an AM Signal

3.2.2.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of FIG. 14D is now described for

down-converting the FSK signal 816, illustrated in FIG. 8C, to an ASK signal. The FSK signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 41A for convenience.

The FSK signal 816 shifts between a first frequency 4106 and a second frequency 4108. In the exemplary embodiment, the first frequency 4106 is lower than the second frequency 4108. In an alternative embodiment, the first frequency 4106 is higher than the second frequency 4108. For this example, the first frequency 4106 is approximately 899 MHZ and the second frequency 4108 is approximately 901 MHZ.

FIG. 41B illustrates an FSK signal portion 4104 that represents a portion of the FSK signal 816 on an expanded time scale.

The process of down-converting the FSK signal 816 to an ASK signal begins at step 1420, which includes receiving an FM signal. This is represented by the FSK signal 816.

Step 1422 includes receiving an under-sampling signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 41C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 4107 illustrated on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 42B. The under-sampling signal 4107 includes a train of pulses 4109 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses 4109 repeat at the aliasing rate, or pulse repetition rate. The aliasing rate is determined or selected as described above.

Generally, when down-converting an FM signal to a non-FM signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic of a frequency within the FM signal or, more typically, to a sub-harmonic of a frequency within the FM signal. When an FSK signal 816 is being down-converted to an ASK signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic of the first frequency 4106 or the second frequency 4108 or, more typically, substantially equal to a sub-harmonic of the first frequency 4106 or the second frequency 4108 . In this example, where the first frequency 4106 is 899 MHZ and the second frequency 4108 is 901 MHZ, the aliasing rate can

be substantially equal to a harmonic or sub-harmonic of 899 MHZ or 901 MHZ. In this example the aliasing rate is approximately 449.5 MHZ, which is a sub-harmonic of the first frequency 4106.

Step 1424 includes under-sampling the FM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert it to a non-FM signal $F_{(NON\text{-}FM)}$. Step 1424 is illustrated in FIG. 41B by under-sample points 4105. The under-sample points 4105 occur at the aliasing rate of the pulses 4109. When the first frequency 4106 is under-sampled, the aliasing pulses 4109 and the under-sample points 4105 occur at the same location of subsequent cycles of the FSK signal 816. This generates a relatively constant output level. But when the second frequency 4108 is under-sampled, the aliasing pulses 4109 and the under-sample points 4005 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the FSK signal 816. This generates an oscillating pattern at approximately (901 MHZ - 899 MHZ) = 2 MHZ.

In FIG. 41D, voltage points 4110 correlate to the under-sample points 4105. In an embodiment, the voltage points 4110 form an ASK signal 4112. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, each voltage point 4110 can be held at a relatively constant level until the next voltage point is received. This results in a stair-step output which can be smoothed or filtered if desired, as described below.

In FIG. 41E, an ASK signal 4114 illustrates the ASK signal 4112, after filtering, on a compressed time scale. Although FIG. 41E illustrates the ASK signal 4114 as a filtered output signal, the output signal does not need to be filtered or smoothed to be within the scope of the invention. Instead, the output signal can be tailored for different applications. The ASK signal 4114 can be demodulated through any conventional amplitude demodulation technique

When down-converting from FM to AM, the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal is preferably controlled to optimize the demodulated

baseband signal for amplitude output and/or polarity, as desired.

In an alternative embodiment, the aliasing rate is based on the second frequency and the resultant ASK signal is reversed relative to the ASK signal 4114.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate modulation conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the ASK signal 4114 in FIG. 41E illustrates that the FSK carrier signal 816 was successfully down-converted to the ASK signal 4114 by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

3.2.2.2 Structural Description

The operation of the under-sampling system 1602 is now described for down-converting the FSK signal 816 to an ASK signal, with reference to the flowchart 1419 and to the timing diagrams of FIGS. 41A-E. In step 1420, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the FSK signal 816 (FIG. 41A). In step 1422, the under-sampling module 1606 receives the under-sampling signal 4107 (FIG. 41C). In step 1424, the under-sampling module 1606 under-samples the FSK signal 816 at the aliasing of the under-sampling signal 4107 to down-convert the FSK signal 816 to the ASK signal 4112 of FIG. 41D or the ASK signal 4114 in FIG. 41E.

3.2.3 Other Example Embodiments

The embodiments described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These embodiments are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate embodiments, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate embodiments fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

3.3 Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the method(s), structure(s), and/or embodiments described above are presented in Sections 4 and 5 below. These implementations are presented for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described therein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

4. Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the method(s), structure(s), and/or embodiments described in the Sub-Sections above are presented in this section (and its subsections). These implementations are presented herein for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described herein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

FIG. 13 illustrates a generic aliasing system 1302, including an aliasing module 1306. FIG. 16 illustrates an under-sampling system 1602, which includes an under-sampling module 1606. The under-sampling module 1606 receives an under-sampling signal 1604 having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. The under-sampling signal 1604 includes a train of pulses having

negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The pulses repeat at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The under-sampling system 1602 is an example implementation of the generic aliasing system 1303. The under-sampling system 1602 outputs a down-converted signal 1308A.

FIG. 26A illustrates an exemplary sample and hold system 2602, which is an exemplary implementation of the under-sampling system 1602. The sample and hold system 2602 is described below.

FIG. 26B illustrates an exemplary inverted sample and hold system 2606, which is an alternative example implementation of the under-sampling system 1602. The inverted sample and hold system 2606 is described below.

4.1 The Under-Sampling System as a Sample and Hold System

FIG. 26A is a block diagram of a the sample and hold system 2602, which is an example embodiment of the under-sampling module 1606 in FIG. 16, which is an example embodiment of the generic aliasing module 1306 in FIG. 13.

The sample and hold system 2602 includes a sample and hold module 2604, which receives the EM signal 1304 and the under-sampling signal 1604. The sample and hold module 2604 under-samples the EM signal at the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 1604, as described in the sections above with respect to the flowcharts 1401 in FIG. 14A, 1407 in FIG. 14B, 1413 in FIG. 14C and 1419 in FIG. 14D. The under-sampling system 1602 outputs a down-converted signal 1308A.

FIG. 27 illustrates an under-sampling system 2701 as a sample and hold system, which is an example implementation of the under-sampling system 2602. The under-sampling system 2701 includes a switch module 2702 and a holding module 2706. The under-sampling system 2701 is described below.

FIG. 24A illustrates an under-sampling system 2401 as a break before make under-sampling system, which is an alternative implementation of the under-sampling system 2602. The break before make under-sampling system 2401 is described below.

4.4.1 The Sample and Hold System as a Switch Module and a Holding Module

FIG. 27 illustrates an exemplary embodiment of the sample and hold module 2604 from FIG. 26A. In the exemplary embodiment, the sample and hold module 2604 includes a switch module 2702, and a holding module 2706.

Preferably, the switch module 2702 and the holding module 2706 under-sample the EM signal 1304 to down-convert it in any of the manners shown in the operation flowcharts 1401, 1407, 1413 and 1419. For example, the sample and hold module 2604 can receive and under-sample any of the modulated carrier signal signals described above, including, but not limited to, the analog AM signal 516, the digital AM signal 616, the analog FM signal 716, the digital FM signal 816, the analog PM signal 916, the digital PM signal 1016, etc., and any combinations thereof.

The switch module 2702 and the holding module 2706 down-convert the EM signal 1304 to an intermediate signal, to a demodulated baseband or to a different modulation scheme, depending upon the aliasing rate.

For example, operation of the switch module 2702 and the holding module 2706 are now described for down-converting the EM signal 1304 to an intermediate signal, with reference to the flowchart 1407 and the example timing diagrams in FIG. 79A-F.

In step 1408, the switch module 2702 receives the EM signal 1304 (FIG. 79A). In step 1410, the switch module 2702 receives the under-

sampling signal 1604 (FIG. 79C). In step 1412, the switch module 2702 and the holding module 2706 cooperate to under-sample the EM signal 1304 and down-convert it to an intermediate signal. More specifically, during step 1412, the switch module 2702 closes during each under-sampling pulse to couple the EM signal 1304 to the holding module 2706. In an embodiment, the switch module 2702 closes on rising edges of the pulses. In an alternative embodiment, the switch module 2702 closes on falling edges of the pulses. When the EM signal 1304 is coupled to the holding module 2706, the amplitude of the EM signal 1304 is captured by the holding module 2706. The holding module 2706 is designed to capture and hold the amplitude of the EM signal 1304 within the short time frame of each negligible aperture pulse. FIG. 79B illustrates the EM signal 1304 after under-sampling.

The holding module 2706 substantially holds or maintains each under-sampled amplitude until a subsequent under-sample. (FIG. 79D). The holding module 2706 outputs the under-sampled amplitudes as the down-converted signal 1308A. The holding module 2706 can output the down-converted signal 1308A as an unfiltered signal, such as a stair step signal (FIG. 79E), as a filtered down-converted signal (FIG. 79F) or as a partially filtered down-converted signal.

4.1.2 The Sample and Hold System as Break-Before-Make Module

FIG. 24A illustrates a break-before-make under-sampling system 2401, which is an alternative implementation of the under-sampling system 2602.

Preferably, the break-before-make under-sampling system 2401 under-samples the EM signal 1304 to down-convert it in any of the manners

shown in the operation flowcharts 1401, 1407, 1413 and 1419. For example, the sample and hold module 2604 can receive and under-sample any of the unmodulated or modulated carrier signal signals described above, including, but not limited to, the analog AM signal 516, the digital AM signal 616, the analog FM signal 716, the digital FM signal 816, the analog PM signal 916, the digital PM signal 1016, etc., and combinations thereof.

The break-before-make under-sampling system 2401 down-converts the EM signal 1304 to an intermediate signal, to a demodulated baseband or to a different modulation scheme, depending upon the aliasing rate.

FIG. 24A includes a break-before-make switch 2402. The break-before-make switch 2402 includes a normally open switch 2404 and a normally closed switch 2406. The normally open switch 2404 is controlled by the under-sampling signal 1604, as previously described. The normally closed switch 2406 is controlled by an isolation signal 2412. In an embodiment, the isolation signal 2412 is generated from the under-sampling signal 1604. Alternatively, the under-sampling signal 1604 is generated from the isolation signal 2412. Alternatively, the isolation signal 2412 is generated independently from the under-sampling signal 1604. The break-before-make module 2402 substantially isolates a sample and hold input 2408 from a sample and hold output 2410.

FIG. 24B illustrates an example timing diagram of the under-sampling signal 1604 that controls the normally open switch 2404. FIG. 24C illustrates an example timing diagram of the isolation signal 2412 that controls the normally closed switch 2406. Operation of the break-before-make module 2402 is described with reference to the example timing diagrams in FIGS. 24B and 24C.

Prior to time t0, the normally open switch 2404 and the normally closed switch 2406 are at their normal states.

At time t0, the isolation signal 2412 in FIG. 24C opens the normally closed switch 2406. Then, just after time t0, the normally open switch 2404 and the normally closed switch 2406 are open and the input 2408 is isolated from the output 2410.

At time t1, the under-sampling signal 1604 in FIG. 24B briefly closes the normally open switch 2404. This couples the EM signal 1304 to the holding module 2416.

Prior to t2, the under-sampling signal 1604 in FIG. 24B opens the normally open switch 2404. This de-couples the EM signal 1304 from the holding module 2416.

At time t2, the isolation signal 2412 in FIG. 24C closes the normally closed switch 2406. This couples the holding module 2416 to the output 2410.

The break-before-make under-sampling system 2401 includes a holding module 2416, which can be similar to the holding module 2706 in FIG. 27. The break-before-make under-sampling system 2401 down-converts the EM signal 1304 in a manner similar to that described with reference to the under-sampling system 2702 in FIG. 27.

4.1.3 Example Implementations of the Switch Module

The switch module 2702 in FIG. 27 and the switch modules 2404 and 2406 in FIG. 24A can be any type of switch device that preferably has a relatively low impedance when closed and a relatively high impedance when open. The switch modules 2702, 2404 and 2406 can be implemented with normally open or normally closed switches. The switch device need not be an ideal switch device. FIG. 28B illustrates the switch modules 2702, 2404 and 2406 as, for example, a switch module 2810.

The switch device 2810 (e.g., switch modules 2702, 2404 and 2406) can be implemented with any type of suitable switch device, including, but not limited to mechanical switch devices and electrical switch devices, optical switch devices, etc., and combinations thereof. Such devices include, but are not limited to transistor switch devices, diode switch devices, relay switch devices, optical switch devices, micro-machine switch devices, etc..

In an embodiment, the switch module 2810 can be implemented as a transistor, such as, for example, a field effect transistor (FET), a bi-polar transistor, or any other suitable circuit switching device.

In FIG. 28A, the switch module 2810 is illustrated as a FET 2802. The FET 2802 can be any type of FET, including, but not limited to, a MOSFET, a JFET, a GaAsFET, etc.. The FET 2802 includes a gate 2804, a source 2806 and a drain 2808. The gate 2804 receives the under-sampling signal 1604 to control the switching action between the source 2806 and the drain 2808. Generally, the source 2806 and the drain 2808 are interchangeable.

It should be understood that the illustration of the switch module 2810 as a FET 2802 in FIG. 28A is for example purposes only. Any device having switching capabilities could be used to implement the switch module 2810 (e.g., switch modules 2702, 2404 and 2406), as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

In FIG. 28C, the switch module 2810 is illustrated as a diode switch 2812, which operates as a two lead device when the under-sampling signal 1604 is coupled to the output 2813.

In FIG. 28D, the switch module 2810 is illustrated as a diode switch 2814, which operates as a two lead device when the under-sampling signal 1604 is coupled to the output 2815.

4.1.4 Example Implementations of the Holding Module

The holding modules 2706 and 2416 preferably captures and holds the amplitude of the original, unaffected, EM signal 1304 within the short time frame of each negligible aperture under-sampling signal pulse.

In an exemplary embodiment, holding modules 2706 and 2416 are implemented as a reactive holding module 2901 in FIG. 29A, although the invention is not limited to this embodiment. A reactive holding module is a holding module that employs one or more reactive electrical components to preferably quickly charge to the amplitude of the EM signal 1304. Reactive electrical components include, but are not limited to, capacitors and inductors.

In an embodiment, the holding modules 2706 and 2416 include one or more capacitive holding elements, illustrated in FIG. 29B as a capacitive holding module 2902. In FIG. 29C, the capacitive holding module 2902 is illustrated as one or more capacitors illustrated generally as capacitor(s) 2904. Recall that the preferred goal of the holding modules 2706 and 2416 is to quickly charge to the amplitude of the EM signal 1304. In accordance with principles of capacitors, as the negligible aperture of the under-sampling pulses tends to zero time in duration, the capacitive value of the capacitor 2904 can tend towards zero Farads. Example values for the capacitor 2904 can range from tens of pico Farads to fractions of pico Farads. A terminal 2906 serves as an output of the sample and hold module 2604. The capacitive holding module 2902 provides the under-samples at the terminal 2906, where they can be measured as a voltage. FIG. 29F illustrates the capacitive holding module 2902 as including a series capacitor 2912, which can be utilized in an inverted sample and hold system as

described below.

In an alternative embodiment, the holding modules 2706 and 2416 include one or more inductive holding elements, illustrated in FIG. 29D as an inductive holding module 2908.

In an alternative embodiment, the holding modules 2706 and 2416 include a combination of one or more capacitive holding elements and one or more inductive holding elements, illustrated in FIG. 29E as a capacitive/inductive holding module 2910.

FIG. 29G illustrates an integrated under-sampling system that can be implemented to down-convert the EM signal 1304 as illustrated in, and described with reference to, FIGS. 79A-F.

4.1.5 Optional Under-Sampling Signal Module

FIG. 30 illustrates an under-sampling system 3001, which is an example embodiment of the under-sampling system 1602. The under-sampling system 3001 includes an optional under-sampling signal module 3002 that can perform any of a variety of functions or combinations of functions, including, but not limited to, generating the under-sampling signal 1604.

In an embodiment, the optional under-sampling signal module 3002 includes an aperture generator, an example of which is illustrated in FIG. 29J as an aperture generator 2920. The aperture generator 2920 generates negligible aperture pulses 2926 from an input signal 2924. The input signal 2924 can be any type of periodic signal, including, but not limited to, a sinusoid, a square wave, a saw-tooth wave, etc. Systems for generating the input signal 2924 are described below.

The width or aperture of the pulses 2926 is determined by delay through the branch 2922 of the aperture generator 2920. Generally, as the

desired pulse width decreases, the tolerance requirements of the aperture generator 2920 increase. In other words, to generate negligible aperture pulses for a given input EM frequency, the components utilized in the example aperture generator 2920 require greater reaction times, which are typically obtained with more expensive elements, such as gallium arsenide (GaAs), etc.

The example logic and implementation shown in the aperture generator 2920 are provided for illustrative purposes only, and are not limiting. The actual logic employed can take many forms. The example aperture generator 2920 includes an optional inverter 2928, which is shown for polarity consistency with other examples provided herein. An example implementation of the aperture generator 2920 is illustrated in FIG. 29K.

Additional examples of aperture generation logic is provided in FIGS. 29H and 29I. FIG. 29H illustrates a rising edge pulse generator 2940, which generates pulses 2926 on rising edges of the input signal 2924. FIG. 29I illustrates a falling edge pulse generator 2950, which generates pulses 2926 on falling edges of the input signal 2924.

In an embodiment, the input signal 2924 is generated externally of the under-sampling signal module 3002, as illustrated in FIG. 30. Alternatively, the input signal 2924 is generated internally by the under-sampling signal module 3002. The input signal 2924 can be generated by an oscillator, as illustrated in FIG. 29L by an oscillator 2930. The oscillator 2930 can be internal to the under-sampling signal module 3002 or external to the under-sampling signal module 3002. The oscillator 2930 can be external to the under-sampling system 3001.

The type of down-conversion performed by the under-sampling system 3001 depends upon the aliasing rate of the under-sampling signal 1604, which is determined by the frequency of the pulses 2926. The frequency of the pulses 2926 is determined by the frequency of the input

signal 2924. For example, when the frequency of the input signal 2924 is substantially equal to a harmonic or a sub-harmonic of the EM signal 1304, the EM signal 1304 is directly down-converted to baseband (e.g. when the EM signal is an AM signal or a PM signal), or converted from FM to a non-FM signal. When the frequency of the input signal 2924 is substantially equal to a harmonic or a sub-harmonic of a difference frequency, the EM signal 1304 is down-converted to an intermediate signal.

The optional under-sampling signal module 3002 can be implemented in hardware, software, firmware, or any combination thereof.

4.2 The Under-Sampling System as an Inverted Sample and Hold

FIG. 26B illustrates an exemplary inverted sample and hold system 2606, which is an alternative example implementation of the under-sampling system 1602.

FIG. 42 illustrates a inverted sample and hold system 4201, which is an example implementation of the inverted sample and hold system 2606 in FIG. 26B. The sample and hold system 4201 includes a sample and hold module 4202, which includes a switch module 4204 and a holding module 4206. The switch module 4204 can be implemented as described above with reference to FIGS. 28A-D.

The holding module 4206 can be implemented as described above with reference to FIGS. 29A-F, for the holding modules 2706 and 2416. In the illustrated embodiment, the holding module 4206 includes one or more capacitors 4208. The capacitor(s) 4208 are selected to pass higher frequency components of the EM signal 1304 through to a terminal 4210, regardless of the state of the switch module 4204. The capacitor 4202 stores charge from the EM signal 1304 during aliasing pulses of the under-

sampling signal 1604 and the signal at the terminal 4210 is thereafter off-set by an amount related to the charge stored in the capacitor 4206.

Operation of the inverted sample and hold system 4201 is illustrated in FIGS. 34A-F. FIG. 34A illustrates an example EM signal 1304. FIG. 34B illustrates the EM signal 1304 after under-sampling. FIG. 34C illustrates the under-sampling signal 1606, which includes a train of aliasing pulses having negligible apertures.

FIG. 34D illustrates an example down-converted signal 1308A. FIG. 34E illustrates the down-converted signal 1308A on a compressed time scale. Since the holding module 4206 is series element, the higher frequencies (e.g., RF) of the EM signal 1304 can be seen on the down-converted signal. This can be filtered as illustrated in FIG. 34F.

The inverted sample and hold system 4201 can be used to down-convert any type of EM signal, including modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signals, to IF signals and to demodulated baseband signals.

4.3 Other Implementations

The implementations described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These implementations are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate implementations, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

5. Optional Optimizations of Under-Sampling at an Aliasing Rate

The methods and systems described in sections above can be optionally optimized with one or more of the optimization methods or systems described below.

5.1 Doubling the Aliasing Rate (FAR) of the Under-Sampling Signal

In an embodiment, the optional under-sampling signal module 3002 in FIG. 30 includes a pulse generator module that generates aliasing pulses at a multiple of the frequency of the oscillating source, such as twice the frequency of the oscillating source. The input signal 2926 may be any suitable oscillating source.

FIG. 31A illustrates an example circuit 3102 that generates a doubler output signal 3104 (FIG. 31A and C) that may be used as an under-sampling signal 1604. The example circuit 3102 generates pulses on rising and falling edges of the input oscillating signal 3106 of FIG. 31B. Input oscillating signal 3106 is one embodiment of optional input signal 2926. The circuit 3102 can be implemented as a pulse generator and aliasing rate (F_{AR}) doubler, providing the under-sampling signal 1604 to under-sampling module 1606 in FIG. 30.

The aliasing rate is twice the frequency of the input oscillating signal F_{osc} 3106, as shown by EQ. (9) below.

$$F_{AR} = 2 \cdot F_{osc} \qquad \text{EQ. (9)}$$

The aperture width of the aliasing pulses is determined by the delay through a first inverter 3108 of FIG. 31A. As the delay is increased, the aperture is increased. A second inverter 3112 is shown to maintain polarity consistency with examples described elsewhere. In an alternate embodiment inverter 3112 is omitted. Preferably, the pulses have negligible aperture widths that tend toward zero time. The doubler output signal 3104 may be further conditioned as appropriate to drive a switch module with negligible aperture pulses. The circuit 3102 may be implemented with integrated circuitry, discretely, with equivalent logic circuitry, or with any valid fabrication technology.

5.2 Differential Implementations

The invention can be implemented in a variety of differential configurations. Differential configurations are useful for reducing common mode noise. This can be very useful in receiver systems where common mode interference can be caused by intentional or unintentional radiators such as cellular phones, CB radios, electrical appliances etc. Differential configurations are also useful in reducing any common mode noise due to charge injection of the switch in the switch module or due to the design and layout of the system in which the invention is used. Any spurious signal that is induced in equal magnitude and equal phase in both input leads of the invention will be substantially reduced or eliminated. Some differential configurations, including some of the configurations below, are also useful for increasing the voltage and/or for increasing the power of the down-converted signal 1308A. While an example of a differential under-sampling module is shown below, the example is shown for the purpose of illustration, not limitation. Alternate embodiments (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc.) of the embodiment described herein will be apparent to those skilled in the relevant art based on the teachings

contained herein. The invention is intended and adapted to include such alternate embodiments.

FIG. 44A illustrates an example differential system 4402 that can be included in the under-sampling module 1606. The differential system 4202 includes an inverted under-sampling design similar to that described with reference to FIG. 42. The differential system 4402 includes inputs 4404 and 4406 and outputs 4408 and 4410. The differential system 4402 includes a first inverted sample and hold module 4412, which includes a holding module 4414 and a switch module 4416. The differential system 4402 also includes a second inverted sample and hold module 4418, which includes a holding module 4420 and the switch module 4416, which it shares in common with sample and hold module 4412.

One or both of the inputs 4404 and 4406 are coupled to an EM signal source. For example, the inputs can be coupled to an EM signal source, wherein the input voltages at the inputs 4404 and 4406 are substantially equal in amplitude but 180 degrees out of phase with one another. Alternatively, where dual inputs are unavailable, one of the inputs 4404 and 4406 can be coupled to ground.

In operation, when the switch module 4416 is closed, the holding modules 4414 and 4420 are in series and, provided they have similar capacitive values, they charge to equal amplitudes but opposite polarities. When the switch module 4416 is open, the voltage at the output 4408 is relative to the input 4404, and the voltage at the output 4410 is relative to the voltage at the input 4406.

Portions of the voltages at the outputs 4408 and 4410 include voltage resulting from charge stored in the holding modules 4414 and 4420, respectively, when the switch module 4416 was closed. The portions of the voltages at the outputs 4408 and 4410 resulting from the stored charge are generally equal in amplitude to one another but 180 degrees out of phase.

Portions of the voltages at the outputs 4408 and 4410 also include ripple voltage or noise resulting from the switching action of the switch module 4416. But because the switch module is positioned between the two outputs, the noise introduced by the switch module appears at the outputs 4408 and 4410 as substantially equal and in-phase with one another. As a result, the ripple voltage can be substantially filtered out by inverting the voltage at one of the outputs 4408 or 4410 and adding it to the other remaining output. Additionally, any noise that is impressed with substantially equal amplitude and equal phase onto the input terminals 4404 and 4406 by any other noise sources will tend to be canceled in the same way.

The differential system 4402 is effective when used with a differential front end (inputs) and a differential back end (outputs). It can also be utilized in the following configurations, for example:

a) A single-input front end and a differential back end; and
b) A differential front end and single-output back end.

Examples of these system are provided below.

5.2.1 Differential Input-to-Differential Output

FIG. 44B illustrates the differential system 4402 wherein the inputs 4404 and 4406 are coupled to equal and opposite EM signal sources, illustrated here as dipole antennas 4424 and 4426. In this embodiment, when one of the outputs 4408 or 4410 is inverted and added to the other output, the common mode noise due to the switching module 4416 and other common mode noise present at the input terminals 4404 and 4406 tend to substantially cancel out.

5.2.2 Single Input-to-Differential Output

FIG. 44C illustrates the differential system 4402 wherein the input 4404 is coupled to an EM signal source such as a monopole antenna 4428 and the input 4406 is coupled to ground.

FIG. 44E illustrates an example single input to differential output receiver/down-converter system 4436. The system 4436 includes the differential system 4402 wherein the input 4406 is coupled to ground. The input 4404 is coupled to an EM signal source 4438.

The outputs 4408 and 4410 are coupled to a differential circuit 4444 such as a filter, which preferably inverts one of the outputs 4408 or 4410 and adds it to the other output 4408 or 4410. This substantially cancels common mode noise generated by the switch module 4416. The differential circuit 4444 preferably filters the higher frequency components of the EM signal 1304 that pass through the holding modules 4414 and 4420. The resultant filtered signal is output as the down-converted signal 1308A.

5.2.3 Differential Input-to-Single Output

FIG. 44D illustrates the differential system 4402 wherein the inputs 4404 and 4406 are coupled to equal and opposite EM signal sources illustrated here as dipole antennas 4430 and 4432. The output is taken from terminal 4408.

5.3 Smoothing the Down-Converted Signal

The down-converted signal 1308A may be smoothed by filtering as desired. The differential circuit 4444 implemented as a filter in FIG 44E illustrates but one example. Filtering may be accomplished in any of the

described embodiments by hardware, firmware and software implementation as is well known by those skilled in the arts.

5.4 Load Impedance and Input/Output Buffering

Some of the characteristics of the down-converted signal 1308A depend upon characteristics of a load placed on the down-converted signal 1308A. For example, in an embodiment, when the down-converted signal 1308A is coupled to a high impedance load, the charge that is applied to a holding module such as holding module 2706 in FIG 27 or 2416 in FIG. 24A during a pulse generally remains held by the holding module until the next pulse. This results in a substantially stair-step-like representation of the down-converted signal 1308A as illustrated in FIG. 15C, for example. A high impedance load enables the under-sampling system 1606 to accurately represent the voltage of the original unaffected input signal.

The down-converted signal 1308A can be buffered with a high impedance amplifier, if desired.

Alternatively, or in addition to buffering the down-converted signal 1308A, the input EM signal may be buffered or amplified by a low noise amplifier.

5.5 Modifying the Under-Sampling Signal Utilizing Feedback

FIG. 30 shows an embodiment of a system 3001 which uses down-converted signal 1308A as feedback 3006 to control various characteristics of the under-sampling module 1606 to modify the down-converted signal 1308A.

Generally, the amplitude of the down-converted signal 1308A varies as a function of the frequency and phase differences between the EM signal 1304 and the under-sampling signal 1604. In an embodiment, the down-converted signal 1308A is used as the feedback 3006 to control the

frequency and phase relationship between the EM signal 1304 and the under-sampling signal 1604. This can be accomplished using the example block diagram shown in FIG 32A. The example circuit illustrated in FIG. 32A can be included in the under-sampling signal module 3002. Alternate implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention. In this embodiment a state-machine is used for clarity, and is not limiting.

In the example of FIG. 32A, a state machine 3204 reads an analog to digital converter, A/D 3202, and controls a digital to analog converter (DAC) 3206. In an embodiment, the state machine 3204 includes 2 memory locations, *Previous* and *Current,* to store and recall the results of reading A/D 3202. In an embodiment, the state machine 3204 utilizes at least one memory flag.

DAC 3206 controls an input to a voltage controlled oscillator, VCO 3208. VCO 3208 controls a frequency input of a pulse generator 3210, which, in an embodiment, is substantially similar to the pulse generator shown in FIG. 29J. The pulse generator 3210 generates the under-sampling signal 1604.

In an embodiment, the state machine 3204 operates in accordance with the state machine flowchart 3220 in FIG. 32B. The result of this operation is to modify the frequency and phase relationship between the under-sampling signal 1604 and the EM signal 1304, to substantially maintain the amplitude of the down-converted signal 1308A at an optimum level.

The amplitude of the down-converted signal 1308A can be made to vary with the amplitude of the under-sampling signal 1604. In an embodiment where Switch Module 2702 is a FET as shown in FIG 28A, wherein the gate 2804 receives the under-sampling signal 1604, the

amplitude of the under-sampling signal 1604 can determine the "on" resistance of the FET, which affects the amplitude of down-converted signal 1308A. Under-sampling signal module 3002, as shown in FIG. 32C, can be an analog circuit that enables an automatic gain control function. Alternate implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

III. Down-Converting by Transferring Energy

The energy transfer embodiments of the invention provide enhanced signal to noise ratios and sensitivity to very small signals, as well as permitting the down-converted signal to drive lower impedance loads unassisted. The energy transfer aspects of the invention are represented generally by 4506 in FIGS. 45A and 45B. Fundamental descriptions of how this is accomplished is presented step by step beginning with a comparison with an under-sampling system.

0.1 Energy Transfer Compared to Under-Sampling

Section II above disclosed methods and systems for down-converting an EM signal by under-sampling. The under-sampling systems utilize a sample and hold system controlled by an under-sampling signal. The under-sampling signal includes a train of pulses having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The negligible aperture pulses minimize the amount of energy transferred from the EM signal. This protects the under-sampled EM signal from distortion or destruction. The negligible aperture pulses also make the sample and hold system a high impedance system. An advantage of under-sampling is that the high impedance input

allows accurate voltage reproduction of the under-sampled EM signal. The methods and systems disclosed in Section II are thus useful for many situations including, but not limited to, monitoring EM signals without distorting or destroying them.

Because the under-sampling systems disclosed in Section II transfer only negligible amounts of energy, they are not suitable for all situations. For example, in radio communications, received radio frequency (RF) signals are typically very weak and must be amplified in order to distinguish them over noise. The negligible amounts of energy transferred by the under-sampling systems disclosed in Section II may not be sufficient to distinguish received RF signals over noise.

In accordance with an aspect of the invention, methods and systems are disclosed below for down-converting EM signals by transferring non-negligible amounts of energy from the EM signals. The resultant down-converted signals have sufficient energy to allow the down-converted signals to be distinguishable from noise. The resultant down-converted signals also have sufficient energy to drive lower impedance circuits without buffering.

Down-converting by transferring energy is introduced below in an incremental fashion to distinguish it from under-sampling. The introduction begins with further descriptions of under-sampling.

0.1.1 Review of Under-Sampling

FIG. 78A illustrates an exemplary under-sampling system 7802 for down-converting an input EM signal 7804. The under-sampling system 7802 includes a switching module 7806 and a holding module shown as a holding capacitance 7808. An under-sampling signal 7810 controls the switch module 7806. The under-sampling signal 7810 includes a train of

pulses having negligible pulse widths that tend toward zero time. An example of a negligible pulse width or duration can be in the range of 1-10 psec for under-sampling a 900 MHZ signal. Any other suitable negligible pulse duration can be used as well, where accurate reproduction of the original unaffected input signal voltage is desired without substantially affecting the original input signal voltage.

In an under-sampling environment, the holding capacitance 7808 preferably has a small capacitance value. This allows the holding capacitance 7808 to substantially charge to the voltage of the input EM signal 7804 during the negligible apertures of the under-sampling signal pulses. For example, in an embodiment, the holding capacitance 7808 has a value in the range of 1pF. Other suitable capacitance values can be used to achieve substantially the voltage of the original unaffected input signal. Various capacitances can be employed for certain effects, which are described below. The under-sampling system is coupled to a load 7812. In FIG. 78B, the load 7812 of FIG. 78A is illustrated as a high impedance load 7818. A high impedance load is one that is relatively insignificant to an output drive impedance of the system for a given output frequency. The high impedance load 7818 allows the holding capacitance 7808 to substantially maintain the charge accumulated during the under-sampling pulses.

FIGS. 79A-F illustrate example timing diagrams for the under-sampling system 7802. FIG. 79A illustrates an example input EM signal 7804.

FIG. 79C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 7810, including pulses 7904 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration.

FIG. 79B illustrates the negligible effects to the input EM signal 7804 when under-sampled, as measured at a terminal 7814 of the under-

sampling system 7802. In FIG. 79B, negligible distortions 7902 correlate with the pulses of the under-sampling signal 7810. In this embodiment, the negligible distortions 7902 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the input EM signal 7804. As a result, the input EM signal will be down-converted. The negligible distortions 7902 represent negligible amounts of energy, in the form of charge that is transferred to the holding capacitance 7808.

When the load 7812 is a high impedance load, the holding capacitance 7808 does not significantly discharge between pulses 7904. As a result, charge that is transferred to the holding capacitance 7808 during a pulse 7904 tends to "hold" the voltage value sampled constant at the terminal 7816 until the next pulse 7904. When voltage of the input EM signal 7804 changes between pulses 7904, the holding capacitance 7808 substantially attains the new voltage and the resultant voltage at the terminal 7816 forms a stair step pattern, as illustrated in FIG. 79D.

FIG. 79E illustrates the stair step voltage of FIG. 79D on a compressed time scale. The stair step voltage illustrated in FIG. 79E can be filtered to produce the signal illustrated in FIG. 79F. The signals illustrated in FIGS. 79D, E, and F have substantially all of the baseband characteristics of the input EM signal 7804 in FIG. 79A, except that the signals illustrated in FIGS. 79D, E, and F have been successfully down-converted.

Note that the voltage level of the down-converted signals illustrated in FIGS. 79E and 79F are substantially close to the voltage level of the input EM signal 7804. The under-sampling system 7802 thus down-converts the input EM signal 7804 with reasonable voltage reproduction, without substantially affecting the input EM signal 7804. But also note that the power available at the output is relatively negligible (e.g. :V^2/R; ~ 5mV and 1 MOhm), given the input EM signal 7804 would typically have a driving

impedance, in an RF environment, of 50 Ohms (e.g.: V^2/R; ~ 5mV and 50 Ohms).

0.1.1.1 Effects of Lowering the Impedance of the Load

Effects of lowering the impedance of the load 7812 are now described. FIGS. 80A-E illustrate example timing diagrams for the under-sampling system 7802 when the load 7812 is a relatively low impedance load, one that is significant relative to the output drive impedance of the system for a given output frequency.

FIG. 80A illustrates an example input EM signal 7804, which is substantially similar to that illustrated in FIG. 79A.

FIG. 80C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 7810, including pulses 8004 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The example under-sampling signal 7810 illustrated in FIG. 80C is substantially similar to that illustrated in FIGS. 79C.

FIG.80B illustrates the negligible effects to the input EM signal 7804 when under-sampled, as measured at a terminal 7814 of the under-sampling system 7802. In FIG. 80B, negligible distortions 8002 correlate with the pulses 8004 of the under-sampling signal 7810 in FIG. 80C. In this example, the negligible distortions 8002 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the input EM signal 7804. As a result, the input EM signal 7804 will be down-converted. The negligible distortions 8002 represent negligible amounts of energy, in the form of charge that is transferred to the holding capacitance 7808.

When the load 7812 is a low impedance load, the holding capacitance 7808 is significantly discharged by the load between pulses 8004 (FIG. 80C). As a result, the holding capacitance 7808 cannot reasonably attain or

"hold" the voltage of the original EM input signal 7804, as was seen in the case of FIG. 79D. Instead, the charge appears as the output illustrated in FIG. 80D.

FIG. 80E illustrates the output from FIG. 80D on a compressed time scale. The output in FIG. 80E can be filtered to produce the signal illustrated in FIG. 80F. The down-converted signal illustrated in FIG. 80F is substantially similar to the down-converted signal illustrated in FIG. 79F, except that the signal illustrated in FIG. 80F is substantially smaller in magnitude than the amplitude of the down-converted signal illustrated in FIG. 79F. This is because the low impedance of the load 7812 prevents the holding capacitance 7808 from reasonably attaining or "holding" the voltage of the original EM input signal 7804. As a result, the down-converted signal illustrated in FIG. 80F cannot provide optimal voltage reproduction, and has relatively negligible power available at the output (e.g.: V^2/R; ~ 200V and 2KOhms), given the input EM signal 7804 would typically have a driving impedance, in an RF environment, of 50 Ohms (e.g.: V^2/R; ~ 5mV and 50 Ohms).

0.1.1.2 Effects of Increasing the Value of the Holding Capacitance

Effects of increasing the value of the holding capacitance 7808, while having to drive a low impedance load 7812, is now described. FIGS. 81A-F illustrate example timing diagrams for the under-sampling system 7802 when the holding capacitance 7808 has a larger value, in the range of 18pF for example.

FIG. 81 A illustrates an example input EM signal 7804, which is substantially similar to that illustrated in FIGS. 79A and 80A.

FIG. 81C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 7810, including pulses 8104 having negligible apertures that tend towards zero time in duration. The example under-sampling signal 7810 illustrated in FIG. 81C is substantially similar to that illustrated in FIGS. 79C and 80C.

FIG.81B illustrates the negligible effects to the input EM signal 7804 when under-sampled, as measured at a terminal 7814 of the under-sampling system 7802. In FIG. 81B, negligible distortions 8102 correlate with the pulses 8104 of the under-sampling signal 7810 in FIG. 81C. Upon close inspection, the negligible distortions 8102 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the input EM signal 7804. As a result, the input EM signal 7804 will be down-converted. The negligible distortions 8102 represent negligible amounts of energy, in the form of charge that is transferred to the holding capacitance 7808.

FIG. 81D illustrates the voltage measured at the terminal 7816, which is a result of the holding capacitance 7808 attempting to attain and "hold" the original input EM signal voltage, but failing to do so, during the negligible apertures of the pulses 8104 illustrated in FIG. 81C.

Recall that when the load 7812 is a low impedance load, the holding capacitance 7808 is significantly discharged by the load between pulses 8104 (FIG. 81C), this again is seen in FIGS. 81D and E. As a result, the holding capacitance 7808 cannot reasonably attain or "hold" the voltage of the original EM input signal 7804, as was seen in the case of FIG. 79D. Instead, the charge appears as the output illustrated in FIG. 81D.

FIG. 81E illustrates the down-converted signal 8106 on a compressed time scale. Note that the amplitude of the down-converted signal 8106 is significantly less than the amplitude of the down-converted signal illustrated in FIGS. 80D and 80E. This is due to the higher capacitive value of the holding capacitance 7808. Generally, as the capacitive value increases, it requires more charge to increase the voltage for a given aperture. Because

of the negligible aperture of the pulses 8104 in FIG. 81C, there is insufficient time to transfer significant amounts of energy or charge from the input EM signal 7804 to the holding capacitance 7808. As a result, the amplitudes attained by the holding capacitance 7808 are significantly less than the amplitudes of the down-converted signal illustrated in FIGS. 80D and 80E.

In FIGS. 80E and 80F, the output signal, non-filtered or filtered, cannot provide optimal voltage reproduction, and has relatively negligible power available at the output (e.g.: V^2/R; ~ 150V and 2KOhms), given the input EM signal 7804 would typically have a driving impedance, in an RF environment, of 50 Ohms (e.g.: V^2/R; ~ 5mV and 50 Ohms).

In summary, under-sampling systems, such as the under-sampling system 7802 illustrated in FIG. 78, are well suited for down-converting EM signals with relatively accurate voltage reproduction. Also, they have a negligible affect on the original input EM signal. As illustrated above, however, the under-sampling systems, such as the under-sampling system 7802 illustrated in FIG. 78, are not well suited for transferring energy or for driving lower impedance loads.

0.1.2 Introduction to Energy Transfer

In an embodiment, the present invention transfers energy from an EM signal by utilizing an energy transfer signal instead of an under-sampling signal. Unlike under-sampling signals that have negligible aperture pulses, the energy transfer signal includes a train of pulses having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero. This provides more time to transfer energy from an EM input signal. One direct benefit is that the input impedance of the system is reduced so that practical impedance matching circuits can be implemented to further improve energy transfer and thus overall efficiency. The non-negligible transferred energy

significantly improves the signal to noise ratio and sensitivity to very small signals, as well as permitting the down-converted signal to drive lower impedance loads unassisted. Signals that especially benefit include low power ones typified by RF signals. One benefit of a non-negligible aperture is that phase noise within the energy transfer signal does not have as drastic of an effect on the down-converted output signal as under-sampling signal phase noise or conventional sampling signal phase noise does on their respective outputs.

FIG. 82A illustrates an exemplary energy transfer system 8202 for down-converting an input EM signal 8204. The energy transfer system 8202 includes a switching module 8206 and a storage module illustrated as a storage capacitance 8208. The terms storage module and storage capacitance, as used herein, are distinguishable from the terms holding module and holding capacitance, respectively. Holding modules and holding capacitances, as used above, identify systems that store negligible amounts of energy from an under-sampled input EM signal with the intent of "holding" a voltage value. Storage modules and storage capacitances, on the other hand, refer to systems that store non-negligible amounts of energy from an input EM signal.

The energy transfer system 8202 receives an energy transfer signal 8210, which controls the switch module 8206. The energy transfer signal 8210 includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible pulse widths that tend away from zero time in duration. The non-negligible pulse widths can be any non-negligible amount. For example, the non-negligible pulse widths can be ½ of a period of the input EM signal. Alternatively, the non-negligible pulse widths can be any other fraction of a period of the input EM signal, or a multiple of a period plus a fraction. In an example embodiment, the input EM signal is approximately 900 MHZ and the non-

negligible pulse width is approximately 550 pico seconds. Any other suitable non-negligible pulse duration can be used.

In an energy transfer environment, the storage module, illustrated in FIG. 82 as a storage capacitance 8208, preferably has the capacity to handle the power being transferred, and to allow it to accept a non-negligible amount of power during a non-negligible aperture period. This allows the storage capacitance 8208 to store energy transferred from the input EM signal 8204, without substantial concern for accurately reproducing the original, unaffected voltage level of the input EM signal 8204. For example, in an embodiment, the storage capacitance 8208 has a value in the range of 18pF. Other suitable capacitance values and storage modules can be used.

One benefit of the energy transfer system 8202 is that, even when the input EM signal 8204 is a very small signal, the energy transfer system 8202 transfers enough energy from the input EM signal 8204 that the input EM signal can be efficiently down-converted.

The energy transfer system 8202 is coupled to a load 8212. Recall from the overview of under-sampling that loads can be classified as high impedance loads or low impedance loads. A high impedance load is one that is relatively insignificant to an output drive impedance of the system for a given output frequency. A low impedance load is one that is relatively significant. Another benefit of the energy transfer system 8202 is that the non-negligible amounts of transferred energy permit the energy transfer system 8202 to effectively drive loads that would otherwise be classified as low impedance loads in under-sampling systems and conventional sampling systems. In other words, the non-negligible amounts of transferred energy ensure that, even for lower impedance loads, the storage capacitance 8208 accepts and maintains sufficient energy or charge to drive the load 8202. This is illustrated below in the timing diagrams of FIGS. 83A-F.

FIGS. 83A-F illustrate example timing diagrams for the energy transfer system 8202 in FIG. 82. FIG. 83A illustrates an example input EM signal 8302.

FIG. 83C illustrates an example under-sampling signal 8304, including energy transfer pulses 8306 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration.

FIG.83B illustrates the effects to the input EM signal 8302, as measured at a terminal 8214 in FIG. 82A, when non-negligible amounts of energy are transfer from it. In FIG. 83B, non-negligible distortions 8308 correlate with the energy transfer pulses 8306 in FIG. 83C. In this example, the non-negligible distortions 8308 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the input EM signal 8302. The non-negligible distortions 8308 represent non-negligible amounts of transferred energy, in the form of charge that is transferred to the storage capacitance 8208 in FIG. 82.

FIG. 83D illustrates a down-converted signal 8310 that is formed by energy transferred from the input EM signal 8302.

FIG. 83E illustrates the down-converted signal 8310 on a compressed time scale. The down-converted signal 8310 can be filtered to produce the down-converted signal 8312 illustrated in FIG. 83F. The down-converted signal 8312 is similar to the down-converted signal illustrated in FIG. 79F, except that the down-converted signal 8312 has substantially more power (e.g.: V^2/R; approximately (~) 2mV and 2K Ohms) than the down-converted signal illustrated in FIG. 79F (e.g.: V^2/R; ~ 5mV and 1M Ohms). As a result, the down-converted signals 8310 and 8312 can efficiently drive lower impedance loads, given the input EM signal 8204 would typically have a driving impedance, in an RF environment, of 50 Ohms (V^2/R; ~ 5mV and 50 Ohms).

The energy transfer aspects of the invention are represented generally by 4506 in FIGS. 45A and 45B.

1. Down-Converting an EM Signal to an IF EM Signal by Transferring Energy from the EM Signal at an Aliasing Rate

In an embodiment, the invention down-converts an EM signal to an IF signal by transferring energy from the EM signal at an aliasing rate. This embodiment is illustrated by 4514 in FIG. 45B.

This embodiment can be implemented with any type of EM signal, including, but not limited to, modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signals. This embodiment is described herein using the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} in FIG. 1 as an example. In the example, the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} is down-converted to an intermediate frequency (IF) signal F_{IF}. The intermediate frequency signal F_{IF} can be demodulated to a baseband signal F_{DMB} using conventional demodulation techniques. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any EM signal, including, but not limited to, modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signals.

The following sections describe methods for down-converting an EM signal to an IF signal F_{IF} by transferring energy from the EM signal at an aliasing rate. Exemplary structural embodiments for implementing the methods are also described. It should be understood that the invention is not limited to the particular embodiments described below. Equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the following will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., are within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

The following sections include a high level discussion, example embodiments, and implementation examples.

1.1 High Level Description

This section (including its subsections) provides a high-level description of down-converting an EM signal to an IF signal F_{IF} by transferring energy, according to the invention. In particular, an operational process of down-converting the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to the IF modulated carrier signal F_{IF}, by transferring energy, is described at a high-level. Also, a structural implementation for implementing this process is described at a high-level. This structural implementation is described herein for illustrative purposes, and is not limiting. In particular, the process described in this section can be achieved using any number of structural implementations, one of which is described in this section. The details of such structural implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein.

1.1.1 Operational Description

FIG. 46B depicts a flowchart 4607 that illustrates an exemplary method for down-converting an EM signal to an intermediate signal F_{IF}, by transferring energy from the EM signal at an aliasing rate. The exemplary method illustrated in the flowchart 4607 is an embodiment of the flowchart 4601 in FIG. 46A.

Any and all combinations of modulation techniques are valid for this invention. For ease of discussion, the digital AM carrier signal 616 is used to illustrate a high level operational description of the invention. Subsequent sections provide detailed flowcharts and descriptions for AM, FM and PM example embodiments. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any type of EM signal, including any form of modulated carrier signal and unmodulated carrier

signals.

The method illustrated in the flowchart 4607 is now described at a high level using the digital AM carrier signal 616 of FIG. 6C. Subsequent sections provide detailed flowcharts and descriptions for AM, FM and PM example embodiments. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any type of EM signal, including any form of modulated carrier signal and unmodulated carrier signals.

The process begins at step 4608, which includes receiving an EM signal. Step 4608 is illustrated by the digital AM carrier signal 616. The digital AM carrier signal 616 of FIG. 6C is re-illustrated in FIG. 47A for convenience. FIG. 47E illustrates a portion of the digital AM carrier signal 616 on an expanded time scale.

Step 4610 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 47B illustrates an example energy transfer signal 4702. The energy transfer signal 4702 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 4704 having non-negligible apertures 4701 that tend away from zero time duration. Generally, the apertures 4701 can be any time duration other than the period of the EM signal. For example, the apertures 4701 can be greater or less than a period of the EM signal. Thus, the apertures 4701 can be approximately 1/10, ¼, ½, 3/4, etc., or any other fraction of the period of the EM signal. Alternatively, the apertures 4701 can be approximately equal to one or more periods of the EM signal plus 1/10, ¼, ½, 3/4, etc., or any other fraction of a period of the EM signal. The apertures 4701 can be optimized based on one or more of a variety of criteria, as described in sections below.

The energy transfer pulses 4704 repeat at the aliasing rate. A suitable aliasing rate can be determined or selected as described below. Generally, when down-converting an EM signal to an intermediate signal, the aliasing

rate is substantially equal to a difference frequency, which is described below, or substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency.

Step 4612 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to the intermediate signal F_{IF}. FIG. 47C illustrates transferred energy 4706, which is transferred from the EM signal during the energy transfer pulses 4704. Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate occurs at an off-set of the frequency of the AM signal 616, the pulses 4704 "walk through" the AM signal 616 at the off-set frequency. By "walking through" the AM signal 616, the transferred energy 4706 forms an AM intermediate signal 4706 that is similar to the AM carrier signal 616, except that the AM intermediate signal has a lower frequency than the AM carrier signal 616. The AM carrier signal 616 can be down-converted to any frequency below the AM carrier signal 616 by adjusting the aliasing rate F_{AR}, as described below.

FIG. 47D depicts the AM intermediate signal 4706 as a filtered output signal 4708. In an alternative embodiment, the invention outputs a stair step, or non-filtered output signal. The choice between filtered, partially filtered and non-filtered output signals is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The intermediate frequency of the down-converted signal F_{IF}, which, in this example, is the intermediate signal 4706 and 4708, can be determined from EQ. (2), which is reproduced below for convenience.

$$F_C = n \bullet F_{AR} \pm F_{IF} \qquad \text{EQ. (2)}$$

A suitable aliasing rate F_{AR} can be determined in a variety of ways. An example method for determining the aliasing rate F_{AR}, is provided below. After reading the description herein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand how to determine appropriate aliasing rates for EM signals,

including ones in addition to the modulated carrier signals specifically illustrated herein.

In FIG. 48, a flowchart 4801 illustrates an example process for determining an aliasing rate F_{AR}. But a designer may choose, or an application may dictate, that the values be determined in an order that is different than the illustrated order. The process begins at step 4802, which includes determining, or selecting, the frequency of the EM signal. The frequency of the AM carrier signal 616 can be, for example, 901 MHZ.

Step 4804 includes determining, or selecting, the intermediate frequency. This is the frequency to which the EM signal will be down-converted The intermediate frequency can be determined, or selected, to match a frequency requirement of a down-stream demodulator. The intermediate frequency can be, for example, 1 MHZ.

Step 4806 includes determining the aliasing rate or rates that will down-convert the EM signal to the IF specified in step 4804.

EQ. (2) can be rewritten as EQ. (3):

$$n \bullet F_{AR} = F_C \pm F_{IF} \qquad \text{EQ. (3)}$$

Which can be rewritten as EQ. (4):

$$n = \frac{F_C \pm F_{IF}}{F_{AR}} \qquad \text{EQ. (4)}$$

or as EQ. (5):

$$F_{AR} = \frac{F_C \pm F_{IF}}{n} \qquad \text{EQ. (5)}$$

($F_C \pm F_{IF}$) can be defined as a difference value F_{DIFF}, as illustrated in EQ. (6):

$$(F_C \pm F_{IF}) = F_{DIFF} \qquad \text{EQ. (6)}$$

EQ. (4) can be rewritten as EQ. (7):

$$n = \frac{F_{DIFF}}{F_{AR}} \qquad \text{EQ. (7)}$$

From EQ. (7), it can be seen that, for a given n and a constant F_{AR}, F_{DIFF} is constant. For the case of $F_{DIFF} = F_C - F_{IF}$, and for a constant F_{DIFF}, as F_C increases, F_{IF} necessarily increases. For the case of $F_{DIFF} = F_C + F_{IF}$, and for a constant F_{DIFF}, as F_C increases, F_{IF} necessarily decreases. In the latter case of $F_{DIFF} = F_C + F_{IF}$, any phase or frequency changes on F_C correspond to reversed or inverted phase or frequency changes on F_{IF}. This is mentioned to teach the reader that if $F_{DIFF} = F_C + F_{IF}$ is used, the above effect will occur to the phase and frequency response of the modulated intermediate signal F_{IF}.

EQs. (2) through (7) can be solved for any valid n. A suitable n can be determined for any given difference frequency F_{DIFF} and for any desired aliasing rate $F_{AR(Desired)}$. EQs. (2) through (7) can be utilized to identify a specific harmonic closest to a desired aliasing rate $F_{AR(Desired)}$ that will generate the desired intermediate signal F_{IF}.

An example is now provided for determining a suitable n for a given difference frequency F_{DIFF} and for a desired aliasing rate $F_{AR(Desired)}$. For ease of illustration, only the case of $(F_C - F_{IF})$ is illustrated in the example below.

$$n = \frac{F_C - F_{IF}}{F_{AR(Desired)}} = \frac{F_{DIFF}}{F_{AR(Desired)}}$$

The desired aliasing rate $F_{AR(Desired)}$ can be, for example, 140 MHZ. Using the previous examples, where the carrier frequency is 901 MHZ and the IF is 1 MHZ, an initial value of n is determined as:

$$n = \frac{901\ \text{MHZ} - 1\ \text{MHZ}}{140\ \text{MHZ}} = \frac{900}{140} = 6.4$$

The initial value 6.4 can be rounded up or down to the valid nearest n, which was defined above as including (0.5, 1, 2, 3, . . .). In this example,

6.4 is rounded down to 6.0, which is inserted into EQ. (5) for the case of ($F_C - F_{IF}$) = F_{DIFF}.:

$$F_{AR} = \frac{F_c - F_{IF}}{n}$$

$$F_{AR} = \frac{901\ MHZ - 1\ MHZ}{6} = \frac{900\ MHZ}{6} = 150\ MHZ$$

In other words, transferring energy from a 901 MHZ EM carrier signal at 150 MHZ generates an intermediate signal at 1 MHZ. When the EM carrier signal is a modulated carrier signal, the intermediate signal will also substantially include the modulation. The modulated intermediate signal can be demodulated through any conventional demodulation technique.

Alternatively, instead of starting from a desired aliasing rate, a list of suitable aliasing rates can be determined from the modified form of EQ. (5), by solving for various values of n. Example solutions are listed below.

$$F_{AR} = \frac{(F_C - F_{IF})}{n} = \frac{F_{DIFF}}{n} = \frac{901\ MHZ - 1\ MHZ}{n} = \frac{900\ MHZ}{n}$$

Solving for n = 0.5, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6:

900MHZ/0.5 = 1.8 GHZ (i.e., second harmonic);
900MHZ/1 = 900 MHZ (i.e., fundamental frequency);
900MHZ/2 = 450 MHZ (i.e., second sub-harmonic);
900MHZ/3 = 300 MHZ (i.e., third sub-harmonic);
900MHZ/4 = 225 MHZ (i.e., fourth sub-harmonic);
900 MHZ/5 = 180 MHZ(i.e., fifth sub-harmonic); and
900 MHZ/6 = 150 MHZ(i.e., sixth sub-harmonic).

The steps described above can be performed for the case of (F_C+F_{IF}) in a similar fashion. The results can be compared to the results obtained from the case of (F_C-F_{IF}) to determine which provides better result for an application.

In an embodiment, the invention down-converts an EM signal to a relatively standard IF in the range of, for example, 100KHZ to 200 MHZ. In another embodiment, referred to herein as a small off-set implementation, the invention down-converts an EM signal to a relatively low frequency of, for example, less than 100 KHZ. In another embodiment, referred to herein as a large off-set implementation, the invention down-converts an EM signal to a relatively higher IF signal, such as, for example, above 200 MHZ.

The various off-set implementations provide selectivity for different applications. Generally, lower data rate applications can operate at lower intermediate frequencies. But higher intermediate frequencies can allow more information to be supported for a given modulation technique.

In accordance with the invention, a designer picks an optimum information bandwidth for an application and an optimum intermediate frequency to support the baseband signal. The intermediate frequency should be high enough to support the bandwidth of the modulating baseband signal F_{MB}.

Generally, as the aliasing rate approaches a harmonic or sub-harmonic frequency of the EM signal, the frequency of the down-converted IF signal decreases. Similarly, as the aliasing rate moves away from a harmonic or sub-harmonic frequency of the EM signal, the IF increases.

Aliased frequencies occur above and below every harmonic of the aliasing frequency. In order to avoid mapping other aliasing frequencies in the band of the aliasing frequency (IF) of interest, the IF of interest should not be near one half the aliasing rate.

As described in example implementations below, an aliasing module, including a universal frequency translator (UFT) module built in accordance with the invention provides a wide range of flexibility in frequency selection and can thus be implemented in a wide range of applications. Conventional systems cannot easily offer, or do not allow, this level of flexibility in frequency selection.

1.1.2 Structural Description

FIG. 63 illustrates a block diagram of an energy transfer system 6302 according to an embodiment of the invention. The energy transfer system 6302 is an example embodiment of the generic aliasing system 1302 in FIG. 13. The energy transfer system 6302 includes an energy transfer module 6304. The energy transfer module 6304 receives the EM signal 1304 and an energy transfer signal 6306, which includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration, occurring at a frequency equal to the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The energy transfer signal 6306 is an example embodiment of the aliasing signal 1310 in FIG. 13. The energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the EM signal 1304 at the aliasing rate F_{AR} of the energy transfer signal 6306.

Preferably, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the EM signal 1304 to down-convert it to the intermediate signal F_{IF} in the manner shown in the operational flowchart 4607 of FIG. 46B. But it should be understood that the scope and spirit of the invention includes other structural embodiments for performing the steps of the flowchart 4607. The specifics of the other structural embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

The operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described in detail with reference to the flowchart 4607 and to the timing diagrams

illustrated in FIGS. 47A-E. In step 4608, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the AM carrier signal 616. In step 4610, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 4702. In step 4612, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate to down-convert the AM carrier signal 616 to the intermediate signal 4706 or 4708.

Example implementations of the energy transfer system 6302 are provided in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.2 Example Embodiments

Various embodiments related to the method(s) and structure(s) described above are presented in this section (and its subsections). These embodiments are described herein for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to these embodiments. Alternate embodiments (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the embodiments described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. The invention is intended and adapted to include such alternate embodiments.

The method for down-converting the EM signal 1304 by transferring energy can be implemented with any type of EM signal, including modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signals. For example, the method of the flowchart 4601 can be implemented to down-convert AM signals, FM signals, PM signals, etc., or any

combination thereof. Operation of the flowchart 4601 of FIG. 46A is described below for down-converting AM, FM and PM. The down-conversion descriptions include down-converting to intermediate signals, directly down-converting to demodulated baseband signals, and down-converting FM signals to non-FM signals. The exemplary descriptions below are intended to facilitate an understanding of the present invention. The present invention is not limited to or by the exemplary embodiments below.

1.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Amplitude Modulation

1.2.1.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 4607 in FIG. 46B is described below for the analog AM carrier signal 516, illustrated in FIG. 5C, and for the digital AM carrier signal 616, illustrated in FIG. 6C.

1.2.1.1.1 Analog AM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the analog AM carrier signal 516 in FIG. 5C to an analog AM intermediate signal is now described for the flowchart 4607 in FIG. 46B. The analog AM carrier signal 516 is re-illustrated in FIG. 50A for convenience. For this example, the analog AM carrier signal 516 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 50B, an analog AM carrier signal 5004 illustrates a portion of the analog AM carrier signal 516 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4608, which includes receiving the EM signal. This is represented by the analog AM carrier signal 516.

Step 4610 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 50C illustrates an example energy transfer signal 5006 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 50B. The energy transfer signal 5006 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5007 having non-negligible apertures 5009 that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5007 repeat at the aliasing rate F_{AR}, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}.

Step 4612 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to an intermediate signal F_{IF}. In FIG. 50D, an affected analog AM carrier signal 5008 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the analog AM carrier signal 516 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected analog AM carrier signal 5008 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 50B and 50C.

FIG 50E illustrates a down-converted AM intermediate signal 5012, which is generated by the down-conversion process. The AM intermediate signal 5012 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The down-converted signal 5012 includes portions 5010A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5007 in FIG. 50C, and portions 5010B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5007. Portions 5010A represent energy transferred from the AM analog signal 516 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5010A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5007. Portions 5010B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 5010B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5007.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the analog AM carrier signal 516, the energy transfer pulses 5007 "walk through" the analog AM carrier signal 516 at the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. In other words, the energy transfer pulses 5007 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the AM carrier signal 516. As a result, the energy transfer pulses 5007 capture varying amounts of energy from the analog AM carrier signal 516, as illustrated by portions 5010A, which provides the AM intermediate signal 5012 with an oscillating frequency F_{IF}.

In FIG. 50F, an AM intermediate signal 5014 illustrates the AM intermediate signal 5012 on a compressed time scale. In FIG. 50G, an AM intermediate signal 5016 represents a filtered version of the AM intermediate signal 5014. The AM intermediate signal 5016 is substantially similar to the AM carrier signal 516, except that the AM intermediate signal 5016 is at the intermediate frequency. The AM intermediate signal 5016 can be demodulated through any conventional demodulation technique.

The present invention can output the unfiltered AM intermediate signal 5014, the filtered AM intermediate signal 5016, a partially filtered AM intermediate signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The signals referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the AM intermediate signals 5014 in FIG. 50F and 5016 in FIG. 50G illustrate that the AM carrier signal 516 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.1.1.2 Digital AM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the digital AM carrier signal 616 to a

digital AM intermediate signal is now described for the flowchart 4607 in FIG. 46B. The digital AM carrier signal 616 is re-illustrated in FIG. 51A for convenience. For this example, the digital AM carrier signal 616 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 51B, a digital AM carrier signal 5104 illustrates a portion of the digital AM carrier signal 616 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4608, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the digital AM carrier signal 616.

Step 4610 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 51C illustrates an example energy transfer signal 5106 on substantially the same time scale as FIG. 51B. The energy transfer signal 5106 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5107 having non-negligible apertures 5109 that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5107 repeat at the aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}.

Step 4612 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to the intermediate signal F_{IF}. In FIG. 51D, an affected digital AM carrier signal 5108 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the digital AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected digital AM carrier signal 5108 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 51B and 51C.

FIG 51E illustrates a down-converted AM intermediate signal 5112, which is generated by the down-conversion process. The AM intermediate signal 5112 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The down-converted signal 5112 includes portions 5110A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5107 in FIG. 51C, and portions

5110B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5107. Portions 5110A represent energy transferred from the digital AM carrier signal 616 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5110A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5107. Portions 5110B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 5110B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5107.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the frequency of the digital AM carrier signal 616, the energy transfer pulses 5107 "walk through" the digital AM signal 616 at the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. In other words, the energy transfer pulse 5107 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the digital AM carrier signal 616. As a result, the energy transfer pulses 5107 capture varying amounts of energy from the digital AM carrier signal 616, as illustrated by portions 5110, which provides the AM intermediate signal 5112 with an oscillating frequency F_{IF}.

In FIG. 51F, a digital AM intermediate signal 5114 illustrates the AM intermediate signal 5112 on a compressed time scale. In FIG. 51G, an AM intermediate signal 5116 represents a filtered version of the AM intermediate signal 5114. The AM intermediate signal 5116 is substantially similar to the AM carrier signal 616, except that the AM intermediate signal 5116 is at the intermediate frequency. The AM intermediate signal 5116 can be demodulated through any conventional demodulation technique.

The present invention can output the unfiltered AM intermediate signal 5114, the filtered AM intermediate signal 5116, a partially filtered AM intermediate signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The signals referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the AM intermediate signals

5114 in FIG. 51F and 5116 in FIG. 51G illustrate that the AM carrier signal 616 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.1.2 Structural Description

The operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the analog AM carrier signal 516, with reference to the flowchart 4607 and to the timing diagrams in FIGS. 50A-G. In step 4608, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the analog AM carrier signal 516. In step 4610, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 5006. In step 4612, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the analog AM carrier signal 516 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5006, to down-convert the analog AM carrier signal 516 to the AM intermediate signal 5012.

The operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the digital AM carrier signal 616, with reference to the flowchart 1401 and the timing diagrams in FIGS. 51A-G. In step 4608, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the digital AM carrier signal 616. In step 4610, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 5106. In step 4612, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the digital AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5106, to down-convert the digital AM carrier signal 616 to the AM intermediate signal 5112.

Example embodiments of the energy transfer module 6304 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.2.2 Second Example Embodiment: Frequency Modulation

1.2.2.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 4607 in FIG. 46B is described below for the analog FM carrier signal 716, illustrated in FIG. 7C, and for the digital FM carrier signal 816, illustrated in FIG. 8C.

1.2.2.1.1 Analog FM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the analog FM carrier signal 716 in FIG. 7C to an FM intermediate signal is now described for the flowchart 4607 in FIG. 46B. The analog FM carrier signal 716 is re-illustrated in FIG. 52A for convenience. For this example, the analog FM carrier signal 716 oscillates around approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 52B, an analog FM carrier signal 5204 illustrates a portion of the analog FM carrier signal 716 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4608, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the analog FM carrier signal 716.

Step 4610 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 52C illustrates an example energy transfer signal 5206 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 52B. The energy transfer signal 5206 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5207 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5207 repeat at the aliasing rate F_{AR}, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}.

Step 4612 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to an intermediate signal F_{IF}. In FIG. 52D, an affected analog FM carrier signal 5208 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the analog FM carrier signal 716 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected analog FM carrier signal 5208 is illustrated on

substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 52B and 52C.

FIG 52E illustrates a down-converted FM intermediate signal 5212, which is generated by the down-conversion process. The FM intermediate signal 5212 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The down-converted signal 5212 includes portions 5210A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5207 in FIG. 52C, and portions 5210B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5207. Portions 5210A represent energy transferred from the analog FM carrier signal 716 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5210A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5207. Portions 5210B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 5210B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5207.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the frequency of the analog FM carrier signal 716, the energy transfer pulses 5207 "walk through" the analog FM carrier signal 716 at the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. In other words, the energy transfer pulse 5207 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the analog FM carrier signal 716. As a result, the energy transfer pulses 5207 capture varying amounts of energy from the analog FM carrier signal 716, as illustrated by portions 5210, which provides the FM intermediate signal 5212 with an oscillating frequency F_{IF}.

In FIG. 52F, an analog FM intermediate signal 5214 illustrates the FM intermediate signal 5212 on a compressed time scale. In FIG. 52G, an FM intermediate signal 5216 represents a filtered version of the FM intermediate signal 5214. The FM intermediate signal 5216 is substantially similar to the analog FM carrier signal 716, except that the FM intermediate signal 5216 is at the intermediate frequency. The FM intermediate signal

5216 can be demodulated through any conventional demodulation technique.

The present invention can output the unfiltered FM intermediate signal 5214, the filtered FM intermediate signal 5216, a partially filtered FM intermediate signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The signals referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the FM intermediate signals 5214 in FIG. 52F and 5216 in FIG. 52G illustrate that the FM carrier signal 716 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.2.1.2 Digital FM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the digital FM carrier signal 816 in FIG. 8C is now described for the flowchart 4607 in FIG. 46B. The digital FM carrier signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 53A for convenience. For this example, the digital FM carrier signal 816 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 53B, a digital FM carrier signal 5304 illustrates a portion of the digital FM carrier signal 816 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4608, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the digital FM carrier signal 816.

Step 4610 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 53C illustrates an example energy transfer signal 5306 on substantially the same time scale as FIG. 53B. The energy transfer signal 5306 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5307 having non-negligible apertures 5309 that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5307 repeat at the aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an

intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}.

Step 4612 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to the an intermediate signal F_{IF}. In FIG. 53D, an affected digital FM carrier signal 5308 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the digital FM carrier signal 816 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected digital FM carrier signal 5308 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 53B and 53C.

FIG 53E illustrates a down-converted FM intermediate signal 5312, which is generated by the down-conversion process. The down-converted signal 5312 includes portions 5310A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5307 in FIG. 53C, and portions 5310B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5307. Down-converted signal 5312 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

Portions 5310A represent energy transferred from the digital FM carrier signal 816 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5310A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5307.

Portions 5310B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 5310B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5307.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the frequency of the digital FM carrier signal 816, the energy transfer pulses 5307 "walk through" the digital FM carrier signal 816 at the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. In other words, the energy transfer pulse 5307 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the digital FM carrier signal 816. As a result, the energy transfer pulses 5307 capture varying amounts of energy from the digital FM carrier signal 816, as illustrated by portions 5310, which

provides the FM intermediate signal 5312 with an oscillating frequency F_{IF}.

In FIG. 53F, a digital FM intermediate signal 5314 illustrates the FM intermediate signal 5312 on a compressed time scale. In FIG. 53G, an FM intermediate signal 5316 represents a filtered version of the FM intermediate signal 5314. The FM intermediate signal 5316 is substantially similar to the digital FM carrier signal 816, except that the FM intermediate signal 5316 is at the intermediate frequency. The FM intermediate signal 5316 can be demodulated through any conventional demodulation technique.

The present invention can output the unfiltered FM intermediate signal 5314, the filtered FM intermediate signal 5316, a partially filtered FM intermediate signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The signals referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the FM intermediate signals 5314 in FIG. 53F and 5316 in FIG. 53G illustrate that the FM carrier signal 816 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.2.2 Structural Description

The operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the analog FM carrier signal 716, with reference to the flowchart 4607 and the timing diagrams in FIGS. 52A-G. In step 4608, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the analog FM carrier signal 716. In step 4610, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 5206. In step 4612, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the analog FM carrier signal 716 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5206, to down-convert the analog FM carrier signal 716 to the FM intermediate signal 5212.

The operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the digital FM carrier signal 816, with reference to the flowchart 4607 and the timing diagrams in FIGS. 53A-G. In step 4608, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the digital FM carrier signal 816. In step 4610, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 5306. In step 4612, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the digital FM carrier signal 816 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5306, to down-convert the digital FM carrier signal 816 to the FM intermediate signal 5212.

Example embodiments of the energy transfer module 6304 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.2.3 Third Example Embodiment: Phase Modulation

1.2.3.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 4607 in FIG. 46B is described below for the analog PM carrier signal 916, illustrated in FIG. 9C, and for the digital PM carrier signal 1016, illustrated in FIG. 10C.

1.2.3.1.1 Analog PM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the analog PM carrier signal 916 in FIG. 9C to an analog PM intermediate signal is now described for the flowchart 4607 in FIG. 46B. The analog PM carrier signal 916 is re-illustrated in FIG. 54A for convenience. For this example, the analog PM carrier signal 916 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 54B, an analog PM carrier signal 5404 illustrates a portion of the analog PM carrier signal 916 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4608, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the analog PM carrier signal 916.

Step 4610 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 54C illustrates an example energy transfer signal 5406 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 54B. The energy transfer signal 5406 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5407 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5407 repeat at the aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}.

Step 4612 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to the IF signal F_{IF}. In FIG. 54D, an affected analog PM carrier signal 5408 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the analog PM carrier signal 916 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected analog PM carrier signal 5408 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 54B and 54C.

FIG 54E illustrates a down-converted PM intermediate signal 5412, which is generated by the down-conversion process. The down-converted PM intermediate signal 5412 includes portions 5410A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5407 in FIG. 54C, and portions 5410B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5407. Down-converted signal 5412 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

Portions 5410A represent energy transferred from the analog PM carrier signal 916 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5410A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5407.

Portions 5410B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 5410B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5407.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the frequency of the analog PM carrier signal 716, the energy transfer pulses 5407 "walk through" the analog PM carrier signal 916 at the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. In other words, the energy transfer pulse 5407 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the analog PM carrier signal 916. As a result, the energy transfer pulses 5407 capture varying amounts of energy from the analog PM carrier signal 916, as illustrated by portions 5410, which provides the PM intermediate signal 5412 with an oscillating frequency F_{IF}.

In FIG. 54F, an analog PM intermediate signal 5414 illustrates the PM intermediate signal 5412 on a compressed time scale. In FIG. 54G, an PM intermediate signal 5416 represents a filtered version of the PM intermediate signal 5414. The PM intermediate signal 5416 is substantially similar to the analog PM carrier signal 916, except that the PM intermediate signal 5416 is at the intermediate frequency. The PM intermediate signal 5416 can be demodulated through any conventional demodulation technique.

The present invention can output the unfiltered PM intermediate signal 5414, the filtered PM intermediate signal 5416, a partially filtered PM intermediate signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The signals referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the PM intermediate signals 5414 in FIG. 54F and 5416 in FIG. 54G illustrate that the PM carrier signal 916 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.3.1.2 Digital PM Carrier Signal

A process for down-converting the digital PM carrier signal 1016 in FIG. 10C to a digital PM signal is now described for the flowchart 3607 in

FIG. 46B. The digital PM carrier signal 1016 is re-illustrated in FIG. 55A for convenience. For this example, the digital PM carrier signal 1016 oscillates at approximately 901 MHZ. In FIG. 55B, a digital PM carrier signal 5504 illustrates a portion of the digital PM carrier signal 1016 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4608, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the digital PM carrier signal 1016.

Step 4610 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 55C illustrates an example energy transfer signal 5506 on substantially the same time scale as FIG. 55B. The energy transfer signal 5506 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5507 having non-negligible apertures 5509 that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5507 repeat at an aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting to an intermediate signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the difference frequency F_{DIFF}.

Step 4612 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert the EM signal to an intermediate signal F_{IF}. In FIG. 55D, an affected digital PM carrier signal 5508 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the digital PM carrier signal 1016 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected digital PM carrier signal 5508 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 55B and 55C.

FIG 55E illustrates a down-converted PM intermediate signal 5512, which is generated by the down-conversion process. The down-converted PM intermediate signal 5512 includes portions 5510A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5507 in FIG. 55C, and portions 5510B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5507. Down-converted signal 5512 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

Portions 5510A represent energy transferred from the digital PM carrier signal 1016 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5510A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5507.

Portions 5510B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 5510B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5507.

Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is off-set from the frequency of the digital PM carrier signal 716, the energy transfer pulses 5507 "walk through" the digital PM carrier signal 1016 at the difference frequency F_{DIFF}. In other words, the energy transfer pulse 5507 occur at different locations of subsequent cycles of the digital PM carrier signal 1016. As a result, the energy transfer pulses 5507 capture varying amounts of energy from the digital PM carrier signal 1016, as illustrated by portions 5510, which provides the PM intermediate signal 5512 with an oscillating frequency F_{IF}.

In FIG. 55F, a digital PM intermediate signal 5514 illustrates the PM intermediate signal 5512 on a compressed time scale. In FIG. 55G, an PM intermediate signal 5516 represents a filtered version of the PM intermediate signal 5514. The PM intermediate signal 5516 is substantially similar to the digital PM carrier signal 1016, except that the PM intermediate signal 5516 is at the intermediate frequency. The PM intermediate signal 5516 can be demodulated through any conventional demodulation technique.

The present invention can output the unfiltered PM intermediate signal 5514, the filtered PM intermediate signal 5516, a partially filtered PM intermediate signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The signals referred to herein illustrate frequency down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the PM intermediate signals

5514 in FIG. 55F and 5516 in FIG. 55G illustrate that the PM carrier signal 1016 was successfully down-converted to an intermediate signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

1.2.3.2 Structural Description

Operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the analog PM carrier signal 916, with reference to the flowchart 4607 and the timing diagrams in FIGS. 54A-G. In step 4608, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the analog PM carrier signal 916. In step 4610, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 5406. In step 4612, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the analog PM carrier signal 916 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5406, to down-convert the analog PM carrier signal 916 to the PM intermediate signal 5412.

Operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the digital PM carrier signal 1016, with reference to the flowchart 1401 and the timing diagrams in FIGS. 55A-G. In step 4608, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the digital PM carrier signal 1016. In step 4610, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 5506. In step 4612, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the digital PM carrier signal 1016 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5506, to down-convert the digital PM carrier signal 1016 to the PM intermediate signal 5512.

Example embodiments of the energy transfer module 6304 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.2.4 Other Embodiments

The embodiments described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These embodiments are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate embodiments, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate embodiments fall

within the scope and spirit of the present invention. Example implementations of the energy transfer module 6304 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

1.3 Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the method(s), structure(s), and/or embodiments described above are presented in Sections 4 and 5 below. These implementations are presented for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described therein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

2. Directly Down-Converting an EM Signal to an Demodulated Baseband Signal by Transferring Energy from the EM Signal

In an embodiment, the invention directly down-converts an EM signal to a baseband signal, by transferring energy from the EM signal. This embodiment is referred to herein as direct-to-data down-conversion and is illustrated by 4516 in FIG. 45B.

This embodiment can be implemented with modulated and unmodulated EM signals. This embodiment is described herein using the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} in FIG. 1, as an example. In the example, the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} is directly down-converted to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any EM signal, including but not limited to,

modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signals.

The following sections describe methods for directly down-converting the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. Exemplary structural embodiments for implementing the methods are also described. It should be understood that the invention is not limited to the particular embodiments described below. Equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the following will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., are within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

The following sections include a high level discussion, example embodiments, and implementation examples.

2.1 High Level Description

This section (including its subsections) provides a high-level description of transferring energy from the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to directly down-convert the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}, according to the invention. In particular, an operational process of directly down-converting the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB} is described at a high-level. Also, a structural implementation for implementing this process is described at a high-level. The structural implementation is described herein for illustrative purposes, and is not limiting. In particular, the process described in this section can be achieved using any number of structural implementations, one of which is described in this section. The details of such structural implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein.

2.1.1 Operational Description

FIG. 46C depicts a flowchart 4613 that illustrates an exemplary method for transferring energy from the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to directly down-convert the modulated carrier signal F_{MC} to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. The exemplary method illustrated in the flowchart 4613 is an embodiment of the flowchart 4601 in FIG. 46A.

Any and all combinations of modulation techniques are valid for this invention. For ease of discussion, the digital AM carrier signal 616 is used to illustrate a high level operational description of the invention. Subsequent sections provide detailed flowcharts and descriptions for AM and PM example embodiments. FM presents special considerations that are dealt with separately in Section III.3. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any type of EM signal, including any form of modulated carrier signal and unmodulated carrier signals.

The high-level process illustrated in the flowchart 4613 is now described at a high level using the digital AM carrier signal 616, from FIG. 6C. The digital AM carrier signal 616 is re-illustrated in FIG. 56A for convenience.

The process of the flowchart 4613 begins at step 4614, which includes receiving an EM signal. Step 4613 is represented by the digital AM carrier signal 616.

Step 4616 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 56B illustrates an example energy transfer signal 5602, which includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5604 having apertures 5606 that are optimized for energy transfer. The optimized apertures 5606 are non-negligible and tend away from zero.

The non-negligible apertures 5606 can be any width other than the period of the EM signal, or a multiple thereof. For example, the non-negligible apertures 5606 can be less than the period of the signal 616 such as, 1/8, ¼, ½, 3/4, etc., of the period of the signal 616. Alternatively, the non-negligible apertures 5606 can be greater than the period of the signal 616. The width and amplitude of the apertures 5606 can be optimized based on one or more of a variety of criteria, as described in sections below.

The energy transfer pulses 5604 repeat at the aliasing rate or pulse repetition rate. The aliasing rate is determined in accordance with EQ. (2), reproduced below for convenience.

$$F_C = n \bullet F_{AR} \pm F_{IF} \qquad \text{EQ. (2)}$$

When directly down-converting an EM signal to baseband (i.e., zero IF), EQ. (2) becomes:

$$F_C = n \bullet F_{AR} \qquad \text{EQ. (8)}$$

Thus, to directly down-convert the AM signal 616 to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the AM signal 616 or to a harmonic or sub-harmonic thereof. Although the aliasing rate is too low to permit reconstruction of higher frequency components of the AM signal 616 (i.e., the carrier frequency), it is high enough to permit substantial reconstruction of the lower frequency modulating baseband signal 310.

Step 4618 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert the EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. FIG. 56C illustrates a demodulated baseband signal 5610 that is generated by the direct down-conversion process. The

demodulated baseband signal 5610 is similar to the digital modulating baseband signal 310 in FIG. 3.

FIG. 56D depicts a filtered demodulated baseband signal 5612, which can be generated from the demodulated baseband signal 5610. The invention can thus generate a filtered output signal, a partially filtered output signal, or a relatively unfiltered output signal. The choice between filtered, partially filtered and non-filtered output signals is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

2.1.2 Structural Description

In an embodiment, the energy transfer system 6302 transfers energy from any type of EM signal, including modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signal, to directly down-convert the EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal. Preferably, the energy transfer system 6302 transfers energy from the EM signal 1304 to down-convert it to demodulated baseband signal in the manner shown in the operational flowchart 4613. However, it should be understood that the scope and spirit of the invention includes other structural embodiments for performing the steps of the flowchart 4613. The specifics of the other structural embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

Operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described in at a high level for the digital AM carrier signal 616, with reference to the flowchart 4613 and the timing diagrams illustrated in FIGS. 56A-D. In step 4614, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the digital AM carrier signal 616. In step 4616, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 5602. In step 4618, the energy transfer module 6304

transfers energy from the digital AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert it to the demodulated baseband signal 5610.

Example implementations of the energy transfer module 6302 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

2.2 Example Embodiments

Various embodiments related to the method(s) and structure(s) described above are presented in this section (and its subsections). These embodiments are described herein for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to these embodiments. Alternate embodiments (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the embodiments described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. The invention is intended and adapted to include such alternate embodiments.

The method for down-converting the EM signal to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}, illustrated in the flowchart 4613 of FIG. 46C, can be implemented with various types of modulated carrier signals including, but not limited to, AM, PM, etc., or any combination thereof. The flowchart 4613 of FIG. 46C is described below for AM and PM. The exemplary descriptions below are intended to facilitate an understanding of the present invention. The present invention is not limited to or by the exemplary embodiments below.

2.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Amplitude Modulation

2.2.1.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of the flowchart 4613 in FIG. 46C is described below for the analog AM carrier signal 516, illustrated in FIG. 5C, and for the digital AM carrier signal 616, illustrated in FIG. 6C.

2.2.1.1.1 Analog AM Carrier Signal

A process for directly down-converting the analog AM carrier signal 516 in FIG. 5C to a demodulated baseband signal is now described with reference to the flowchart 4613 in FIG. 46C. The analog AM carrier signal 516 is re-illustrated in 57A for convenience. For this example, the analog AM carrier signal 516 oscillates at approximately 900 MHZ. In FIG. 57B, an analog AM carrier signal portion 5704 illustrates a portion of the analog AM carrier signal 516 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4614, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the analog AM carrier signal 516.

Step 4616 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. In FIG. 57C, an example energy transfer signal 5706 is illustrated on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 57B. The energy transfer signal 5706 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5707 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5707 repeat at the aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting an EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the EM signal.

Step 4618 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert the EM signal to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. In FIG. 57D, an affected analog AM carrier signal 5708 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the analog AM carrier

signal 516 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected analog AM carrier signal 5708 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 57B and 57C.

FIG. 57E illustrates a demodulated baseband signal 5712, which is generated by the down-conversion process. Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the signal 516, essentially no IF is produced. The only substantial aliased component is the baseband signal. The demodulated baseband signal 5712 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The demodulated baseband signal 5712 includes portions 5710A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5707 in FIG. 57C, and portions 5710B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5707. Portions 5710A represent energy transferred from the analog AM carrier signal 516 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5710A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5707. Portions 5710B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 5710B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5707.

In FIG. 57F, a demodulated baseband signal 5716 represents a filtered version of the demodulated baseband signal 5712, on a compressed time scale. The demodulated baseband signal 5716 is substantially similar to the modulating baseband signal 210 and can be further processed using any signal processing technique(s) without further down-conversion or demodulation.

The present invention can output the unfiltered demodulated baseband signal 5712, the filtered demodulated baseband signal 5716, a partially filtered demodulated baseband signal, a stair step output signal, etc.

The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the demodulated baseband signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate direct down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the demodulated baseband signals 5712 in FIG. 57E and 5716 in FIG. 57F illustrate that the analog AM carrier signal 516 was directly down-converted to a demodulated baseband signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

2.2.1.1.2 Digital AM Carrier Signal

A process for directly down-converting the digital AM carrier signal 616 in FIG. 6C to a demodulated baseband signal is now described for the flowchart 4613 in FIG. 46C. The digital AM carrier signal 616 is re-illustrated in 58A for convenience. For this example, the digital AM carrier signal 616 oscillates at approximately 900 MHZ. In FIG. 58B, a digital AM carrier signal portion 5804 illustrates a portion of the digital AM carrier signal 616 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4614, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the digital AM carrier signal 616.

Step 4616 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. In FIG. 58C, an example energy transfer signal 5806 is illustrated on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 58B. The energy transfer signal 5806 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5807 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5807 repeat at the aliasing rate, which is determined

or selected as previously described. Generally, when directly down-converting an EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the EM signal.

Step 4618 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert the EM signal to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. In FIG. 58D, an affected digital AM carrier signal 5808 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the digital AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected digital AM carrier signal 5808 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 58B and 58C.

FIG. 58E illustrates a demodulated baseband signal 5812, which is generated by the down-conversion process. Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the signal 616, essentially no IF is produced. The only substantial aliased component is the baseband signal. The demodulated baseband signal 5812 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The demodulated baseband signal 5812 includes portions 5810A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5807 in FIG. 58C, and portions 5810B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5807.

Portions 5810A represent energy transferred from the digital AM carrier signal 616 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5810A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5807. Portions 5810B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 5810B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5807.

In FIG. 58F, a demodulated baseband signal 5816 represents a filtered version of the demodulated baseband signal 5812, on a compressed

time scale. The demodulated baseband signal 5816 is substantially similar to the modulating baseband signal 310 and can be further processed using any signal processing technique(s) without further down-conversion or demodulation.

The present invention can output the unfiltered demodulated baseband signal 5812, the filtered demodulated baseband signal 5816, a partially filtered demodulated baseband signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate direct down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the demodulated baseband signals 5812 in FIG. 58E and 5816 in FIG. 58F illustrate that the digital AM carrier signal 616 was directly down-converted to a demodulated baseband signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

2.2.1.2 Structural Description

In an embodiment, the energy transfer module 6304 preferably transfers energy from the EM signal to directly down-convert it to a demodulated baseband signal in the manner shown in the operational flowchart 4613. But it should be understood that the scope and spirit of the invention includes other structural embodiments for performing the steps of the flowchart 1413. The specifics of the other structural embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

Operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the digital AM carrier signal 516, with reference to the flowchart 4613 and the timing diagrams in FIGS. 57A-F. In step 4612, the energy transfer module 6404 receives the analog AM carrier signal 516. In step 4614, the energy transfer module 6404 receives the energy transfer signal 5706. In step 4618, the energy transfer module 6404 transfers energy from the analog AM carrier signal 516 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5706, to directly down-convert the digital AM carrier signal 516 to the demodulated baseband signals 5712 or 5716.

The operation of the energy transfer system 6402 is now described for the digital AM carrier signal 616, with reference to the flowchart 4613 and the timing diagrams in FIGS. 58A-F. In step 4614, the energy transfer module 6404 receives the digital AM carrier signal 616. In step 4616, the energy transfer module 6404 receives the energy transfer signal 5806. In step 4618, the energy transfer module 6404 transfers energy from the digital AM carrier signal 616 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5806, to directly down-convert the digital AM carrier signal 616 to the demodulated baseband signals 5812 or 5816.

Example implementations of the energy transfer module 6302 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

2.2.2 Second Example Embodiment: Phase Modulation

2.2.2.1 Operational Description

Operation of the exemplary process of flowchart 4613 in FIG. 46C is described below for the analog PM carrier signal 916, illustrated in FIG. 9C and for the digital PM carrier signal 1016, illustrated in FIG. 10C.

2.2.2.1.1 Analog PM Carrier Signal

A process for directly down-converting the analog PM carrier signal 916 to a demodulated baseband signal is now described for the flowchart 4613 in FIG. 46C. The analog PM carrier signal 916 is re-illustrated in 59A for convenience. For this example, the analog PM carrier signal 916 oscillates at approximately 900 MHZ. In FIG. 59B, an analog PM carrier signal portion 5904 illustrates a portion of the analog PM carrier signal 916 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4614, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the analog PM carrier signal 916.

Step 4616 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. In FIG. 59C, an example energy transfer signal 5906 is illustrated on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 59B. The energy transfer signal 5906 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 5907 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 5907 repeat at the aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when directly down-converting an EM signal to a demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the EM signal.

Step 4618 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert the EM signal to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. In FIG. 59D, an affected analog PM carrier signal 5908 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the analog PM carrier signal 916 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected analog PM carrier signal 5908 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 59B and 59C.

FIG. 59E illustrates a demodulated baseband signal 5912, which is generated by the down-conversion process. Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the signal 516, essentially no IF is produced. The only substantial aliased component is the baseband signal. The demodulated baseband signal 5912 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The demodulated baseband signal 5912 includes portions 5910A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 5907 in FIG. 59C, and portions 5910B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 5907. Portions 5910A represent energy transferred from the analog PM carrier signal 916 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 5910A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 5907. Portions 5910B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 5910B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 5907.

In FIG. 59F, a demodulated baseband signal 5916 represents a filtered version of the demodulated baseband signal 5912, on a compressed time scale. The demodulated baseband signal 5916 is substantially similar to the modulating baseband signal 210 and can be further processed using any signal processing technique(s) without further down-conversion or demodulation.

The present invention can output the unfiltered demodulated baseband 5912, the filtered demodulated baseband signal 5916, a partially filtered demodulated baseband signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate direct down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the demodulated baseband signals 5912 in FIG. 59E and 5916 in FIG. 59F illustrate that the analog PM carrier signal 916 was successfully down-converted to a demodulated baseband signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

2.2.2.1.2 Digital PM Carrier Signal

A process for directly down-converting the digital PM carrier signal 1016 in FIG. 6C to a demodulated baseband signal is now described for the flowchart 4613 in FIG. 46C. The digital PM carrier signal 1016 is re-illustrated in 60A for convenience. For this example, the digital PM carrier signal 1016 oscillates at approximately 900 MHZ. In FIG. 60B, a digital PM carrier signal portion 6004 illustrates a portion of the digital PM carrier signal 1016 on an expanded time scale. The process begins at step 4614, which includes receiving an EM signal. This is represented by the digital PM carrier signal 1016.

Step 4616 includes receiving an energy transfer signal F_{AR}. In FIG. 60C, an example energy transfer signal 6006 is illustrated on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 60B. The energy transfer signal 6006 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 6007 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 6007 repeat at the aliasing rate, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when directly down-converting an EM signal to a

demodulated baseband signal, the aliasing rate F_{AR} is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the EM signal.

Step 4618 includes transferring energy from the EM signal at the aliasing rate to directly down-convert the EM signal to the demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}. In FIG. 60D, an affected digital PM carrier signal 6008 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the digital PM carrier signal 1016 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected digital PM carrier signal 6008 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 60B and 60C.

FIG. 60E illustrates a demodulated baseband signal 6012, which is generated by the down-conversion process. Because a harmonic of the aliasing rate is substantially equal to the frequency of the signal 1016, essentially no IF is produced. The only substantial aliased component is the baseband signal. The demodulated baseband signal 6012 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The demodulated baseband signal 6012 includes portions 6010A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 6007 in FIG. 60C, and portions 6010B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 6007. Portions 6010A represent energy transferred from the digital PM carrier signal 1016 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 6010A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 6007. Portions 6010B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 6010B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 6007.

In FIG. 60F, a demodulated baseband signal 6016 represents a filtered version of the demodulated baseband signal 6012, on a compressed time scale. The demodulated baseband signal 6016 is substantially similar to the modulating baseband signal 310 and can be further processed using any signal processing technique(s) without further down-conversion or demodulation.

The present invention can output the unfiltered demodulated baseband signal 6012, the filtered demodulated baseband signal 6016, a partially filtered demodulated baseband signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate direct down-conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the demodulated baseband signals 6012 in FIG. 60E and 6016 in FIG. 60F illustrate that the digital PM carrier signal 1016 was successfully down-converted to a demodulated baseband signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

2.2.2.2 Structural Description

In an embodiment, the energy transfer system 6302 preferably transfers energy from an EM signal to directly down-convert it to a demodulated baseband signal in the manner shown in the operational flowchart 4613. But it should be understood that the scope and spirit of the invention includes other structural embodiments for performing the steps of the flowchart 1413. The specifics of the other structural embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion

contained herein.

Operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the analog PM carrier signal 916, with reference to the flowchart 4613 and the timing diagrams in FIGS. 59A-F. In step 4614, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the analog PM carrier signal 916. In step 4616, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 5906. In step 4618, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the analog PM carrier signal 916 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 5906, to directly down-convert the analog PM carrier signal 916 to the demodulated baseband signals 5912 or 5916.

Operation of the energy transfer system 6302 is now described for the digital PM carrier signal 1016, with reference to the flowchart 4613 and to the timing diagrams in FIGS. 60A-F. In step 4614, the energy transfer module 6404 receives the digital PM carrier signal 1016. In step 4616, the energy transfer module 6404 receives the energy transfer signal 6006. In step 4618, the energy transfer module 6404 transfers energy from the digital PM carrier signal 1016 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6006, to directly down-convert the digital PM carrier signal 1016 to the demodulated baseband signal 6012 or 6016.

Example implementations of the energy transfer module 6302 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

2.2.3 Other Embodiments

The embodiments described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These embodiments are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate embodiments, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate embodiments fall

within the scope and spirit of the present invention. Example implementations of the energy transfer module 6302 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

2.3 Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the method(s), structure(s), and/or embodiments described above are presented in Sections 4 and 5 below. These implementations are presented for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described therein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

3. Modulation Conversion

In an embodiment, the invention down-converts an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to a non-FM signal $F_{(NON\text{-}FM)}$, by transferring energy from the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} at an aliasing rate. This embodiment is illustrated in FIG. 45B as 4518.

In an example embodiment, the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} is down-converted to a phase modulated (PM) signal F_{PM}. In another example embodiment, the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} is down- converted to an amplitude modulated (AM) signal F_{AM}. The down-converted signal can be demodulated with any conventional demodulation technique to obtain a demodulated baseband signal F_{DMB}.

The invention can be implemented with any type of FM signal. Exemplary embodiments are provided below for down-converting a

frequency shift keying (FSK) signal to a non-FSK signal. FSK is a sub-set of FM, wherein an FM signal shifts or switches between two or more frequencies. FSK is typically used for digital modulating baseband signals, such as the digital modulating baseband signal 310 in FIG. 3. For example, in FIG. 8, the digital FM signal 816 is an FSK signal that shifts between an upper frequency and a lower frequency, corresponding to amplitude shifts in the digital modulating baseband signal 310. The FSK signal 816 is used in example embodiments below.

In a first example embodiment, energy is transferred from the FSK signal 816 at an aliasing rate that is based on a mid-point between the upper and lower frequencies of the FSK signal 816. When the aliasing rate is based on the mid-point, the FSK signal 816 is down-converted to a phase shift keying (PSK) signal. PSK is a sub-set of phase modulation, wherein a PM signal shifts or switches between two or more phases. PSK is typically used for digital modulating baseband signals. For example, in FIG. 10, the digital PM signal 1016 is a PSK signal that shifts between two phases. The PSK signal 1016 can be demodulated by any conventional PSK demodulation technique(s).

In a second example embodiment, energy is transferred from the FSK signal 816 at an aliasing rate that is based upon either the upper frequency or the lower frequency of the FSK signal 816. When the aliasing rate is based upon the upper frequency or the lower frequency of the FSK signal 816, the FSK signal 816 is down-converted to an amplitude shift keying (ASK) signal. ASK is a sub-set of amplitude modulation, wherein an AM signal shifts or switches between two or more amplitudes. ASK is typically used for digital modulating baseband signals. For example, in FIG. 6, the digital AM signal 616 is an ASK signal that shifts between the first amplitude and the second amplitude. The ASK signal 616 can be demodulated by any conventional ASK demodulation technique(s).

The following sections describe methods for transferring energy from an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to down-convert it to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$. Exemplary structural embodiments for implementing the methods are also described. It should be understood that the invention is not limited to the particular embodiments described below. Equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the following will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., are within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

The following sections include a high level discussion, example embodiments, and implementation examples.

3.1 High Level Description

This section (including its subsections) provides a high-level description of transferring energy from the FM carrier signal F_{FM} to down-convert it to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$, according to the invention. In particular, an operational process for down-converting the FM carrier signal F_{FM} to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$ is described at a high-level. Also, a structural implementation for implementing this process is described at a high-level. The structural implementation is described herein for illustrative purposes, and is not limiting. In particular, the process described in this section can be achieved using any number of structural implementations, one of which is described in this section. The details of such structural implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein.

3.1.1 Operational Description

FIG. 46D depicts a flowchart 4619 that illustrates an exemplary method for down-converting the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to the non-FM

signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$. The exemplary method illustrated in the flowchart 4619 is an embodiment of the flowchart 4601 in FIG. 46A.

Any and all forms of frequency modulation techniques are valid for this invention. For ease of discussion, the digital FM carrier (FSK) signal 816 is used to illustrate a high level operational description of the invention. Subsequent sections provide detailed flowcharts and descriptions for the FSK signal 816. Upon reading the disclosure and examples therein, one skilled in the relevant art(s) will understand that the invention can be implemented to down-convert any type of FM signal.

The method illustrated in the flowchart 4619 is described below at a high level for down-converting the FSK signal 816 in FIG. 8C to a PSK signal. The FSK signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 84A for convenience.

The process of the flowchart 4619 begins at step 4620, which includes receiving an FM signal. This is represented by the FSK signal 816. The FSK signal 816 shifts between a first frequency 8410 and a second frequency 8412. The first frequency 8410 can be higher or lower than the second frequency 8412. In an exemplary embodiment, the first frequency 8410 is approximately 899 MHZ and the second frequency 8412 is approximately 901 MHZ.

Step 4622 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 84B illustrates an example energy transfer signal 8402 which includes a train of energy transfer pulses 8403 having non-negligible apertures 8405 that tend away from zero time in duration.

The energy transfer pulses 8403 repeat at the aliasing rate F_{AR}, which is determined or selected as previously described. Generally, when down-converting an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to a non-FM signal $F_{(NON-FM)}$, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of a frequency within the FM signal. In this example overview embodiment, where the FSK signal 816 is to be down-converted to a PSK

signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of the mid-point between the first frequency 8410 and the second frequency 8412. For the present example, the mid-point is approximately 900 MHZ.

Step 4624 includes transferring energy from the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} at the aliasing rate to down-convert the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON\text{-}FM)}$. FIG. 84C illustrates a PSK signal 8404, which is generated by the modulation conversion process.

When the second frequency 8412 is under-sampled, the PSK signal 8404 has a frequency of approximately 1 MHZ and is used as a phase reference. When the first frequency 8410 is under-sampled, the PSK signal 8404 has a frequency of 1 MHZ and is phase shifted 180 degrees from the phase reference.

FIG. 84D depicts a PSK signal 8406, which is a filtered version of the PSK signal 8404. The invention can thus generate a filtered output signal, a partially filtered output signal, or a relatively unfiltered stair step output signal. The choice between filtered, partially filtered and non-filtered output signals is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention.

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

Detailed exemplary embodiments for down-converting an FSK signal to a PSK signal and for down-converting an FSK signal to an ASK signal are provided below.

3.1.2 Structural Description

FIG. 63 illustrates the energy transfer system 6302 according to an embodiment of the invention. The energy transfer system 6302 includes the

energy transfer module 6304. The energy transfer system 6302 is an example embodiment of the generic aliasing system 1302 in FIG. 13.

In a modulation conversion embodiment, the EM signal 1304 is an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} and the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from FM carrier signal at a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of a frequency within the FM frequency band. Preferably, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to down-convert it to a non- FM signal $F_{(NON\text{-}FM)}$ in the manner shown in the operational flowchart 4619. But it should be understood that the scope and spirit of the invention includes other structural embodiments for performing the steps of the flowchart 4619. The specifics of the other structural embodiments will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

The operation of the energy transfer system 6302 shall now be described with reference to the flowchart 4619 and the timing diagrams of FIGS. 84A-84D. In step 4620, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the FSK signal 816. In step 4622, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 8402. In step 4624, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the FSK signal 816 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 8402 to down-convert the FSK signal 816 to the PSK signal 8404 or 8406.

Example implementations of the energy transfer module 6302 are provided in Section 4 below.

3.2 Example Embodiments

Various embodiments related to the method(s) and structure(s) described above are presented in this section (and its subsections). These embodiments are described herein for purposes of illustration, and not

limitation. The invention is not limited to these embodiments. Alternate embodiments (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of the embodiments described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. The invention is intended and adapted to include such alternate embodiments.

The method for down-converting an FM carrier signal F_{FMC} to a non-FM signal, $F_{(NON\text{-}FM)}$, illustrated in the flowchart 4619 of FIG.46D, can be implemented with any type of FM carrier signal including, but not limited to, FSK signals. The flowchart 4619 is described in detail below for down-converting an FSK signal to a PSK signal and for down-converting a PSK signal to an ASK signal. The exemplary descriptions below are intended to facilitate an understanding of the present invention. The present invention is not limited to or by the exemplary embodiments below.

3.2.1 First Example Embodiment: Down-Converting an FM Signal to a PM Signal

3.2.1.1 Operational Description

A process for down-converting the FSK signal 816 in FIG. 8C to a PSK signal is now described for the flowchart 4619 in FIG. 46D.

The FSK signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 61A for convenience. The FSK signal 816 shifts between a first frequency 6106 and a second frequency 6108. In the exemplary embodiment, the first frequency 6106 is lower than the second frequency 6108. In an alternative embodiment, the first frequency 6106 is higher than the second frequency 6108. For this example, the first frequency 6106 is approximately 899 MHZ and the second frequency 6108 is approximately 901 MHZ.

FIG. 61B illustrates an FSK signal portion 6104 that represents a portion of the FSK signal 816 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4620, which includes receiving an FM signal. This is represented by the FSK signal 816.

Step 4622 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 61C illustrates an example energy transfer signal 6107 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 61B. The energy transfer signal 6107 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 6109 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 6109 repeat at the aliasing rate F_{AR}, which is determined or selected as described above. Generally, when down-converting an FM signal to a non-FM signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of a frequency within the FM signal.

In this example, where an FSK signal is being down-converted to a PSK signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic, of the mid-point between the frequencies 6106 and 6108. In this example, where the first frequency 6106 is 899 MHZ and second frequency 6108 is 901 MHZ, the mid-point is approximately 900 MHZ. Suitable aliasing rates thus include 1.8 GHZ, 900 MHZ, 450 MHZ, etc.

Step 4624 includes transferring energy from the FM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert it to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON\text{-}FM)}$. In FIG. 61D, an affected FSK signal 6118 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the FSK signal 816 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected FSK signal 6118 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 61B and 61C.

FIG. 61E illustrates a PSK signal 6112, which is generated by the modulation conversion process. PSK signal 6112 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The PSK signal 6112 includes portions 6110A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 6107 in FIG. 61C. The PSK signal 6112 also includes portions 6110B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 6109. Portions 6110A represent energy transferred from the FSK 816 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. The portions 6110A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 6109. Portions 6110B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 6110B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 6107.

In FIG. 61F, a PSK signal 6114 represents a filtered version of the PSK signal 6112, on a compressed time scale. The present invention can output the unfiltered demodulated baseband signal 6112, the filtered demodulated baseband signal 6114, a partially filtered demodulated baseband signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention. The PSK signals 6112 and 6114 can be demodulated with a conventional demodulation technique(s).

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and polarity, as desired.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate modulation conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the PSK signals 6112 in FIG. 61E and 6114 in FIG. 61F illustrate that the FSK signal 816 was successfully down-converted to a PSK signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

3.2.1.2 Structural Description

The operation of the energy transfer system 1602 is now described for down-converting the FSK signal 816 to a PSK signal, with reference to the flowchart 4619 and to the timing diagrams of FIGS. 61A-E. In step 4620, the energy transfer module 1606 receives the FSK signal 816 (FIG. 61A). In step 4622, the energy transfer module 1606 receives the energy transfer signal 6107 (FIG. 61C). In step 4624, the energy transfer module 1606 transfers energy from the FSK signal 816 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6107 to down-convert the FSK signal 816 to the PSK signal 6112 in FIG. 61E or the PSK signal 6114 in FIG. 61F.

3.2.2. Second Example Embodiment: Down-Converting an FM Signal to an AM Signal

3.2.2.1 Operational Description

A process for down-converting the FSK signal 816 in FIG. 8C to an ASK signal is now described for the flowchart 4619 in FIG. 46D.

The FSK signal 816 is re-illustrated in FIG. 62A for convenience. The FSK signal 816 shifts between a first frequency 6206 and a second frequency 6208. In the exemplary embodiment, the first frequency 6206 is lower than the second frequency 6208. In an alternative embodiment, the first frequency 6206 is higher than the second frequency 6208. For this example, the first frequency 6206 is approximately 899 MHZ and the second frequency 6208 is approximately 901 MHZ.

FIG. 62B illustrates an FSK signal portion 6204 that represents a portion of the FSK signal 816 on an expanded time scale.

The process begins at step 4620, which includes receiving an FM signal. This is represented by the FSK signal 816.

Step 4622 includes receiving an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate F_{AR}. FIG. 62C illustrates an example energy transfer signal 6207 on approximately the same time scale as FIG. 62B. The energy transfer signal 6207 includes a train of energy transfer pulses 6209 having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses 6209 repeat at the aliasing rate F_{AR}, which is determined or selected as described above. Generally, when down-converting an FM signal to a non-FM signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic of a frequency within the FM signal.

In this example, where an FSK signal is being down-converted to an ASK signal, the aliasing rate is substantially equal to a harmonic or, more typically, a sub-harmonic, of either the first frequency 6206 or the second frequency 6208. In this example, where the first frequency 6206 is 899 MHZ and the second frequency 6208 is 901 MHZ, the aliasing rate can be substantially equal to a harmonic or sub-harmonic of 899 MHZ or 901 MHZ.

Step 4624 includes transferring energy from the FM signal at the aliasing rate to down-convert it to the non-FM signal $F_{(NON\text{-}FM)}$. In FIG. 62D, an affected FSK signal 6218 illustrates effects of transferring energy from the FSK signal 816 at the aliasing rate F_{AR}. The affected FSK signal 6218 is illustrated on substantially the same time scale as FIGS. 62B and 62C.

FIG. 62E illustrates an ASK signal 6212, which is generated by the modulation conversion process. ASK signal 6212 is illustrated with an arbitrary load impedance. Load impedance optimizations are discussed in Section 5 below.

The ASK signal 6212 includes portions 6210A, which correlate with the energy transfer pulses 6209 in FIG. 62C. The ASK signal 6212 also

includes portions 6210B, which are between the energy transfer pulses 6209. Portions 6210A represent energy transferred from the FSK 816 to a storage device, while simultaneously driving an output load. Portions 6210A occur when a switching module is closed by the energy transfer pulses 6207. Portions 6210B represent energy stored in a storage device continuing to drive the load. Portions 6210B occur when the switching module is opened after energy transfer pulses 6207.

In FIG. 62F, an ASK signal 6214 represents a filtered version of the ASK signal 6212, on a compressed time scale. The present invention can output the unfiltered demodulated baseband signal 6212, the filtered demodulated baseband signal 6214, a partially filtered demodulated baseband signal, a stair step output signal, etc. The choice between these embodiments is generally a design choice that depends upon the application of the invention. The ASK signals 6212 and 6214 can be demodulated with a conventional demodulation technique(s).

The aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal is preferably controlled to optimize the down-converted signal for amplitude output and/or polarity, as desired.

The drawings referred to herein illustrate modulation conversion in accordance with the invention. For example, the ASK signals 6212 in FIG. 62E and 6214 in FIG. 62F illustrate that the FSK signal 816 was successfully down-converted to an ASK signal by retaining enough baseband information for sufficient reconstruction.

3.2.2.2 Structural Description

The operation of the energy transfer system 1602 is now described for down-converting the FSK signal 816 to an ASK signal, with reference to the flowchart 4619 and to the timing diagrams of FIGS. 62A-F. In step

4620, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the FSK signal 816 (FIG. 62A). In step 4622, the energy transfer module 6304 receives the energy transfer signal 6207 (FIG. 62C). In step 4624, the energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the FSK signal 818 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6207 to down-convert the FSK signal 816 to the ASK signal 6212 in FIG. 62E or the ASK signal 6214 in FIG. 62F.

3.2.3 Other Example Embodiments

The embodiments described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These embodiments are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate embodiments, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate embodiments fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

Example implementations of the energy transfer module 6302 are disclosed in Sections 4 and 5 below.

3.3 Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the method(s), structure(s), and/or embodiments described above are presented in Sections 4 and 5 below. These implementations are presented for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described therein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

4. Implementation Examples

Exemplary operational and/or structural implementations related to the method(s), structure(s), and/or embodiments described above are presented in this section (and its subsections). These implementations are presented herein for purposes of illustration, and not limitation. The invention is not limited to the particular implementation examples described herein. Alternate implementations (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations, etc., of those described herein) will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

FIG. 63 illustrates an energy transfer system 6302, which is an exemplary embodiment of the generic aliasing system 1302 in FIG. 13. The energy transfer system 6302 includes an energy transfer module 6304, which receives the EM signal 1304 and an energy transfer signal 6306. The energy transfer signal 6306 includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses repeat at an aliasing rate F_{AR}.

The energy transfer module 6304 transfers energy from the EM signal 1304 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6306, as described in the sections above with respect to the flowcharts 4601 in FIG. 46A, 4607 in FIG. 46B, 4613 in FIG. 46C and 4619 in FIG. 46D. The energy transfer module 6304 outputs a down-converted signal 1308B, which includes non-negligible amounts of energy transferred from the EM signal 1304.

FIG. 64A illustrates an exemplary gated transfer system 6402, which is an example of the energy transfer system 6302. The gated transfer system 6402 includes a gated transfer module 6404, which is described below.

FIG. 64B illustrates an exemplary inverted gated transfer system 6406, which is an alternative example of the energy transfer system 6302. The inverted gated transfer system 6406 includes an inverted gated transfer module 6408, which is described below.

4.1 The Energy Transfer System as a Gated Transfer System

FIG. 64A illustrates the exemplary gated transfer system 6402, which is an exemplary implementation of the energy transfer system 6302. The gated transfer system 6402 includes the gated transfer module 6404, which receives the EM signal 1304 and the energy transfer signal 6306. The energy transfer signal 6306 includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses repeat at an aliasing rate F_{AR}.

The gated transfer module 6404 transfers energy from the EM signal 1304 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6306, as described in the sections above with respect to the flowcharts 4601 in FIG. 46A, 4607 in FIG. 46B, 4613 in FIG. 46C and 4619 in FIG. 46D. The gated transfer module 6404 outputs the down-converted signal 1308B, which includes non-negligible amounts of energy transferred from the EM signal 1304.

4.1.1 The Gated Transfer System as a Switch Module and a Storage Module

FIG. 65 illustrates an example embodiment of the gated transfer module 6404 as including a switch module 6502 and a storage module 6506. Preferably, the switch module 6502 and the storage module 6506 transfer energy from the EM signal 1304 to down-convert it in any of the manners shown in the operational flowcharts 4601 in FIG. 46A, 4607 in FIG. 46B, 4613 in FIG. 46C and 4619 in FIG. 46D.

For example, operation of the switch module 6502 and the storage module 6506 is now described for down-converting the EM signal 1304 to an intermediate signal, with reference to the flowchart 4607 and the example timing diagrams in FIG. 83A-F.

In step 4608, the switch module 6502 receives the EM signal 1304 (FIG. 83A). In step 4610, the switch module 6502 receives the energy transfer signal 6306 (FIG. 83C). In step 4612, the switch module 6502 and the storage module 6506 cooperate to transfer energy from the EM signal 1304 and down-convert it to an intermediate signal. More specifically, during step 4612, the switch module 6502 closes during each energy transfer pulse to couple the EM signal 1304 to the storage module 6506. In an embodiment, the switch module 6502 closes on rising edges of the energy transfer pulses. In an alternative embodiment, the switch module 6502 closes on falling edges of the energy transfer pulses. While the EM signal 1304 is coupled to the storage module 6506, non-negligible amounts of energy are transferred from the EM signal 1304 to the storage module 6506. FIG. 83B illustrates the EM signal 1304 after the energy is transferred from it. FIG. 83D illustrates the transferred energy stored in the storage module 6506. The storage module 6506 outputs the transferred energy as the down-converted signal 1308B. The storage module 6506 can output the down-converted signal 1308B as an unfiltered signal such as signal shown in FIG. 83E, or as a filtered down-converted signal (FIG. 83F).

4.1.2 The Gated Transfer System as Break-Before-Make Module

FIG. 67A illustrates an example embodiment of the gated transfer module 6404 as including a break-before-make module 6702 and a storage module 6716. Preferably, the break before make module 6702 and the storage module 6716 transfer energy from the EM signal 1304 to down-

convert it in any of the manners shown in the operational flowcharts 4601 in FIG. 46A, 4607 in FIG. 46B, 4613 in FIG. 46C and 4619 in FIG. 46D.

In FIG. 67A, the break-before-make module 6702 includes a includes a normally open switch 6704 and a normally closed switch 6706. The normally open switch 6704 is controlled by the energy transfer signal 6306. The normally closed switch 6706 is controlled by an isolation signal 6712. In an embodiment, the isolation signal 6712 is generated from the energy transfer signal 6306. Alternatively, the energy transfer signal 6306 is generated from the isolation signal 6712. Alternatively, the isolation signal 6712 is generated independently from the energy transfer signal 6306. The break-before-make module 6702 substantially isolates an input 6708 from an output 6710.

FIG. 67B illustrates an example timing diagram of the energy transfer signal 6306, which controls the normally open switch 6704. FIG. 67C illustrates an example timing diagram of the isolation signal 6712, which controls the normally closed switch 6706. Operation of the break-before-make module 6702 is now described with reference to the example timing diagrams in FIGS. 67B and 67C.

Prior to time t0, the normally open switch 6704 and the normally closed switch 6706 are at their normal states.

At time t0, the isolation signal 6712 in FIG. 67C opens the normally closed switch 6706. Thus, just after time t0, the normally open switch 6704 and the normally closed switch 6706 are open and the input 6708 is isolated from the output 6710.

At time t1, the energy transfer signal 6306 in FIG. 67B closes the normally open switch 6704 for the non-negligible duration of a pulse. This couples the EM signal 1304 to the storage module 6716.

Prior to t2, the energy transfer signal 6306 in FIG. 67B opens the normally open switch 6704. This de-couples the EM signal 1304 from the storage module 6716.

At time t2, the isolation signal 6712 in FIG. 67C closes the normally closed switch 6706. This couples the storage module 6716 to the output 6710.

The storage module 6716, is similar to the storage module 6506 FIG. 65. The break-before-make gated transfer system 6701 down-converts the EM signal 1304 in a manner similar to that described with reference to the gated transfer system 6501 in FIG. 65.

4.1.3 Example Implementations of the Switch Module

The switch module 6502 in FIG. 65 and the switch modules 6704 and 6706 in FIG. 67A can be any type of switch device that preferably has a relatively low impedance when closed and a relatively high impedance when open. The switch modules 6502, 6704 and 6706 can be implemented with normally open or normally closed switches. The switch modules need not be ideal switch modules.

FIG. 66B illustrates the switch modules 6502, 6704 and 6706 as a switch module 6610. Switch module 6610 can be implemented in either normally open or normally closed architecture. The switch module 6610 (e.g., switch modules 6502, 6704 and 6706) can be implemented with any type of suitable switch device, including, but not limited, to mechanical switch devices and electrical switch devices, optical switch devices, etc., and combinations thereof. Such devices include, but are not limited to transistor switch devices, diode switch devices, relay switch devices, optical switch devices, micro-machine switch devices, etc., or combinations thereof.

In an embodiment, the switch module 6610 can be implemented as a transistor, such as, for example, a field effect transistor (FET), a bi-polar transistor, or any other suitable circuit switching device.

In FIG. 66A, the switch module 6610 is illustrated as a FET 6602. The FET 6602 can be any type of FET, including, but not limited to, a MOSFET, a JFET, a GaAsFET, etc.. The FET 6602 includes a gate 6604, a source 6606 and a drain 6608. The gate 6604 receives the energy transfer signal 6306 to control the switching action between the source 6606 and the drain 6608. In an embodiment, the source 6606 and the drain 6608 are interchangeable.

It should be understood that the illustration of the switch module 6610 as a FET 6602 in FIG. 66A is for example purposes only. Any device having switching capabilities could be used to implement the switch module 6610 (i.e., switch modules 6502, 6704 and 6706), as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

In FIG. 66C, the switch module 6610 is illustrated as a diode switch 6612, which operates as a two lead device when the energy transfer signal 6306 is coupled to the output 6613.

In FIG. 66D, the switch module 6610 is illustrated as a diode switch 6614, which operates as a two lead device when the energy transfer signal 6306 is coupled to the output 6615.

4.1.4 Example Implementations of the Storage Module

The storage modules 6506 and 6716 store non-negligible amounts of energy from the EM signal 1304. In an exemplary embodiment, the storage modules 6506 and 6716 are implemented as a reactive storage module 6801 in FIG. 68A, although the invention is not limited to this embodiment. A reactive storage module is a storage module that employs one or more

reactive electrical components to store energy transferred from the EM signal 1304. Reactive electrical components include, but are not limited to, capacitors and inductors.

In an embodiment, the storage modules 6506 and 6716 include one or more capacitive storage elements, illustrated in FIG. 68B as a capacitive storage module 6802. In FIG. 68C, the capacitive storage module 6802 is illustrated as one or more capacitors illustrated generally as capacitor(s) 6804.

The goal of the storage modules 6506 and 6716 is to store non-negligible amounts of energy transferred from the EM signal 1304. Amplitude reproduction of the original, unaffected EM input signal is not necessarily important. In an energy transfer environment, the storage module preferably has the capacity to handle the power being transferred, and to allow it to accept a non-negligible amount of power during a non-negligible aperture period.

A terminal 6806 serves as an output of the capacitive storage module 6802. The capacitive storage module 6802 provides the stored energy at the terminal 6806. FIG. 68F illustrates the capacitive storage module 6802 as including a series capacitor 6812, which can be utilized in an inverted gated transfer system described below.

In an alternative embodiment, the storage modules 6506 and 6716 include one or more inductive storage elements, illustrated in FIG. 68D as an inductive storage module 6808.

In an alternative embodiment, the storage modules 6506 and 6716 include a combination of one or more capacitive storage elements and one or more inductive storage elements, illustrated in FIG. 68E as a capacitive/inductive storage module 6810.

FIG. 68G illustrates an integrated gated transfer system 6818 that can be implemented to down-convert the EM signal 1304 as illustrated in, and

described with reference to, FIGS. 83A-F.

4.1.5 Optional Energy Transfer Signal Module

FIG. 69 illustrates an energy transfer system 6901, which is an example embodiment of the energy transfer system 6302. The energy transfer system 6901 includes an optional energy transfer signal module 6902, which can perform any of a variety of functions or combinations of functions including, but not limited to, generating the energy transfer signal 6306.

In an embodiment, the optional energy transfer signal module 6902 includes an aperture generator, an example of which is illustrated in FIG. 68J as an aperture generator 6820. The aperture generator 6820 generates non-negligible aperture pulses 6826 from an input signal 6824. The input signal 6824 can be any type of periodic signal, including, but not limited to, a sinusoid, a square wave, a saw-tooth wave, etc. Systems for generating the input signal 6824 are described below.

The width or aperture of the pulses 6826 is determined by delay through the branch 6822 of the aperture generator 6820. Generally, as the desired pulse width increases, the difficulty in meeting the requirements of the aperture generator 6820 decrease. In other words, to generate non-negligible aperture pulses for a given EM input frequency, the components utilized in the example aperture generator 6820 do not require as fast reaction times as those that are required in an under-sampling system operating with the same EM input frequency.

The example logic and implementation shown in the aperture generator 6820 are provided for illustrative purposes only, and are not limiting. The actual logic employed can take many forms. The example aperture generator 6820 includes an optional inverter 6828, which is shown for polarity consistency with other examples provided herein.

An example implementation of the aperture generator 6820 is illustrated in FIG. 68K. Additional examples of aperture generation logic are provided in FIGS. 68H and 68I. FIG. 68H illustrates a rising edge pulse generator 6840, which generates pulses 6826 on rising edges of the input signal 6824. FIG. 68I illustrates a falling edge pulse generator 6850, which generates pulses 6826 on falling edges of the input signal 6824.

In an embodiment, the input signal 6824 is generated externally of the energy transfer signal module 6902, as illustrated in FIG. 69. Alternatively, the input signal 6924 is generated internally by the energy transfer signal module 6902. The input signal 6824 can be generated by an oscillator, as illustrated in FIG. 68L by an oscillator 6830. The oscillator 6830 can be internal to the energy transfer signal module 6902 or external to the energy transfer signal module 6902. The oscillator 6830 can be external to the energy transfer system 6901. The output of the oscillator 6830 may be any periodic waveform.

The type of down-conversion performed by the energy transfer system 6901 depends upon the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6306, which is determined by the frequency of the pulses 6826. The frequency of the pulses 6826 is determined by the frequency of the input signal 6824. For example, when the frequency of the input signal 6824 is substantially equal to a harmonic or a sub-harmonic of the EM signal 1304, the EM signal 1304 is directly down-converted to baseband (e.g. when the EM signal is an AM signal or a PM signal), or converted from FM to a non-FM signal. When the frequency of the input signal 6824 is substantially equal to a harmonic or a sub-harmonic of a difference frequency, the EM signal 1304 is down-converted to an intermediate signal.

The optional energy transfer signal module 6902 can be implemented in hardware, software, firmware, or any combination thereof.

4.2 The Energy Transfer System as an Inverted Gated Transfer System

FIG. 64B illustrates an exemplary inverted gated transfer system 6406, which is an exemplary implementation of the energy transfer system 6302. The inverted gated transfer system 6406 includes an inverted gated transfer module 6408, which receives the EM signal 1304 and the energy transfer signal 6306. The energy transfer signal 6306 includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses repeat at an aliasing rate F_{AR}. The inverted gated transfer module 6408 transfers energy from the EM signal 1304 at the aliasing rate of the energy transfer signal 6306, as described in the sections above with respect to the flowcharts 4601 in FIG. 46A, 4607 in FIG. 46B, 4613 in FIG. 46C and 4619 in FIG. 46D. The inverted gated transfer module 6408 outputs the down-converted signal 1308B, which includes non-negligible amounts of energy transferred from the EM signal 1304.

4.2.1 The Inverted Gated Transfer System as a Switch Module and a Storage Module

FIG. 74 illustrates an example embodiment of the inverted gated transfer module 6408 as including a switch module 7404 and a storage module 7406. Preferably, the switch module 7404 and the storage module 7406 transfer energy from the EM signal 1304 to down-convert it in any of the manners shown in the operational flowcharts 4601 in FIG. 46A, 4607 in FIG. 46B, 4613 in FIG. 46C and 4619 in FIG. 46D.

The switch module 7404 can be implemented as described above with reference to FIGS. 66A-D. The storage module 7406 can be implemented as described above with reference to FIGS. 68A-F.

In the illustrated embodiment, the storage module 7206 includes one or more capacitors 7408. The capacitor(s) 7408 are selected to pass higher frequency components of the EM signal 1304 through to a terminal 7410, regardless of the state of the switch module 7404. The capacitor 7408 stores non-negligible amounts of energy from the EM signal 1304. Thereafter, the signal at the terminal 7410 is off-set by an amount related to the energy stored in the capacitor 7408.

Operation of the inverted gated transfer system 7401 is illustrated in FIGS. 75A-F. FIG. 75A illustrates the EM signal 1304. FIG. 75B illustrates the EM signal 1304 after transferring energy from it. FIG. 75C illustrates the energy transfer signal 6306, which includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible apertures.

FIG. 75D illustrates an example down-converted signal 1308B. FIG. 75E illustrates the down-converted signal 1308B on a compressed time scale. Since the storage module 7406 is a series element, the higher frequencies (e.g., RF) of the EM signal 1304 can be seen on the down-converted signal. This can be filtered as illustrated in FIG. 75F.

The inverted gated transfer system 7401 can be used to down-convert any type of EM signal, including modulated carrier signals and unmodulated carrier signals.

4.3 Rail to Rail Operation for Improved Dynamic Range

4.3.1 Introduction

FIG. 110A illustrates aliasing module 11000 that down-converts EM signal 11002 to down-converted signal 11012 using aliasing signal 11014 (sometimes called an energy transfer signal). Aliasing module 11000 is an example of energy transfer module 6304 in FIG. 63. Aliasing module 11000 includes UFT module 11004 and storage module 11008. As shown in FIG. 110A, UFT module 11004 is implemented as a n-channel FET 11006, and

storage module 11008 is implemented as a capacitor 11010, although the invention is not limited to this embodiment.

FET 11006 receives the EM signal 11002 and aliasing signal 11014. In one embodiment, aliasing signal 11014 includes a train of pulses having non-negligible apertures that repeat at an aliasing rate. The aliasing rate may be harmonic or sub-harmonic of the EM signal 11002. FET 11006 samples EM signal 11002 at the aliasing rate of aliasing signal 11014 to generate down-converted signal 11012. In one embodiment, aliasing signal 11014 controls the gate of FET 11006 so that FET 11006 conducts (or turns on) when the FET gate-to-source voltage (V_{GS}) exceeds a threshold voltage (V_T) . When the FET 11006 conducts, a channel is created from source to drain of FET 11006 so that charge is transferred from the EM signal 11002 to the capacitor 11010. More specifically, the FET 11006 conductance (1/R) vs V_{GS} is a continuous function that reaches an acceptable level at V_T, as illustrated in FIG. 110B. The charge stored by capacitor 11010 during successive samples forms down-converted signal 11012.

As stated above, n-channel FET 11006 conducts whenV_{GS} exceeds the threshold voltage V_T. As shown in FIG.110A, the gate voltage of FET 11006 is determined by aliasing signal 11014, and the source voltage is determined by the input EM signal 11002. Aliasing signal 11014 is preferably a plurality of pulses whose amplitude is predictable and set by a system designer. However, the EM signal 11002 is typically received over a communications medium by a coupling device (such as antenna). Therefore, the amplitude of EM signal 11102 may be variable and dependent on a number of factors including the strength of the transmitted signal, and the attenuation of the communications medium. Thus, the source voltage on FET 11006 is not entirely predictable and will affect V_{GS} and the conductance of FET 11006, accordingly.

For example, FIG. 111A illustrates EM signal 11102, which is an

example of EM signal 11002 that appears on the source of FET 11006. EM signal 11102 has a section 11104 with a relatively high amplitude as shown. FIG. 111B illustrates the aliasing signal 11106 as an example of aliasing signal 11014 that controls the gate of FET 11006. FIG. 111C illustrates V_{GS} 11108, which is the difference between the gate and source voltages shown in FIGS. 111B and 111A, respectively. FET 11006 has an inherent threshold voltage V_T 11112 shown in FIG. 111C, above which FET 11006 conducts. It is preferred that $V_{GS} > V_T$ during each pulse of aliasing signal 11106, so that FET 11006 conducts and charge is transferred from the EM signal 11102 to the capacitor 11010 during each pulse of aliasing signal 11106. As shown in FIG. 111C, the high amplitude section 11104 of EM signal 11102 causes a V_{GS} pulse 11110 that does exceed the V_T 11112, and therefore FET 11006 will not fully conduct as is desired. Therefore, the resulting sample of EM signal 11102 may be degraded, which potentially negatively affects the down-converted signal 11012.

As stated earlier, the conductance of FET 11006 vs V_{GS} is mathematically continuous and is not a hard cutoff. In other words, FET 11006 will marginally conduct when controlled by pulse 11110, even though pulse 11110 is below V_T 11112. However, the insertion loss of FET 11006 will be increased when compared with a V_{GS} pulse 11111, which is greater than V_T 11112. The performance reduction caused by a large amplitude input signal is often referred to as clipping or compression. Clipping causes distortion in the down-converted signal 11012, which adversely affects the faithful down-conversion of input EM signal 11102. Dynamic range is a figure of merit associated with the range of input signals that can be faithfully down-converted without introducing distortion in the down-converted signal. The higher the dynamic range of a down-conversion circuit, the larger the input signals that can down-converted without introducing distortion in the down-converted signal.

4.3.2 Complementary UFT Structure for Improved Dynamic Range

FIG. 112 illustrates aliasing module 11200, according to an embodiment of the invention, that down-converts EM signal 11208 to generate down-converted signal 11214 using aliasing signal 11220. Aliasing module 11200 is able to down-convert input signals over a larger amplitude range as compared to aliasing module 11000, and therefore aliasing module 11200 has an improved dynamic range when compared with aliasing module 11000. The dynamic range improvement occurs because aliasing module 11200 includes two UFT modules that are implemented with complementary FET devices. In other words, one FET is n-channel, and the other FET is p-channel, so that at least one FET is always conducting during an aliasing signal pulse, assuming the input signal does not exceed the power supply constraints. Aliasing module 11200 includes: delay 11202; UFT modules 11206, 11216; nodes 11210, 11212; and inverter 11222. Inverter 11222 is tied to voltage supplies V_+ 11232 and V_- 11234. UFT module 11206 comprises n–channel FET 11204, and UFT module 11216 comprises p-channel FET 11218.

As stated, aliasing module 11200 operates two complementary FETs to extend the dynamic range and reduce any distortion effects. This requires that two complementary aliasing signals 11224, 11226 be generated from aliasing signal 11220 to control the sampling by FETs 11218, 11204, respectively. To do so, inverter 11222 receives and inverts aliasing signal 11220 to generate aliasing signal 11224 that controls p-channel FET 11218. Delay 11202 delays aliasing signal 11220 to generate aliasing signal 11226, where the amount of time delay is approximately equivalent to that associated with inverter 11222. As such, aliasing signals 11224 and 11226 are approximately complementary in amplitude.

Node 11210 receives EM signal 11208, and couples EM signals 11227, 11228 to the sources of n-channel FET 11204 and p-channel FET 11218, respectively, where EM signals 11227, 11228 are substantially replicas of EM signal 11208. N–channel FET 11204 samples EM signal 11227 as controlled by aliasing signal 11226, and produces samples 11236 at the drain of FET 11204. Likewise, p-channel FET 11218 samples EM signal 11228 as controlled by aliasing signal 11224, and produces samples 11238 at the drain of FET 11218. Node 11212 combines the resulting charge samples into charge samples 11240, which are stored by capacitor 11230. The charge stored by capacitor 11230 during successive samples forms down-converted signal 11214. Aliasing module 11200 offers improved dynamic range over aliasing module 11000 because n-channel FET 11204 and p-channel FET 11214 are complementary devices. Therefore, if one device is cutoff because of a large input EM signal 11208, the other device will conduct and sample the input signal, as long as the input signal is between the power supply voltages V_+ 11232 and V_- 11234. This is often referred to as rail-to-rail operation as will be understood by those skilled in the arts.

For example, FIG. 113A illustrates EM signal 11302 which is an example of EM signals 11227, 11228 that are coupled to the sources of n-channel FET 11204 and p-channel FET 11218, respectively. As shown, EM signal 11302 has a section 11304 with a relatively high amplitude including pulses 11303, 11305. FIG. 113B illustrates the aliasing signal 11306 as an example of aliasing signal 11226 that controls the gate of n-channel FET 11204. Likewise for the p-channel FET, FIG. 113D illustrates the aliasing signal 11314 as an example of aliasing signal 11224 that controls the gate of p-channel FET 11218. Aliasing signal 11314 is the amplitude complement of aliasing signal 11306.

FIG. 113C illustrates V_{GS} 11308, which is the difference between the gate and source voltages on n–channel FET 11204 that are depicted in FIGS. 113B and 113A, respectively. FIG. 113C also illustrates the inherent threshold voltage V_T 11309 for FET 11204, above which FET 11204 conducts. Likewise for the p-channel FET, FIG. 113E illustrates V_{GS} 11316, which is the difference between the gate and source voltages for p-channel FET 11218 that are depicted in FIGS. 113D and 113A, respectively. FIG. 113E also illustrates the inherent threshold voltage V_T 11317 for FET 11218, below which FET 11218 conducts.

As stated, n-channel FET 11204 conducts when V_{GS} 11308 exceeds V_T 11309, and p-channel FET 11218 conducts when V_{GS} 11316 drops below V_T 11317. As illustrated by FIG. 113C, n–channel FET 11204 conducts over the range of EM signal 11302 depicted in FIG. 113A, except for the EM signal pulse 11305 that results in a corresponding V_{GS} pulse 11310 (FIG. 113C) that does not exceed V_T 11309. However, p-channel FET 11218 does conduct because the same EM signal pulse 11305 causes a V_{GS} pulse 11320 (FIG. 113E) that drops well below that of V_T 11317 for the p-channel FET. Therefore, the sample of the EM signal 11302 is properly taken by p-channel FET 11218, and no distortion is introduced in down-converted signal 11214. Similarly, EM signal pulse 11303 results inV_{GS} pulse 11322 (FIG. 113E) that is inadequate for the p-channel FET 11218 to fully conduct. However, n-channel FET 11204 does fully conduct because the same EM signal pulse 11303 results in a V_{GS} 11311 (FIG. 113C) that greatly exceeds V_T 11309.

As illustrated above, aliasing module 11200 offers an improvement in dynamic range over aliasing module 11000 because of the complimentary FET structure. Any input signal that is within the power supply voltages V_+ 11232 and V_- 11234 will cause either FET 11204 or FET 11218 to conduct, or cause both FETs to conduct, as is demonstrated by FIGS. 113A-113E.

This occurs because any input signal that produces a V_{GS} that cuts-off the n-channel FET 11204 will push the p- channel FET 11218 into conduction. Likewise, any input signal that cuts-off the p-channel FET 11218 will push the n-channel FET 11204 into conduction, and therefore prevent any distortion of the down-converted output signal.

4.3.3 Biased Configurations

FIG. 114 illustrates aliasing module 11400, which is an alternate embodiment of aliasing module 11200. Aliasing module 11400 includes positive voltage supply (V_+) 11402, resistors 11404, 11406, and the elements in aliasing module 11200. V_+ 11402 and resistors 11404,11406 produce a positive DC voltage at node 11405. This allows node 11405 to drive a coupled circuit that requires a positive voltage supply, and enables unipolar supply operation of aliasing module 11400. The positive supply voltage also has the effect of raising the DC level of the input EM signal 11208. As such, any input signal that is within the power supply voltages V_+ 11402 and ground will cause either FET 11204 or FET 11218 to conduct, or cause both FETs to conduct, as will be understood by those skilled in the arts based on the discussion herein.

FIG. 115 illustrates aliasing module 11500, which is an alternate biased configuration of aliasing module 11200. Aliasing module 11500 includes positive voltage supply 11502, negative voltage supply 11508, resistors 11504, 11506, and the elements in aliasing module 11200. The use of both a positive and negative voltage supply allows for node 11505 to be biased anywhere between V_+ 11502 and V_11508 . This allows node 11505 to drive a coupled circuit that requires either a positive or negative supply voltage. Furthermore, any input signal that is within the power supply voltages V_+ 11502 and V_- 11508 will cause either FET 11204 or FET 11218

to conduct, or cause both FETs to conduct, as will be understood by those skilled in the arts based on the discussion herein.

4.3.4 Simulation Examples

As stated, an aliasing module with a complementary FET structure offers improved dynamic range when compared with a single (or unipolar) FET configuration. This is further illustrated by comparing the signal waveforms associated aliasing module 11602 (of FIG. 116) which has a complementary FET structure, with that of aliasing module 11702 (of FIG.117) which has a single (or unipolar) FET structure.

Aliasing module 11602 (FIG. 116) down-converts EM signal 11608 using aliasing signal 11612 to generate down-converted signal 11610. Aliasing module 11602 has a complementary FET structure and includes n-channel FET 11604, p-channel FET 11606, inverter 11614, and aliasing signal generator 11608. Aliasing module 11602 is biased by supply circuit 11616 as is shown. Aliasing module 11702 (FIG. 117) down-converts EM signal 11704 using aliasing signal 11708 to generate down-converted signal 11706. Aliasing module 11702 is a single FET structure comprising n-channel FET 11712 and aliasing signal generator 11714, and is biased using voltage supply circuit 11710.

FIGS. 118-120 are signal waveforms that correspond to aliasing module 11602, and FIGS. 121-123 are signal waveforms that correspond to aliasing module 11702. FIGS. 118, 121 are down-converted signals 11610, 11706, respectively. FIGS. 119, 122 are the sampled EM signal 11608, 11704, respectively. FIGS. 120, 123 are the aliasing signals 11612, 11708, respectively. Aliasing signal 11612 is identical to aliasing signal 11708 in order that a proper comparison between modules 11602 and 11702 can be made.

EM signals 11608, 11704 are relatively large input signals that approach the power supply voltages of ± 1.65 volts, as is shown in FIGS. 119, 122, respectively. In FIG. 119, sections 11902 and 11904 of signal 11608 depict energy transfer from EM signal 11608 to down-converted signal 11610 during by aliasing module 11602. More specifically, section 11902 depicts energy transfer near the -1.65v supply, and section 11904 depicts energy transfer near the +1.65v supply. The symmetrical quality of the energy transfer near the voltage supply rails indicates that at least one of complementary FETs 11604, 11606 are appropriately sampling the EM signal during each of the aliasing pulses 11612. This results in a down-converted signal 11610 that has minimal high frequency noise, and is centered between -1.0v and 1.0v (i.e. has negligible DC voltage component).

Similarly in FIG. 122, sections 12202 and 12204 illustrate the energy transfer from EM signal 11704 to down-converted signal 11706 by aliasing module 11702 (single FET configuration). More specifically, section 12202 depicts energy transfer near the -1.65v supply, and section 12204 depicts energy transfer near the +1.65v supply. By comparing sections 12202, 12204 with sections 11902, 11904 of FIG. 119, it is clear that the energy transfer in sections 12202, 12204 is not as symmetrical near the power supply rails as that of sections 11902, 11904. This is evidence that the EM signal 11704 is partially pinching off single FET 11712 over part of the signal 11704 trace. This results in a down-converted signal 11706 that has more high frequency noise when compared to down-converted signal 11610, and has a substantial negative DC voltage component.

In summary, down-converted signal 11706 reflects distortion introduced by a relatively large EM signal that is pinching-off the single FET 11712 in aliasing module 11702. Down-converted signal 11610 that is produced by aliasing module 11602 is relatively distortion free. This occurs

because the complementary FET configuration in aliasing module 11602 is able to handle input signals with large amplitudes without introducing distortion in the down-converted signal 11610. Therefore, the complementary FET configuration in the aliasing module 11602 offers improved dynamic range when compared with the single FET configuration of the aliasing module 11702.

4.4 Optimized Switch Structures

4.4.1 Splitter in CMOS

FIG. 124A illustrates an embodiment of a splitter circuit 12400 implemented in CMOS. This embodiment is provided for illustrative purposes, and is not limiting. In an embodiment, splitter circuit 12400 is used to split a local oscillator (LO) signal into two oscillating signals that are approximately 90° out of phase. The first oscillating signal is called the I-channel oscillating signal. The second oscillating signal is called the Q-channel oscillating signal. The Q-channel oscillating signal lags the phase of the I-channel oscillating signal by approximately 90°. Splitter circuit 12400 includes a first I-channel inverter 12402, a second I-channel inverter 12404, a third I-channel inverter 12406, a first Q-channel inverter 12408, a second Q-channel inverter 12410, an I-channel flip-flop 12412, and a Q-channel flip-flop 12414.

FIGS. 124F-J are example waveforms used to illustrate signal relationships of splitter circuit 12400. The waveforms shown in FIGS. 124F-J reflect ideal delay times through splitter circuit 12400 components. LO signal 12416 is shown in FIG. 124F. First, second, and third I-channel inverters 12402, 12404, and 12406 invert LO signal 12416 three times, outputting inverted LO signal 12418, as shown in FIG. 124G. First and second Q-channel inverters 12408 and 12410 invert LO signal 12416 twice, outputting non-inverted LO signal 12420, as shown in FIG. 124H. The

delay through first, second, and third I-channel inverters 12402, 12404, and 12406 is substantially equal to that through first and second Q-channel inverters 12408 and 12410, so that inverted LO signal 12418 and non-inverted LO signal 12420 are approximately 180° out of phase. The operating characteristics of the inverters may be tailored to achieve the proper delay amounts, as would be understood by persons skilled in the relevant art(s).

I-channel flip-flop 12412 inputs inverted LO signal 12418. Q-channel flip-flop 12414 inputs non-inverted LO signal 12420. In the current embodiment, I-channel flip-flop 12412 and Q-channel flip-flop 12414 are edge-triggered flip-flops. When either flip-flop receives a rising edge on its input, the flip-flop output changes state. Hence, I-channel flip-flop 12412 and Q-channel flip-flop 12414 each output signals that are approximately half of the input signal frequency. Additionally, as would be recognized by persons skilled in the relevant art(s), because the inputs to I-channel flip-flop 12412 and Q-channel flip-flop 12414 are approximately 180° out of phase, their resulting outputs are signals that are approximately 90° out of phase. I-channel flip-flop 12412 outputs I- channel oscillating signal 12422, as shown in FIG. 124I. Q-channel flip-flop 12414 outputs Q-channel oscillating signal 12424, as shown in FIG. 124J. Q-channel oscillating signal 12424 lags the phase of I-channel oscillating signal 12422 by 90°, also as shown in a comparison of FIGS. 124I and 124J.

FIG. 124B illustrates a more detailed circuit embodiment of the splitter circuit 12400 of FIG. 124. The circuit blocks of FIG. 124B that are similar to those of FIG. 124A are indicated by corresponding reference numbers. FIGS. 124C-D show example output waveforms relating to the splitter circuit 12400 of FIG. 124B. FIG. 124C shows I-channel oscillating signal 12422. FIG. 124D shows Q-channel oscillating signal 12424. As is indicated by a comparison of FIGS. 124C and 124D, the waveform of Q-

channel oscillating signal 12424 of FIG. 124D lags the waveform of I-channel oscillating signal 12422 of FIG. 124C by approximately 90°.

It should be understood that the illustration of the splitter circuit 12400 in FIGS. 124A and 124B is for example purposes only. Splitter circuit 12400 may be comprised of an assortment of logic and semiconductor devices of a variety of types, as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

4.4.2 I/Q Circuit

FIG. 124E illustrates an example embodiment of a complete I/Q circuit 12426 in CMOS. I/Q circuit 12426 includes a splitter circuit 12400 as described in detail above. Further description regarding I/Q circuit implementations are provided herein, including the applications referenced above.

4.5 Example I and Q Implementations

4.5.1 Switches of Different Sizes

In an embodiment, the switch modules discussed herein can be implemented as a series of switches operating in parallel as a single switch. The series of switches can be transistors, such as, for example, field effect transistors (FET), bi-polar transistors, or any other suitable circuit switching devices. The series of switches can be comprised of one type of switching device, or a combination of different switching devices.

For example, FIG. 125 illustrates a switch module 12500. In FIG. 125, the switch module is illustrated as a series of FETs 12502a-n. The FETs 12502a-n can be any type of FET, including, but not limited to, a MOSFET, a JFET, a GaAsFET, etc. Each of FETs 12502a-n includes a gate 12504a-n, a source 12506a-n, and a drain 12508a-n, similarly to that of FET 2802 of FIG. 28A. The series of FETs 12502a-n operate in parallel. Gates 12504a-n are coupled together, sources 12506a-n are coupled

together, and drains 12508a-n are coupled together. Each of gates 12504a-n receives the control signal 1604, 8210 to control the switching action between corresponding sources 12506a-n and drains 12508a-n. Generally, the corresponding sources 12506a-n and drains 12508a-n of each of FETs 12502a-n are interchangeable. There is no numerical limit to the number of FETs. Any limitation would depend on the particular application, and the "a-n" designation is not meant to suggest a limit in any way.

In an embodiment, FETs 12502a-n have similar characteristics. In another embodiment, one or more of FETs 12502a-n have different characteristics than the other FETs. For example, FETs 12502a-n may be of different sizes. In CMOS, generally, the larger size a switch is (meaning the larger the area under the gate between the source and drain regions), the longer it takes for the switch to turn on. The longer turn on time is due in part to a higher gate to channel capacitance that exists in larger switches. Smaller CMOS switches turn on in less time, but have a higher channel resistance. Larger CMOS switches have lower channel resistance relative to smaller CMOS switches. Different turn on characteristics for different size switches provides flexibility in designing an overall switch module structure. By combining smaller switches with larger switches, the channel conductance of the overall switch structure can be tailored to satisfy given requirements.

In an embodiment, FETs 12502a-n are CMOS switches of different relative sizes. For example, FET 12502a may be a switch with a smaller size relative to FETs 12502b-n. FET 12502b may be a switch with a larger size relative to FET 12502a, but smaller size relative to FETs 12502c-n. The sizes of FETs 12502c-n also may be varied relative to each other. For instance, progressively larger switch sizes may be used. By varying the sizes of FETs 12502a-n relative to each other, the turn on characteristic curve of the switch module can be correspondingly varied. For instance, the

turn on characteristic of the switch module can be tailored such that it more closely approaches that of an ideal switch. Alternately, the switch module could be tailored to produce a shaped conductive curve.

By configuring FETs 12502a-n such that one or more of them are of a relatively smaller size, their faster turn on characteristic can improve the overall switch module turn on characteristic curve. Because smaller switches have a lower gate to channel capacitance, they can turn on more rapidly than larger switches.

By configuring FETs 12502a-n such that one or more of them are of a relatively larger size, their lower channel resistance also can improve the overall switch module turn on characteristics. Because larger switches have a lower channel resistance, they can provide the overall switch structure with a lower channel resistance, even when combined with smaller switches. This improves the overall switch structure's ability to drive a wider range of loads. Accordingly, the ability to tailor switch sizes relative to each other in the overall switch structure allows for overall switch structure operation to more nearly approach ideal, or to achieve application specific requirements, or to balance trade-offs to achieve specific goals, as will be understood by persons skilled in the relevant arts(s) from the teachings herein.

It should be understood that the illustration of the switch module as a series of FETs 12502a-n in FIG. 125 is for example purposes only. Any device having switching capabilities could be used to implement the switch module (e.g., switch modules 2802, 2702, 2404 and 2406), as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

4.5.2 Reducing Overall Switch Area

Circuit performance also can be improved by reducing overall switch

area. As discussed above, smaller switches (i.e., smaller area under the gate between the source and drain regions) have a lower gate to channel capacitance relative to larger switches. The lower gate to channel capacitance allows for lower circuit sensitivity to noise spikes. FIG. 126A illustrates an embodiment of a switch module, with a large overall switch area. The switch module of FIG. 126A includes twenty FETs 12602-12640. As shown, FETs 12602-12640 are the same size ("Wd" and "lng" parameters are equal). Input source 12646 produces the input EM signal. Pulse generator 12648 produces the energy transfer signal for FETs 12602-12640. Capacitor C1 is the storage element for the input signal being sampled by FETs 12602-12640. FIGS. 126B-126Q illustrate example waveforms related to the switch module of FIG. 126A. FIG. 126B shows a received 1.01 GHz EM signal to be sampled and downconverted to a 10 MHZ intermediate frequency signal. FIG. 126C shows an energy transfer signal having an aliasing rate of 200 MHZ, which is applied to the gate of each of the twenty FETs 12602-12640. The energy transfer signal includes a train of energy transfer pulses having non-negligible apertures that tend away from zero time in duration. The energy transfer pulses repeat at the aliasing rate. FIG. 126D illustrates the affected received EM signal, showing effects of transferring energy at the aliasing rate, at point 12642 of FIG. 126A. FIG. 126E illustrates a down-converted signal at point 12644 of FIG. 126A, which is generated by the down-conversion process.

FIG. 126F illustrates the frequency spectrum of the received 1.01 GHz EM signal. FIG. 126G illustrates the frequency spectrum of the received energy transfer signal. FIG. 126H illustrates the frequency spectrum of the affected received EM signal at point 12642 of FIG. 126A. FIG. 126I illustrates the frequency spectrum of the down-converted signal at point 12644 of FIG. 126A.

FIGS. 126J-126M respectively further illustrate the frequency spectrums of the received 1.01 GHz EM signal, the received energy transfer signal, the affected received EM signal at point 12642 of FIG. 126A, and the down-converted signal at point 12644 of FIG. 126A, focusing on a narrower frequency range centered on 1.00 GHz. As shown in FIG. 126L, a noise spike exists at approximately 1.0 GHz on the affected received EM signal at point 12642 of FIG. 126A. This noise spike may be radiated by the circuit, causing interference at 1.0 GHz to nearby receivers.

FIGS. 126N-126Q respectively illustrate the frequency spectrums of the received 1.01 GHz EM signal, the received energy transfer signal, the affected received EM signal at point 12642 of FIG. 126A, and the down-converted signal at point 12644 of FIG. 126A, focusing on a narrow frequency range centered near 10.0 MHZ. In particular, FIG. 126Q shows that an approximately 5 mV signal was downconverted at approximately 10 MHZ.

FIG 127A illustrates an alternative embodiment of the switch module, this time with fourteen FETs 12702-12728 shown, rather than twenty FETs 12602-12640 as shown in FIG. 126A. Additionally, the FETs are of various sizes (some "Wd" and "lng" parameters are different between FETs).

FIGS. 127B-127Q, which are example waveforms related to the switch module of FIG. 127A, correspond to the similarly designated figures of FIGS. 126B-126Q. As FIG. 127L shows, a lower level noise spike exists at 1.0 GHz than at the same frequency of FIG. 126L. This correlates to lower levels of circuit radiation. Additionally, as FIG. 127Q shows, the lower level noise spike at 1.0 GHz was achieved with no loss in conversion efficiency. This is represented in FIG. 127Q by the approximately 5 mV signal downconverted at approximately 10 MHZ. This voltage is substantially equal to the level downconverted by the circuit of FIG. 126A.

In effect, by decreasing the number of switches, which decreases overall switch area, and by reducing switch area on a switch-by-switch basis, circuit parasitic capacitance can be reduced, as would be understood by persons skilled in the relevant art(s) from the teachings herein. In particular this may reduce overall gate to channel capacitance, leading to lower amplitude noise spikes and reduced unwanted circuit radiation.

It should be understood that the illustration of the switches above as FETs in FIGSs. 126A-126Q and 127A-127Q is for example purposes only. Any device having switching capabilities could be used to implement the switch module, as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

4.5.3 Charge Injection Cancellation

In embodiments wherein the switch modules discussed herein are comprised of a series of switches in parallel, in some instances it may be desirable to minimize the effects of charge injection. Minimizing charge injection is generally desirable in order to reduce the unwanted circuit radiation resulting therefrom. In an embodiment, unwanted charge injection effects can be reduced through the use of complementary n-channel MOSFETs and p-channel MOSFETs. N-channel MOSFETs and p-channel MOSFETs both suffer from charge injection. However, because signals of opposite polarity are applied to their respective gates to turn the switches on and off, the resulting charge injection is of opposite polarity. Resultingly, n-channel MOSFETs and p-channel MOSFETs may be paired to cancel their corresponding charge injection. Hence, in an embodiment, the switch module may be comprised of n-channel MOSFETs and p-channel MOSFETS, wherein the members of each are sized to minimize the undesired effects of charge injection.

FIG 129A illustrates an alternative embodiment of the switch module, this time with fourteen n-channel FETs 12902-12928 and twelve p-channel FETs 12930-12952 shown, rather than twenty FETs 12602-12640 as shown in FIG. 126A. The n-channel and p-channel FETs are arranged in a complementary configuration. Additionally, the FETs are of various sizes (some "Wd" and "lng" parameters are different between FETs).

FIGS. 129B-129Q, which are example waveforms related to the switch module of FIG. 129A, correspond to the similarly designated figures of FIGS. 126B-126Q. As FIG. 129L shows, a lower level noise spike exists at 1.0 GHz than at the same frequency of FIG. 126L. This correlates to lower levels of circuit radiation. Additionally, as FIG. 129Q shows, the lower level noise spike at 1.0 GHz was achieved with no loss in conversion efficiency. This is represented in FIG. 129Q by the approximately 5 mV signal downconverted at approximately 10 MHZ. This voltage is substantially equal to the level downconverted by the circuit of FIG. 126A. In effect, by arranging the switches in a complementary configuration, which assists in reducing charge injection, and by tailoring switch area on a switch-by-switch basis, the effects of charge injection can be reduced, as would be understood by persons skilled in the relevant art(s) from the teachings herein. In particular this leads to lower amplitude noise spikes and reduced unwanted circuit radiation.

It should be understood that the use of FETs in FIGSs. 129A-129Q in the above description is for example purposes only. From the teachings herein, it would be apparent to persons of skill in the relevant art(s) to manage charge injection in various transistor technologies using transistor pairs.

4.5.4 Overlapped Capacitance

The processes involved in fabricating semiconductor circuits, such as MOSFETs, have limitations. In some instances, these process limitations may lead to circuits that do not function as ideally as desired. For instance, a non-ideally fabricated MOSFET may suffer from parasitic capacitances, which in some cases may cause the surrounding circuit to radiate noise. By fabricating circuits with structure layouts as close to ideal as possible, problems of non-ideal circuit operation can be minimized.

FIG. 128A illustrates a cross-section of an example n-channel enhancement-mode MOSFET 12800, with ideally shaped n+ regions. MOSFET 12800 includes a gate 12802, a channel region 12804, a source contact 12806, a source region 12808, a drain contact 12810, a drain region 12812, and an insulator 12814. Source region 12808 and drain region 12812 are separated by p-type material of channel region 12804. Source region 12808 and drain region 12812 are shown to be n+ material. The n+ material is typically implanted in the p-type material of channel region 12804 by an ion implantation/diffusion process. Ion implantation/diffusion processes are well known by persons skilled in the relevant art(s). Insulator 12814 insulates gate 12802 which bridges over the p-type material. Insulator 12814 generally comprises a metal-oxide insulator. The channel current between source region 12808 and drain region 12812 for MOSFET 12800 is controlled by a voltage at gate 12802.

Operation of MOSFET 12800 shall now be described. When a positive voltage is applied to gate 12802, electrons in the p-type material of channel region 12804 are attracted to the surface below insulator 12814, forming a connecting near-surface region of n-type material between the source and the drain, called a channel. The larger or more positive the

voltage between the gate contact 12806 and source region 12808, the lower the resistance across the region between.

In FIG. 128A, source region 12808 and drain region 12812 are illustrated as having n+ regions that were formed into idealized rectangular regions by the ion implantation process. FIG. 128B illustrates a cross-section of an example n-channel enhancement-mode MOSFET 12816 with non-ideally shaped n+ regions. Source region 12820 and drain region 12822 are illustrated as being formed into irregularly shaped regions by the ion implantation process. Due to uncertainties in the ion implantation/diffusion process, in practical applications, source region 12820 and drain region 12822 do not form rectangular regions as shown in FIG. 128A. FIG. 128B shows source region 12820 and drain region 12822 forming exemplary irregular regions. Due to these process uncertainties, the n+ regions of source region 12820 and drain region 12822 also may diffuse further than desired into the p-type region of channel region 12818, extending underneath gate 12802 The extension of the source region 12820 and drain region 12822 underneath gate 12802 is shown as source overlap 12824 and drain overlap 12826. Source overlap 12824 and drain overlap 12826 are further illustrated in FIG. 128C. FIG. 128C illustrates a top-level view of an example layout configuration for MOSFET 12816. Source overlap 12824 and drain overlap 12826 may lead to unwanted parasitic capacitances between source region 12820 and gate 12802, and between drain region 12822 and gate 12802. These unwanted parasitic capacitances may interfere with circuit function. For instance, the resulting parasitic capacitances may produce noise spikes that are radiated by the circuit, causing unwanted electromagnetic interference.

As shown in FIG. 128C, an example MOSFET 12816 may include a gate pad 12828. Gate 12802 may include a gate extension 12830, and a gate pad extension 12832. Gate extension 12830 is an unused portion of gate

12802 required due to metal implantation process tolerance limitations. Gate pad extension 12832 is a portion of gate 12802 used to couple gate 12802 to gate pad 12828. The contact required for gate pad 12828 requires gate pad extension 12832 to be of non-zero length to separate the resulting contact from the area between source region 12820 and drain region 12822. This prevents gate 12802 from shorting to the channel between source region 12820 and drain region 12822 (insulator 12814 of FIG. 128B is very thin in this region). Unwanted parasitic capacitances may form between gate extension 12830 and the substrate (FET 12816 is fabricated on a substrate), and between gate pad extension 12832 and the substrate. By reducing the respective areas of gate extension 12830 and gate pad extension 12832, the parasitic capacitances resulting therefrom can be reduced. Accordingly, embodiments address the issues of uncertainty in the ion implantation/diffusion process. it will be obvious to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) how to decrease the areas of gate extension 12830 and gate pad extension 12832 in order to reduce the resulting parasitic capacitances.

It should be understood that the illustration of the n-channel enhancement-mode MOSFET is for example purposes only. The present invention is applicable to depletion mode MOSFETs, and other transistor types, as will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the discussion contained herein.

4.6 Other Implementations

The implementations described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These implementations are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate implementations, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations

fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

5. Optional Optimizations of Energy Transfer at an Aliasing Rate

The methods and systems described in sections above can be optimized with one or more of the optimization methods or systems described below.

5.1 Doubling the Aliasing Rate (FAR) of the Energy Transfer Signal

In an embodiment, the optional energy transfer signal module 6902 in FIG. 69 includes a pulse generator module that generates aliasing pulses at twice the frequency of the oscillating source. The input signal 6828 may be any suitable oscillating source.

FIG. 71A illustrates a circuit 7102 that generates a doubler output signal 7104 (FIG. 71C) that may be used as an energy transfer signal 6306. The circuit 7102 generates pulses on both rising and falling edges of the input oscillating signal 7106 of FIG. 71B. The circuit 7102 can be implemented as a pulse generator and aliasing rate (F_{AR}) doubler. The doubler output signal 7104 can be used as the energy transfer signal 6306.

In the example of FIG. 71A, the aliasing rate is twice the frequency of the input oscillating signal F_{osc} 7106, as shown by EQ. (9) below.

$$F_{AR} = 2 \bullet F_{osc} \qquad \text{EQ. (9)}$$

The aperture width of the aliasing pulses is determined by the delay through a first inverter 7108 of FIG. 71A. As the delay is increased, the aperture is increased. A second inverter 7112 is shown to maintain polarity consistency with examples described elsewhere. In an alternate embodiment inverter 7112 is omitted. Preferably, the pulses have non-negligible aperture widths that tend away from zero time. The doubler output signal 7104 may be further conditioned as appropriate to drive the switch module with non-negligible aperture pulses. The circuit 7102 may be implemented with integrated circuitry, discretely, with equivalent logic circuitry, or with any valid fabrication technology.

5.2 Differential Implementations

The invention can be implemented in a variety of differential configurations. Differential configurations are useful for reducing common mode noise. This can be very useful in receiver systems where common mode interference can be caused by intentional or unintentional radiators such as cellular phones, CB radios, electrical appliances etc.. Differential configurations are also useful in reducing any common mode noise due to charge injection of the switch in the switch module or due to the design and layout of the system in which the invention is used. Any spurious signal that is induced in equal magnitude and equal phase in both input leads of the invention will be substantially reduced or eliminated. Some differential configurations, including some of the configurations below, are also useful for increasing the voltage and/or for increasing the power of the down-converted signal 1308B.

Differential systems are most effective when used with a differential front end (inputs) and a differential back end (outputs). They can also be utilized in the following configurations, for example:

a) A single-input front end and a differential back end; and

b) A differential front end and a single-output back end.

Examples of these system are provided below, with a first example illustrating a specific method by which energy is transferred from the input to the output differentially..

While an example of a differential energy transfer module is shown below, the example is shown for the purpose of illustration, not limitation. Alternate embodiments (including equivalents, extensions, variations, deviations etc.) of the embodiment described herein will be apparent to those skilled in the relevant art based on the teachings contained herein. The invention is intended and adapted to include such alternate embodiments.

5.2.1 An Example Illustrating Energy Transfer Differentially

FIG.76A illustrates a differential system 7602 that can be included in the energy transfer module 6304. The differential system 7602 includes an inverted gated transfer design similar to that described with reference to FIG. 74. The differential system 7602 includes inputs 7604 and 7606 and outputs 7608 and 7610. The differential system 7602 includes a first inverted gated transfer module 7612, which includes a storage module 7614 and a switch module 7616. The differential system 7602 also includes a second inverted gated transfer module 7618, which includes a storage module 7620 and a switch module 7616, which it shares in common with inverted gated transfer module 7612.

One or both of the inputs 7604 and 7606 are coupled to an EM signal source. For example, the inputs can be coupled to an EM signal source, wherein the input voltages at the inputs 7604 and 7606 are substantially equal in amplitude but 180 degrees out of phase with one another. Alternatively, where dual inputs are unavailable, one of the inputs 7604 and 7606 can be coupled to ground.

In operation, when the switch module 7616 is closed, the storage modules 7614 and 7620 are in series and, provided they have similar capacitive values, accumulate charge of equal magnitude but opposite polarities. When the switch module 7616 is open, the voltage at the output 7608 is relative to the input 7604, and the voltage at the output 7610 is relative to the voltage at the input 7606.

Portions of the signals at the outputs 7608 and 7610 include signals resulting from energy stored in the storage modules 7614 and 7620, respectively, when the switch module 7616 was closed. The portions of the signals at the outputs 7608 and 7610 resulting from the stored charge are generally equal in amplitude to one another but 180 degrees out of phase.

Portions of the signals at the outputs 7608 and 7610 also include ripple voltage or noise resulting from the switching action of the switch module 7616. But because the switch module is positioned between the two outputs 7608 and 7610, the noise introduced by the switch module appears at the outputs as substantially equal and in-phase with one another. As a result, the ripple voltage can be substantially canceled out by inverting the signal at one of the outputs 7608 or 7610 and adding it to the other remaining output. Additionally, any noise that is impressed with equal amplitude and equal phase onto the input terminals 7604 and 7606 by any other noise sources will tend to be canceled in the same way.

5.2.1.1 Differential Input-to-Differential Output

FIG. 76B illustrates the differential system 7602 wherein the inputs 7604 and 7606 are coupled to equal and opposite EM signal sources, illustrated here as dipole antennas 7624 and 7626. In this embodiment, when one of the outputs 7608 or 7610 is inverted and added to the other output, the common mode noise due to the switching module 7616 and other common mode noise present at the input terminals 7604 and 7606 tend to substantially cancel out.

5.2.1.2 Single Input-to-Differential Output

FIG. 76C illustrates the differential system 7602 wherein the input 7604 is coupled to an EM signal source such as a monopole antenna 7628 and the input 7606 is coupled to ground. In this configuration, the voltages at the outputs 7608 and 7610 are approximately one half the value of the voltages at the outputs in the implementation illustrated in FIG. 76B, given all other parameters are equal.

FIG. 76E illustrates an example single input to differential output receiver/down-converter system 7636. The system 7636 includes the differential system 7602 wherein the input 7606 is coupled to ground as in FIG. 76C. The input 7604 is coupled to an EM signal source 7638 through an optional input impedance match 7642. The EM signal source impedance can be matched with an impedance match system 7642 as described in section 5 below.

The outputs 7608 and 7610 are coupled to a differential circuit 7644 such as a filter, which preferably inverts one of the outputs 7608 or 7610 and adds it to the other output 7608 or 7610. This substantially cancels common mode noise generated by the switch module 7616. The differential

circuit 7644 preferably filters the higher frequency components of the EM signal 1304 that pass through the storage modules 7614 and 7620. The resultant filtered signal is output as the down-converted signal 1308B.

5.2.1.3 Differential Input-to-Single Output

FIG. 76D illustrates the differential input to single output system 7629 wherein the inputs 7604 and 7606 of the differential system 7602 are coupled to equal and opposite EM signal dipole antennas 7630 and 7632. In system 7629, the common mode noise voltages are not canceled as in systems shown above. The output is coupled from terminal 7608 to a load 7648.

5.2.2 Specific Alternative Embodiments

In specific alternative embodiments, the present invention is implemented using a plurality of gated transfer modules controlled by a common energy transfer signal with a storage module coupled between the outputs of the plurality of gated transfer modules. For example, FIG. 99 illustrates a differential system 9902 that includes first and second gated transfer modules 9904 and 9906, and a storage module 9908 coupled between. Operation of the differential system 9902 will be apparent to one skilled in the relevant art(s), based on the description herein.

As with the first implementation described above in section 5.5.1 and its sub-sections, the gated transfer differential system 9902 can be implemented with a single input, differential inputs, a single output, differential outputs, and combinations thereof. For example, FIG. 100 illustrates an example single input-to-differential output system 10002.

Where common-mode rejection is desired to protect the input from various common-mode effects, and where common mode rejection to

protect the output is not necessary, a differential input-to-single output implementation can be utilized. FIG. 102 illustrates an example differential-to-single ended system 10202, where a balance/unbalance (balun) circuit 10204 is utilized to generate the differential input. Other input configurations are contemplated. A first output 10206 is coupled to a load 10208. A second output 10210 is coupled to ground point 10212.

Typically, in a balanced-to-unbalanced system, where a single output is taken from a differential system without the use of a balun, (i.e., where one of the output signals is grounded), a loss of about 6 db is observed. In the configuration of FIG. 102, however, the ground point 10212 simply serves as a DC voltage reference for the circuit. The system 10202 transfers charge from the input in the same manner as if it were full differential, with its conversion efficiency generally affected only by the parasitics of the circuit components used, such as the Rds(on) on FET switches if used in the switch module. In other words, the charge transfer still continues in the same manner of a single ended implementation, providing the necessary single-ended ground to the input circuitry when the aperture is active, yet configured to allow the input to be differential for specific common-mode rejection capability and/or interface between a differential input and a single ended output system.

5.2.3 Specific Examples of Optimizations and Configurations for Inverted and Non-Inverted Differential Designs

Gated transfer systems and inverted gated transfer systems can be implemented with any of the various optimizations and configurations disclosed through the specification, such as, for example, impedance matching, tanks and resonant structures, bypass networks, etc. For example, the differential system 10002 in FIG. 100 , which utilizes gated transfer modules with an input impedance matching system 10004 and a tank circuit 10006, which share a common capacitor. Similarly, differential system 10102 in FIG. 101 , utilizes an inverted gated transfer module with an input impedance matching system 10104 and a tank circuit 10106, which share a common capacitor.

5.3 Smoothing the Down-Converted Signal

The down-converted signal 1308B may be smoothed by filtering as desired. The differential circuit 7644 implemented as a filter in FIG 76E illustrates but one example. This may be accomplished in any of the described embodiments by hardware, firmware and software implementation as is well known by those skilled in the arts.

5.4 Impedance Matching

The energy transfer module has input and output impedances generally defined by (1) the duty cycle of the switch module, and (2) the impedance of the storage module, at the frequencies of interest (e.g. at the EM input, and intermediate/baseband frequencies).

Starting with an aperture width of approximately ½ the period of the EM signal being down-converted as a preferred embodiment, this aperture width (e.g. the "closed time") can be decreased. As the aperture width is decreased, the characteristic impedance at the input and the output of the energy transfer module increases. Alternatively, as the aperture width

increases from ½ the period of the EM signal being down-converted, the impedance of the energy transfer module decreases.

One of the steps in determining the characteristic input impedance of the energy transfer module could be to measure its value. In an embodiment, the energy transfer module's characteristic input impedance is 300 ohms. An impedance matching circuit can be utilized to efficiently couple an input EM signal that has a source impedance of, for example, 50 ohms, with the energy transfer module's impedance of, for example, 300 ohms. Matching these impedances can be accomplished in various manners, including providing the necessary impedance directly or the use of an impedance match circuit as described below.

Referring to FIG. 70, a specific embodiment using an RF signal as an input, assuming that the impedance 7012 is a relatively low impedance of approximately 50 Ohms, for example, and the input impedance 7016 is approximately 300 Ohms, an initial configuration for the input impedance match module 7006 can include an inductor 7306 and a capacitor 7308, configured as shown in FIG. 73. The configuration of the inductor 7306 and the capacitor 7308 is a possible configuration when going from a low impedance to a high impedance. Inductor 7306 and the capacitor 7308 constitute an L match, the calculation of the values which is well known to those skilled in the relevant arts.

The output characteristic impedance can be impedance matched to take into consideration the desired output frequencies. One of the steps in determining the characteristic output impedance of the energy transfer module could be to measure its value. Balancing the very low impedance of the storage module at the input EM frequency, the storage module should have an impedance at the desired output frequencies that is preferably greater than or equal to the load that is intended to be driven (for example, in an embodiment, storage module impedance at a desired 1MHz output

frequency is 2K ohm and the desired load to be driven is 50 ohms). An additional benefit of impedance matching is that filtering of unwanted signals can also be accomplished with the same components.

In an embodiment, the energy transfer module's characteristic output impedance is 2K ohms. An impedance matching circuit can be utilized to efficiently couple the down-converted signal with an output impedance of, for example, 2K ohms, to a load of, for example, 50 ohms. Matching these impedances can be accomplished in various manners, including providing the necessary load impedance directly or the use of an impedance match circuit as described below.

When matching from a high impedance to a low impedance, a capacitor 7314 and an inductor 7316 can be configured as shown in FIG. 73. The capacitor 7314 and the inductor 7316 constitute an L match, the calculation of the component values being well known to those skilled in the relevant arts.

The configuration of the input impedance match module 7006 and the output impedance match module 7008 are considered to be initial starting points for impedance matching, in accordance with the present invention. In some situations, the initial designs may be suitable without further optimization. In other situations, the initial designs can be optimized in accordance with other various design criteria and considerations.

As other optional optimizing structures and/or components are utilized, their affect on the characteristic impedance of the energy transfer module should be taken into account in the match along with their own original criteria.

5.5 Tanks and Resonant Structures

Resonant tank and other resonant structures can be used to further optimize the energy transfer characteristics of the invention. For example, resonant structures, resonant about the input frequency, can be used to store energy from the input signal when the switch is open, a period during which one may conclude that the architecture would otherwise be limited in its maximum possible efficiency. Resonant tank and other resonant structures can include, but are not limited to, surface acoustic wave (SAW) filters, dielectric resonators, diplexers, capacitors, inductors, etc.

An example embodiment is shown in FIG. 94A. Two additional embodiments are shown in FIG. 88 and FIG. 97. Alternate implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention. These implementations take advantage of properties of series and parallel (tank) resonant circuits.

FIG. 94A illustrates parallel tank circuits in a differential implementation. A first parallel resonant or tank circuit consists of a capacitor 9438 and an inductor 9420 (tank1). A second tank circuit consists of a capacitor 9434 and an inductor 9436 (tank2).

As is apparent to one skilled in the relevant art(s), parallel tank circuits provide:

low impedance to frequencies below resonance;
low impedance to frequencies above resonance; and
high impedance to frequencies at and near resonance.

In the illustrated example of FIG. 94A, the first and second tank circuits resonate at approximately 920Mhz. At and near resonance, the impedance of these circuits is relatively high. Therefore, in the circuit

configuration shown in FIG 94A, both tank circuits appear as relatively high impedance to the input frequency of 950Mhz, while simultaneously appearing as relatively low impedance to frequencies in the desired output range of 50Mhz.

An energy transfer signal 9442 controls a switch 9414. When the energy transfer signal 9442 controls the switch 9414 to open and close, high frequency signal components are not allowed to pass through tank1 or tank2. However, the lower signal components (50Mhz in this embodiment) generated by the system are allowed to pass through tank1 and tank2 with little attenuation. The effect of tank1 and tank2 is to further separate the input and output signals from the same node thereby producing a more stable input and output impedance. Capacitors 9418 and 9440 act to store the 50Mhz output signal energy between energy transfer pulses.

Further energy transfer optimization is provided by placing an inductor 9410 in series with a storage capacitor 9412 as shown. In the illustrated example, the series resonant frequency of this circuit arrangement is approximately 1 GHz. This circuit increases the energy transfer characteristic of the system. The ratio of the impedance of inductor 9410 and the impedance of the storage capacitor 9412 is preferably kept relatively small so that the majority of the energy available will be transferred to storage capacitor 9412 during operation. Exemplary output signals A and B are illustrated in FIGS. 94B and 94C, respectively.

In FIG. 94A, circuit components 9404 and 9406 form an input impedance match. Circuit components 9432 and 9430 form an output impedance match into a 50 ohm resistor 9428. Circuit components 9422 and 9424 form a second output impedance match into a 50 ohm resistor 9426. Capacitors 9408 and 9412 act as storage capacitors for the embodiment. Voltage source 9446 and resistor 9402 generate a 950Mhz signal with a 50ohm output impedance, which are used as the input to the

circuit. Circuit element 9416 includes a 150Mhz oscillator and a pulse generator, which are used to generate the energy transfer signal 9442.

FIG. 88 illustrates a shunt tank circuit 8810 in a single-ended to-single-ended system 8812. Similarly, FIG. 97 illustrates a shunt tank circuit 9710 in a system 9712. The tank circuits 8810 and 9710 lower driving source impedance, which improves transient response. The tank circuits 8810 and 9710 are able store the energy from the input signal and provide a low driving source impedance to transfer that energy throughout the aperture of the closed switch. The transient nature of the switch aperture can be viewed as having a response that, in addition to including the input frequency, has large component frequencies above the input frequency, (i.e. higher frequencies than the input frequency are also able to effectively pass through the aperture). Resonant circuits or structures, for example resonant tanks 8810 or 9710, can take advantage of this by being able to transfer energy throughout the switch's transient frequency response (i.e. the capacitor in the resonant tank appears as a low driving source impedance during the transient period of the aperture).

The example tank and resonant structures described above are for illustrative purposes and are not limiting. Alternate configurations can be utilized. The various resonant tanks and structures discussed can be combined or utilized independently as is now apparent.

5.6 Charge and Power Transfer Concepts

Concepts of charge transfer are now described with reference to FIGS. 109A-F. FIG. 109A illustrates a circuit 10902, including a switch S and a capacitor 10906 having a capacitance C. The switch S is controlled by a control signal 10908, which includes pulses 19010 having apertures T.

In FIG. 109B, Equation 10 illustrates that the charge q on a capacitor having a capacitance C, such as the capacitor 10906, is proportional to the voltage V across the capacitor, where:

q = Charge in Coulombs
C = Capacitance in Farads
V = Voltage in Volts
A = Input Signal Amplitude

Where the voltage V is represented by Equation 11, Equation 10 can be rewritten as Equation 12. The change in charge Δq over time t is illustrated as in Equation 13 as $\Delta q(t)$, which can be rewritten as Equation 14. Using the sum-to-product trigonometric identity of Equation 15, Equation 14 can be rewritten as Equation 16, which can be rewritten as equation 17.

Note that the sin term in Equation 11 is a function of the aperture T only. Thus, $\Delta q(t)$ is at a maximum when T is equal to an odd multiple of π (i.e., π, 3π, 5π, . . .). Therefore, the capacitor 10906 experiences the greatest change in charge when the aperture T has a value of π or a time interval representative of 180 degrees of the input sinusoid. Conversely, when T is equal to 2π, 4π, 6π, . . ., minimal charge is transferred.

Equations 18, 19, and 20 solve for q(t) by integrating Equation 10, allowing the charge on the capacitor 10906 with respect to time to be graphed on the same axis as the input sinusoid sin(t), as illustrated in the

graph of FIG. 109C. As the aperture T decreases in value or tends toward an impulse, the phase between the charge on the capacitor C or q(t) and sin(t) tend toward zero. This is illustrated in the graph of FIG. 109D, which indicates that the maximum impulse charge transfer occurs near the input voltage maxima. As this graph indicates, considerably less charge is transferred as the value of T decreases.

Power/charge relationships are illustrated in Equations 21-26 of FIG. 109E, where it is shown that power is proportional to charge, and transferred charge is inversely proportional to insertion loss.

Concepts of insertion loss are illustrated in FIG. 109F. Generally, the noise figure of a lossy passive device is numerically equal to the device insertion loss. Alternatively, the noise figure for any device cannot be less that its insertion loss. Insertion loss can be expressed by Equation 27 or 28.

From the above discussion, it is observed that as the aperture T increases, more charge is transferred from the input to the capacitor 10906, which increases power transfer from the input to the output. It has been observed that it is not necessary to accurately reproduce the input voltage at the output because relative modulated amplitude and phase information is retained in the transferred power.

5.7 Optimizing and Adjusting the Non-Negligible Aperture Width/Duration

5.7.1 Varying Input and Output Impedances

In an embodiment of the invention, the energy transfer signal 6306 of FIG.63 is used to vary the input impedance seen by the EM Signal 1304 and to vary the output impedance driving a load. An example of this embodiment is described below using the gated transfer module 6404 shown in FIG. 68G, and in FIG. 82A. The method described below is not limited to the gated transfer module 6404, as it can be applied to all of the embodiments of energy transfer module 6304.

In FIG. 82A, when switch 8206 is closed, the impedance looking into circuit 8202 is substantially the impedance of storage module illustrated as the storage capacitance 8208, in parallel with the impedance of the load 8212. When the switch 8206 is open, the impedance at point 8214 approaches infinity. It follows that the average impedance at point 8214 can be varied from the impedance of the storage module illustrated as the storage capacitance 8208, in parallel with the load 8212, to the highest

obtainable impedance when switch 8206 is open, by varying the ratio of the time that switch 8206 is open to the time switch 8206 is closed. Since the switch 8206 is controlled by the energy transfer signal 8210, the impedance at point 8214 can be varied by controlling the aperture width of the energy transfer signal, in conjunction with the aliasing rate.

An example method of altering the energy transfer signal 6306 of FIG. 63 is now described with reference to FIG. 71A, where the circuit 7102 receives the input oscillating signal 7106 and outputs a pulse train shown as doubler output signal 7104. The circuit 7102 can be used to generate the energy transfer signal 6306. Example waveforms of 7104 are shown on FIG. 71C.

It can be shown that by varying the delay of the signal propagated by the inverter 7108, the width of the pulses in the doubler output signal 7104 can be varied. Increasing the delay of the signal propagated by inverter 7108, increases the width of the pulses. The signal propagated by inverter 7108 can be delayed by introducing a R/C low pass network in the output of inverter 7108. Other means of altering the delay of the signal propagated by inverter 7108 will be well known to those skilled in the art.

5.7.2 Real Time Aperture Control

In an embodiment, the aperture width/duration is adjusted in real time. For example, referring to the timing diagrams in FIGS. 98B-F, a clock signal 9814 (FIG. 98B) is utilized to generate an energy transfer signal9816 (FIG. 98F), which includes energy transfer pluses 9818, having variable apertures 9820. In an embodiment, the clock signal 9814 is inverted as illustrated by inverted clock signal 9822 (FIG. 98D). The clock signal 9814 is also delayed, as illustrated by delayed clock signal 9824 (FIG. 98E). The inverted clock signal 9814 and the delayed clock signal 9824 are

then ANDed together, generating an energy transfer signal 9816, which is active - energy transfer pulses 9818 - when the delayed clock signal 9824 and the inverted clock signal 9822 are both active. The amount of delay imparted to the delayed clock signal 9824 substantially determines the width or duration of the apertures 9820. By varying the delay in real time, the apertures are adjusted in real time.

In an alternative implementation, the inverted clock signal 9822 is delayed relative to the original clock signal 9814, and then ANDed with the original clock signal 9814. Alternatively, the original clock signal 9814 is delayed then inverted, and the result ANDed with the original clock signal 9814.

FIG. 98A illustrates an exemplary real time aperture control system 9802 that can be utilized to adjust apertures in real time. The example real time aperture control system 9802 includes an RC circuit 9804, which includes a voltage variable capacitor 9812 and a resistor 9826. The real time aperture control system 9802 also includes an inverter 9806 and an AND gate 9808. The AND gate 9808 optionally includes an enable input 9810 for enabling/disabling the AND gate 9808. The RC circuit 9804. The real time aperture control system 9802 optionally includes an amplifier 9828.

Operation of the real time aperture control circuit is described with reference to the timing diagrams of FIGS. 98B-F. The real time control system 9802 receives the input clock signal 9814, which is provided to both the inverter 9806 and to the RC circuit 9804. The inverter 9806 outputs the inverted clock signal 9822 and presents it to the AND gate 9808. The RC circuit 9804 delays the clock signal 9814 and outputs the delayed clock signal 9824. The delay is determined primarily by the capacitance of the voltage variable capacitor 9812. Generally, as the capacitance decreases, the delay decreases.

The delayed clock signal 9824 is optionally amplified by the optional amplifier 9828, before being presented to the AND gate 9808. Amplification is desired, for example, where the RC constant of the RC circuit 9804 attenuates the signal below the threshold of the AND gate 9808.

The AND gate 9808 ANDs the delayed clock signal 9824, the inverted clock signal 9822, and the optional Enable signal 9810, to generate the energy transfer signal 9816. The apertures 9820 are adjusted in real time by varying the voltage to the voltage variable capacitor 9812.

In an embodiment, the apertures 9820 are controlled to optimize power transfer. For example, in an embodiment, the apertures 9820 are controlled to maximize power transfer. Alternatively, the apertures 9820 are controlled for variable gain control (e.g. automatic gain control - AGC). In this embodiment, power transfer is reduced by reducing the apertures 9820.

As can now be readily seen from this disclosure, many of the aperture circuits presented, and others, can be modified in the manner described above (e.g. circuits in FIGS. 68 H-K). Modification or selection of the aperture can be done at the design level to remain a fixed value in the circuit, or in an alternative embodiment, may be dynamically adjusted to compensate for, or address, various design goals such as receiving RF signals with enhanced efficiency that are in distinctively different bands of operation, e.g. RF signals at 900MHz and 1.8GHz.

5.8 Adding a Bypass Network

In an embodiment of the invention, a bypass network is added to improve the efficiency of the energy transfer module. Such a bypass network can be viewed as a means of synthetic aperture widening. Components for a bypass network are selected so that the bypass network appears substantially lower impedance to transients of the switch module

(i.e., frequencies greater than the received EM signal) and appears as a moderate to high impedance to the input EM signal (e.g., greater that 100 Ohms at the RF frequency).

The time that the input signal is now connected to the opposite side of the switch module is lengthened due to the shaping caused by this network, which in simple realizations may be a capacitor or series resonant inductor-capacitor. A network that is series resonant above the input frequency would be a typical implementation. This shaping improves the conversion efficiency of an input signal that would otherwise, if one considered the aperture of the energy transfer signal only, be relatively low in frequency to be optimal.

For example, referring to FIG. 95 a bypass network 9502 (shown in this instance as capacitor 9512), is shown bypassing switch module 9504. In this embodiment the bypass network increases the efficiency of the energy transfer module when, for example, less than optimal aperture widths were chosen for a given input frequency on the energy transfer signal 9506. The bypass network 9502 could be of different configurations than shown in FIG 95. Such an alternate is illustrated in FIG.90. Similarly, FIG. 96 illustrates another example bypass network 9602, including a capacitor 9604.

The following discussion will demonstrate the effects of a minimized aperture and the benefit provided by a bypassing network. Beginning with an initial circuit having a 550ps aperture in FIG. 103, its output is seen to be 2.8mVpp applied to a 50 ohm load in FIG. 107A. Changing the aperture to 270ps as shown in FIG. 104 results in a diminished output of 2.5Vpp applied to a 50 ohm load as shown in FIG. 107B. To compensate for this loss, a bypass network may be added, a specific implementation is provided in FIG. 105. The result of this addition is that 3.2Vpp can now be applied to the 50 ohm load as shown in FIG. 108A. The circuit with the bypass

network in FIG. 105 also had three values adjusted in the surrounding circuit to compensate for the impedance changes introduced by the bypass network and narrowed aperture. FIG. 106 verifies that those changes added to the circuit, but without the bypass network, did not themselves bring about the increased efficiency demonstrated by the embodiment in FIG. 105 with the bypass network. FIG. 108B shows the result of using the circuit in FIG. 106 in which only 1.88Vpp was able to be applied to a 50 ohm load.

5.9 Modifying the Energy Transfer Signal Utilizing Feedback

FIG. 69 shows an embodiment of a system 6901 which uses down-converted Signal 1308B as feedback 6906 to control various characteristics of the energy transfer module 6304 to modify the down-converted signal 1308B.

Generally, the amplitude of the down-converted signal 1308B varies as a function of the frequency and phase differences between the EM signal 1304 and the energy transfer signal 6306. In an embodiment, the down-converted signal 1308B is used as the feedback 6906 to control the frequency and phase relationship between the EM signal 1304 and the energy transfer signal 6306. This can be accomplished using the example logic in FIG 85A. The example circuit in FIG. 85A can be included in the energy transfer signal module 6902. Alternate implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention. In this embodiment a state-machine is used as an example.

In the example of FIG. 85A, a state machine 8504 reads an analog to digital converter, A/D 8502, and controls a digital to analog converter, DAC 8506. In an embodiment, the state machine 8504 includes 2 memory locations, *Previous* and *Current,* to store and recall the results of reading

A/D 8502. In an embodiment, the state machine 8504 utilizes at least one memory flag.

The DAC 8506 controls an input to a voltage controlled oscillator, VCO 8508. VCO 8508 controls a frequency input of a pulse generator 8510, which, in an embodiment, is substantially similar to the pulse generator shown in FIG. 68J. The pulse generator 8510 generates energy transfer signal 6306.

In an embodiment, the state machine 8504 operates in accordance with a state machine flowchart 8519 in FIG. 85B. The result of this operation is to modify the frequency and phase relationship between the energy transfer signal 6306 and the EM signal 1304, to substantially maintain the amplitude of the down-converted signal 1308B at an optimum level.

The amplitude of the down-converted signal 1308B can be made to vary with the amplitude of the energy transfer signal 6306. In an embodiment where the switch module 6502 is a FET as shown in FIG 66A, wherein the gate 6604 receives the energy transfer signal 6306, the amplitude of the energy transfer signal 6306 can determine the "on" resistance of the FET, which affects the amplitude of the down-converted signal 1308B. The energy transfer signal module 6902, as shown in FIG. 85C, can be an analog circuit that enables an automatic gain control function. Alternate implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s) based on the teachings contained herein. Alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

5.10 Other Implementations

The implementations described above are provided for purposes of illustration. These implementations are not intended to limit the invention. Alternate implementations, differing slightly or substantially from those described herein, will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant art(s)

based on the teachings contained herein. Such alternate implementations fall within the scope and spirit of the present invention.

6. Example Energy Transfer Downconverters

Example implementations are described below for illustrative purposes. The invention is not limited to these examples.

FIG. 86 is a schematic diagram of an exemplary circuit to down convert a 915 MHz signal to a 5 MHz signal using a 101.1 MHz clock.

FIG. 87 shows example simulation waveforms for the circuit of figure 86. Waveform 8602 is the input to the circuit showing the distortions caused by the switch closure. Waveform 8604 is the unfiltered output at the storage unit. Waveform 8606 is the impedance matched output of the downconverter on a different time scale.

FIG. 88 is a schematic diagram of an exemplary circuit to downconvert a 915 MHz signal to a 5 MHz signal using a 101.1 MHz clock. The circuit has additional tank circuitry to improve conversion efficiency.

FIG. 89 shows example simulation waveforms for the circuit of figure 88. Waveform 8802 is the input to the circuit showing the distortions caused by the switch closure. Waveform 8804 is the unfiltered output at the storage unit. Waveform 8806 is the output of the downconverter after the impedance match circuit.

FIG. 90 is a schematic diagram of an exemplary circuit to downconvert a 915 MHz signal to a 5 MHz signal using a 101.1 MHz clock. The circuit has switch bypass circuitry to improve conversion efficiency.

FIG. 91 shows example simulation waveforms for the circuit of figure 90. Waveform 9002 is the input to the circuit showing the distortions caused by the switch closure. Waveform 9004 is the unfiltered output at the

storage unit. Waveform 9006 is the output of the downconverter after the impedance match circuit.

FIG. 92 shows a schematic of the example circuit in FIG. 86 connected to an FSK source that alternates between 913 and 917 MHz, at a baud rate of 500 Kbaud. FIG. 93 shows the original FSK waveform 9202 and the downconverted waveform9204 at the output of the load impedance match circuit.

IV. Mathematical Description of the Present Invention

As described and illustrated in the preceding sections and sub-sections, embodiments of the present invention down-convert an electromagnetic signal by repeatedly transferring energy from portions of the electromagnetic signal. This section describes the operation of the present invention mathematically using matched filter theory, sampling theory, and frequency domain techniques. The concepts and principles of these theories are used to describe the present invention's waveform processing and would be known to persons skilled in the relevant arts.

As will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant arts based on the teachings contained herein, the description of the present invention contained herein is a unique and specific application of matched filter theory, sampling theory, and frequency domain techniques. It is not taught or suggested in the present literature. Therefore, a new transform has been developed, based on matched filter theory, sampling theory, and frequency domain techniques, to describe the present invention. This new transform is referred to as the UFT transform, and it is described in Section 8, below.

It is noted that the following describes embodiments of the invention, and it is provided for illustrative purposes. The invention is not limited to the descriptions and embodiments described below. It is also noted that characterizations such as "optimal," "sub-optimal," "maximum,"

"minimum," "ideal," "non-ideal," and the like, contained herein, denote relative relationships.

1. Overview of the Invention

Embodiments of the present invention down-convert an electromagnetic signal by repeatedly performing a matched filtering or correlating operation on a received carrier signal. Embodiments of the invention operate on or near approximate half cycles (e.g., ½, 1½, 2½, etc.) of the received signal. The results of each matched filtering/correlating process are accumulated, for example using a capacitive storage device, and used to form a down-converted version of the electromagnetic signal. In accordance with embodiments of the invention, the matched filtering/correlating process can be performed at a sub-harmonic or fundamental rate.

Operating on an electromagnetic signal with a matched filtering/correlating process or processor produces enhanced (and in some cases the best possible) signal-to-noise ration (SNR) for the processed waveform. A matched filtering/correlating process also preserves the energy of the electromagnetic signal and transfers it through the processor.

Since it is not always practical to design a matched filtering/correlating processor with passive networks, the sub-sections that follow also describe how to implement the present invention using a finite time integrating operation and an RC processing operation. These embodiments of the present invention are very practical and can be implemented using existing technologies, for example but not limited to CMOS technology.

1.1 High Level Description of a Matched Filtering/Correlating Characterization/Embodiment of the Invention

In order to understand how embodiments of the present invention operate, it is useful to keep in mind the fact that such embodiments do not operate by trying to emulate an ideal impulse sampler. Rather, the present invention operates by accumulating the energy of a carrier signal and using the accumulated energy to produce the same or substantially the same result that would be obtained by an ideal impulse sampler, if such a device could be built. Stated more simply, embodiments of the present invention recursively determine a voltage or current value for approximate half cycles (e.g., ½, 1½, 2½, etc.) of a carrier signal, typically at a sub-harmonic rate, and use the determined voltage or current values to form a down-converted version of an electromagnetic signal. The quality of the down-converted electromagnetic signal is a function of how efficiently the various embodiments of the present invention are able to accumulate the energy of the approximate half cycles of the carrier signal.

Ideally, some embodiments of the present invention accumulate all of the available energy contained in each approximate half cycle of the carrier signal operated upon. This embodiment is generally referred to herein as a matched filtering/correlating process or processor. As described in detail below, a matched filtering/correlating processor is able to transfer substantially all of the energy contained in a half cycle of the carrier signal through the processor for use in determining, for example, a peak or an average voltage value of the carrier signal. This embodiment of the present invention produces enhanced (and in some cases the best possible) signal-to-noise ration (SNR), as described in the sub-sections below.

FIG. 148 illustrates an example method 14800 for down-converting an electromagnetic signal using a matched filtering/correlating operation. Method 14800 starts at step 14810.

In step 14810, a matched filtering/correlating operation is performed on a portion of a carrier signal. For example, a match filtering/correlating operation can be performed on a 900 MHz RF signal, which typically comprises a 900 MHz sinusoid having noise signals and information signals superimposed on it. Many different types of signals can be operated upon in step 14810, however, and the invention is not limited to operating on a 900 MHz RF signal. In embodiments, Method 14800 operates on approximate half cycles of the carrier signal.

In an embodiment of the invention, step 14810 comprises the step of convolving an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal with a representation of itself in order to efficiently acquire the energy of the approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. As described elsewhere herein, other embodiments use other means for efficiently acquiring the energy of the approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. The matched filtering/correlating operation can be performed on any approximate half cycle of the carrier signal (although the invention is not limited to this), as described in detail in the sub-sections below.

In step 14820, the result of the matched filtering/correlating operation in step 14810 is accumulated, preferably in an energy storage device. In an embodiment of the present invention, a capacitive storage devise is used to store a portion of the energy of an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal.

Steps 14810 and 14820 are repeated for additional half cycles of the carrier signal. In an embodiment of the present invention, steps 14810 and 14820 are normally performed at a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal, for example at a third sub-harmonic rate. In another embodiment, steps 14810 and 14820 are repeated at an off-set of a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal.

In step 14830, a down-converted signal is output. In embodiments, the results of steps 14810 and 14820 are passed on to a reconstruction filter or an interpolation fiter.

FIG. 149 illustrates an example gated matched filtering/correlating system 14900, which can be used to implement method 14800. Ideally, in an embodiment, an impulse response of matched filtering/correlating system 14900 is identical to the modulated carrier signal, $S_i(t)$, to be processed. As can be seen in FIG. 149, system 14900 comprises a multiplying module 14902, a switching module 14904, and an integrating module 14906.

System 14900 can be thought of as a convolution processor. System 14900 multiplies the modulated carrier signal, $S_i(t)$, by a representation of itself, $S_i(t-\tau)$, using multiplication model 14902. The output of multiplication module 14902 is then gated by switching module 14904 to integrating module 14906. As can be seen in FIG. 149, switching module 14904 is controlled by a windowing function, $u(t) - u(t-T_A)$. The length of the windowing function aperture is T_A, which is in an embodiment equal to an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. Switching module 14904 in an embodiment ensures that approximate half cycles of the carrier signal are normally operated upon at a sub-harmonic rate. In an embodiment shown in FIG. 72, preprocessing is used to select a portion of the carrier signal to be operated upon in accordance with the present invention. In an embodiment of system 14900, the received carrier signal is operated on at an off-set of a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal. Integration module 14906 integrates the gated output of multiplication module 14902 and passes on its result, $S_0(t)$. This embodiment of the present invention is described in more detail in subsequent sub-sections.

As will be apparent to persons skilled in the relevant arts given the discussion herein, the present invention is not a traditional realization of a matched filter/correlator.

1.2 High Level Description of a Finite Time Integrating Characterization/Embodiment of the Invention

As described herein, in some embodiments, a matched filter/correlator embodiment according to the present invention provides maximum energy transfer and maximum SNR. A matched filter/correlator embodiment, however, might not always provide an optimum solution for all applications. For example, a matched filter/correlator embodiment might be too expensive or too complicated to implement for some applications. In such instances, other embodiments according to the present invention may provide acceptable results at a substantially lower cost, using less complex circuitry. The invention is directed to those embodiments as well.

As described herein in subsequent sub-sections, a gated matched filter/correlator processor can be approximated by a processor whose impulse response is a step function having a duration substantially equal to the time interval defined for the waveform, typically a half cycle of the electromagnetic signal, and an integrator. Such an approximation of a gated matched filter/correlator is generally referred to as a finite time integrator. A finite time integrator in accordance with an embodiment of the present invention can be implemented with, for example, a switching device controlled by a train of pulses having apertures substantially equal to the time interval defined for the waveform. The energy transfer and SNR of a finite time integrator implemented in accordance with an embodiment of the present invention is nearly that of a gated matched filter/correlator, but without having to tailor the matched filter/correlator for a particular type of electromagnetic signal. As described in sub-section 6, a finite time integrator embodiment according to the present invention can provide a

SNR result that differs from the result of matched filter/correlator embodiment by only 0.91dB.

FIG. 150 illustrates an example method 15000 for down-converting an electromagnetic signal using a matched filtering/correlating operation. Method 15000 starts at step 15010.

In step 15010, a matched filtering/correlating operation is performed on a portion of a carrier signal. For example, a match filtering/correlating operation can be performed on a 900 MHz RF signal, which typically comprises a 900 MHz sinusoid having noise signals and information signals superimposed on it. Many different types of signals can be operated upon in step 15010, however, and the invention is not limited to operating on a 900 MHz RF signal. In embodiments, Method 15000 operates on approximate half cycles of the carrier signal.

In an embodiment of the invention, step 15010 comprises the step of convolving an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal with a representation of itself in order to efficiently acquire the energy of the approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. As described elsewhere herein, other embodiments use other means for efficiently acquiring the energy of the approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. The matched filtering/correlating operation can be performed on any approximate half cycle of the carrier signal (although the invention is not limited to this), as described in detail in the sub-sections below.

In step 15020, the result of the matched filtering/correlating operation in step 15010 is accumulated, preferably in an energy storage device. In an embodiment of the present invention, a capacitive storage devise is used to store a portion of the energy of an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal.

Steps 15010 and 15020 are repeated for additional half cycles of the carrier signal. In one embodiment of the present invention, steps 15010 and

15020 are performed at a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal. In another embodiment, steps 15010 and 15020 are repeated at an off-set of a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal.

In step 15030, a down-converted signal is output. In embodiments, the results of steps 15010 and 15020 are passed on to a reconstruction filter or an interpolation fiter.

FIG. 151 illustrates an example finite time integrating system 15100, which can be used to implement method 15000. Finite time integrating system 15100 has an impulse response that is approximately rectangular, as further described in sub-section 4. As can be seen in FIG. 151, system 15100 comprises a switching module 15102 and an integrating module 15104.

Switching module 15102 is controlled by a windowing function, $u(t) - u(t-T_A)$. The length of the windowing function aperture is T_A, which is equal to an approximate half cycle of the received carrier signal, $S_i(t)$. Switching module 15102 ensures that approximate half cycles of the carrier signal can be operated upon at a sub-harmonic rate. In an embodiment of system 15100, the received carrier signal is operated on at an off-set of a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal.

Integration module 15104 integrates the output of switching module 15102 and passes on its result, $S_0(t)$. This embodiment of the present invention is described in more detail in sub-section 4 below.

1.3 High Level Description of an RC Processing Characterization/Embodiment of the Invention

The prior sub-section describes how a gated matched filter/correlator can be approximated with a finite time integrator. This sub-section describes how the integrator portion of the finite time integrator can be

approximated with a resistor/capacitor (RC) processor. This embodiment of the present invention is generally referred to herein as an RC processor, and it can be very inexpensive to implement. Additionally, the RC processor embodiment according to the present invention can be implemented using only passive circuit devices, and it can be implemented, for example, using existing CMOS technology. This RC processor embodiment, shown in FIG. 153, utilizes a very low cost integrator or capacitor as a memory across the aperture or switching module. If the capacitor is suitably chosen for this embodiment, the performance of the RC processor approaches that of the matched filter/correlator embodiments described herein.

FIG. 152 illustrates an example method 15200 for down-converting an electromagnetic signal using a matched filtering/correlating operation. Method 15200 starts at step 15210.

In step 15210, a matched filtering/correlating operation is performed on a portion of a carrier signal. For example, a match filtering/correlating operation can be performed on a 900 MHz RF signal, which typically comprises a 900 MHz sinusoid having noise signals and information signals superimposed on it. Many different types of signals can be operated upon in step 15210, however, and the invention is not limited to operating on a 900 MHz RF signal. In embodiments, Method 15200 operates on approximate half cycles of the carrier signal.

In an embodiment of the invention, step 15210 comprises the step of convolving an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal with a representation of itself in order to efficiently acquire the energy of the approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. As described elsewhere herein, other embodiments use other means for efficiently acquiring the energy of the approximate half cycle of the carrier signal. The matched filtering/correlating operation can be performed on any approximate half

cycle of the carrier signal (although the invention is not limited to this), as described in detail in the sub-sections below.

In step 15220, the result of the matched filtering/correlating operation in step 15210 is accumulated, preferably in an energy storage device. In an embodiment of the present invention, a capacitive storage devise is used to store a portion of the energy of an approximate half cycle of the carrier signal.

Steps 15210 and 15220 are repeated for additional half cycles of the carrier signal. In an embodiment of the present invention, steps 15210 and 15220 are normally performed at a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal, for example at a third sub-harmonic rate. In another embodiment, steps 15210 and 15220 are repeated at an off-set of a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal.

In step 15230, a down-converted signal is output. In embodiments, the results of steps 15210 and 15220 are passed on to a reconstruction filter or an interpolation fiter.

FIG. 153 illustrates an example RC processing system 15300, which can be used to implement method 15200. As can be seen in FIG. 153, system 15300 comprises a source resistance 15302, a switching module 15304, and a capacitance 15306. Source resistance 15302 is a lumped sum resistance.

Switching module 15304 is controlled by a windowing function, $u(t) - u(t-T_A)$. The length of the windowing function aperture is T_A, which is equal to an approximate half cycle of the received carrier signal, $S_i(t)$. Switching module 15304 ensures that approximate half cycles of the carrier signal are normally processed at a sub-harmonic rate. In an embodiment of system 15300, the received carrier signal is processed on at an off-set of a sub-harmonic rate of the carrier signal.

Capacitor 15306 integrates the output of switching module 15304 and accumulates the energy of the processed portions of the received carrier signal. RC processor 15300 also passes on its result, $S_0(t)$, to subsequent circuitry for further processing. This embodiment of the present invention is described in more detail in subsequent sub-sections.

It is noted that the implementations of the invention presented above are provided for illustrative purposes. Other implementations will be apparent to persons skilled in the art based on the herein teachings, and the invention is directed to such implementations.

2. Representation of a Power Signal as a Sum of Energy Signals

This sub-section describes how a power signal can be represented as a sum of energy signals. The detailed mathematical descriptions in the sub-sections below use both Fourier transform analysis and Fourier series analysis to describe embodiments of the present invention. Fourier transform analysis typically is used to describe energy signals while Fourier series analysis is used to describe power signals. In a strict mathematical sense, Fourier transforms do not exist for power signals. It is occasionally mathematically convenient, however, to analyze certain repeating or periodic power signals using Fourier transform analysis.

Both Fourier series analysis and Fourier transform analysis can be used to describe periodic waveforms with pulse like structure. For example, consider the ideal impulse sampling train in EQ. (10).

$$x(t) = \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - mT_s) \qquad \text{EQ. (10)}$$

Suppose that this sampling train is convolved (in the time domain) with a particular waveform $s(t)$, which is of finite duration T_A. Hence $s(t)$ is an energy waveform. Then:

$$s(t) * x(t) = \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - mT_s) * s(t) \qquad \text{EQ.(11)}$$

$$= \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} s(t - mT_s) \qquad \text{EQ. (12)}$$

The above equation is a well known form of the sampler equation for arbitrary pulse shapes which may be of finite time duration rather than impulse-like. The sampler equation possesses a Fourier transform on a term-by-term basis because each separate is an energy waveform.

Applying the convolution theorem and a term-by-term Fourier transform yields:

$$\tilde{\Im}\{s(t) * x(t)\} \underline{\Delta} \tilde{\Im}\left\{ \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \right\} \delta(t - mT_s) s(f)$$

$$= \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} T_s^{-1} \delta\left(f - m/T_s \right) S\left(n/T_s \right) \qquad \text{EQ. (13)}$$

where $f_s = T_s^{-1}$. In this manner the Fourier transform may be derived for a train of pulses of arbitrary time domain definition provided that each pulse is of finite time duration and each pulse in the train is identical to the next. If the pulses are not deterministic then techniques viable for stochastic signal analysis may be required. It is therefore possible to represent the periodic signal, which is a power signal, by an infinite linear sum of finite duration energy signals. If the power signal is of infinite time duration, an infinite number of energy waveforms are required to create the desired representation.

FIG. 154 illustrates a pulse train 15402. Each pulse of pulse deterministic train 15402, for example pulse 15404, is an energy signal.

FIG. 155 illustrates one heuristic method based on superposition for combining pulses to form pulse deterministic train 15402.

The method of FIG. 155 shows how a power signal can be obtained from a linear piece-wise continuous sum of energy signals.

2.1 De-Composition of a Sine Wave into an Energy Signal Representation

The heuristic discussion presented in the previous section can be applied to the piecewise linear reconstruction of a sine wave function or carrier. FIG. 156 illustrates a simple way to view such a construction.

Using the previously developed equations, the waveform $y(t)$ can be represented by:

$$\sin(\omega_c t+\phi)\Big|_{t=0}^{mT} = \sum_{\ell=0}^{m=even} \sin(\omega_c t+\phi)\left[u(t)-u\left(t-\frac{T_c}{2}\right)\right] * \delta\left(t-\ell\cdot\frac{T_s}{2}\right)$$

$$+ \sum_{k=1}^{m=odd} \sin(\omega_c t+\phi)\left[u\left(t-\frac{T_c}{2}\right)-u\left(t-\frac{3T_c}{2}\right)\right] * \delta\left(t-k\frac{T_s}{2}\right)$$

EQ. (14)

and $y(t)$ can be rewritten as:

$$y(t) = \sum_{\ell=0}^{m,even} \left[u\left(t - \frac{\ell T_s}{2} \right) - u\left(t - \frac{\ell T_s}{2} - \frac{T_c}{2} \right) \right] \cdot \sin\left(\omega_c \left(t - \frac{\ell T_s}{2} \right) + \phi \right)$$
$$+ \sum_{k=1}^{m,odd} \left[u(t - kT_s) - u(t - kT_s) \right] \cdot \sin\left(\omega_c \left(t - kT_s - \frac{T_c}{2} \right) \right) \sin\left(\omega_c (t - kT_s) + \phi \right)$$

EQ. (15)

In general, T_s is usually integrally related to T_c. That is, the sampling interval T_s divided by T_c usually results in an integer, which further reduces the above equation. The unit step functions are employed to carve out the portion of a sine function applicable for positive pulses and negative pulse, respectively. The point is a power signal may be viewed as an infinite linear sum of energy signals.

2.2 Decomposition of Sine Waveforms

FIG. 157 illustrates how portions of a carrier signal or sine waveform are selected for processing according to embodiments of the present invention. Embodiments of the present invention operate recursively, at a sub-harmonic rate, on a carrier signal (i.e., sine wave waveform). FIG. 157 shows the case where there is synchronism in phase and frequency between the clock of the present invention and the carrier signal. This sub-section, as well as the previous sub-sections, illustrates the fact that each half-sine segment of a carrier signal can be viewed as an energy signal, and may be partitioned from the carrier or power signal by a gating process.

3. Matched Filtering/Correlating Characterization/Embodiment

3.1 Time Domain Description

Embodiments of the present invention are interpreted as a specific implementation of a matched filter and a restricted Fourier sine or cosine transform. The matched filter of such embodiments is not a traditional realization of a matched filter designed to extract information at the data bandwidth. Rather, the correlation properties of the filter of the embodiments exploit specific attributes of bandpass waveforms to efficiently down convert signals from RF. A controlled aperture specifically designed to the bandpass waveform is used. In addition, the matched filter operation of embodiments of the present invention is applied recursively to the bandpass signal at a rate sub-harmonically related to the carrier frequency. Each matched filtered result or correlation of embodiments of the present invention is retained and accumulated to provide an initial condition for subsequent recursions of the correlator. This accumulation is approximated as a zero order data hold filter.

An attribute of bandpass waveforms is that they inherently possess time domain structure, which can be compared to sampling processes. For example, FIG. 158 illustrates a double sideband large carrier AM waveform 15802, with a dashed reference 15804 and black sample dots 15806. Each half sine above or below the dashed reference 15804 can represent a finite duration pulse that possesses information impressed on the carrier by the modulation process.

Sampled systems attempt to extract information in the envelope, at the black sample dots 15806, if possible. The sample times illustrated by the black sample dots 15806 are shown here at optimum sampling times.

Difficulties arise when the bandpass waveform is at RF. Then sampling is difficult because of sample rate, sample aperture, and aperture

uncertainty. When the traditional sampler acquires, the aperture and aperture uncertainty must be minimized such that the number associated with the acquired waveform value possesses great accuracy at a particular instant in time with minimum variance. Sample rate can be reduced by sampling sub-harmonically. However, precisely controlling a minimized aperture makes the process very difficult, if not impossible, at RF.

In FIG. 158, the area under a half-sine cycle 15808 is illustrated with hatched marks. In accordance with embodiments of the present invention, instead of obtaining a sample of a single waveform voltage value, energy in the hatched area is acquired. By acquiring energy in the hatched area, the effects of aperture uncertainty can be minimized. Moreover, the waveform itself possesses the sampling information between the half sine zero crossings. This is true because the total energy of the hatched area is proportional to the peak of the modulated half sine peak. This is illustrated by EQ. (16), below. All that remains is to extract that latent information. IN embodiments, the underlying theory for optimal extractions of the energy is in fact matched filter theory.

$$E_A = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_i(t)^2 dt = 2A^2 \int_{0}^{T_A/2} \left(\sin(2\pi ft)\right)^2 dt = \frac{A^2 T_A}{2} \quad \text{EQ. (16)}$$

Historically, an optimization figure of merit is signal-to-noise ration (SNR) at the system output. FIG. 159 illustrates a block diagram of an example optimum processor system 15902, which considers additive white Gaussian noise (AWGN). The general theory described herein can be extended to systems operating in the presence of colored noise as well.

Although an RF carrier with modulated information is typically a power signal, the analysis which follows considers the power signal to be a piece-wise construct of sequential energy signals where each energy

waveform is a half sine pulse (single aperture) or multiple sine pulses (see sub-section 2 above). Hence, theorems related to finite time observations, Fourier transforms, etc., may be applied throughout.

Analysis begins with the assumption that a filtering process can improve SNR. No other assumptions are necessary except that the system is casual and linear. The analysis determines the optimum processor for SNR enhancement and maximum energy transfer.

The output of the system is given by the convolution integral illustrated in EQ. (17):

$$S_0(t) = \int_0^\infty h(\tau) S_i(t-\tau) d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (17)}$$

where $h(\tau)$ is the unknown impulse response of the optimum processor.

The output noise variance is found from EQ. (18):

$$\sigma_0^2 = N_0 \int_0^\infty h^2(\tau) d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (18)}$$

The signal to noise ratio at time t_0 is given by EQ. (19):

$$\frac{S_0^2(t_0)}{\sigma_0^2} = \frac{\left[\int_0^\infty h(\tau) S_i(t_0-\tau) d\tau\right]^2}{N_0 \int_0^\infty h^2(\tau) d\tau} \qquad \text{EQ. (19)}$$

The Schwarz inequality theorem may be used to maximize the above ratio by recognizing, in EQ. (20), that:

$$\frac{S_0^2(t_0)}{\sigma_0^2} \le \frac{\int_0^\infty h^2(\tau) \int_0^\infty S_i^2(t_0-\tau) d\tau}{N_0 \int_0^\infty h^2(\tau) d\tau} \qquad \text{EQ. (20)}$$

The maximum SNR occurs for the case of equality in EQ. 20, which yields EQ. (21):

$$\left|\frac{S_0^2(t_0)}{\sigma_0^2}\right|\max=\frac{1}{N_0}\int_0^\infty S_i^2(t_0-\tau)d\tau \qquad \text{EQ. (21)}$$

In general therefore:

$$h(\tau)=kS_1(t_0-\tau)u(\tau) \qquad \text{EQ. (22)}$$

where $u(\tau)$ is added as a statement of causality and k is an arbitrary gain constant. Since, in general, the original waveform $S_i(t)$ can be considered as an energy signal (single half sine for the present case), it is important to add the consideration of t_0, a specific observation time. That is, an impulse response for an optimum processor may not be optimal for all time. This is due to the fact that an impulse response for realizable systems operating on energy signals will typically die out over time. Hence, the signal at t_0 is said to possess the maximum SNR.

This can be verified by maximizing EQ. (21) in general.

$$\left(\frac{d}{dt}\right)\frac{S_0^2(t)}{\sigma_0^2}=0 \qquad \text{EQ. (23)}$$

It is of some interest to rewrite EQ. (21) by a change of variable, substituting

$t=t_0-\tau$. This yields:

$$k\int_0^\infty S_i^2(t_0-\tau)d\tau=k\int_{-\infty}^{t_0} S_i^2(t)dt \qquad \text{EQ. (24)}$$

This is the energy of the waveform up to time t_0. After t_0, the energy falls off again due to the finite impulse response nature of the processor. EQ. (24) is of great importance because it reveals an often useful form of a matched filter known as a correlator. That is, the matched filter may be implemented by multiplying the subject waveform by itself over the time interval defined for the waveform, and then integrated. In this realization the maximum output occurs when the waveform and its optimal processor aperture are exactly overlapped for $t_0 = T_a$. It should also be evident from the matched filter equivalency stated in EQ. (24) that the maximum SNR solution also preserves the maximum energy transfer of the desired waveform through the processor. This may be proven using the Parseval and/or Rayliegh energy theorems. EQ. (24) relates directly to Parseval's theorem.

3.2 Frequency Domain Description

The previous sub-section derived an optimal processor from the time domain point-of-view according to embodiments of the invention. Alternately, Fourier transforms may be applied to obtain a frequency domain representation for h(t). This result is shown below.

$$H(f) = kS_i^*(f)e^{-j2\pi ft_0} \qquad \text{EQ. (25)}$$

Letting $j\omega = j2Bf$ and $t_0 = T_A$, we can write the following EQ. (26) for

$$H(j\omega) = \frac{2}{T_A} e^{-j\omega T_A/2} \frac{\sin(\omega T_A/2)}{\omega T_A/2} \qquad \text{EQ. (20)}$$

FIGS. 160 and 161.

The frequency domain representation in FIG. 160 represents the response of an optimum processor according to embodiments. FIG. 161 illustrates responses of processors that use parameters different than T_A. For $t_0 << T_A$, the frequency domain response possesses too wide a bandwidth which captures too little of the main lobe of desired energy with respect to out of band noise power. Conversely, when $t_0 >> T_A$, the energy transfer from the signal's main lobe is very inefficient. Therefore, proper selection of T_A is key for implementation efficiency.

Another simple but useful observation is gleaned from EQ. (24) and Rayleigh's Energy Theorem for Fourier transforms:

$$E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |S_i(t)|^2 dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |H(f)|^2 df \qquad \text{EQ. (27)}$$

EQ. (27) verifies that the transform of the optimal filter of various embodiments should substantially match the transform of the specific pulse, which is being processed, for efficient energy transfer.

4. Finite Time Integrating Characterization/Embodiment

It is not always practical to design the matched filter with passive networks. Sometimes the waveform correlation of $S_i(t)$ is also cumbersome to generate exactly. However, a single aperture realization of embodiments of the present invention is practical, even in CMOS, with certain

concessions.

Consider FIGS. 162 and 163, which illustrate an optimum single aperture realization of embodiments of the present invention using sub harmonic sampling (3rd harmonic) and a processor 16310 according to such embodiments. Ideally over the aperture of interest, T_A, a half sine impulse response or waveform is used to operate on the original gated $S_i(t)$. Suppose for ease of implementation, however, that a rectangular impulse response is used, as illustrated in FIGS. 164A and 164B. The Fourier transform of this processor still overlaps the Fourier transform for the original pulse $S_i(t)$ with exactly the same nulls, as shown in FIG. 164C. Although the Fourier correlation is not perfect, it is still quite good. Furthermore, it can be implemented using a simple switch that lets the half sine through in order to charge a capacitor, which acquires the total energy of the half sine at $t_0 \cong T_A$.

Applying EQ. (26) for both the matched filter and non-matched filter embodiments yields:

$$E_{A0} = \int_0^{T_A} S_i^2(t)\, dt = \frac{A^2 T_A}{2} \qquad \textit{Optimal Matched Filter Embodiment Result; and}$$

$$E_{AS0} = \left(\int_0^{T_A} A \cdot S(t) \right)^2 dt = \left(\frac{2T_A A}{\pi} \right)^2 \qquad \textit{Finite Time Integrator Embodiment Result}$$

It turns out in practice that realizable apertures are not perfectly rectangular and do possess a finite rise and fall time. In particular, they become triangular or nearly sinusoidal for very high frequency implementations. Thus, the finite time integrating processor result tends toward the matched filtering/correlating processor result when the aperture becomes sine-like, if the processor possesses constant impedance across the

aperture duration. Even though the matched filter/correlator response produces a lower output value at T_A, it yields a higher SNR by a factor of 0.9dB, as further illustrated below in sub-section 6.

5. RC Processing Characterization/Embodiment

Sometimes a precise matched filter is difficult to construct, particularly if the pulse shape is complex. Often, such complexities are avoided in favor of suitable approximations, which preserve the essential features. The single aperture realization of embodiments of the present invention is usually implemented conceptually as a first order approximation to a matched filter where the pulse shape being matched is a half-sine pulse. As shown in above, in embodiments, the matched filter is applied recursively to a carrier waveform. The time varying matched filter output correlation contains information modulated onto the carrier. If many such matched filter correlation samples are extracted, the original information modulated onto the carrier is recovered.

A baseband filter, matched or otherwise, may be applied to the recovered information to optimally process the signal at baseband. The present invention should not be confused with this optimal baseband processing. Rather embodiments of the present invention are applied on a time microscopic basis on the order of the time scale of a carrier cycle.

FIG. 165 illustrates a basic circuit 16502 that can be used to describe an example RC processor according to embodiments of the present invention. Circuit 16502 comprises a switch 16504. The switch 16504 is closed on a T_A basis in order to sample $V_i(t)$. In the analysis that follows, the transfer function and impulse response are derived for circuit 16502.

The switch 16504 functions as a sampler, which possesses multiplier attributes. Heviside's operator is used to model the switch function. The

operator is multiplied in the impulse response, thus rendering it essential to the matched filtering/correlating process.

In the analysis that follows, only one aperture event is considered. That is, the impulse response of the circuit is considered to be isolated aperture-to-aperture, except for the initial value inherited from the previous aperture.

For circuit 16502, shown in Figure 165:

$$V_0(t) = \frac{1}{C}\int i(t)\ dt \qquad \text{EQ. (28)}$$

$$i(t) = \frac{V_i(t)[u(t) - u(t - T_A)] - V_0(t)}{R} \qquad \text{EQ. (29)}$$

$$V_0(t) = \int \frac{V_i(t)[u(t) - (t - T_A)] - V_0(t)}{RC}\ dt \qquad \text{EQ. (30)}$$

$$V_0(t) + \int \frac{V_0(t)}{RC}\ dt = \int \frac{V_i(t)[u(t) - u(t - T_A)]}{RC}\ dt \qquad \text{EQ. (31)}$$

EQ. (31) represents the integro-differential equation for circuit 16502. The right hand side of EQ. (31) represents the correlation between the input waveform $V_i(t)$ and a rectangular window over the period T_A.

The Laplace transform of EQ. (31) is:

initial condition initial condition

$$V_0(s)\left(1 + \frac{1}{sRC}\right) + \frac{V_0(0)}{sRC} = V_i(s)\left(\frac{1 - e^{-sT_A}}{s^2RC}\right) + \frac{V_i(0)}{sRC} \qquad \text{EQ. (32)}$$

Consider that the initial condition equal to zero, then: